



**INTERNATIONAL FEDERATION
OF ACCOUNTANTS**

545 Fifth Avenue, 14th Floor
New York, New York 10017
Internet: <http://www.ifac.org>

Tel: (212) 286-9344
Fax: (212) 286-9570

**Agenda Item
2B**

DATE: February 5, 2009
MEMO TO: Members, Technical Advisors and Observers of the IPSASB
FROM: Jeanine Poggiolini (SAASB), John Stanford and Matthew Bohun-Aponte
SUBJECT: ED 38: Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement

OBJECTIVE OF THIS SESSION

The objective of this session is to approve Exposure Draft 38 (ED 38), “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”.

ACTION REQUIRED

Members, Technical Advisors and Observers are asked to:

- **Consider** the revised versions of draft ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”;
- **Consider** the issues raised in this memorandum and **confirm** the Staff action or **provide** alternative directions;
- **Highlight** further issues that are not considered in this memorandum and provide directions; and
- **Approve** ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”.

AGENDA MATERIAL

- 2.B1 Cut and Paste of responses to December 23rd circulation of material
- 2.B2 Draft ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” (Marked-up to show changes from the version circulated on December 23rd)
- 2.B3 Draft ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”. (Marked-up to show changes from IAS 39, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”, IFRIC 9, “Reassessment of Embedded Derivatives” and IFRIC 16, “Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation” Introduction section after Contents page is not marked-up for changes from IAS 39 as IAS 39 Introduction only deals with revisions to an earlier version of IAS 39)

BACKGROUND

At the Zurich Meeting in October 2008 Staff was directed to develop EDs based on IAS 32, “Financial Instruments: Presentation”, IAS 39, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” and IFRS 7, “Financial Instruments: Disclosure”. The EDs, primarily drawn from IAS 32 and IAS 39, were to contain minimal changes from IAS 32 and IAS

39, predominantly to align the text with the terminology and references in other IPSASs. The term “connectivity” was used at Zurich to describe this process.

A preliminary version of ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”, a mark-up of IAS 39, was prepared by Jeanine Poggiolini of the South African Accounting Standards Board. This version of ED 38 was circulated on the intranet to Members, Technical Advisors and Observers on December 23rd. A memorandum was also circulated asking for views and directions on issues identified by Staff. As at February 4th, 8 responses had been received. These responses are shown at Agenda Item 2.B1, apart from minor editorials. Copies of original responses are available from Staff on request.

BASIS FOR DEVELOPMENT OF ED 38

ED 38 reflects all amendments either made or proposed by the IASB to IAS 39, IFRIC 9 and IFRIC 16, as at December 31st, 2008. These adopted or proposed amendments include the IASB’s May 2008 Improvements, the August 2008 proposed Improvements, the October 13 2008 reclassification changes and the December 2008 proposals relating to embedded derivatives.

The most recent IASB Update, providing details of decisions at the IASB’s January meeting, indicates that the IASB is going to further deliberate the August proposed improvements to IAS 39 in relation to the scope exemption for business combination contracts (paragraph 2(b) of IAS 39) & cash flow hedge accounting (paragraph 97 of IAS 39). This Update also states that re-deliberation of the remaining 2 improvements proposed to IAS 39-application of the fair value option (paragraph 11A of IAS 39) and bifurcation of an embedded foreign currency derivative (Application Guidance paragraph AG 33 of IAS 39) is to be deferred. This is likely to mean that these latter 2 proposed improvements will not be part of the package of Improvements that IASB plan to issue in April 2009. The equivalent paragraphs in ED 38 are indicated in the right hand margin. In the view of Staff it may be premature to include the latter 2 proposed amendments in the finalized version of ED 38.

PRESENTATION OF ED 38

Two versions of ED 38 have been included in the agenda material for the Paris meeting. Item 2.B2 marks-up the changes made to the version of ED 38 circulated for comment in December. Item 2.B3 is a mark-up, which shows changes from the text of IAS 39, IFRIC 9 and IFRIC 16. This mark-up of IAS 39 is presented as follows:

- Additions to IAS 39, IFRIC 9 and IFRIC 16 are underlined and deletions are struck through;
- The text, as well as the Application Guidance, is cross-referenced to the corresponding paragraph in IAS 39, which is shown in the right hand margin. Any changes made to the paragraph are also highlighted in the right hand margin; and
- IFRIC 9 and IFRIC 16 are included as Appendices B and C rather than being incorporated into the Application Guidance. In order to indicate the changes made

to IFRIC 9 and IFRIC 16, only changes to the text of Interpretation have been marked-up rather than the insertion of the entire IFRICS being shown as a mark-up.

SPECIFIC MATTERS FOR COMMENT, CROSS-REFERENCES TO ED 37 & ED 39 AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

No Specific Matters for Comment have been included. Decisions on whether, and, if so, what Specific Matters for Comment are necessary are contingent on decisions to be made at Paris. Cross-references to ED 37, “Financial Instruments: Presentation” and ED 39, “Financial Instruments: Disclosures” need to be amended once the text and Application Guidance of those EDs is finalized.

As a result of amending the term “income” to “revenue”, the terminology used in existing IPSASs should be reviewed for consistency and, where appropriate, amendments proposed. This review of existing IPSASs has not been done as yet. Once the IPSASB has approved the use of the term ‘revenue’ instead of ‘income’, this review will be initiated.

ISSUES FOR CONSIDERATION BY THE IPSASB

The issues highlighted in this memorandum arise from changes proposed to the text of IAS 39 that have either been identified by Staff or Members during the development of ED 38 and the out-of-session consultation in December 2008 and January 2009.

1. ASSETS AND LIABILITIES ARISING OUT OF NON-EXCHANGE REVENUE TRANSACTIONS

1.1 Sovereign receivables and payables

At the Zurich meeting, it was agreed that staff should develop guidance on contractual sovereign receivables and payables (also referred to as statutory contractual receivables and payables). “Sovereign” receivables and payables imply that these are receivables or payables either owing to or from the government or state. For example, debt owing by a government is often termed ‘sovereign debt’. Sovereign receivables and payables may include non-contractual receivables and payables such as taxes and fines. It is noted that some jurisdictions do not use the term “sovereign”.

To the extent that assets and liabilities either owing to or from the state meet the definition of a financial instrument, there is no need to distinguish these kinds of transactions from other transactions related to financial instruments merely because one of the counterparties to the transaction is a government or state. In these instances, the assets or liabilities are accounted for using EDs 37-39.

Government may exercise its legislative powers and enter into transactions that do not result in assets and liabilities that meet the definition of a financial instrument, e.g., the collection of taxes and the imposition of fines. These types of sovereign receivables and payables are non-contractual and give rise to specific accounting

considerations which are outside the scope of this convergence project. The IPSASB will provide guidance on the accounting for these types of transactions as well certain transactions undertaken by central banks in a future project.

Staff proposal

Staff is therefore of the view that the current text and amended Application Guidance of ED 37 and ED 38 are sufficient to deal with sovereign assets and liabilities. Specifically, Staff is of the view that the Application Guidance in ED 37 dealing with identifying contractual arrangements and the Application Guidance in ED 38 dealing with contractual non-exchange revenue transactions sufficiently cater for sovereign assets and liabilities.

Key Issue 1

Do you **agree** with the Staff proposal for dealing with “sovereign” assets and liabilities (receivables and payables)? If not, please **provide** further directions

1.2 Amendments to IPSAS 23 – initial measurement of assets and liabilities

IPSAS 23 has the following requirements for the initial measurement of assets and liabilities arising from non-exchange revenue transactions:

Paragraph 42: “An asset acquired through a non-exchange transaction shall initially be measured at its fair value as at the date of acquisition”.

Paragraph 57: “The amount recognized as a liability shall be the best estimate of the amount required to settle the present obligation at the reporting date”.

Initial measurement of assets

IPSAS 23 does not distinguish between the initial measurement of physical assets, living assets or financial assets. While financial assets are initially measured at fair value under both IPSAS 23 and ED 38, ED 38 takes account of transaction costs that are directly attributable to acquisition except for financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit. IPSAS 23 does not take account of such transaction costs. As a result, applying IPSAS 23 for measurement on initial recognition of a financial asset may be inappropriate, given that these assets are subsequently measured in accordance with ED 38.

Consequently, Staff considered how to deal with this issue in proposing consequential amendments to IPSAS 23 on the initial measurement of financial assets. Staff considered two alternatives:

1. Expanding paragraph 42 and excluding financial assets from the initial measurement requirements of IPSAS 23 i.e., 42. **An asset acquired through a non-exchange transaction shall initially be measured at its fair value as at the date of acquisition except for a financial asset which is measured in accordance with IPSAS XX, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”.**

2. Including an additional paragraph (paragraph 43A) in IPSAS 23 stating that an entity also considers the initial measurement requirements of ED 38 in measuring financial assets acquired as part of a contractual non-exchange transaction. Where an entity acquires an asset that meets the definition of a financial asset in ED 37, it measures the asset at fair value in accordance with IPSAS 23 and also considers the measurement requirements in ED 38.

Staff proposal

Staff has drafted ED 38 in accordance with the first proposal i.e. amendment of paragraph 42 of IPSAS 23. This is consistent with the proposed consequential amendment in ED 36, “Agriculture” relating to IPSAS 23, which is also on the agenda for this meeting.

Key Issue 2

Do you **agree** with the Staff proposal for dealing with the measurement of financial assets acquired as part of a non-exchange transaction at initial recognition?

Initial measurement of liabilities

The initial measurement requirement in IPSAS 23 is aligned with IPSAS 19, “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets” and differs from the initial measurement of liabilities under ED 38. IPSAS 23 refers to the ‘best estimate of the amount required to settle the obligation at reporting date’ while ED 38 refers to “fair value”.

In the Staff’s view, it is unlikely that a financial liability will arise from the initial recognition of an asset acquired through a non-exchange transaction, as the recipient intends to meet the present obligations under the arrangement by fulfilling the terms of the transfer i.e., the arrangement will be fulfilled through the provision of goods and services rather than repaying cash directly to the transferor. However, after initial recognition, the nature of the obligation may change to a financial liability e.g. if unspent cash is to be returned to the transferor.

Staff proposal

Staff proposes that no amendments be made to IPSAS 23 regarding the initial measurement of liabilities arising from non-exchange transactions for the reasons outlined above and has drafted ED 38 on that basis.

However, as an alternative, staff could amend paragraph 57 of IPSAS 23 in the same manner proposed for the initial measurement of financial assets.

Key Issue 3

Do you **agree** with the Staff proposal to not propose any consequential amendments to IPSAS 23 for the initial measurement of liabilities? Alternatively, should paragraph 57 of IPSAS 23 be amended in the same manner as for the measurement of financial assets at initial recognition?

2. CONCESSIONARY LOANS

At the Zurich meeting, Staff was directed to develop guidance for the accounting treatment of concessionary loans. In the December 23rd draft of ED 38, Staff proposed explanatory material relating to the definition of a concessionary loan: The relevant extract from the December 23rd memorandum is shown in boxed text below

Concessionary loans are loans granted to or received by an entity in terms of specific public policy objectives. These loans are usually granted or received with flexible repayment terms and bear either low or no interest. “Public policy” for purposes of this Standard refers to the stated policies of governments, which entities execute in accordance with their stated mandate. Policies of government may include, for example, the promotion of economic growth, the reduction of unemployment and the provision of housing for no or low income individuals.

As part of the out-of session consultation, it was suggested that:

- The correct term for these types of loans are ‘concessional’ loans rather than ‘concessionary’ loans;
- The granting of loans for public policy purposes should be linked to the fact that these loans are often granted on concessionary terms. Staff agreed with this suggestion and amended the wording of the paragraph by combining the first two sentences in the boxed text, by using the words “...and, as a result, are usually ~~These loans...~~”
- The definition and explanation of a concessionary loan should be expanded to include other types of low or no interest loans. It was therefore suggested that the explanatory material refer to concessionary loans as being granted “often” to achieve public policy purposes. The example given for the proposed expansion of the scope by Respondent 4 is:

“A government may lend money to a non-for-profit entity with the intention that the loan be repaid in full at commercial rates. However, the government may subsequently write off part of the loan because the entity has got into financial difficulties. In such cases the government may agree that the not-for-profit entity is doing good works, but it probably would not have agreed to give them the money up front nor would it necessarily have undertaken those activities itself.”

Staff proposal

Staff is of the view that concessionary loans should consist of those loans that, at the outset, are made to achieve specific public policy purposes and, as a result, are usually granted or received on favorable terms. The requirements for the derecognition of assets in ED 38 have been expanded to include the “waiver” of debts to include, although not limited to, the scenario outlined above.

Key Issue 4

Do you **agree** with the Staff proposal that concessionary loans should only refer to those loans related to the achievement of public policy?

Should the term ‘concessionary’ loans be amended to ‘concessional’ loans?

3. FINANCIAL GUARANTEES

3.1 Financial Guarantees at Nil or Nominal Consideration

The version of ED 38 circulated on December 23rd did not include Application Guidance and Illustrative Examples relating to financial guarantees provided for nil or nominal consideration. However, the proposed approach was outlined in the memorandum and comments requested. The relevant extracts from the December 23rd memorandum are shown in boxed text below.

IAS 39 defines a “financial guarantee contract” as “a contract that requires the issuers to make specified payments to reimburse the holder for a loss it incurs because a specified debtor fails to make payment when due in accordance with the original or modified terms of a debt instrument.” Under the requirements of IAS 39, financial guarantee contracts, like other financial assets and financial liabilities, are required to be initially recognized at fair value plus, except for financial assets or financial liabilities through profit or loss, transaction costs directly linked to acquisition or issue,. Paragraph 48A of IAS 39 provides commentary and guidance on determining fair value and this is complemented by Application Guidance in paragraphs AG69-AG82. Subsequent measurement for financial guarantee contracts is at the higher of the amount determined in accordance with IAS 37, “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Liabilities” and the amount initially recognized less, when appropriate, cumulative amortization.

The proposed approach, which will be incorporated into the additional Application Guidance, subject to views from Members, is to explain that, in the public sector, guarantees are frequently provided for no or nominal consideration to further the reporting entity’s economic and social objectives. Such purposes include supporting infrastructure projects, supporting corporate entities at times of economic distress, guaranteeing the bond issues of entities in other tiers of governments and the loans of employees to finance motor vehicles. At initial recognition, where no fee is charged, a reporting entity firstly considers whether there are quoted prices available in an active market for guarantee contracts directly equivalent to that entered into. The fact that a guarantee contract has been entered into at no consideration by the debtor to the issuer is not, of itself, conclusive evidence of the absence of an active market. It may be that guarantees are available from commercial issuers, but the reporting entity has agreed to enter into a financial guarantee contract, because the debtor would be unable to afford a commercial fee, and initiation of a project in fulfillment one of the reporting entity’s social or policy objectives is imperiled unless a financial guarantee contract is entered into. In such instances a fair value may be determined by quotes provided in an active market.

Where there is no active market for a directly equivalent guarantee contract, the reporting entity considers whether a valuation technique is available. Such

valuation techniques include those highlighted in paragraph AG 110-AG116 of ED 38, such as recent arm's length market transactions between knowledgeable willing parties, reference to the current fair value of another financial guarantee contract that is substantially the same and discounted cash flow analysis. For example where the reporting entity has guaranteed a loan it may be possible to make an estimate of the value of the guarantee by reference to the interest rate and resultant cash flows that that would have been applied had no guarantee contract been entered into. Where a fair value is obtainable either by reference to an active market or through a valuation technique the entity recognizes the financial guarantee at that fair value and recognizes an expense of an equivalent amount.

If no fair value can be determined, either by direct reference to an active market or through a valuation technique, an entity is required to measure the financial guarantee contract both at initial recognition and subsequently in accordance with IPSAS 19. The reporting entity assesses whether a present obligation has arisen as a result of a past event related to a financial guarantee contract, whether it is probable that such a present obligation will result in a cash outflow in accordance with the terms of the contract. It is extremely unlikely that a present obligation will arise at initial recognition

The Application Guidance requires that, where any fee is received this fee is recognized as income in accordance with IPSAS 9, "Revenue from Exchange Transactions" on a straight line basis over the life of the guarantee. The alternative would appear to be for the amount of any fee to be offset against the carrying amount of the financial guarantee contract at initial recognition. Members are requested to provide a view on the appropriate treatment.

In developing ED 38 Staff has not made any changes to the core text of IAS 39 in respect to financial guarantees. Views are requested on whether a modification is required to paragraph 43, which deals with the initial recognition of financial assets and financial liabilities and parallels paragraph 43 in IAS 39 from which it differs only for "connectivity" reasons.

The Application Guidance will also point out that only contractual financial guarantees are within the scope. Non-contractual guarantees are not within the scope of ED 38 as they do not meet the definition of a financial guarantee contract. Financial guarantee contracts held by the reporting entity, as opposed to those issued by the reporting entity, are outside the scope of ED 38.

None of the respondents who commented on this outline approach expressed fundamental reservations. Respondent 03 objected to the limitation of the scope to contractual financial guarantees, in jurisdictions where public sector entities are unable to enter into formal contracts. This issue has been addressed in detail in Agenda Item 2A and Members are referred to the discussion in that Agenda Item. Respondent 04 cautioned a need for care to ensure that guarantees in relation to employment conditions are not dealt with in the ED as they relate to employee benefits. Respondent 07 noted the difficulties in developing an approach in statistical accounting, highlighting the particular difficulty in valuing one-off guarantees to public corporations.

Respondents 05 and 06 challenged the assertion that present obligations related to financial guarantees are unlikely to arise at initial recognition. This view was corroborated by a field visit by Staff to the European Commission in Luxembourg (see below). It is clear that a number of guarantees provided by the European Investment Fund in respect of small and medium enterprises are given with an awareness that there is a high probability of default. The Application Guidance has been modified to convey an opposite message: entities should be alert to the possibility that present obligations in respect of financial guarantees may arise at initial recognition.

The approach outlined in the December 23rd memorandum involved a 3 level hierarchy for the estimation of fair value for measurement at initial recognition for financial guarantee contracts entered into at nil or nominal consideration:

Level One: Observation of active market;
Level Two Use of valuation model; and
Level Three: Initial recognition based on IPSAS 19.

Respondent 07 highlighted the need for further guidance on the sort of valuation techniques permissible for the determination of fair value where an active market does not exist, complemented by Illustrative Examples and indications of when it is permissible to adopt an approach to initial recognition based on IPSAS 19.

As part of the field work, Staff had a meeting with staff of the European Commission's Directorate General of Economic and Financial Affairs (DGECFIN) and their accounting advisers in Luxembourg in January 2009. DGECFIN has commissioned a model to estimate the fair value of secondary guarantees provided to the European Investment Bank in respect of loans outside the European Union. The model is highly complex, involving variables such as credit risk spread, the timing of cash flows and risk free forward discount factors. Staff involved in the compilation of the European Commission's annual accounts has not yet decided whether to use outputs from the model. Staff found the model difficult to understand beyond very basic principles. Further details are available from Staff on request, subject to the agreement of DGECFIN staff.

Staff has reservations whether it is feasible (or appropriate) to provide a detailed, exhaustive list of valuation techniques that are permissible for determining the fair value of financial guarantee contracts entered into at nil or nominal consideration. Staff also has reservations whether highly complex mathematical models provide information that is reliable and understandable and considers that there are inherent risks in including carrying values for financial guarantee contracts that are based on models, the detail of which may not be widely understood (even within a reporting entity), particularly in the present climate. Such models are also likely to be very expensive to develop and therefore questionable on cost-benefit grounds. There are also likely to be audit implications. Staff therefore considers that a more straightforward alternative approach would be to require entities to default to an

IPSAS 19 based approach where financial guarantees are issued at nil or nominal consideration and it is not possible to estimate a fair value through observation of an active market. Such an approach arguably better represents the substance of an issuing entity's risk exposure, as a result of entering into financial guarantee contacts.

Currently the Application Guidance has been drafted in accordance with the approach outlined in the December 23rd memorandum. The change envisaged by Staff would be that where entities determine that a fair value cannot be obtained through observation of an active market (Level One), an entity would default to measurement at initial recognition and subsequent measurement under IPSAS 19 (Level Three). Staff has provided boxed text with alternative Application Guidance reflecting this approach. Regardless of the approach adopted, Staff proposes that a Specific Matter for Comment is included on this issue.

Key issue 5

Do you **agree** with the Staff view that:

Where a fair value cannot be estimated through observation of an active market an entity should default to IPSAS 19 for measurement at initial recognition of a financial guarantee contract issued at nil or nominal consideration.

4. SIC 12 – SPECIAL PURPOSE ENTITIES

The first step for the derecognition of financial assets under ED 38 requires entities to consolidate all entities, including special purpose entities (SPEs). In IAS 39, the text refers to SIC 12, "Consolidation – Special Purpose Entities" for guidance on consolidating SPEs. IPSASB has not addressed SIC 12 and therefore has no equivalent.

Ideally, SIC 12 would be issued by the IPSASB as an Interpretation of IPSAS 6. However, as the IPSASB has not yet dealt with Interpretations relating to existing IPSASs, Staff considered how guidance on consolidating SPEs could be provided as part of the project on financial instruments, as the treatment of SPEs is a key step in the derecognition criteria of ED 38.

Staff considered the following alternatives:

1. Add SIC 12 as an Appendix to IPSAS 6 as a result of consequential amendments arising from the issue of ED 38. Staff considers that this is inappropriate as the amendment does not arise from the issue of ED 38.
2. Include a reference in the text of ED 38 to the 'international or national accounting standard or interpretation' dealing with the consolidation of special purpose entities. Staff considers that this may be a neater option but has reservations for the following reasons:
 - (a) Jurisdictions may not apply IFRSs, which would result in entities applying their national practices for dealing with SPEs which may be inconsistent with the principles proposed in SIC12.

- (b) SIC 12 is likely to be withdrawn as part of the IASB's project on Consolidation. This would potentially leave a gap in the accounting requirements of ED 38.
3. Include extracts from SIC12 in the Application Guidance of ED 38.

Staff proposal

Staff acknowledges that SIC 12 is more closely related to IPSAS 6 than ED 38. However, because of the likelihood that SIC 12 may be withdrawn, Staff favors Option 3. Staff accepts that this may be a provisional approach until the IASB has determined the position on ED 10, "Consolidated Financial Statements", which is intended to replace both current IAS 27, "Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements" and SIC 12. The consultation period on ED 10 expires on March 20th 2009.

On the assumption that IASB proceeds to a new IFRS based on ED 10, it is likely that the IPSASB will consider that new IFRS quite quickly. Therefore amending IPSAS 6 to include SIC 12 is not a good use of either IPSAB resources or constituent resources. Once the IPSASB has developed a new IPSAS based on a new IFRS the paragraphs from the Application Guidance to ED38 can be deleted.

Key Issue 6

Do you **agree** with the Staff proposal for dealing with SIC 12, "Consolidation – Special Purpose Entities" as outlined in 3 above?

5. CONSIDERATION RECEIVED OR PAID IN NON-EXCHANGE TRANSACTIONS

During the out-of-session consultation, it was noted that the text of IAS 39 and the related Application Guidance refers to instances where fair value is assumed to equal the consideration received or paid. For example, paragraph 30 states:

"When an entity allocates the previous carrying amount of a larger financial asset between the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is derecognized, the fair value of the part that continues to be recognized needs to be determined. When the entity has a history of selling parts similar to the part that continues to be recognized or other market transactions exist for such parts, recent prices of actual transactions provide the best estimate of its fair value. When there are no price quotes or recent market transactions to support the fair value of the part that continues to be recognized, the best estimate of the fair value is the difference between the fair value of the larger financial asset as a whole and the consideration received from the transferee for the part that is derecognized." (Staff have underlined key wording)

This paragraph assumes that an exchange transaction exists. A Member suggested that for these and similar references in ED 38 and the Application Guidance, it should be clarified that the underlined wording is only appropriate in an exchange transaction. While Staff agrees with this notion, it also considers that additional

guidance may then be necessary for those transactions that occurred by way of a non-exchange transaction.

Given the direction at Zurich, Staff was tasked with developing guidance only on specifically identified areas of concern and not non-exchange transactions as a whole and their potential impact on ED38.

Key issue 7

While Staff agrees that this is an area of concern in ED 38, it proposes either of the solutions outlined below. Members are **requested** to consider these proposals and indicate their preference.

- (a) Clarify in the text of ED 38 and the Application Guidance that certain scenarios are only appropriate to exchange transactions and provide no guidance on what to do when the scenario exists in a non-exchange transaction.
- (b) Clarify in the text of ED 38 and the Application Guidance that certain scenarios are only appropriate to exchange transactions and provide additional guidance on what to do when the scenario exists in a non-exchange transaction.

6. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

During the out of session consultation, Staff requested members' views on whether:

- The Illustrative Example from IFRIC 16 (which has been included as example 2 in paragraphs IE33 to IE36) is appropriate for the public sector.
- Examples that are inappropriate for the public sector should be deleted.

It was suggested that the example from IFRIC 16 is appropriate for a sovereign wealth fund.

Members agreed that inappropriate examples should be deleted from the implementation guidance.

In response to these is views, Staff has retained the Illustrative Example from IFRIC 16 and has deleted the following examples from the Implementation Guidance:

- B1 – Definition of a financial instrument: gold bullion – this example relates to the classification of gold either as a currency or a commodity. As the IPSASB intends to deal with this issue as part of a separate project, the example was deleted.
- F2.14 – Intragroup and intra-entity hedging transactions – the scenario in example 2.14 includes an Australian entity that is wholly owned by a Swiss entity which does not seem likely in the public sector.

Staff also considers that example C4 – Embedded derivative: equity kicker, is unlikely in the public sector, but has retained the example as other IPSASs e.g. IPSAS 6 refer to venture capital organisations.

Key Issue 8

- (a) Do you **agree** with the Staff proposals to:
 - Retain the illustrative example from IFRIC 16; and
 - Delete the examples outlined above?
- (b) Are there any other examples included in the Implementation Guidance that you believe should be deleted because they are inappropriate for the public sector?

7. OTHER ISSUES

The purpose of this section is to draw members' attention to certain other issues that have arisen in the development of ED 38.

7.1 Transitional provisions from IFRS 1

During the out-of session consultation, Staff requested Members' views on whether the first part of IFRS1.29 should be included as an additional transitional provision to ED 38. Specifically, Staff had proposed including the following from IFRS 1.29: "An entity shall not reflect in its opening IFRS statement of financial position a hedging relationship of a type that does not qualify for hedge accounting under IAS 39 (for example, many hedging relationships where the hedging instrument is a cash instrument or written option; where the hedged item is a net position; or where the hedge covers interest risk in a held to-maturity investment)".

Staff is of the view that, even though this requirement was implicit in the requirements of ED 38, it may assist users in understanding the transitional arrangements for hedging transactions.

Some members did not agree with the inclusion of this text in ED 38. As a result, this requirement has not been included in the transitional provisions.

7.2 Use of the term LIBOR

Staff requested views from Members on whether the acronym LIBOR (London Interbank Offered Rate) could be used in ED 38, given that jurisdictions use other rates and other terms for the LIBOR-equivalent.

Based on comments received, Staff has amended the Application Guidance to refer to an "interbank offered rate". The Illustrative Examples still refer to LIBOR as they are merely for illustrative purposes and refer to specific examples.

7.3 Implementation Guidance

IAS 39 refers to the Implementation Guidance by the title "Guidance on Implementing IAS 39 Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement".

Consistent with the terminology used in other IPSASs, this guidance has been referred to as "Implementation Guidance" in ED 38.

Key Issue 9

The Board is requested to **confirm** the Staff proposals outlined above.

Jeanine Poggiolini: Project Director, South African Accounting Standards Board

John Stanford: IPSASB Staff

Matthew Bohun-Aponte: IPSASB Staff

Cut & Paste of Comments on ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”

Key Issue (a) – Consolidating special purposes entities

The Board is requested to **confirm** the approach adopted by the staff for dealing with the consolidation of special purpose entities, i.e. the inclusion of certain principles from SIC 12 in the application guidance?

Rick Neville (01)

Agreed

Andreas Bergmann (02)

Agree, we are of the view this is the only feasible option if we want to keep the pace. However, in the longer run the Board really needs to address the issue of interpretations.

Frans van Schaik (03)

We confirm the approach adopted by the staff.

Ken Warren (Joanne Scott) (04)

I disagree with including the principles from SIC-12 in the Application Guidance to ED 38 for the following reasons:

- If SIC-12 were to be incorporated within the current suite of IPSASs, it should be dealt with (ie considered and debated) in the context of IPSAS 6, as this is the IPSAS that is equivalent to IAS 27. IPSAS 6 differs in some respects from IAS 27, and it is possible that the IPSAS equivalent to SIC-12 would also differ.
- The IASB is in the process of developing a standard that will replace much of IAS 27 and SIC-12. IASB ED 10 *Consolidated Financial Statements* was issued in December 2008, with comments due by 20 March 2009. The IASB expects to issue a final standard in the second half of 2009. If the IPSASB is to debate its views on consolidation of special purpose entities it would make sense to do this in the context of the standard resulting from ED 10. I think it would be more efficient and cleaner to debate the treatment of SPEs in this context of the new IASB standard than to bring in ideas from a SIC that is expected to be withdrawn within the next year.
- I accept that this leaves a gap in the suite of IPSASs compared to existing IFRSs. However, this is a pre-existing gap which is not really linked to ED 38. It is linked more to IPSAS 6 which does not refer to the SIC either. If the gap remains, entities applying IPSASs would need to use their judgement about the relevance of SIC-12, as they currently have to for other gaps in the suite of IPSASs.

If you agree with my comments you could note this difference in the Basis for Conclusions and explain why there is a difference.

Stuart Barr (05)

Yes, I concur with the approach

Peter Batten/Jim Paul (06)

We disagree with including guidance drawn from SIC-12 to provide guidance on consolidation of SPEs. We note that including such guidance should help readers applying paragraphs AG59 and AG60 (where they mention SPEs). However, we think this advantage is outweighed by the disadvantages of including such guidance. The main disadvantages are that:

- (a) SIC-12 relates to IAS 27, not IAS 39. Therefore, as you noted, IPSASB-equivalent guidance should relate primarily to IPSAS 6; and
- (b) IPSAS 6 differs in some respects from IAS 27—therefore, it is possible that a comprehensive and considered review of SIC-12 would result in IPSASB differences from that Interpretation.

In addition, we note that the Appendix to SIC-12 has not been included in the draft guidance. An equivalent to that Appendix would need to be modified for the different guidance on control in IPSAS 6 (vis-à-vis IAS 27), but providing specific guidance on indicators of control of an SPE would seem very useful for those applying IPSASs.

Therefore, we think SIC-12 should be addressed in a separate project.

You noted that there is no precedent in IPSASs for referring to ‘the international or national interpretation dealing with consolidation of special purpose entities’. Nevertheless, because IFRSs include SICs, we think there should not be a problem with making such a reference.

John Verrinder (07)

On SIC 12, it is extremely important that this goes into the IPSAS somewhere as soon as possible. We have seen numerous SPEs set up or sponsored by government during the ongoing financial turmoil. However I wonder if here is the right place to do it? Whilst SPEs are almost exclusively financial vehicles, rules for their consolidation do fall more naturally in IPSAS6. Is there a case for some kind of quick "consequential amendment" to IPSAS6, with a cross-reference here?

Key Issue (b) – Use of the term “interest income” or “interest revenue”

The Board is requested **to indicate** whether the term “interest income” or “interest revenue” should be used in ED 38 and existing IPSASs.

Rick Neville (01)

Interest revenue.

Andreas Bergmann (02)

We prefer the term "interest revenue" in the public sector context, although the plain English term is perhaps "interest income".

However, we see only very few circumstances where the term "income" would be adequate in a public sector.

Frans van Schaik (03)

We think we should stick with our statement in IPSAS 9 that there is no concept of 'interest income' in the public sector. We think that the future IPSAS 5 Borrowing Costs and ED 38 should refer to interest revenue.

Ken Warren (Joanne Scott) (04)

I do not think that it is critical for this ED which term is used as long as there is a consistent policy within IPSASs as a whole. However, a consistent policy would not necessarily mean using either term: it could mean adopting IASB terminology within each standard.

If memory serves me right, the reason for not distinguishing between revenue and other income when IPSASs were first developed was because of difficulties in distinguishing between the ordinary and other activities of a public sector entity as per the IASB definition of revenue.

If the Board wished to debate the topic of which term should be used throughout the suite of IPSASs my preference would be to use the same terms as in each equivalent IASB standard. The issue of how to distinguish between ordinary activities versus other activities in a public sector context would possibly require some additional guidance. This seems to be an issue that would be best considered within the context of the Conceptual Framework.

I note that the IASB uses both terms in different contexts and that there has been some debate over the correct way of referring to interest. For example:

- The following standards use the term interest revenue: IAS 12, IAS 16, IAS 18, IAS 38, IAS 40, IFRS 8. Often these references are to interest revenue in the context of deferred settlement of consideration in a transaction.
- The following standards use the term interest income: IAS 12, IAS 29, IAS 39, IFRS 7.
- The proposed IASB taxonomy currently open for comment uses both terms. It shows revenue from interest as a sub category of revenue. It also refers to interest income from financial assets or financial liabilities not at fair value through profit or loss.
- IFRIC staff commented in September 2006 that, for entities engaged in money-lending businesses, interest income may be classified as revenue.

I note that IPSAS 5 and ED 35 don't actually use the term "interest income", although they do use the term income. I'm not sure why this difference in terminology exists.

Stuart Barr (05)

I agree with the replacement of the term “income” with “revenue” to align the Standard with the terminology of IPSAS 9.

Peter Batten/Jim Paul (06)

We agree with amending ‘income’ to ‘revenue’, for consistency with the approach used in other IPSASs.

John Verrinder (07)

I prefer "interest revenue", however I'm not clear that it's so important.

Key Issue (c) – Transitional provisions

The Board is requested to **consider** the transitional provisions proposed in paragraphs 112 to 122 and:

- (a) **Confirm** whether they are appropriate for entities applying accrual accounting for the first time as well as those entities that are applying this Standard for the first time but already apply accrual accounting (including those that may have applied IAS 39);
- (b) **Consider** whether paragraph 29 from IFRS 1 should be included in the transitional provisions of ED 38 and **give** a direction; and.
- (c) **Consider** whether any additional areas require transitional provisions.

Rick Neville (01)

- (a) Yes
- (b) Yes
- (c) No

Andreas Bergmann (02)

Sorry, but we don't understand the rationale of IFRS 1.29. We do not understand why such instruments should not be reflected in the opening balance sheet. May be we are missing something. If not we would prefer not to include an element of an IFRS which is not included in this project. We also do not see any other transitional provisions which should be included.

Frans van Schaik (03)

- We confirm that the transitional provisions are appropriate for entities applying accrual accounting for the first time as well as those entities that are applying this Standard for the first time but already apply accrual accounting.

- We consider the inclusion of paragraph 29 from IFRS 1 as superfluous, since IFRS 1 is applicable anyway through the hierarchy in IPSAS 3.
- We are not aware of any additional areas requiring transitional provisions.

Ken Warren (Joanne Scott) (04)

No comment.

Stuart Barr (05)

I support including paragraph 29 from IFRS 1 within ED 38. I am not aware of any need to provide additional relief in the transitional provisions noted above.

Peter Batten/Jim Paul (06)

Key Issue (d)-Other Issues

Staff noted minor wording differences between paragraphs 80 and 87 (paragraphs 73 and 80 of IAS 39) in the way that they refer to “segments”. Paragraph 80 was amended by the IASB’s 2008 Improvements Project; references to “segment” were deleted. Paragraph 87 is however similar, but no amendments were proposed to paragraph 87 in the Improvements Project.

Staff will liaise with the IASB on this issue and, if necessary, request the Board’s input on the drafting of these paragraphs

Staff Note: IASB contacted on December 31 2008. Response acknowledged on January 5 2008. No further response at time of finalizing agenda item. Staff will communicate further with IASB Staff.

Ken Warren (Joanne Scott) (04)

Noted. No comment.

Stuart Barr (005)

I support the staff in liaising with the IASB on this issue.

Peter Batten/Jim Paul (06)

We think the draft ED should be consistent with IAS 39 in relation to the mentioning of segments (i.e., deleted from paragraph 80 and retained in paragraph 87).

Key Issue (e) Adaptation of the existing Application Guidance

Members are **requested** to review the existing Application Guidance and identify whether any further modifications are required based on experiences in members' individual countries.

Rick Neville (01)

Nil

Andreas Bergmann (02)

We generally agree with the proposed AG. There are only two notable exceptions:

- LIBOR (as discussed below in KI f), we'd prefer a principle based terminology)

- Other legal instruments with same economic substance like contracts, as the public sector in Napoleonic/Weberean bureaucracy is not allowed to contract but issues orders. The economic effect is exactly the same, that's why we are of the view such "other legal instruments with the same economic substance as contracts" need to be scoped in (for the entire ED, of course). We would suggest introducing an additional AG 1 or 2 (before the first sub-title) which scopes such instruments in.

There is a similar paragraph in AG 6, however only referring to Insurance Contracts, which is too limited.

Further clarification on legal instruments:

I'm of the view that we should stick to exchange transactions which result in financial assets or liabilities. However, in the continental European system many such transactions - if involving governments - are not made through contracts but through "orders" (in German: Verfügung). Typically the bidding is exactly the same as for a contract, but once the government has selected the counter party, it issues an order based on the terms in the counter party's bidding. Thus effectively there is an exchange transaction which could also be captured in a contract. The only difference is that that legal position of the private sector counter-party is different if they are ordered than if they sign a contract. Usually they cannot take the case to a regular, independent court but have to appeal to the superior body of the one ordering in case of any dispute. Obviously also the usual contract fine print of private sector suppliers are waived and replaced by the government fine print. But the law, of course, requires the order to be based on a bid, therefore achieving the same economic (not legal) result as a contract.

From the terms you provide in your e-mail, I'm of the view that "binding arrangement" captures the substance pretty well, although it's not because the entity has no power to contract in its own name, but because the law requires to issue orders rather sign contract but still, yes, in its own name.

Applies equally to ED 37.

Frans van Schaik (03)

We have not identified the need for any further modifications.

Ken Warren (Joanne Scott) (04)

No comment.

Stuart Barr (05)

AG6 states that “If the financial guarantee contract was issued to an unrelated party in a stand-alone arm’s length transaction, its fair value at inception is likely to equal the premium received, unless there is evidence to the contrary”.

This statement may not be appropriate in a government environment as government entities may issue guarantees to unrelated parties in stand-alone arm’s length transactions for premiums that do not represent a guarantee’s fair value.

A more appropriate statement could be: “If the financial guarantee contract was issued to an unrelated party in a stand-alone arm’s length transaction, its fair value at inception may not equal the premium received as guarantees may be issued to achieve particular policy objectives of governments”.

I suggest that this point be given due consideration when guidance on financial guarantees is included.

In addition, consider the appropriateness of including an example involving insurance contracts in AG11(b) when such contracts seem to be excluded from the standard in scope section 2e.

Peter Batten/Jim Paul (06)

These are of course not unique to the public sector, for example many parent entities in the private sector have given guarantees for their subsidiaries on this basis. The accounting that you have outlined is conceptually right, but often will be immaterial and not worth doing. The big 4 advise that In many cases the fair value can be considered close to zero. Remember that the book-keeping is a just a timing impact on the operating statement, a non cash expense on issue offset by non-cash revenue amortised over the relevant period. Probably all immaterial.

What is important is the disclosure of the commitment and its risks. In the PS disclosure that the guarantee was given for nil or nominal consideration is probably also important.

Key Issue (f) Use of the term LIBOR

The Board is requested to:

- (a) **Consider** if the use of the term LIBOR is inappropriate in EDs 37 – 39; and if yes
- (b) **Consider** if a generic term exists that will denote “LIBOR” and can be used consistently throughout ED 37, 38 and 39.

Rick Neville (01)

- (a) Yes, it is inappropriate in a public sector environment
- (b) Interbank rate is acceptable

Andreas Bergmann (02)

Based on the most recent events we have strong doubts that any interbank rate is adequate, certainly for the public sector. As far as we know the main idea of IASB using LIBOR was to use a market with high liquidity. This is clearly no longer the case for any interbank market.

LIBOR was very illiquid throughout most of the second half of 2008, and so were any other interbank markets. Even now liquidity is still rather limited - even the individual mortgage market is more liquid ... But in the public sector we have financial market which was very liquid throughout the financial crisis: the one of government issued financial instruments (not necessarily bonds, also notes, bills or anything else issued by governments). Therefore we would recommend not to refer to potentially illiquid markets at all. In principle based world we would prefer to use a term like "interest rates in a highly liquid financial market".

There is a second issue with LIBOR, which would also be solved like this. LIBOR (also Euribor) are NOT market data, i.e. not based on real transactions. LIBOR is based on a telephone interview with about a dozen major banks. The information the banks provide is not necessarily based on transactions (unlike quotes of traded treasury instruments). This is another reason why LIBOR has lost a lot of reputation over time. But again, a principle based terminology would keep us out of all this discussion.

Frans van Schaik (03)

- (a) We think the use of LIBOR in the Illustrative Examples and Implementation Guidance is fine. These are just examples, after all. LIBOR is not used in the body of the standards. The argument put forward that LIBOR is not relevant to all countries around the world that apply IPSASs is true for IFRS as well. So, there is no need to deviate from IFRS in our view.
- (b) We are not aware of a generic term that might be used instead of LIBOR. In the examples, the percentage has to be uniquely identifiable.

Ken Warren (Joanne Scott) (04)

I support the generalisation of the term LIBOR to avoid entities thinking that they are locked into the London rate. I note that many jurisdictions use some form of "interbank offered rate". We suggest that the term "offered" be included as this is in common usage, using LIBOR and Euribor as examples.

Stuart Barr (05)

The term LIBOR may be inappropriate for some entities following public sector accounting standards. LIBOR could be replaced by the more generic term "interbank rate.

Peter Batten/Jim Paul (06)

We support retaining references to LIBOR, provided it is clearly an example of a rate (as occurs in paragraph AG22) and not an implied requirement. Referring to a specific rate like LIBOR also gives rise to issues in private sector international accounting standards: we are unaware of reasons why this should be a greater issue for public sector international accounting standards

John Verrinder (07)

It's better to use a generic phrase "inter-bank rate". Though perhaps saying that the rate used should be a recognised rate available publicly (rather than some made-up rate) is a useful safeguard?

Key Issue (g) Concessionary Loans

The Board is requested **review** the section on concessionary loans and specifically comment on whether:

- (a) The explanation of a concessionary loan is appropriate;
- (b) The proposed accounting treatment is appropriate;
- (c) The application guidance is sufficient;
- (d) The consequential amendments to IPSAS 23 along with the illustrative example is appropriate; and
- (e) The examples included in ED 38 are appropriate and useful.

Rick Neville (01)

- (a) Yes
- (b) Yes
- (c) Yes
- (d) Yes
- (e) Yes

Andreas Bergmann (02)

We've reviewed the staff proposal and agree.

Frans van Schaik (03)

We suggest the following changes to IE39:

- 1) Table 1 and 3 show the years as rows, while table 2 shows the years as columns. We think all tables should be consistent in this and we prefer the layout of table 2, since years as columns) is quite common in financial statements.
- 2) The title of table 3 should be changed from 'Calculation of loan balance and interest using the effect interest method:' into 'Calculation of loan balance and interest

using the effective interest method.’ Furthermore, it might be helpful to the reader to mention that the effective interest rate in this example is 10%.

- 3) In table 3, the amount in the first column, first row should be changed from 4,215,540 into 4,215,450.
- 4) In table 3, the amount in the column ‘Interest accrual’, in the row Year 4 should be changed from 325,826 into 325,827.
- 5) In table 3, the amount in the last column, last row should be changed from 2,100,000 into ‘-’ (a dash).

Ken Warren (Joanne Scott) (04)

(a) The explanation of a concessionary loan is appropriate

I think the description in AG 90 is better than the proposed amendment to IPSAS 23. The wording is slightly different. Flexible repayment terms, the possibility of part or all of the loan or the interest being waived and lower than commercial rates are all possible – they don’t necessarily go together.

I don’t think we should limit the discussion of concessionary loans to those for specific public policy purposes. You could say they are “often” used to achieve a public policy purpose. It is possible to have concessionary loans for various reasons – not all will be related to a specific public policy. For example, a government may lend money to a non-for-profit entity with the intention that the loan be repaid in full at commercial rates. However, the government may subsequently write off part of the loan because the entity has got into financial difficulties. In such cases the government may agree that the not-for-profit entity is doing good works but it probably would not have agreed to give them the money up front nor would it necessarily have undertaken those activities itself.

(b) The proposed accounting treatment is appropriate

Mostly - Yes. Some concerns about AG94(a). I have not convinced myself that it will always be non-exchange revenue.

(c) The application guidance is sufficient

Yes.

(d) The consequential amendments to IPSAS 23 along with the illustrative example is appropriate

I think the proposed paragraph 105C (to be inserted in IPSAS 23) needs to be more specific and say that the write down is revenue unless there is a liability, in which case revenue is recognised as and when it satisfies the conditions of the loan agreement. However, I don’t really see the point of separating out a liability for services to be performed from the loan itself.

(e) *The examples included in ED 38 are appropriate and useful*

Yes.

Stuart Barr (05)

- a) I do not think that the explanation of a concessionary loan is appropriate. AG90 states that “Concessionary loans are loans granted to or received by an entity in terms of specific public policy”. This definition of a concessionary loan would include most loans issued by a government entity, whether they contain concessionary terms or not.

The concept of concessionary terms is demonstrated in Illustrative Examples paragraphs IE37 to IE39 where the proceeds of the loan exceed the present value of the contractual repayments because the loan will be repaid at less than the current market interest rate. I suggest the AG90 explanation of a concessionary loan be revised to include the concept of concessionary terms.

- (b) I agree with the proposed accounting treatment.
- (c) I agree that the application guidance is sufficient.
- (d) I suggest that the consequential amendments to IPSAS 23 be consistent with my comment in (a) above.
- (e) The examples included in ED 38 are appropriate and useful.

Peter Batten/Jim Paul (06)

We are not familiar with ‘concessionary’ in relation to loans. Our preferred term is ‘concessional’. In respect of your questions, we think:

- The explanation of a concessionary loan is appropriate;
- The proposed accounting treatment is appropriate;
- The application guidance is sufficient;
- The consequential amendments to IPSAS 23 along with the illustrative example are generally appropriate (our specific comments are included within the comments below); and

The examples in ED 38 are appropriate and useful.

John Verrinder (07)

On concessionary loans (various places in the text), it's absolutely right to address the issue. We have the same type of discussion in statistics. At present we record no element of concessionary expenditure for a lower than market interest rate. Partly this is because of practical questions - what is a market interest rate, etc. But there is also a difficulty to get our accounts to reconcile because there is no observable cash element (this is an opportunity cost to government). Put simply, if government is recorded as giving a

benefit to households, this should lead to either higher net assets in household balance sheets, or to a resource that households use to pay higher interest (imputed interest, on top of the actual cash interest - possibly zero - that is paid). Some might argue that the lower interest receipts for government mean that it has, inter-alia, a higher level of debt and is therefore already "paying" for the concessional loan.

All this said, we are discussing next week with countries in one of our working groups a case where government sells a loan book of (high quality) concessionary loans at below their nominal (redemption) value. It might be appropriate to book a government expenditure at that point.

Key Issue (h) Financial guarantees at nil or nominal consideration

The Board is requested **review** this section on financial guarantees at nil or nominal consideration and specifically **comment** on whether:

- (a) The approach is appropriate;
- (b) Fee income should be recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9 on a straight line basis over the life of the guarantee;
- (c) Any change should be made to paragraph 43 of ED 38.

Rick Neville (01)

- (a) Yes
- (b) Yes
- (c) No

Andreas Bergmann (02)

Financial guarantees at no consideration are very common in Switzerland, especially on the sub-national levels of government. We are of the view that the proposed treatment is adequate, although we will usually end up in a situation in which no fair value can be determined (that's why the government and not somebody else gives the guarantee!). We would recognize fee income in accordance with IPSAS 9 on a straight line basis.

However, we disagree with the limitation to contractual guarantees, for reasons discussed in KI e). We would suggest including such legal forms in the AG.

Frans van Schaik (03)

1. Yes, the approach is appropriate
2. We agree that fee income should be recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9. We think a reference to IPSAS 9 is sufficient. IPSAS 9, rather than ED 38, should indicate whether fee income recognition should be on a straight line basis over the life of the guarantee.
3. No changes to paragraph 43 of ED 38.

Ken Warren (Joanne Scott) (04)

No comment on proposals except to suggest that care be taken to exclude guarantees related to employment conditions (consistent with paragraph 2(b)(c)). Such guarantees should not be subject to any special treatment and any costs/revenues should be treated as an employment expense.

Stuart Barr (05)

- a) The December 22, 2008 memo states that “It is extremely unlikely that a present obligation will arise at initial recognition” (last sentence of paragraph 1 on page 8 of 10). This statement may not hold true in some situations as governments may choose to act as guarantors in circumstances where they could have a present obligation resulting from a past event. Accordingly, I suggest removing or revising that sentence.
- (b) I believe that fee income should be recognized in a manner appropriate to the nature of the guarantee which may be a straight-line basis over the life of the guarantee. I do not support the amount of the fee being offset against the carrying amount of the financial guarantee contract at initial recognition. Accounting for such items at gross rather than net amounts generally results in more transparent financial reporting.
- (d) I am not aware of any need to provide additional changes to paragraph 43 of ED37.

Peter Batten/Jim Paul (06)

In relation to financial guarantees provided for no or nominal consideration, our initial thoughts are that:

- The approach discussed is appropriate, with one important exception. We disagree with the view (on page 8, in first paragraph, last sentence) that it is extremely unlikely that a present obligation will arise at initial recognition. We think the guarantor always incurs a stand-ready obligation—the past event is the granting of the guarantee. The measurement of that obligation will depend on the probability of the outflow occurring;
- We agree with recognising fee income in accordance with IPSAS 9. This would often be on a straight-line basis. However, under paragraph 24 of IPSAS 9, it would not necessarily be on a straight-line basis. If the pattern of risk were uneven over the term of the guarantee and risk weightings could be estimated reliably, the pattern of fee income recognition should vary accordingly;
- We struggle to understand why any fee should be offset against the financial guarantee obligation at initial recognition. Having received a fee already from the guaranteed party, there seems no prospect of net settlement. IAS 32.42(b) requires net settlement or simultaneous realisation of the asset and settlement of the liability in order for a financial asset and financial liability to qualify for offsetting. We think the same principles should apply to financial guarantee contracts;
- Recognition of income from performing under the guarantee should neither be dependent on the existence of a fee nor the amount of any fee. It arises from the

progressive extinguishment of the stand-ready obligation of the guarantor, which is measured in the manner described on page 7 of your memorandum. The amount of any fee income could be offset against the amount of expense recognised on initial recognition of the financial guarantee liability;

- Depending on the nature of the party whose debts are guaranteed against default, the fair value of the guarantee might vary considerably. For example, the risk of default by a state government in respect of a debt guaranteed by its national government might be quite low. However, if financial guarantees are granted to private sector entities, the risk might be quite considerable and the fair value of the guarantee commensurately greater; and
- We do not see a need to amend paragraph 43 of ED 38.

John Verrinder (07)

Financial guarantees cause us a lot of headaches in statistics as well. I mentioned a few issues in comments on the ED on disclosure - for a guarantee scheme, providing a number of similar guarantees and with a track record of performance, there is a chance at valuation. But the most challenging (and common) case is where government provides a one-off guarantee for free to a particular entity, often a public corporation. There's nothing in the market to compare it with, and trying to work out what the interest rate would have been without the guarantee is very tricky.

Until now in statistics we just treat these guarantees as contingent - not recorded at all in the accounts until there is a call. We are just in the process of discussing under what circumstances we might record a guarantee before it is actually called - so far these boil down to:

- * where there is certainty of a call (eg. it is budgeted)
- * where there is a past pattern of calls (only works if partial calls are possible), and
- * where the guarantee is given to a body in "financial distress" [ie. the nature of the beneficiary is important]

It would be helpful to make clear what the 'default' recording for financial guarantees is. If you can't measure it reliably, presumably you put nothing in the accounts?

As a footnote, there has been a big debate in Europe on how to price guarantees to banks - lots of useful documents around on what formulae could be

Rosa Aldea-Busquests (08)

Firstly, we would like to comment on the key issue of financial guarantees provided at no or nominal consideration. As explained in our Note D 57032 from 24 July 2008 financial guarantees are of extreme importance to the business of the EC. To establish and encourage political actions, the BC uses different instruments, some of which are financial guarantee contracts at no consideration. Currently IAS 39 gives no guidance how to determine the fair value of a financial liability relating to a financial guarantee without premium. For this reason we would encourage the IPSASB to provide detailed guidance on this matter when creating a new standard on financial instruments.

In general we appreciate that your intended approach is in accordance with the “fair value hierarchy” in IAS 39.AG69-AG82. This is consistent from a systematic point of view. However, we are of the view that this should not be the only guidance (maybe through reference to these paragraphs) on the above mentioned matter. Some further clarification is needed. In most of our cases there is no active market for guarantee contracts directly equivalent to that entered into. Consequently, from the proposed “fair value hierarchy” only steps two (valuation technique) and three (accounting in accordance with IPSAS 19) are possible accounting treatments for our financial guarantee contracts. For this reason we need further clarification on:

- which valuation techniques can be used,
- illustrative examples using valuation techniques, and
- reasons for departing from step two and using the accounting treatment of IPSAS 19.

We would like to encourage IPSASB to mention explicitly cost/benefit and materiality aspects while creating the standard on financial instruments. We think that if the result of using a valuation technique is materially the same as or close to a provision in accordance with IPSAS 19 (= expected discounted cash outflows) it should be a reason for departing from step two mainly for cost/benefit reasons. The same reasoning applies to amounts which are not material in relation to the balance sheet sum of an entity. In this case we do not see the additional value of using rather complex valuation techniques. Both cost/benefit and materiality considerations are underlying principles of accounting under IPSAS and thus should be reflected in your intended approach.

We also would like to refer to our two “extreme cases” of which one is financial guarantees at no consideration with almost no losses and the second being financial guarantees at no consideration with significant losses (see Note D 57032 from 24 July 2008). For the first case the developed draft model of the Commission has been discussed during a meeting with John Stanford on 19 January 2009. The model is very complex and uses specific assumptions as there is no reliable information available. Specialised staff would be needed to follow up this valuation method. In this case we would then have to recognise initially losses (= fair value of the liability) and subsequently we would have to recognise revenue. This would not lead to a fair presentation for this kind of transaction in the given periods. In the second case we would have to use also a valuation technique and to recognise a financial liability which would not be materially different from the provision under IPSAS 19. These cases show clearly that the complex fair value determination using a valuation technique would outweigh the benefits and the fair presentation would not be improved.

Regarding the question about fee income, we would recommend recognising it in accordance with IPSAS 9 on a straight line basis over the life of the guarantee. The reason for this is that the income should be recognised in the periods in which the beneficiary has to perform the intended actions. This is consistent with the general principles of revenue recognition and with the offsetting principle. We do not see any public sector specific reason for departing from these principles. Secondly, with regard to concessionary loans, another key issue raised in your

memorandum, we would like to confirm that, in our opinion, the proposed accounting treatment is appropriate. It is in our view adequate to treat the difference between the market interest rate and the low interest rate as non-exchange gains or losses in accordance with IPSAS 23. The examples which were included in the illustrative examples of ED 38 are appropriate and useful but they could be more detailed (i.e. clear separation of the interest difference effect). In particular example 4 (payment of a concessionary loan) needs for a better understanding further clarification.

Key Issue (i) Appendices to ED 38

The Board is requested to consider the following and:

- (a) **Confirm** that the exclusion of IFRIC 11 on group treasury shares is appropriate; and
- (b) **Indicate** whether the example from IFRIC 16 included in Appendix C is appropriate, and if not suggest a more appropriate scenario for the public sector (if such a scenario exists).

Rick Neville (01)

- (a) Yes
- (b) Yes, it is appropriate

Andreas Bergmann (02)

The exclusion of IFRIC 11 is appropriate. As regards the authoritative example of a hedged foreign operation, we are not aware of any such operation. There are foreign operations of governments, but they are not hedged as they are usually part of their policy (either foreign affairs in general, or specialised entities). Therefore we think we could simplify the matter by not including this interpretation (it's only an interpretation). Clarification (IFRIC 11).

Frans van Schaik (03)

The memo states that IFRIC has issued three Interpretations relating to financial instruments: IFRIC 9, 11 and 16. We think, however, there are more, although they may not be relevant for the public sector, e.g. IFRIC 2.

- (a) We agree with the exclusion of IFRIC 11 because of its irrelevance to the public sector. We think that IFRIC 11 is an interpretation of IFRS 2 Share-based Payment, rather than IAS 39.
- (b) We think the example in IFRIC 16 'Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation' is appropriate. Governments owning a Sovereign Wealth Fund (SWF) typically have them.

Ken Warren (Joanne Scott) (04)

- (a) No comment.
- (b) No comment

Stuart Barr (05)

- (a) I am not aware of any circumstances in the public sector where guidance on group treasury shares would be necessary.
- (b) I am not aware of any examples in practice of Hedges of a Net Investment in Foreign Operations in a government reporting context.

Peter Batten/Jim Paul (06)

In regard to key issue (i) my first reaction to the proposed omission of IFRIC 11 was to concur. However, I do have a general potential concern with the omission of material on the basis that it will not be relevant in the public sector. I have to presume that this standard will be used by a government when preparing its consolidated whole of government financial report. On the assumption that it will be consolidated on a line by line basis (as per Australia rather than Canada) there may need to be consolidated transactions from GBE that fall within the context of the omitted material. Telstra comes to mind as a possible example.

We think the example from IFRIC 16 is appropriately included in Appendix C.

Key Issue (j) Illustrative Examples & Guidance on Implementing ED 38

The Board is requested to **consider** whether all the existing examples from IAS 39 should be retained, or whether those that are not relevant to the public sector should be deleted.

Rick Neville (01)

Those examples that are not relevant should be deleted.

Andreas Bergmann (02)

We would prefer deleting the non relevant examples. This is certainly example 2. However, we are also uncomfortable with example 1, not because it is not relevant, but because it's based on the concept of interim (monthly or quarterly) reporting which is not at all shared in IPSAS 1.

Frans van Schaik (03)

We think that examples that are clearly irrelevant to the public sector should be deleted. The memo states 'These examples have been identified', but we were unable to find where these are identified. In fact, IAS 39 contains only one Illustrative Example. The memo refers to Implementation Guidance. To us this is somewhat confusing, since the ED refers to either Application Guidance or Guidance on Implementing IPSAS XX.

Stuart Barr (05)

I am not aware of any examples from IAS 39 which are conclusively not relevant to the public sector. To the extent staff finds such examples, I agree they should be deleted.

Peter Batten/Jim Paul (06)

Other Comments

Ken Warren (Joanne Scott) (04)

Para 51	(a) Should the words “into or” also be deleted as per the IASB amendment – Reclassification of Financial Assets.
Para 110	(d) Check reference to reclassification adjustment in final sentence. This was not in IAS 39 prior to the IAS 1 changes.
AG 3 AG4	Do not consider that these paragraphs are required, given para 2 of the ED. If they are retained should they be in the standard itself rather than the Application Guidance?
AG 132	This should follow AG 133. If it is moved need to update cross references eg para AG151.
AG144	Not sure that the reference to interim statements should be deleted. If an entity prepares interim statements then shouldn't it apply this requirement?

John Verrinder (07)

On para 17 of the ED, just to say that we have exactly the same issue in statistics of distinguishing between a "debt cancellation"/"debt assumptions" [where government seeks to give a benefit, and we book expenditure] and a "write off" [where we don't book government expenditure]. In general treatment as write-offs are strictly for when the counterparties disappear - bankruptcy or death - and don't magically re-appear under another name. I don't think it's just about social benefits, more commonly it's about enterprises.

Peter Batten/Jim Paul (06)

Response to Question Asked in the Margin of the Draft Documents (additional to the questions addressed in the covering memorandum)

Draft Application Guidance

In relation to the question asked on page 43, we note that the reasons given in paragraph BC8 of IPSAS 25 do not seem to provide a precedent for removing the reference to some entities in some countries having a lower borrowing rate than the central government. Therefore, we do not suggest changing the wording in the IAS 39 Application Guidance on this matter.

Other Concerns With, and Comments On, the Draft ED

Significant Concerns

Technical Matters of Disagreement or Uncertainty

Measurement basis of, and applicable IPSAS for, financial instruments arising from non-exchange transactions

Paragraph 2(j) of the draft ED scopes out the initial recognition and measurement of rights and obligations arising from non-exchange revenue transactions, to which IPSAS 23 applies. Our concerns with this approach are that:

- (a) IPSAS 23 specifies different measurement bases for assets and liabilities upon initial recognition (see below) than IAS 39 specifies upon initial and subsequent recognition of financial assets and financial liabilities; and
- (b) this approach is inconsistent with that proposed in the draft ED of an IPSAS on Agriculture (where the measurement of non-exchange transactions relating to biological assets and agricultural produce is scoped out of IPSAS 23 so that a consistent measurement basis can apply to the assets upon initial recognition and in subsequent recognition).

In relation to (a), it should be noted that whilst paragraph 42 of IPSAS 23 requires an asset acquired through a non-exchange transaction to initially be measured at its fair value as at the date of acquisition, paragraph 43 of IAS 39 (paragraph 43 of the draft ED) requires financial assets not at fair value through profit or loss (surplus or deficit) to initially be measured at fair value plus transaction costs that are directly attributable to the acquisition of the financial asset. Although many non-exchange transactions giving rise to financial assets would not involve such transaction costs, we do not think it should (implicitly) be assumed that non-exchange transactions giving rise to financial assets would never give rise to material transaction costs.

Also, whilst paragraph 57 of IPSAS 23 requires a liability incurred through a non-exchange transaction to initially be measured at the best estimate of the amount required to settle the present obligation at the reporting date (the measurement basis for provisions in IPSAS 19), paragraph 43 of IAS 39 (paragraph 43 of the draft ED) requires financial liabilities not at fair value through profit or loss (surplus or deficit) to initially be measured at fair value plus transaction costs that are directly attributable to the issue of the financial liability. Measurements made under IPSAS 19 are not necessarily fair value measurements.

We recommend scoping the initial measurement of financial assets and financial liabilities out of IPSAS 23, consistent with the approach taken in the draft IPSASB ED on Agriculture.

Other Technical Concerns and Significant Editorial Comments

On the basis that we understand the intention is to publish the ED only as clean text, we have not noted apparent glitches in the marking up of the IFRS text. However, instances we found where unamended text is inconsistent with the IFRS text are noted below.

Paragraph	Comment
28	We think the statement in the last sentence only holds true in an exchange transaction, because it refers to the consideration received from the transferee.
39	Whilst we agree with other references to derecognition of financial liabilities when the liabilities are waived, we disagree with inserting ‘waived’ in paragraph 39. This is because we think ‘cancelled’ encompasses ‘waived’.
41	In relation to the last line, we think the statement should be strengthened. Specifically, we think ‘an entity considers IPSAS 23’ should be amended to ‘an entity applies IPSAS 23’.
51(a)	Based on our analysis of the recent amendments to IAS 39, we think the text presented as the current text of IAS 39 is incorrect. Specifically, we think that, where it presents the current text as ‘Shall not reclassify a financial instrument into or out of the fair value through profit or loss category ...’, it should have presented it as ‘Shall not reclassify a derivative out of the fair value through profit or loss category ...’. Therefore, we recommend amending the proposed ‘into or out of the fair value through surplus or deficit category’ to ‘out of the fair value through surplus or deficit category’.
117	<p>We disagree with ‘another basis of accounting’ in the second sentence, because those words connote either cash vs accrual basis (or a modification of either) or a measurement basis, whereas the context here is derecognition. We think this sentence should be amended to:</p> <p>‘If, as a result of a transaction that occurred before the adoption of this Standard, an entity derecognized financial assets under a relevant international or national accounting standard dealing with the recognition and measurement of financial instruments, and those assets would not have been derecognized under this Standard, it shall not recognize those assets.’</p>
AG6	<p>In the deleted last paragraph within paragraph AG6, we think the first sentence need not have been deleted (as proposed in the draft ED), and should be modified for a public sector context. Our suggested modified wording is:</p> <p>‘Assertions that an issuer regards contracts as insurance contracts are typically found throughout the issuer’s communications with beneficiaries and regulators, contracts, contract documentation and financial statements.’</p>
AG52	In the last question in the column at the left, the answers have been transposed (compared with the IAS 39 AG flowchart). That is, in respect

Paragraph	Comment
flowchart	<p>of the question ‘Has the entity retained control of the asset?’ [paragraph 20(c)]’, the answer ‘Yes’ should be directly beneath it, and the answer ‘No’ should be at the right of it (leading to the ‘Derecognise’ box).</p> <p>In the right-hand column, for consistency with the IAS 39 flowchart, ‘the asset’ should be inserted in each box after ‘Derecognise’ or ‘recognise’ (as applicable). In addition, ‘Derecognise’ should be ‘Derecognize’ and ‘recognise’ should be ‘recognize’.</p>
AG106	<p>We consider that the statement in the fourth sentence (that the best evidence of the fair value of a financial instrument at initial recognition is the transaction price) holds true only for exchange transactions. Accordingly, we suggest inserting the following (or similar) words after ‘initial recognition’:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">‘, when that financial instrument was originated or transferred in an exchange transaction,’.</p>
Appendices	<p>We found the numbering scheme for the paragraphs in the Appendices to be potentially confusing, because the same numbers appear in the body of the ED. This is particularly an issue when cross-references are made to other paragraphs within an Appendix (e.g., the cross-references to ‘paragraph 19’ in paragraphs 20 and 22 of Appendix C, which could be misconstrued as references to paragraph 19 of the draft ED proper). We suggest numbering each paragraph within an Appendix with the letter of that Appendix (e.g., A1, B1, etc.).</p>
Amendments to other IPSASs	<p>In paragraph A1, the text presented as the current text of IPSAS 23 is not correctly reproduced. It would appear to include the South African equivalent wording. In particular:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the second sentence of ‘paragraph 4’, instead of ‘the Standard of GRAP on <i>Revenue from Exchange Transactions</i>’, it should say ‘IPSAS 9, “Revenue from Exchange Transactions” ’. • In the third sentence of ‘paragraph 4’, before the first mention of ‘entities’, it should include ‘public sector’. • In the third sentence of ‘paragraph 4’, instead of ‘the majority of revenue of entities’, it should say ‘the majority of revenue of governments and other public sector entities’. <p>(Also, in the first sentence of ‘paragraph 4’, there is a large space between ‘non-exchange’ and ‘transactions’.)</p>
Amendments to other IPSASs	<p>In paragraph A2, the first new sentence in ‘paragraph 10’ refers to ‘R6 million’. We suggest using ‘CU’ or a more widely referred-to specific currency, such as \$.</p> <p>The last sentence of ‘paragraph 10’ in paragraph A2 should refer to the</p>

Paragraph	Comment
	complement of the items mentioned in the penultimate sentence. However, it refers to contractual capital and interest payments, which encompass the off-market portion of the interest payments mentioned in the penultimate sentence. We think the subject of the last sentence should be the principal and at-market interest payments.
Amendments to other IPSASs	In paragraph A4, where proposed paragraph 105C refers to ‘conditions’ in the first sentence, we think it should refer to the more specific term ‘conditions on transferred assets’. The purpose of this suggested amendment is to limit liability recognition to circumstances in which the principles in IPSAS 23 are met (rather than whenever conditions in their everyday meaning exist).
Amendments to other IPSASs	In paragraph A5, in paragraph (e), we suggest amending ‘that are subject to conditions’ to ‘that result from conditions on transferred assets’.
Amendments to other IPSASs	In paragraph A6, in the first bullet point within proposed paragraph IG54, we suggest adding ‘provided that the schools are built’. This is because repayment of the CU1 million would (implicitly in the following analysis and proposed journal entries) be required if the schools weren’t built. This is reflected in the deferral of the CU1 million in the amount of CU1,784,550.

Rosa Aldea Busquests (08)

Thirdly, we would like to remind you that the transactions that we call “Pre-financing” do not fulfil the definition of a financial instrument in IAS 32.11 and can therefore not be subsumed under sovereign contractual financial instruments. They should be treated as prepaid expenses. For detailed information about pre-financing we refer to our Note D 61346 from 10 December 2008. As we do not see a public sector specific reason for departing from the definition in IAS 32 and ED 37, so we strongly recommend not including pre-financing under the scope of ED 37/38.

*Proposed International Public Sector Accounting
Standard*

Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement

International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board
International Federation of Accountants
545 Fifth Avenue, 14th Floor
New York, New York 10017 USA

This International Public Sector Accounting Standard was prepared by the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board (IPSASB), an independent standard-setting body within the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC). The objective of the IPSASB is to serve the public interest by developing high quality accounting standards for use by public sector entities around the world in the preparation of general purpose financial statements. This will enhance the quality and transparency of public sector financial reporting and strengthen public confidence in public sector financial management. This publication may be downloaded free-of-charge from the IFAC website: <http://www.ifac.org>. The approved text is published in the English language. The mission of IFAC is to serve the public interest, strengthen the worldwide accountancy profession and contribute to the development of strong international economies by establishing and promoting adherence to high-quality professional standards, furthering the international convergence of such standards and speaking out on public interest issues where the profession's expertise is most relevant.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

This International Public Sector Accounting Standard is drawn primarily from International Accounting Standard (IAS) 392, "Financial Instruments: Recognition and MeasurementPresentation", IFRIC 9 "Reassessment of Embedded Derivatives" and IFRIC 16 "Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation" published by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB). Extracts from IAS 392, IFRIC 9 and IFRIC 11 are reproduced in this publication of the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board of the International Federation of Accountants with the permission of the International Accounting Standards Committee Foundation (IASCF).

The approved text of International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) is that published by the IASB in the English language, and copies may be obtained directly from IASB Publications Department, 30 Cannon Street, London EC4M 6XH, United Kingdom.

E-mail: publications@iasb.org

Internet: <http://www.iasb.org>

IFRSs, IASs, Exposure Drafts and other publications of the IASB are copyright of the IASCF.

"IFRS," "IAS," "IASB," "IASCF," "International Accounting Standards" and "International Financial Reporting Standards", are trademarks of the IASCF and should not be used without the approval of the IASCF.

Copyright © ~~March 2009~~~~Month Year~~ by the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC). All rights reserved. Permission is granted to make copies of this work provided that such copies are for use in academic classrooms or for personal use and are not sold or disseminated and provided that each copy bears the following credit line: "Copyright © ~~March 2009~~~~Month Year~~ by the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC). All rights reserved. Used with permission of IFAC. Contact permissions@ifac.org for permission to reproduce, store or transmit this document." Otherwise, written permission from IFAC is required to reproduce, store or transmit, or to make other similar uses of, this document, except as permitted by law. Contact permissions@ifac.org.

OBJECTIVE

Governments around the world have been extensively involved in providing financial support to financial institutions and other entities affected by the current global economic crisis. The IPSASB identified the need to provide appropriate accounting guidance to governments and their entities for these specific transactions. Consequently, it agreed to issue a suite of standards providing principles for the recognition, measurement, presentation and disclosure of financial instruments which would be drawn primarily from IAS 32, “Financial Instruments: Presentation”, IAS 39 “Financial Instruments: recognition and Measurement” and IFRS 7, “Financial Instruments: Disclosure”.

This Exposure Draft is based on IAS 39, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” and addresses the recognition and measurement of financial instruments; ED 37 addresses the presentation of financial instruments and ED 39 the disclosure of financial instruments.

The IPSASB has not deviated from the principles in IAS 39, but has amended the text to align it with other IPSASs and has addressed public sector specific issues through Application Guidance. This approach is in line with the IPSASB’s strategy of converging IPSASs with IFRSs where appropriate. Differences between this Standard and IAS 39 are highlighted in the Comparison with IAS 39. This Exposure Draft also include relevant Interpretations issued by the International Financial Reporting Interpretations Committee (IFRIC) as Appendices to the Standard.

REQUEST FOR COMMENTS

The IPSASB invites comments on all the changes proposed in the Exposure Draft, and would particularly welcome comments to the question set out in the “Specific Matter for Comment” section. Comments are most helpful if they indicate the specific paragraph or group of paragraphs to which they relate, contain a clear rationale and, where applicable, provide a suggestion for alternative wording.

Specific Matter for Comment

The IPSASB would particularly value comments on the following:

[Question]

Do you agree with this proposal?

Please provide your rationale for agreeing or disagreeing with this proposal.

**PROPOSED INTERNATIONAL PUBLIC SECTOR ACCOUNTING
STANDARD ED 38IPSAS XX
FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT**

CONTENTS

	Paragraph
Introduction	IN1– IN14
Objective.....	1
Scope	— 2 -
	<u>86</u>
Definitions	— <u>97</u> -
	<u>810</u>
Embedded Derivatives	<u>119</u> -
	<u>153</u>
Recognition and Derecognition	1 <u>64</u> -
	<u>442</u>
Initial Recognition	<u>164</u>
Derecognition of a Financial Asset	<u>17-375</u>
Transfers that Qualify for Derecognition	2 <u>64</u> -
	<u>3028</u>
Transfers that do not Qualify for Derecognition	<u>3129</u>
Continuing Involvement in Transferred Assets	3 <u>20</u> -
	<u>375</u>
All Transfers	3 <u>86</u> -
	<u>397</u>
Regular Way Purchases and Sales of a Financial Asset	<u>4038</u>
Derecognition of a Financial Liability	<u>4139</u> -
	<u>442</u>
Measurement	4 <u>53</u> -
	<u>797</u>
Initial Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities	4 <u>53</u> -
	<u>464</u>
Subsequent Measurement of Financial Assets	4 <u>75</u> -
	<u>486</u>
Subsequent Measurement of Financial Liabilities	<u>497</u>
Fair Value Considerations	<u>5048</u> -
	<u>529</u>

Reclassifications	531 -
	631
Gains and Losses	642 -
	664
Impairment and Uncollectibility of Financial Assets	
	675
Financial Assets Carried at Amortized Cost	720 -
	742
Financial Assets Carried at Cost	
	753
Available-For-Sale Financial Assets	764 -
	787
Hedging	8078 -
	1131
Hedging Instruments	8179 -
	864
Qualifying Hedging Instruments	8179 -
	829
Designation of Hedging Instruments	831 -
	864
Hedged Items	875 -
	942
Qualifying Items	875 -
	897
Designation of Financial Items as Hedged Items	9088 -
	9189
Designation of Non-Financial Items as Hedged Items	
	929
Designation of Groups of Hedged Items	931 -
	942
Hedge Accounting	953 -
	1131
Fair Value Hedges	997 -
	1053
Cash Flow Hedges	1064 -
	1129
Hedges of a Net Investment	
	1131
Transitional Provisions	1142 -
	1242
Effective Date	1253 -
	1275
Amendments to other IPSASs	
Appendix A – Application Guidance	
Appendix B – Reassessment of Embedded Derivatives	
Appendix C – Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation	

Basis for Conclusions

Illustrative Examples

Implementation Guidance ~~Guidance on Implementing IPSAS XX, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”~~

Basis for Conclusions

Comparison with IAS 39

International Public Sector Accounting Standard XX, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” is set out in paragraphs 1–12⁷⁵. All the paragraphs have equal authority except as noted otherwise. IPSAS XX should be read in the context of its objective, the Basis for Conclusions, and the “Preface to International Public Sector Accounting Standards.” IPSAS 3, “Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors” provides a basis for selecting and applying accounting policies in the absence of explicit guidance.

Introduction

IN1. The Standard prescribes recognition and measurement principles for financial instruments and is based on IAS 39, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” (including final and proposed amendments published up to December, 31 2008~~in October 2008~~).

Scope

- IN2. Financial instruments are contractual arrangements that result in a financial asset for one entity and a financial liability or equity instrument in another. Rights and obligation arising out of non-contractual arrangements, such as through the exercise of legislation or through constructive obligations, are not financial instruments. The recognition and measurement of rights and obligations arising out of these transactions are addressed in other IPSASs.
- IN2. Many contracts meet the definition of a financial asset or a financial liability. Some of these are accounted for either by using other IPSASs, or accounted for partly using other IPSASs and partly using this Standard. Some examples include rights and obligations arising from employee benefits, lease receivables and finance lease payables.
- IN3. This Standard does not apply to insurance contracts, except financial guarantee contracts and embedded derivatives included in insurance contracts. An entity is however encouraged to apply this Standard to insurance contracts that involve the transfer of financial risk.
- IN4. Commitments to provide credit under specified conditions (loan commitments) are excluded from the scope of this Standard, with three exceptions. Notably, commitments to provide a loan at a below market interest rate are within the scope of this Standard. Most other loan commitments are accounted for using IPSAS 19, “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets”.
- IN5. This Standard applies to contracts for the purchase or sale of a non-financial item if the contract can be settled net in cash or another financial instrument, or by exchanging financial instruments. If the contracts were entered into and continue to be held for the purpose of the receipt or delivery of a non-financial item in accordance with an entity’s expected purchase, sale or usage requirements, this Standard does not apply.

Initial Recognition and Derecognition

- IN6. An entity recognizes financial assets and financial liabilities when it becomes a party to the contractual provisions of the instrument. Regular way purchases of financial assets can either be recognized using trade or settlement date accounting, while derivatives are always recognized using trade date accounting. Regular way purchases of financial assets are contracts that involve the exchange of the underlying instrument within a time frame established in the marketplace concerned.
- IN7. An entity derecognizes regular way purchases and sales of financial assets either using trade or settlement date accounting. Financial assets are derecognized using the following steps:
- Consolidate all controlled entities and special purpose entities;
 - Determine whether the derecognition principles are applied to an asset as a whole, or to a part of an asset;
 - Assess whether the rights to the cash flows have expired;
 - Assess whether the rights to receive the cash flows have been transferred to another party;
 - Assess whether an obligation has been assumed to pay the cash flows from the asset to another party;
 - Assess whether if the entity has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership to another party;
 - If substantially all the significant risks and rewards of ownership have not been transferred to another party, assess whether control has been retained.
- IN8. A financial liability is derecognized when the liability has been extinguished. An existing liability is derecognized and a new liability recognized when:

- An entity exchanges debt instruments with another entity, and the terms of the instruments are substantially different; and
- ~~When~~ The terms of an existing debt instrument are substantially modified.

When an entity has its debt waived, an entity considers the requirements in this Standard along with IPSAS 23, “Revenue from Non-Exchange Transactions (~~T~~axes and Transfers)” dealing with debt forgiveness.

Initial and Subsequent Measurement

IN9. Financial assets and financial liabilities are initially measured at fair value. Where an entity subsequently measures financial assets and financial liabilities at fair value, transaction costs are not included in the amount initially recognized.

IN10. An entity subsequently measures financial assets using four categories:

- Financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit – assets are subsequently measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit.
- Held-to-maturity investments – assets are measured at amortized cost less impairment losses. Impairment losses are recognized in surplus or deficit.
- Loans and receivables – assets are measured at amortized cost less impairment losses. Impairment losses are recognized in surplus or deficit.
- Available-for-sale financial assets – assets are measured at fair value, with changes in fair value recognized directly in net assets/equity. Impairment losses incurred on available-for-sale instruments are recognized in surplus or deficit and not in net assets/equity.

IN11. Investments in equity instruments ~~that~~^{which} cannot be measured at fair value because fair value cannot be determined reliably, are measured at cost less impairment losses.

IN12. Financial liabilities are measured at amortized cost, except for financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit, financial guarantees, loan commitments and liabilities arising from transfers of financial assets.

IN13. An entity may only reclassify financial instruments between the various categories under certain circumstances.

Hedge Accounting

IN14. This Standard prescribes principles for hedge accounting. Hedge accounting aims to reduce the volatility of an entity’s financial performance by offsetting gains and losses on certain instruments. An entity may elect to apply hedge accounting, but only if prescribed conditions are met. ~~The application of hedge accounting is optional, however hedge accounting may only be applied if prescribed conditions are met.~~

INTERNATIONAL PUBLIC SECTOR ACCOUNTING
STANDARD IPSAS ~~ED 38-XX~~
FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Objective

1. The objective of this Standard is to establish principles for recognizing and measuring financial assets, financial liabilities and some contracts to buy or sell non-financial items. Requirements for presenting information about financial instruments are in ED 37, ~~IAS 32~~ “Financial Instruments: Presentation”. Requirements for disclosing information about financial instruments are in ED 39, ~~IFRS 7~~ “Financial Instruments: Disclosures”. IAS 39.1; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.

Scope

2. This Standard shall be applied by all entities to all types of financial instruments, except:
 - (a) Those interests in controlled entities ~~subsidiaries~~, associates and joint ventures that are accounted for under IPSAS 6, ~~IAS 27~~ “Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements”, IPSAS 7, ~~IAS 28~~ “Investments in Associates” or IPSAS 8, ~~IAS 31~~ “Interests in Joint Ventures”. However, entities shall apply this Standard to an interest in a controlled entity ~~subsidiary~~, associate or joint venture that according to IPSAS 6, IPSAS 7 or IPSAS 8 ~~IAS 27~~, ~~IAS 28~~ or ~~IAS 31~~ is accounted for under this Standard. Entities shall also apply this Standard to derivatives on an interest in a controlled entity ~~subsidiary~~, associate or joint venture unless the derivative meets the definition of an equity instrument of the entity in ED 37 ~~IAS 32~~.
 - (b) Rights and obligations under leases to which IPSAS 13 ~~IAS 17~~ “Leases” applies. However:
 - (i) Lease receivables recognized by a lessor are subject to the derecognition and impairment provisions of this Standard (see paragraphs ~~175–397~~, ~~675~~, ~~686~~, ~~720–742~~ and Appendix A paragraphs ~~AG502–AG727~~ and ~~AG12115–AG13024~~);
 - (ii) Finance lease payables recognized by a lessee are subject to the derecognition provisions of this Standard (see paragraphs ~~4139–442~~ and Appendix A paragraphs ~~AG779–AG857~~); and
 - (iii) Derivatives that are embedded in leases are subject to the embedded derivatives

provisions of this Standard (see paragraphs [119–153](#) and Appendix A paragraphs [AG3941–AG457](#)).

- (c) Employers' rights and obligations under employee benefit plans, to which IPSAS 25, IAS 19 "Employee Benefits" applies. IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.
- (d) Financial instruments issued by the entity that meet the definition of an equity instrument in ED 37 IAS 32 (including options and warrants) or that are required to be classified as an equity instrument in accordance with paragraphs 15 and 16 or 17 and 18 of ED 37. However, the holder of such equity instruments shall apply this Standard to those instruments, unless they meet the exception in (a) above. IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.
Added amendment from IAS 32, puttable instruments.
- (e) Rights and obligations arising under:
 - (i) ~~An insurance contract as defined in the international or national accounting standard dealing with insurance contracts IFRS 4 Insurance Contracts,~~ other than an issuer's rights and obligations arising under an insurance contract that meets the definition of a financial guarantee contract in paragraph [108](#); or IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS, made a list out of (i) and (ii) and amended wording slightly to make understanding clearer. In line with amendments to IAS 32, deleted [allowed alternative treatment using option references to IFRS 4](#) and required financial guarantees to be treated as financial instruments, and added the encouraged application for insurance contracts that involve the transfer of financial risk from IPSAS 15.
 - (ii) A contract that is within the scope of the international or national accounting standard dealing with insurance contracts IFRS 4 because it contains a discretionary participation feature.

~~However, if~~ This Standard applies to a derivative that is embedded in an insurance contract within the scope of the IFRS 4 if the derivative is not itself an insurance contract within the scope of IFRS 4 (see paragraphs [119–153](#) and Appendix A paragraphs [AG3941–AG457](#) of this Standard). Moreover, ~~if an issuer of financial guarantee contracts has previously asserted explicitly that it regards such contracts as insurance contracts and has used accounting applicable to insurance contracts, the issuer may elect to apply either this Standard or IFRS 4 to such financial guarantee contracts (see paragraphs AG4 and AG4A). The issuer may make that election contract by contract, but the election for each contract is irrevocable. Notwithstanding (i) above, an entity may apply this Standard to other financial instruments that take the form of insurance contracts which involve the transfer of financial risk.~~

~~[deleted]~~

Paragraph 2(f) deleted.

- (f) Any forward Ccontracts that results from an agreement entered before the acquisition date IAS 39.2; amended for public sector terminology. Included IASB's 08/09

(i.e. before the date on which the acquirer obtains control over the acquiree) between an acquirer and a vendor in an entity business combination to buy or sell an acquiree at a future date and at a specified price (or on a specified basis).

improvements even though not yet approved. This amendment is as follows: Note: Amendments proposed to part (f) as a result of the 08/09 Improvements Project. Monitor developments prior to issue. Proposed paragraph is as follows: “any forward contracts that result from an agreement entered into before the acquisition date (i.e. before the date on which the acquirer obtains control of the acquiree) between an acquirer and a vendor, in a business combination, to buy or sell an acquiree at a future date and as a specified price (or on a specified price basis)”

- (g) Loan commitments other than those loan commitments described in paragraph 43. An issuer of loan commitments shall apply IPSAS 19, IAS 37 “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets” to loan commitments that are not within the scope of this Standard. However, all loan commitments are subject to the derecognition provisions of this Standard (see paragraphs 175–442 and Appendix A paragraphs AG502–AG857).

IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.

- (h) Financial instruments, contracts and obligations under share-based payment transactions to which the relevant international or national accounting standard dealing with ~~on~~ share based payments IFRS 2 Share-based Payment applies, except for contracts within the scope of paragraphs 54–86 of this Standard, to which this Standard applies.

IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.

- (i) Rights to payments to reimburse the entity for expenditure it is required to make to settle a liability that it recognizes as a provision in accordance with IPSAS 19 IAS 37, or for which, in an earlier period, it recognized a provision in accordance with IPSAS 19 IAS 37.

IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.

- (j) The initial recognition and measurement of rights and obligations arising from non-exchange revenue transactions, to which IPSAS 23, “Revenue from Non-Exchange Transactions (Taxes and Transfers)” applies.

Added paragraph to clarify the interaction between IPSAS 23 and this Standard for contractual non-exchange revenue transactions. See consequential amendments to IPSAS 23; proposal to measure financial assets acquired as part of a non-exchange revenue transaction using ED38 rather than IPSAS 23 (consistent with the direction taken for biological assets).

~~[Deleted]~~

Paragraph 3 deleted.

3. The following loan commitments are within the scope of this Standard:

IAS 39.4; made changes for other public sector terminology.

- (a) Loan commitments that the entity designates as financial liabilities at fair value through

~~surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss. An entity that has a past practice of selling the assets resulting from its loan commitments shortly after origination shall apply this Standard to all its loan commitments in the same class.

- (b) **Loan commitments that can be settled net in cash or by delivering or issuing another financial instrument.** These loan commitments are derivatives. A loan commitment is not regarded as settled net merely because the loan is paid out in installments (for example, a mortgage construction loan that is paid out in installments in line with the progress of construction).
- (c) **Commitments to provide a loan at a below-market interest rate.** Paragraph 497(d) specifies the subsequent measurement of liabilities arising from these loan commitments.

4. **This Standard shall be applied to those contracts to buy or sell a non-financial item that can be settled net in cash or another financial instrument, or by exchanging financial instruments, as if the contracts were financial instruments, with the exception of contracts that were entered into and continue to be held for the purpose of the receipt or delivery of a non-financial item in accordance with the entity's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements.** IAS 39.5; no amendment.

5. There are various ways in which a contract to buy or sell a non-financial item can be settled net in cash or another financial instrument or by exchanging financial instruments. These include:
- IAS 39.6; reference to dealer's margin retained even though this scenario is not likely in the public sector.

- (a) When the terms of the contract permit either party to settle it net in cash or another financial instrument or by exchanging financial instruments;
- (b) When the ability to settle net in cash or another financial instrument, or by exchanging financial instruments, is not explicit in the terms of the contract, but the entity has a practice of settling similar contracts net in cash or another financial instrument or by exchanging financial instruments (whether with the counterparty, by entering into offsetting contracts or by selling the contract before its exercise or lapse);
- (c) When, for similar contracts, the entity has a practice of taking delivery of the underlying and selling it within a short period after delivery for the purpose of generating a profit from short-term fluctuations in price or dealer's margin; and
- (d) When the non-financial item that is the subject of the contract is readily convertible to cash.

A contract to which (b) or (c) applies is not entered into for the purpose of the receipt or delivery of the non-

financial item in accordance with the entity's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements and, accordingly, is within the scope of this Standard. Other contracts to which paragraph 4 applies are evaluated to determine whether they were entered into and continue to be held for the purpose of the receipt or delivery of the non-financial item in accordance with the entity's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements and, accordingly, whether they are within the scope of this Standard.

6. A written option to buy or sell a non-financial item that can be settled net in cash or another financial instrument, or by exchanging financial instruments, in accordance with paragraph 5(a) or (d) is within the scope of this Standard. Such a contract cannot be entered into for the purpose of the receipt or delivery of the non-financial item in accordance with the entity's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements. IAS 39.7: no amendment.

7. **This Standard applies to all public sector entities other than Government Business Enterprises.** Added Standard wording.

8. **The Preface to International Public Sector Accounting Standards issued by the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board (IPSASB) explains that GBEs apply International Financial Reporting Standards, which are issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB).** Added Standard wording.

Definitions

97. The terms defined in ED 37 IAS 32 are used in this Standard with the meanings specified in paragraph 9 of ED 37 IAS 32. ED 37 IAS 32 defines the following terms:

- Financial instrument
- Financial asset
- Financial liability
- Equity instrument

and provides guidance on applying those definitions.

108. **The following terms are used in this Standard with the meanings specified:** IAS 39.8: amended referencing to IPSASs. IAS 39.9; Retained ordering and segregation of definitions from IAS 39.

Definition of a derivative

A derivative is a financial instrument or other contract within the scope of this Standard (see paragraphs 2–86) with all three of the following characteristics:

- (a) **Its value changes in response to the change in a specified interest rate, financial instrument price, commodity price, foreign exchange rate, index of prices or rates, credit rating or credit index, or other variable, provided in the case of a non-financial variable that the variable is not**

specific to a party to the contract (sometimes called the ‘underlying’);

- (b) It requires no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors; and
- (c) It is settled at a future date.

Definitions of four categories of financial instruments

A financial asset or financial liability at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is a financial asset or financial liability that meets either of the following conditions.

Amended for public sector terminology.

- (a) It is classified as held for trading. A financial asset or financial liability is classified as held for trading if it is:

IASB 2008 Improvements Project – (a)(i) – (iii).

- (i) It is acquired or incurred principally for the purpose of selling or repurchasing it in the near term;
- (ii) On initial recognition it is part of a portfolio of identified financial instruments that are managed together and for which there is evidence of a recent actual pattern of short-term profit-taking; or
- (iii) It is a derivative (except for a derivative that is a financial guarantee contract or a designated and effective hedging instrument).

- (b) Upon initial recognition it is designated by the entity as at fair value through **surplus or deficit** ~~profit or loss~~. An entity may use this designation only when permitted by paragraph 134 or when doing so results in more relevant information, because either

Amended for public sector terminology.

- (i) It eliminates or significantly reduces a measurement or recognition inconsistency (sometimes referred to as ‘an accounting mismatch’) that would otherwise arise from measuring assets or liabilities or recognizing the gains and losses on them on different bases; or
- (ii) A group of financial assets, financial liabilities or both is managed and its performance is evaluated on a fair value basis, in accordance with a documented risk management or investment strategy, and information about the group is provided internally on that basis to the entity’s key management personnel (as defined in IPSAS 20, IAS 24 “Related Party Disclosures” ~~(as revised in 2003)~~), for example the entity’s ~~board of directors~~

Aligned references to other IPSASs.

governing body and chief executive officer.

In **ED 39 IFRS 7**, paragraphs 9–11 and B4 require the entity to provide disclosures about financial assets and financial liabilities it has designated as at fair value through **surplus or deficit** ~~profit or loss~~, including how it has satisfied these conditions. For instruments qualifying in accordance with (ii) above, that disclosure includes a narrative description of how designation as at fair value through **surplus or deficit** ~~profit or loss~~ is consistent with the entity's documented risk management or investment strategy.

Aligned wording with other IPSASs.

Investments in equity instruments that do not have a quoted market price in an active market, and whose fair value cannot be reliably measured (see paragraph **486(c)** and Appendix A paragraphs **AG1174** and **AG1182**), shall not be designated as at fair value through **surplus or deficit** ~~profit or loss~~.

Aligned wording with other IPSASs.

It should be noted that paragraphs **5048**, **5149**, **520** and Appendix A paragraphs **AG10599**–**AG1193**, which set out requirements for determining a reliable measure of the fair value of a financial asset or financial liability, apply equally to all items that are measured at fair value, whether by designation or otherwise, or whose fair value is disclosed.

Held-to-maturity investments are non-derivative financial assets with fixed or determinable payments and fixed maturity that an entity has the positive intention and ability to hold to maturity (see Appendix A paragraphs **AG2830**–**AG379**) other than:

- (a) Those that the entity upon initial recognition designates as at fair value through **surplus or deficit** ~~profit or loss~~;
- (b) Those that the entity designates as available for sale; and
- (c) Those that meet the definition of loans and receivables.

Aligned wording with other IPSASs.

An entity shall not classify any financial assets as held to maturity if the entity has, during the current financial year or during the two preceding financial years, sold or reclassified more than an insignificant amount of held-to-maturity investments before maturity (more than insignificant in relation to the total amount of held-to-maturity investments) other than sales or reclassifications that:

- (i) Are so close to maturity or the financial asset's call date (for example, less than three months before maturity) that changes in the market rate of interest would not have a significant effect on the financial asset's fair value;
- (ii) Occur after the entity has collected substantially all of the financial asset's original principal through scheduled payments or

prepayments; or

- (iii) Are attributable to an isolated event that is beyond the entity's control, is non-recurring and could not have been reasonably anticipated by the entity.

Loans and receivables are non-derivative financial assets with fixed or determinable payments that are not quoted in an active market other than:

- (a) Those that the entity intends to sell immediately or in the near term, which shall be classified as held for trading, and those that the entity upon initial recognition designates as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~;
- (b) Those that the entity upon initial recognition designates as available for sale; or
- (c) Those for which the holder may not recover substantially all of its initial investment, other than because of credit deterioration, which shall be classified as available for sale.

Aligned wording with other IPSASs.

An interest acquired in a pool of assets that are not loans or receivables (for example, an interest in a mutual fund or a similar fund) is not a loan or receivable.

Aligned wording with other IPSASs.

Available-for-sale financial assets are those non-derivative financial assets that are designated as available for sale or are not classified as (a) loans and receivables, (b) held-to-maturity investments or (c) financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Definition of a financial guarantee contract

A **financial guarantee contract** is a contract that requires the issuer to make specified payments to reimburse the holder for a loss it incurs because a specified debtor fails to make payment when due in accordance with the original or modified terms of a debt instrument.

Definitions relating to recognition and measurement

The **amortized cost of a financial asset or financial liability** is the amount at which the financial asset or financial liability is measured at initial recognition minus principal repayments, plus or minus the cumulative amortization using the effective interest method of any difference between that initial amount and the maturity amount, and minus any reduction (directly or through the use of an allowance account) for impairment or uncollectibility.

The **effective interest method** is a method of calculating the amortized cost of a financial asset or a financial liability (or group of financial assets or financial liabilities) and of allocating the interest ~~revenue~~ ~~income~~—or interest expense over the

Amended term “income” to “revenue”. This is consistent with IPSAS 9.35 that refers to “interest revenue”. Should this change be made, seeing as income can still exist in the public sector, except that the overall term for

relevant period. The effective interest rate is the rate that exactly discounts estimated future cash payments or receipts through the expected life of the financial instrument or, when appropriate, a shorter period to the net carrying amount of the financial asset or financial liability. When calculating the effective interest rate, an entity shall estimate cash flows considering all contractual terms of the financial instrument (for example, prepayment, call and similar options) but shall not consider future credit losses. The calculation includes all fees and points paid or received between parties to the contract that are an integral part of the effective interest rate (see IPSAS 9, “Revenue from Exchange Transactions” ~~IAS 18 Revenue~~), transaction costs, and all other premiums or discounts. There is a presumption that the cash flows and the expected life of a group of similar financial instruments can be estimated reliably. However, in those rare cases when it is not possible to estimate reliably the cash flows or the expected life of a financial instrument (or group of financial instruments), the entity shall use the contractual cash flows over the full contractual term of the financial instrument (or group of financial instruments).

all gains, profits etc. is “revenue”.

Amended references to IPSASs.

Derecognition is the removal of a previously recognized financial asset or financial liability from an entity’s statement of financial position.

Fair value is the amount for which an asset could be exchanged, or a liability settled, between knowledgeable, willing parties in an arm’s length transaction¹.

A regular way purchase or sale is a purchase or sale of a financial asset under a contract whose terms require delivery of the asset within the time frame established generally by regulation or convention in the marketplace concerned.

Transaction costs are incremental costs that are directly attributable to the acquisition, issue or disposal of a financial asset or financial liability (see Appendix A paragraph AG257). An incremental cost is one that would not have been incurred if the entity had not acquired, issued or disposed of the financial instrument.

Definitions relating to hedge accounting

A firm commitment is a binding agreement for the exchange of a specified quantity of resources at a specified price on a specified future date or dates.

A forecast transaction is an uncommitted but anticipated future transaction.

¹ Paragraphs 48-49, 50-52 and AG69, AG105 and AG119 AG82 of Appendix A contain requirements for determining the fair value of a financial asset or financial liability.

A **hedging instrument** is a designated derivative or (for a hedge of the risk of changes in foreign currency exchange rates only) a designated non-derivative financial asset or non-derivative financial liability whose fair value or cash flows are expected to offset changes in the fair value or cash flows of a designated hedged item (paragraphs ~~8179~~–~~864~~ and Appendix A paragraphs ~~AG13125~~–~~AG13428~~ elaborate on the definition of a hedging instrument).

A **hedged item** is an asset, liability, firm commitment, highly probable forecast transaction or net investment in a foreign operation that (a) exposes the entity to risk of changes in fair value or future cash flows and (b) is designated as being hedged (paragraphs ~~875~~–~~942~~ and Appendix A paragraphs ~~AG13529~~–~~AG14539~~ elaborate on the definition of hedged items).

Hedge effectiveness is the degree to which changes in the fair value or cash flows of the hedged item that are attributable to a hedged risk are offset by changes in the fair value or cash flows of the hedging instrument (see Appendix A paragraphs ~~AG1493~~–~~AG16054~~).

Terms defined in other International Public Sector Accounting Standards are used in this Standard with the same meaning as in those Standards, and are reproduced in the Glossary of Defined Terms published separately.

Added standard wording.

Embedded Derivatives

~~119.~~ An embedded derivative is a component of a hybrid (combined) instrument that also includes a non-derivative host contract—with the effect that some of the cash flows of the combined instrument vary in a way similar to a stand-alone derivative. An embedded derivative causes some or all of the cash flows that otherwise would be required by the contract to be modified according to a specified interest rate, financial instrument price, commodity price, foreign exchange rate, index of prices or rates, credit rating or credit index, or other variable, provided in the case of a non-financial variable that the variable is not specific to a party to the contract. A derivative that is attached to a financial instrument but is contractually transferable independently of that instrument, or has a different counterparty from that instrument, is not an embedded derivative, but a separate financial instrument.

IAS 39.10; no amendment.

~~120.~~ An embedded derivative shall be separated from the host contract and accounted for as a derivative under this Standard if, and only if:

(a) The economic characteristics and risks of the embedded derivative are not closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of the

IAS 39.11; amended terminology.

host contract (see Appendix A paragraphs AG424 and AG457);

- (b) A separate instrument with the same terms as the embedded derivative would meet the definition of a derivative; and
- (c) The hybrid (combined) instrument is not measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~—(i.e. a derivative that is embedded in a financial asset or financial liability at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is not separated).

If an embedded derivative is separated, the host contract shall be accounted for under this Standard if it is a financial instrument, and in accordance with other appropriate Standards if it is not a financial instrument. This Standard does not address whether an embedded derivative shall be presented separately in the statement of financial position.

134. Notwithstanding paragraph 120, if a financial instrument contract within the scope of this Standard contains one or more embedded derivatives, an entity may designate the entire hybrid (combined) financial instrument contract as a financial asset or financial liability at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ unless:

- (a) The embedded derivative(s) does not significantly modify the cash flows that otherwise would be required by the contract; or
- (b) It is clear with little or no analysis when a similar hybrid (combined) instrument is first considered that separation of the embedded derivative(s) is prohibited, such as a prepayment option embedded in a loan that permits the holder to prepay the loan for approximately its amortized cost.

IAS 39.11A; amendment for public sector terminology.

Note: Amendments proposed to 11A-Included amendment from as a result of the 08/09 Improvements Project even though not approved by the IASB. Monitor developments prior to issue. Proposed paragraph is as follows: Notwithstanding paragraph 11, if a financial instrument contract within the scope of this Standard contains one or more embedded derivatives, an entity may designate the entire hybrid (combined) financial instrument contract as a financial asset or a financial liability at fair value through profit and loss...

Note: In the January IASB meeting, deliberations on the application of the fair value option were deferred. It is unclear whether these amendments will be approved by the IASB.

142. If an entity is required by this Standard to separate an embedded derivative from its host contract, but is unable to measure the embedded derivative separately either at acquisition or at the end of a subsequent financial reporting period, it shall designate the entire hybrid (combined) contract as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. Similarly, if an entity is unable to measure separately the embedded derivative that would have to be separated on reclassification of a hybrid (combined) contract out of fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss category, that reclassification is prohibited. In such circumstances the hybrid (combined) contract remains classified as at fair value through surplus or deficit profit or

IAS 39.12; amendment for public sector terminology.

Added proposed amendments published in December 2008 (not yet approved) relating to embedded derivatives.

loss in its entirety.

153. If an entity is unable to determine reliably the fair value of an embedded derivative on the basis of its terms and conditions (for example, because the embedded derivative is based on an unquoted equity instrument), the fair value of the embedded derivative is the difference between the fair value of the hybrid (combined) instrument and the fair value of the host contract, if those can be determined under this Standard. If the entity is unable to determine the fair value of the embedded derivative using this method, paragraph 142 applies and the hybrid (combined) instrument is designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.
- IAS 39.13; amendment for public sector terminology.

Recognition and Derecognition

Initial Recognition

164. An entity shall recognize a financial asset or a financial liability in its statement of financial position when, and only when, the entity becomes a party to the contractual provisions of the instrument. (See paragraph 4038 with respect to regular way purchases of financial assets.)
- IAS 39.14; no amendment.

Derecognition of a Financial Asset ~~(see also paragraphs AG52-AG74)~~

175. In consolidated financial statements, paragraphs 186–253 and Appendix A paragraphs AG502–AG724 are applied at a consolidated level. Hence, an entity first consolidates all controlled entities ~~subsidiaries~~ in accordance with IPSAS 6 ~~IAS 27~~ and ~~SIC 12 Consolidation – Special Purpose Entities~~ and then applies paragraphs 186–253 and Appendix A paragraphs AG502–AG724 to the resulting economic entity group.
- IAS 39.15; amended referencing to IPSAS.
- Issue: IPSAS 6 does not provide guidance on the consolidation of special purpose entities, and the IPSASB has not issued guidance equivalent to SIC 12.
- The guidance from SIC 12 has been added to the application guidance of this Standard as an interim measure. Once the IPSASB issues Interpretations, it should be withdrawn and issued as a separate Interpretation.
- As an alternative, the text could refer to the international or national interpretation on Consolidation – Special Purpose Entities.
186. Before evaluating whether, and to what extent, derecognition is appropriate under paragraphs 197–253, an entity determines whether those paragraphs should be applied to a part of a financial asset (or a part of a group of similar financial assets) or a financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets) in its entirety, as follows.
- IAS 39.16; no amendment.
- (a) Paragraphs 197–253 are applied to a part of a financial asset (or a part of a group of similar financial assets) if, and only if, the part being considered for derecognition meets one of the following three conditions.
- (i) The part comprises only specifically

identified cash flows from a financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets). For example, when an entity enters into an interest rate strip whereby the counterparty obtains the right to the interest cash flows, but not the principal cash flows from a debt instrument, paragraphs 197–253 are applied to the interest cash flows.

- (ii) The part comprises only a fully proportionate (pro rata) share of the cash flows from a financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets). For example, when an entity enters into an arrangement whereby the counterparty obtains the rights to a 90 per cent share of all cash flows of a debt instrument, paragraphs 197–253 are applied to 90 per cent of those cash flows. If there is more than one counterparty, each counterparty is not required to have a proportionate share of the cash flows provided that the transferring entity has a fully proportionate share.
- (iii) The part comprises only a fully proportionate (pro rata) share of specifically identified cash flows from a financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets). For example, when an entity enters into an arrangement whereby the counterparty obtains the rights to a 90 per cent share of interest cash flows from a financial asset, paragraphs 197–253 are applied to 90 per cent of those interest cash flows. If there is more than one counterparty, each counterparty is not required to have a proportionate share of the specifically identified cash flows provided that the transferring entity has a fully proportionate share.
- (b) In all other cases, paragraphs 197–253 are applied to the financial asset in its entirety (or to the group of similar financial assets in their entirety). For example, when an entity transfers
 - (i) the rights to the first or the last 90 per cent of cash collections from a financial asset (or a group of financial assets), or
 - (ii) the rights to 90 per cent of the cash flows from a group of receivables, but provides a guarantee to compensate the buyer for any credit losses up to 8 per cent of the principal amount of the receivables, paragraphs 197–253 are applied to the financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets) in its entirety.

In paragraphs 197–286, the term ‘financial asset’ refers to either a part of a financial asset (or a part of a group of similar financial assets) as identified in

(a) above or, otherwise, a financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets) in its entirety.

197. An entity shall derecognize a financial asset when, and only when:

- (a) The contractual rights to the cash flows from the financial asset expire or are waived; or
- (b) It transfers the financial asset as set out in paragraphs **2018** and **2119** and the transfer qualifies for derecognition in accordance with paragraph **220**.

(See paragraph **4038** for regular way sales of financial assets.)

IAS 39.17; added the notion of “waiving” debts owing to an entity. For example, a local authority may waive consumer accounts in terms of its indigent policies i.e. to meet specific social policy objectives. Debt write-offs due to uncollectability should be distinguished from the waiver of debt for social policy purposes, however as the IPSASB does not have a standard dealing with social benefits, this distinction should be made once that standard has been issued.

2018. An entity transfers a financial asset if, and only if, it either:

- (a) Transfers the contractual rights to receive the cash flows of the financial asset; or
- (b) Retains the contractual rights to receive the cash flows of the financial asset, but assumes a contractual obligation to pay the cash flows to one or more recipients in an arrangement that meets the conditions in paragraph **2119**.

IAS 39.18; no amendment.

2119. When an entity retains the contractual rights to receive the cash flows of a financial asset (the ‘original asset’), but assumes a contractual obligation to pay those cash flows to one or more entities (the ‘eventual recipients’), the entity treats the transaction as a transfer of a financial asset if, and only if, all of the following three conditions are met.

IAS 39.19; amended references to IPSASs.

- (a) The entity has no obligation to pay amounts to the eventual recipients unless it collects equivalent amounts from the original asset. Short-term advances by the entity with the right of full recovery of the amount lent plus accrued interest at market rates do not violate this condition.
- (b) The entity is prohibited by the terms of the transfer contract from selling or pledging the original asset other than as security to the eventual recipients for the obligation to pay them cash flows.
- (c) The entity has an obligation to remit any cash flows it collects on behalf of the eventual recipients without material delay. In addition, the entity is not entitled to reinvest such cash flows, except for investments in cash or cash equivalents (as defined in **IPSAS 2**, “Cash Flow Statements” ~~IAS 7 Statement of Cash Flows~~) during the short settlement period from the collection date to the date of required remittance to the eventual recipients, and interest earned on such investments is passed

to the eventual recipients.

~~2220~~. When an entity transfers a financial asset (see paragraph ~~2018~~), it shall evaluate the extent to which it retains the risks and rewards of ownership of the financial asset. In this case: IAS 39.20; no amendment.

- (a) If the entity transfers substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the financial asset, the entity shall derecognize the financial asset and recognize separately as assets or liabilities any rights and obligations created or retained in the transfer.**
- (b) If the entity retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the financial asset, the entity shall continue to recognize the financial asset.**
- (c) If the entity neither transfers nor retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the financial asset, the entity shall determine whether it has retained control of the financial asset. In this case:**
 - (i) If the entity has not retained control, it shall derecognize the financial asset and recognize separately as assets or liabilities any rights and obligations created or retained in the transfer.**
 - (ii) If the entity has retained control, it shall continue to recognize the financial asset to the extent of its continuing involvement in the financial asset (see paragraph ~~320~~).**

~~234~~. The transfer of risks and rewards (see paragraph ~~220~~) is evaluated by comparing the entity's exposure, before and after the transfer, with the variability in the amounts and timing of the net cash flows of the transferred asset. An entity has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of a financial asset if its exposure to the variability in the present value of the future net cash flows from the financial asset does not change significantly as a result of the transfer (for example, because the entity has sold a financial asset subject to an agreement to buy it back at a fixed price or the sale price plus a lender's return). An entity has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of a financial asset if its exposure to such variability is no longer significant in relation to the total variability in the present value of the future net cash flows associated with the financial asset (for example, because the entity has sold a financial asset subject only to an option to buy it back at its fair value at the time of repurchase or has transferred a fully proportionate share of the cash flows from a larger financial asset in an arrangement, such as a loan sub-participation, that meets the conditions in paragraph ~~2149~~). IAS 39.21; no amendment.

242. Often it will be obvious whether the entity has transferred or retained substantially all risks and rewards of ownership and there will be no need to perform any computations. In other cases, it will be necessary to compute and compare the entity's exposure to the variability in the present value of the future net cash flows before and after the transfer. The computation and comparison is made using as the discount rate an appropriate current market interest rate. All reasonably possible variability in net cash flows is considered, with greater weight being given to those outcomes that are more likely to occur.

IAS 39.22; no amendment.

253. Whether the entity has retained control (see paragraph 220(c)) of the transferred asset depends on the transferee's ability to sell the asset. If the transferee has the practical ability to sell the asset in its entirety to an unrelated third party and is able to exercise that ability unilaterally and without needing to impose additional restrictions on the transfer, the entity has not retained control. In all other cases, the entity has retained control.

IAS 39.23; no amendment.

Transfers that Qualify for Derecognition (see paragraph 220(a) and (c)(i))

264. If an entity transfers a financial asset in a transfer that qualifies for derecognition in its entirety and retains the right to service the financial asset for a fee, it shall recognize either a servicing asset or a servicing liability for that servicing contract. If the fee to be received is not expected to compensate the entity adequately for performing the servicing, a servicing liability for the servicing obligation shall be recognized at its fair value. If the fee to be received is expected to be more than adequate compensation for the servicing, a servicing asset shall be recognized for the servicing right at an amount determined on the basis of an allocation of the carrying amount of the larger financial asset in accordance with paragraph 297.

IAS 39.24; no amendment.

275. If, as a result of a transfer, a financial asset is derecognized in its entirety but the transfer results in the entity obtaining a new financial asset or assuming a new financial liability, or a servicing liability, the entity shall recognize the new financial asset, financial liability or servicing liability at fair value.

IAS 39.25; no amendment.

286. On derecognition of a financial asset in its entirety, the difference between:

IAS 39.26; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

(a) The carrying amount; and

(b) The sum of (i) the consideration received (including any new asset obtained less any new liability assumed) and (ii) any cumulative gain or loss that had been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (see paragraph 642(b))

shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

297. If the transferred asset is part of a larger financial asset (for example, when an entity transfers interest cash flows that are part of a debt instrument, see paragraph 186(a)) and the part transferred qualifies for derecognition in its entirety, the previous carrying amount of the larger financial asset shall be allocated between the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is derecognized, based on the relative fair values of those parts on the date of the transfer. For this purpose, a retained servicing asset shall be treated as a part that continues to be recognized. The difference between:

IAS 39.27; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

- (a) The carrying amount allocated to the part derecognized and
- (b) The sum of (i) the consideration received for the part derecognized (including any new asset obtained less any new liability assumed) and (ii) any cumulative gain or loss allocated to it that had been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (see paragraph 642(b))

shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. A cumulative gain or loss that had been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ is allocated between the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is derecognized, based on the relative fair values of those parts.

3028. When an entity allocates the previous carrying amount of a larger financial asset between the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is derecognized, the fair value of the part that continues to be recognized needs to be determined. When the entity has a history of selling parts similar to the part that continues to be recognized or other market transactions exist for such parts, recent prices of actual transactions provide the best estimate of its fair value. When there are no price quotes or recent market transactions to support the fair value of the part that continues to be recognized, the best estimate of the fair value is the difference between the fair value of the larger financial asset as a whole and the consideration received from the transferee for the part that is derecognized.

IAS 39.28; no amendment.

Transfers that do not Qualify for Derecognition (see paragraph 220(b))

3129. If a transfer does not result in derecognition because the entity has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the transferred asset, the entity shall continue to recognize the transferred asset in its entirety and shall recognize a financial liability for the consideration received. In

IAS 39.29; amended reference from “income” to “revenue”.

subsequent periods, the entity shall recognize any ~~income~~ **revenue** on the transferred asset and any expense incurred on the financial liability.

Continuing Involvement in Transferred Assets (see paragraph 220(c)(ii))

320. If an entity neither transfers nor retains IAS 39.30; no amendment.

substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of a transferred asset, and retains control of the transferred asset, the entity continues to recognize the transferred asset to the extent of its continuing involvement. The extent of the entity's continuing involvement in the transferred asset is the extent to which it is exposed to changes in the value of the transferred asset. For example:

- (a) When the entity's continuing involvement takes the form of guaranteeing the transferred asset, the extent of the entity's continuing involvement is the lower of (i) the amount of the asset and (ii) the maximum amount of the consideration received that the entity could be required to repay ('the guarantee amount').
- (b) When the entity's continuing involvement takes the form of a written or purchased option (or both) on the transferred asset, the extent of the entity's continuing involvement is the amount of the transferred asset that the entity may repurchase. However, in case of a written put option on an asset that is measured at fair value, the extent of the entity's continuing involvement is limited to the lower of the fair value of the transferred asset and the option exercise price (see paragraph AG6870).
- (c) When the entity's continuing involvement takes the form of a cash-settled option or similar provision on the transferred asset, the extent of the entity's continuing involvement is measured in the same way as that which results from non-cash settled options as set out in (b) above.

331. When an entity continues to recognize an asset to IAS 39.31; no amendment.

the extent of its continuing involvement, the entity also recognizes an associated liability. Despite the other measurement requirements in this Standard, the transferred asset and the associated liability are measured on a basis that reflects the rights and obligations that the entity has retained. The associated liability is measured in such a way that the net carrying amount of the transferred asset and the associated liability is:

- (a) The amortized cost of the rights and obligations retained by the entity, if the transferred asset is measured at amortized cost; or
- (b) Equal to the fair value of the rights and obligations retained by the entity when

measured on a stand-alone basis, if the transferred asset is measured at fair value.

- 342.** The entity shall continue to recognize any revenue ~~income~~ arising on the transferred asset to the extent of its continuing involvement and shall recognize any expense incurred on the associated liability. IAS 39.32; amended the term “income” to revenue.
- 353.** For the purpose of subsequent measurement, recognized changes in the fair value of the transferred asset and the associated liability are accounted for consistently with each other in accordance with paragraph **642**, and shall not be offset. IAS 39.33; no amendment.
- 364.** If an entity’s continuing involvement is in only a part of a financial asset (for example, when an entity retains an option to repurchase part of a transferred asset, or retains a residual interest that does not result in the retention of substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership and the entity retains control), the entity allocates the previous carrying amount of the financial asset between the part it continues to recognize under continuing involvement, and the part it no longer recognizes on the basis of the relative fair values of those parts on the date of the transfer. For this purpose, the requirements of paragraph **3028** apply. The difference between:
- (a) The carrying amount allocated to the part that is no longer recognized; and
 - (b) The sum of (i) the consideration received for the part no longer recognized and (ii) any cumulative gain or loss allocated to it that had been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (see paragraph **642(b)**)
- shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. A cumulative gain or loss that had been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ is allocated between the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is no longer recognized on the basis of the relative fair values of those parts.
- 375.** If the transferred asset is measured at amortized cost, the option in this Standard to designate a financial liability as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is not applicable to the associated liability. IAS 39.35; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

All Transfers

- 386.** If a transferred asset continues to be recognized, the asset and the associated liability shall not be offset. Similarly, the entity shall not offset any income arising from the transferred asset with any expense incurred on the associated liability (see ED 37 IAS IAS 39.36; amended term “income” to “revenue” and references to other IPSASs.

~~32~~-paragraph 47).

- 397.** If a transferor provides non-cash collateral (such as debt or equity instruments) to the transferee, the accounting for the collateral by the transferor and the transferee depends on whether the transferee has the right to sell or repledge the collateral and on whether the transferor has defaulted. The transferor and transferee shall account for the collateral as follows:
- (a) If the transferee has the right by contract or custom to sell or repledge the collateral, then the transferor shall reclassify that asset in its statement of financial position (for example, as a loaned asset, pledged equity instruments or repurchase receivable) separately from other assets.
 - (b) If the transferee sells collateral pledged to it, it shall recognize the proceeds from the sale and a liability measured at fair value for its obligation to return the collateral.
 - (c) If the transferor defaults under the terms of the contract and is no longer entitled to redeem the collateral, it shall derecognize the collateral, and the transferee shall recognize the collateral as its asset initially measured at fair value or, if it has already sold the collateral, derecognize its obligation to return the collateral.
 - (d) Except as provided in (c), the transferor shall continue to carry the collateral as its asset, and the transferee shall not recognize the collateral as an asset.
- IAS 39.37; no amendment.

Regular Way Purchase or Sale of a Financial Asset

- 4038.** A regular way purchase or sale of financial assets shall be recognized and derecognized, as applicable, using trade date accounting or settlement date accounting (see Appendix A paragraphs AG735–AG768).
- IAS 39.38; no amendment.

Derecognition of a Financial Liability

- 4139.** An entity shall remove a financial liability (or a part of a financial liability) from its statement of financial position when, and only when, it is extinguished—i.e. when the obligation specified in the contract is discharged, ~~or waived~~, cancelled or expires.
- IAS 39.39; added in the concept of debt owing by an entity being “waived”. This links to IPSAS 23 which discusses the treatment of debt forgiveness as the “waiver” of debt. In drafting the ED, cancelled was deemed to be in the context of existing debt being cancelled and a new arrangement negotiated i.e. the notion of a non-exchange transaction.
- 4240.** An exchange between an existing borrower and lender of debt instruments with substantially different terms shall be accounted for as an extinguishment of the original financial liability and the recognition of a new financial liability.
- IAS 39.40; no amendment.

Similarly, a substantial modification of the terms of an existing financial liability or a part of it (whether or not attributable to the financial difficulty of the debtor) shall be accounted for as an extinguishment of the original financial liability and the recognition of a new financial liability.

431. The difference between the carrying amount of a financial liability (or part of a financial liability) extinguished or transferred to another party and the consideration paid, including any non-cash assets transferred or liabilities assumed, shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. Where an obligation is waived by the lender or assumed by a third party as part of a non-exchange transaction, an entity ~~considers~~ applies IPSAS 23.
442. If an entity repurchases a part of a financial liability, the entity shall allocate the previous carrying amount of the financial liability between the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is derecognized based on the relative fair values of those parts on the date of the repurchase. The difference between (a) the carrying amount allocated to the part derecognized and (b) the consideration paid, including any non-cash assets transferred or liabilities assumed, for the part derecognized shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.
- IAS 39.41; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology. Added wording that entities should also consider IPSAS 23 if their debt is waived by the lender or if debts are assumed by a third party as part of a non-exchange revenue transaction.
- IAS 39.42; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

Measurement

Initial Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities

453. When a financial asset or financial liability is recognized initially, an entity shall measure it at its fair value plus, in the case of a financial asset or financial liability not at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, transaction costs that are directly attributable to the acquisition or issue of the financial asset or financial liability.
464. When an entity uses settlement date accounting for an asset that is subsequently measured at cost or amortized cost, the asset is recognized initially at its fair value on the trade date (see Appendix A paragraphs AG735–AG768).
- IAS 39.43; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.
- IAS 39.44; no amendment.

Subsequent Measurement of Financial Assets

475. For the purpose of measuring a financial asset after initial recognition, this Standard classifies financial assets into the following four categories defined in paragraph 108:
- (a) Financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~;
 - (b) Held-to-maturity investments;
 - (c) Loans and receivables; and
- IAS 39.45; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

(d) Available-for-sale financial assets.

These categories apply to measurement and ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ recognition under this Standard. The entity may use other descriptors for these categories or other categorizations when presenting information in the financial statements. The entity shall disclose in the notes the information required by ED 39 (~~IFRS 7~~).

486. After initial recognition, an entity shall measure financial assets, including derivatives that are assets, at their fair values, without any deduction for transaction costs it may incur on sale or other disposal, except for the following financial assets:

IAS 39.46; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

(a) Loans and receivables as defined in paragraph **108**, which shall be measured at amortized cost using the effective interest method;

(b) Held-to-maturity investments as defined in paragraph **108**, which shall be measured at amortized cost using the effective interest method; and

(c) Investments in equity instruments that do not have a quoted market price in an active market and whose fair value cannot be reliably measured and derivatives that are linked to and must be settled by delivery of such unquoted equity instruments, which shall be measured at cost (see Appendix A paragraphs ~~AG1171~~ and ~~AG1182~~).

Financial assets that are designated as hedged items are subject to measurement under the hedge accounting requirements in paragraphs ~~927–1131~~. All financial assets except those measured at fair value through ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ are subject to review for impairment in accordance with paragraphs ~~675–797~~ and Appendix A paragraphs ~~AG12115–AG13024~~.

Subsequent Measurement of Financial Liabilities

497. After initial recognition, an entity shall measure all financial liabilities at amortized cost using the effective interest method, except for:

IAS 39.47; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

(a) Financial liabilities at fair value through ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~. Such liabilities, including derivatives that are liabilities, shall be measured at fair value except for a derivative liability that is linked to and must be settled by delivery of an unquoted equity instrument whose fair value cannot be reliably measured, which shall be measured at cost.

(b) Financial liabilities that arise when a transfer of a financial asset does not qualify for derecognition or when the continuing

involvement approach applies. Paragraphs ~~3129~~ and ~~331~~ apply to the measurement of such financial liabilities.

- (c) Financial guarantee contracts as defined in paragraph ~~108~~. After initial recognition, an issuer of such a contract shall (unless paragraph ~~497~~(a) or (b) applies) measure it at the higher of:

(i) The amount determined in accordance with IPSAS 19 ~~IAS 37~~; and

(ii) The amount initially recognized (see paragraph ~~453~~) less, when appropriate, cumulative amortization recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9 ~~IAS 18~~.

- (d) Commitments to provide a loan at a below-market interest rate. After initial recognition, an issuer of such a commitment shall (unless paragraph ~~497~~(a) applies) measure it at the higher of:

(i) The amount determined in accordance with IPSAS 19 ~~IAS 37~~; and

(ii) The amount initially recognized (see paragraph ~~453~~) less, when appropriate, cumulative amortization recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9 ~~IAS 18~~.

Financial liabilities that are designated as hedged items are subject to the hedge accounting requirements in paragraphs ~~997-1134~~.

Fair Value Measurement Considerations

~~5048~~. In determining the fair value of a financial asset or a financial liability for the purpose of applying this Standard, ~~ED 37 IAS 32~~ or ~~ED 39 IFRS 7~~, an entity shall apply paragraphs ~~AG10599-AG1193~~ of Appendix A.

IAS 39.48; amended referencing to IPSAS.

~~5149~~. The best evidence of fair value is quoted prices in an active market. If the market for a financial instrument is not active, an entity establishes fair value by using a valuation technique. The objective of using a valuation technique is to establish what the transaction price would have been on the measurement date in an arm's length exchange motivated by normal operating business considerations. Valuation techniques include using recent arm's length market transactions between knowledgeable, willing parties, if available, reference to the current fair value of another instrument that is substantially the same, discounted cash flow analysis and option pricing models. If there is a valuation technique commonly used by market participants to price the instrument and that technique has been demonstrated to provide reliable estimates of prices obtained in actual market transactions, the entity uses that technique. The chosen valuation technique makes

IAS 39.48A; amended 'business' to 'operating' as more appropriate for the public sector.

maximum use of market inputs and relies as little as possible on entity-specific inputs. It incorporates all factors that market participants would consider in setting a price and is consistent with accepted economic methodologies for pricing financial instruments. Periodically, an entity calibrates the valuation technique and tests it for validity using prices from any observable current market transactions in the same instrument (i.e. without modification or repackaging) or based on any available observable market data.

529. The fair value of a financial liability with a demand feature (e.g. a demand deposit) is not less than the amount payable on demand, discounted from the first date that the amount could be required to be paid.

IAS 39.49; ~~aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology no amendment.~~

Reclassifications

534. An entity:

IAS 39.50

- (a) ~~Shall not reclassify a derivative financial instrument into or out of the fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss category while it is held or issued;~~
- (b) ~~Shall not reclassify any financial instrument out of the fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss category if upon initial recognition it was designated by the entity as at fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss; and~~
- (c) May, if a financial asset is no longer held for the purpose of selling or repurchasing it in the near term (notwithstanding that the financial asset may have been acquired or incurred principally for the purpose of selling or repurchasing it in the near term), reclassify that financial asset out of the fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss category if the requirements in paragraph 553 or 575 are met.

IASB amendment – Reclassification of Financial Assets.

Amended for public sector terminology.

An entity shall not reclassify any financial instrument into the fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss category after initial recognition.

542. The following changes in circumstances are not reclassifications for the purposes of paragraph 534:

IAS 39.50A - IAS Improvements Project – May 2008.

- (a) A derivative that was previously a designated and effective hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge or net investment hedge no longer qualifies as such; and
- (b) A derivative becomes a designated and effective hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge or net investment hedge;
- (c) ~~financial assets are reclassified when an entity engaged in insurance activities insurance~~

Deleted (c) as the IPSASB has not issued an equivalent of IFRS 4, therefore requirement unnecessary.

~~company changes its accounting policies in accordance with paragraph 45 of the international or national accounting standard dealing with insurance contracts IFRS 4.~~

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>553. A financial asset to which paragraph 534(c) applies (except a financial asset of the type described in paragraph 575) may be reclassified out of the fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss category only in rare circumstances.</p> | <p>IAS 39.50B - Amendments issued by the IASB - Reclassification of financial assets (October 2008). Amended for public sector terminology.</p> |
| <p>564. If an entity reclassifies a financial asset out of the fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss category in accordance with paragraph 553, the financial asset shall be reclassified at its fair value on the date of reclassification. Any gain or loss already recognized in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss shall not be reversed. The fair value of the financial asset on the date of reclassification becomes its new cost or amortized cost, as applicable.</p> | <p>IAS 39.50C - Amendments issued by the IASB - Reclassification of financial assets (October 2008). Amended for public sector terminology.</p> |
| <p>575. A financial asset to which paragraph 534(c) applies that would have met the definition of loans and receivables (if the financial asset had not been required to be classified as held for trading at initial recognition) may be reclassified out of the fair value <u>through surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss category if the entity has the intention and ability to hold the financial asset for the foreseeable future or until maturity.</p> | <p>IAS 39.50D - Amendments issued by the IASB - Reclassification of financial assets (October 2008). Amended for public sector terminology.</p> |
| <p>586. A financial asset classified as available for sale that would have met the definition of loans and receivables (if it had not been designated as available for sale) may be reclassified out of the available-for-sale category to the loans and receivables category if the entity has the intention and ability to hold the financial asset for the foreseeable future or until maturity.</p> | <p>IAS 39.50E - Amendments issued by the IASB - Reclassification of financial assets (October 2008)</p> |
| <p>597. If an entity reclassifies a financial asset out of the fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss category in accordance with paragraph 575 or out of the available-for-sale category in accordance with paragraph 586, it shall reclassify the financial asset at its fair value on the date of reclassification. For a financial asset reclassified in accordance with paragraph 575, any gain or loss already recognized in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss shall not be reversed. The fair value of the financial asset on the date of reclassification becomes its new cost or amortized cost, as applicable. For a financial asset reclassified out of the available-for-sale category in accordance with paragraph 586, any previous gain or loss on that asset that has been recognized <u>directly</u> in net assets/equity other comprehensive income in accordance with paragraph 642(b) shall be accounted for in accordance with paragraph 634.</p> | <p>IAS 39.50F - Amendments issued by the IASB - Reclassification of financial assets (October 2008). <u>Amended for public sector terminology.</u></p> |
| <p>6058. If, as a result of a change in intention or ability, it is no longer appropriate to classify an investment as held to maturity, it shall be reclassified as available</p> | <p>IAS 39.51; no amendment.</p> |

for sale and remeasured at fair value, and the difference between its carrying amount and fair value shall be accounted for in accordance with paragraph 642(b).

6159. Whenever sales or reclassification of more than an insignificant amount of held-to-maturity investments do not meet any of the conditions in paragraph 108, any remaining held-to-maturity investments shall be reclassified as available for sale. On such reclassification, the difference between their carrying amount and fair value shall be accounted for in accordance with paragraph 642(b). IAS 39.52; no amendment.

620. If a reliable measure becomes available for a financial asset or financial liability for which such a measure was previously not available, and the asset or liability is required to be measured at fair value if a reliable measure is available (see paragraphs 486(c) and 497), the asset or liability shall be remeasured at fair value, and the difference between its carrying amount and fair value shall be accounted for in accordance with paragraph 642. IAS 39.53; no amendment.

634. If, as a result of a change in intention or ability or in the rare circumstance that a reliable measure of fair value is no longer available (see paragraphs 486(c) and 497) or because the ‘two preceding financial years’ referred to in paragraph 108 have passed, it becomes appropriate to carry a financial asset or financial liability at cost or amortized cost rather than at fair value, the fair value carrying amount of the financial asset or the financial liability on that date becomes its new cost or amortized cost, as applicable. Any previous gain or loss on that asset that has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with paragraph 642(b) shall be accounted for as follows: IAS 39.54; amended for public sector terminology.

(a) In the case of a financial asset with a fixed maturity, the gain or loss shall be amortized to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ over the remaining life of the held-to-maturity investment using the effective interest method. Any difference between the new amortized cost and maturity amount shall also be amortized over the remaining life of the financial asset using the effective interest method, similar to the amortization of a premium and a discount. If the financial asset is subsequently impaired, any gain or loss that has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ is ~~reclassified from recognized in net assets/equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ in accordance with paragraph 764.

IAS 1 as amended in 2007 has not yet been considered by the IPSASB; therefore re-instated the use of the word “directly” and deleted reference to comprehensive income.

IAS 1 as amended in 2007 has not yet been considered by the IPSASB; therefore re-instated the use of the word “directly”; deleted reference to comprehensive income; and replaced “reclassified” with “recognized in” (which is the original wording).

(b) In the case of a financial asset that does not have a fixed maturity, the gain or loss shall IAS 1 as amended in 2007 has not yet been considered by the IPSASB; therefore retained

remain in net assets/equity until the financial asset is sold or otherwise disposed of, when it shall be recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss when the financial asset is sold or otherwise disposed of. If the financial asset is subsequently impaired any previous gain or loss that has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ is recognized in ~~is reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ in accordance with paragraph 764.

original wording.

Gains and Losses

642. A gain or loss arising from a change in the fair value of a financial asset or financial liability that is not part of a hedging relationship (see paragraphs 997–1131), shall be recognized, as follows.

IAS 39.55; amended for public sector terminology and referenced to IPSASs.

(a) A gain or loss on a financial asset or financial liability classified as at fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss shall be recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss.

(b) A gain or loss on an available-for-sale financial asset shall be recognized directly in net assets/equity through the statement of changes in net assets/equity (see IPSAS 1, “Presentation of Financial Statements” ~~other comprehensive income~~, except for impairment losses (see paragraphs 764–797) and foreign exchange gains and losses (see Appendix A paragraph AG1204), until the financial asset is derecognized, ~~at which that time the cumulative gain or loss previously recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income shall be recognized in reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment (see IAS 1 Presentation of Financial Statements).~~ However, interest calculated using the effective interest method (see paragraph 108) is recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss (see IPSAS 9IAS 18). Dividends or similar distributions on an available-for-sale equity instrument are recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss when the entity’s right to receive payment is established (see IPSAS 9IAS 18).

Reclassification adjustments introduced into IAS 1 in 2007. These changes have not been made to IPSAS 1, therefore deleted these references.

653. For financial assets and financial liabilities carried at amortized cost (see paragraphs 486 and 497), a gain or loss is recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss when the financial asset or financial liability is derecognized or impaired, and through the amortization process. However, for financial assets or financial liabilities that are hedged items (see paragraphs 875–942 and Appendix A paragraphs AG13529–AG13539) the accounting for the gain or loss shall follow paragraphs 997–1131.

IAS 39.56; amended for public sector terminology.

664. If an entity recognizes financial assets using settlement date accounting (see paragraph 4038 and Appendix A paragraphs AG735 and AG768), any change in the fair value of the asset to be received during the period between the trade date and the settlement date is not recognized for assets carried at cost or amortized cost (other than impairment losses). For assets carried at fair value, however, the change in fair value shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ or in net assets/equity, as appropriate under paragraph 642.
- IAS 39.57; amended for public sector terminology.

Impairment and Uncollectibility of Financial Assets

675. An entity shall assess at the end of each reporting period whether there is any objective evidence that a financial asset or group of financial assets is impaired. If any such evidence exists, the entity shall apply paragraph 729 (for financial assets carried at amortized cost), paragraph 753 (for financial assets carried at cost) or paragraph 764 (for available-for-sale financial assets) to determine the amount of any impairment loss.
- IAS 39.58; no amendment. ~~amended for public sector terminology.~~
686. A financial asset or a group of financial assets is impaired and impairment losses are incurred if, and only if, there is objective evidence of impairment as a result of one or more events that occurred after the initial recognition of the asset (a 'loss event') and that loss event (or events) has an impact on the estimated future cash flows of the financial asset or group of financial assets that can be reliably estimated. It may not be possible to identify a single, discrete event that caused the impairment. Rather the combined effect of several events may have caused the impairment. Losses expected as a result of future events, no matter how likely, are not recognized. Objective evidence that a financial asset or group of assets is impaired includes observable data that comes to the attention of the holder of the asset about the following loss events:
- IAS 39.59; deleted examples relating to credit card borrowers and decline in property prices as it is not public sector specific.
- (a) Significant financial difficulty of the issuer or obligor;
 - (b) A breach of contract, such as a default or delinquency in interest or principal payments;
 - (c) The lender, for economic or legal reasons relating to the borrower's financial difficulty, granting to the borrower a concession that the lender would not otherwise consider;
 - (d) It becoming probable that the borrower will enter bankruptcy or other financial reorganization;
 - (e) The disappearance of an active market for that financial asset because of financial difficulties; or
 - (f) Observable data indicating that there is a measurable decrease in the estimated future cash flows from a group of financial assets since the

initial recognition of those assets, although the decrease cannot yet be identified with the individual financial assets in the group, including:

- (i) Adverse changes in the payment status of borrowers in the group (for example, an increased number of delayed payments ~~or an increased number of credit card borrowers who have reached their credit limit and are paying the minimum monthly amount~~); or
- (ii) National or local economic conditions that correlate with defaults on the assets in the group (for example, an increase in the unemployment rate in the geographical area of the borrowers, ~~a decrease in property prices for mortgages in the relevant area~~, a decrease in oil prices for loan assets to oil producers, or adverse changes in industry conditions that affect the borrowers in the group).

697. The disappearance of an active market because an entity's financial instruments are no longer publicly traded is not evidence of impairment. A downgrade of an entity's credit rating is not, of itself, evidence of impairment, although it may be evidence of impairment when considered with other available information. A decline in the fair value of a financial asset below its cost or amortized cost is not necessarily evidence of impairment (for example, a decline in the fair value of an investment in a debt instrument that results from an increase in the risk-free interest rate). IAS 39.60; no amendment.

7068. In addition to the types of events in paragraph ~~686~~, objective evidence of impairment for an investment in an equity instrument includes information about significant changes with an adverse effect that have taken place in the technological, market, economic or legal environment in which the issuer operates, and indicates that the cost of the investment in the equity instrument may not be recovered. A significant or prolonged decline in the fair value of an investment in an equity instrument below its cost is also objective evidence of impairment. IAS 39.61; no amendment.

7169. In some cases the observable data required to estimate the amount of an impairment loss on a financial asset may be limited or no longer fully relevant to current circumstances. For example, this may be the case when a borrower is in financial difficulties and there are few available historical data relating to similar borrowers. In such cases, an entity uses its experienced judgment to estimate the amount of any impairment loss. Similarly an entity uses its experienced judgment to adjust observable data for a group of financial assets to reflect current circumstances (see paragraph AG12~~69~~). The use of reasonable estimates is an essential part of the preparation of financial statements and does not undermine their reliability. IAS 39.62; no amendment.

Financial Assets Carried at Amortized Cost

- 729.** If there is objective evidence that an impairment loss on loans and receivables or held-to-maturity investments carried at amortized cost has been incurred, the amount of the loss is measured as the difference between the asset's carrying amount and the present value of estimated future cash flows (excluding future credit losses that have not been incurred) discounted at the financial asset's original effective interest rate (i.e. the effective interest rate computed at initial recognition). The carrying amount of the asset shall be reduced either directly or through use of an allowance account. The amount of the loss shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.
- IAS 39.63; amended for public sector terminology.
- 731.** An entity first assesses whether objective evidence of impairment exists individually for financial assets that are individually significant, and individually or collectively for financial assets that are not individually significant (see paragraph 686). If an entity determines that no objective evidence of impairment exists for an individually assessed financial asset, whether significant or not, it includes the asset in a group of financial assets with similar credit risk characteristics and collectively assesses them for impairment. Assets that are individually assessed for impairment and for which an impairment loss is or continues to be recognized are not included in a collective assessment of impairment.
- IAS 39.64; no amendment.
- 742.** If, in a subsequent period, the amount of the impairment loss decreases and the decrease can be related objectively to an event occurring after the impairment was recognized (such as an improvement in the debtor's credit rating), the previously recognized impairment loss shall be reversed either directly or by adjusting an allowance account. The reversal shall not result in a carrying amount of the financial asset that exceeds what the amortized cost would have been had the impairment not been recognized at the date the impairment is reversed. The amount of the reversal shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.
- IAS 39.65; amended for public sector terminology.

Financial Assets Carried at Cost

- 753.** If there is objective evidence that an impairment loss has been incurred on an unquoted equity instrument that is not carried at fair value because its fair value cannot be reliably measured, or on a derivative asset that is linked to and must be settled by delivery of such an unquoted equity instrument, the amount of the impairment loss is measured as the difference between the carrying amount of the financial asset and the present value of estimated future cash flows discounted at the current market
- IAS 39.66; no amendment.

rate of return for a similar financial asset (see paragraph ~~486~~(c) and Appendix A paragraphs AG1171 and AG1182). Such impairment losses shall not be reversed.

Available-For-Sale Financial Assets

- 764.** When a decline in the fair value of an available-for-sale financial asset has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ and there is objective evidence that the asset is impaired (see paragraph ~~686~~), the cumulative loss that had been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ shall be removed ~~reclassified from net assets/equity and recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment~~ even though the financial asset has not been derecognized.
- IAS 39.67; amended for public sector terminology.
- Retained wording from IAS 39.67 prior to the amendments to IAS 1 in 2007 as these amendments have not been made to IPSAS 1. IAS 1 and amended IAS refer to “reclassifications”.
- 775.** The amount of the cumulative loss that is removed ~~reclassified from net assets/equity and recognized in to surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ under paragraph **764** shall be the difference between the acquisition cost (net of any principal repayment and amortization) and current fair value, less any impairment loss on that financial asset previously recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss.
- IAS 39.68; amended for public sector terminology.
- Retained wording from IAS 39.67 prior to the amendments to IAS 1 in 2007 as these amendments have not been made to IPSAS 1. IAS 1 and amended IAS refer to “reclassifications”.
- 786.** Impairment losses recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss ~~for an investment in an equity instrument classified as available for sale shall not be reversed through surplus or deficit profit or loss~~.
- IAS 39.69; amended for public sector terminology.
- 797.** If, in a subsequent period, the fair value of a debt instrument classified as available for sale increases and the increase can be objectively related to an event occurring after the impairment loss was recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss, the impairment loss shall be reversed, with the amount of the reversal recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss.
- IAS 39.70; amended for public sector terminology.

Hedging

- 8078.** If there is a designated hedging relationship between a hedging instrument and a hedged item as described in paragraphs ~~953–986~~ and Appendix A paragraphs AG1460–AG1482, accounting for the gain or loss on the hedging instrument and the hedged item shall follow paragraphs ~~9997–1131~~.
- IAS 39.71; ~~amended for public sector terminology; no amendment.~~

Hedging Instruments

Qualifying Instruments

- 8179.** This Standard does not restrict the circumstances in which a derivative may be designated as a hedging instrument provided the conditions in paragraph ~~986~~.
- IAS 39.72; ~~amended for public sector terminology; no amendment.~~

are met, except for some written options (see Appendix A paragraph AG131425). However, a non-derivative financial asset or non-derivative financial liability may be designated as a hedging instrument only for a hedge of a foreign currency risk.

829. For hedge accounting purposes, only instruments that involve a party external to the reporting entity (i.e. external to the economic entity ~~group~~, ~~segment~~ or individual entity that is being reported on) can be designated as hedging instruments. Although individual entities within an economic entity ~~consolidated group~~ or divisions within an entity may enter into hedging transactions with other entities within the economic entity ~~group~~ or divisions within the entity, any such ~~intragroup~~ transactions within the economic entity are eliminated on consolidation. Therefore, such hedging transactions do not qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements of the economic entity ~~group~~. However, they may qualify for hedge accounting in the individual or separate financial statements of individual entities within the economic entity ~~group or in segment reporting~~ provided that they are external to the individual entity ~~or segment~~ that is being reported on.

IAS 39.73; amended for public sector terminology.

IASB Improvements Project – May 2008 (delete references to segment).

Designation of Hedging Instruments

834. There is normally a single fair value measure for a hedging instrument in its entirety, and the factors that cause changes in fair value are co-dependent. Thus, a hedging relationship is designated by an entity for a hedging instrument in its entirety. The only exceptions permitted are:
- (a) Separating the intrinsic value and time value of an option contract and designating as the hedging instrument only the change in intrinsic value of an option and excluding change in its time value; and
 - (b) Separating the interest element and the spot price of a forward contract.

IAS 39.74; no amendment.

These exceptions are permitted because the intrinsic value of the option and the premium on the forward can generally be measured separately. A dynamic hedging strategy that assesses both the intrinsic value and time value of an option contract can qualify for hedge accounting.

842. A proportion of the entire hedging instrument, such as 50 per cent of the notional amount, may be designated as the hedging instrument in a hedging relationship. However, a hedging relationship may not be designated for only a portion of the time period during which a hedging instrument remains outstanding.

IAS 39.75; no amendment.

853. A single hedging instrument may be designated as a hedge of more than one type of risk provided that (a) the risks hedged can be identified clearly; (b) the

IAS 39.76; no amendment.

effectiveness of the hedge can be demonstrated; and (c) it is possible to ensure that there is specific designation of the hedging instrument and different risk positions.

864. Two or more derivatives, or proportions of them (or, in the case of a hedge of currency risk, two or more non-derivatives or proportions of them, or a combination of derivatives and non-derivatives or proportions of them), may be viewed in combination and jointly designated as the hedging instrument, including when the risk(s) arising from some derivatives offset(s) those arising from others. However, an interest rate collar or other derivative instrument that combines a written option and a purchased option does not qualify as a hedging instrument if it is, in effect, a net written option (for which a net premium is received). Similarly, two or more instruments (or proportions of them) may be designated as the hedging instrument only if none of them is a written option or a net written option.
- IAS 39.77; no amendment.

Hedged Items

Qualifying Items

875. A hedged item can be a recognized asset or liability, an unrecognized firm commitment, a highly probable forecast transaction or a net investment in a foreign operation. The hedged item can be (a) a single asset, liability, firm commitment, highly probable forecast transaction or net investment in a foreign operation, (b) a group of assets, liabilities, firm commitments, highly probable forecast transactions or net investments in foreign operations with similar risk characteristics or (c) in a portfolio hedge of interest rate risk only, a portion of the portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities that share the risk being hedged.
- IAS 39.78; no amendment.
886. Unlike loans and receivables, a held-to-maturity investment cannot be a hedged item with respect to interest-rate risk or prepayment risk because designation of an investment as held to maturity requires an intention to hold the investment until maturity without regard to changes in the fair value or cash flows of such an investment attributable to changes in interest rates. However, a held-to-maturity investment can be a hedged item with respect to risks from changes in foreign currency exchange rates and credit risk.
- IAS 39.79; no amendment.
897. For hedge accounting purposes, only assets, liabilities, firm commitments or highly probable forecast transactions that involve a party external to the entity can be designated as hedged items. It follows that hedge accounting can be applied to transactions between entities or segments in the same economic entity group only in the individual or separate financial statements of those entities or segments and not in the consolidated financial statements of the economic entity group. As an exception, the foreign currency risk
- IAS 39.80; amended for public sector terminology and references to other IPSASs.
- Note: IASB improvements issued in May 2008 deleted the reference “segment” in paragraph 80, but no similar amendment was published for this paragraph. This is being clarified with the IASB.
- Should the references to segment be deleted as the principles are similar to paragraph 80?

of an ~~intra-entity group~~ monetary item within an economic entity (for example, a payable/receivable between two controlled entities ~~subsidiaries~~) may qualify as a hedged item in the consolidated financial statements if it results in an exposure to foreign exchange rate gains or losses that are not fully eliminated on consolidation in accordance with IPSAS 4, ~~IAS 21~~ “The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates”. In accordance with IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~, foreign exchange rate gains and losses on ~~intra-entity group~~ monetary items within an economic entity are not fully eliminated on consolidation when the ~~intra-entity group~~ monetary item is transacted between two ~~group~~ entities within the economic entity that have different functional currencies. In addition, the foreign currency risk of a highly probable forecast ~~intra-entity group~~ transaction within the economic entity may qualify as a hedged item in consolidated financial statements provided that the transaction is denominated in a currency other than the functional currency of the entity entering into that transaction and the foreign currency risk will affect consolidated surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Designation of Financial Items as Hedged Items

9088. If the hedged item is a financial asset or financial liability, it may be a hedged item with respect to the risks associated with only a portion of its cash flows or fair value (such as one or more selected contractual cash flows or portions of them or a percentage of the fair value) provided that effectiveness can be measured. For example, an identifiable and separately measurable portion of the interest rate exposure of an interest-bearing asset or interest-bearing liability may be designated as the hedged risk (such as a risk-free interest rate or benchmark interest rate component of the total interest rate exposure of a hedged financial instrument). IAS 39.81; no amendment.
9189. In a fair value hedge of the interest rate exposure of a portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities (and only in such a hedge), the portion hedged may be designated in terms of an amount of a currency (for example, an amount of dollars, euro, pounds or rand) rather than as individual assets (or liabilities). Although the portfolio may, for risk management purposes, include assets and liabilities, the amount designated is an amount of assets or an amount of liabilities. Designation of a net amount including assets and liabilities is not permitted. The entity may hedge a portion of the interest rate risk associated with this designated amount. For example, in the case of a hedge of a portfolio containing prepayable assets, the entity may hedge the change in fair value that is attributable to a change in the hedged interest rate on the basis of expected, rather than contractual, repricing dates. When the portion hedged is based on expected repricing dates, the effect that changes in the hedged interest rate have on those expected repricing dates IAS 39.81A; no amendment.

shall be included when determining the change in the fair value of the hedged item. Consequently, if a portfolio that contains prepayable items is hedged with a non-prepayable derivative, ineffectiveness arises if the dates on which items in the hedged portfolio are expected to prepay are revised, or actual prepayment dates differ from those expected.

Designation of Non-Financial Items as Hedged Items

- | | | |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 920. | If the hedged item is a non-financial asset or non-financial liability, it shall be designated as a hedged item (a) for foreign currency risks, or (b) in its entirety for all risks, because of the difficulty of isolating and measuring the appropriate portion of the cash flows or fair value changes attributable to specific risks other than foreign currency risks. | IAS 39.82; no amendment. |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|

Designation of Groups of Items as Hedged Items

- | | | |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 934. | Similar assets or similar liabilities shall be aggregated and hedged as a group only if the individual assets or individual liabilities in the group share the risk exposure that is designated as being hedged. Furthermore, the change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk for each individual item in the group shall be expected to be approximately proportional to the overall change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk of the group of items. | IAS 39.83; no amendment. |
| 942. | Because an entity assesses hedge effectiveness by comparing the change in the fair value or cash flow of a hedging instrument (or group of similar hedging instruments) and a hedged item (or group of similar hedged items), comparing a hedging instrument with an overall net position (for example, the net of all fixed rate assets and fixed rate liabilities with similar maturities), rather than with a specific hedged item, does not qualify for hedge accounting. | IAS 39.84; no amendment. |

Hedge Accounting

- | | | |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 953. | Hedge accounting recognizes the offsetting effects on surplus or deficit profit or loss of changes in the fair values of the hedging instrument and the hedged item. | IAS 39.85; amended for public sector terminology. |
| 964. | Hedging relationships are of three types:

(a) <i>Fair value hedge</i> : a hedge of the exposure to changes in fair value of a recognized asset or liability or an unrecognized firm commitment, or an identified portion of such an asset, liability or firm commitment, that is attributable to a particular risk and could affect surplus or deficit profit or loss .

(b) <i>Cash flow hedge</i> : a hedge of the exposure to variability in cash flows that (i) is attributable to a particular risk associated with a recognized asset or liability (such as all or | IAS 39.86; amended for public sector terminology and references to IPSAS. |

some future interest payments on variable rate debt) or a highly probable forecast transaction and (ii) could affect surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

(c) *Hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation as defined in IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~.*

975. A hedge of the foreign currency risk of a firm commitment may be accounted for as a fair value hedge or as a cash flow hedge. IAS 39.87; no amendment.

986. A hedging relationship qualifies for hedge accounting under paragraphs 927–1131 if, and only if, all of the following conditions are met. IAS 39.88; amended for public sector terminology. ~~no amendment.~~

(a) At the inception of the hedge there is formal designation and documentation of the hedging relationship and the entity's risk management objective and strategy for undertaking the hedge. That documentation shall include identification of the hedging instrument, the hedged item or transaction, the nature of the risk being hedged and how the entity will assess the hedging instrument's effectiveness in offsetting the exposure to changes in the hedged item's fair value or cash flows attributable to the hedged risk.

(b) The hedge is expected to be highly effective (see Appendix A paragraphs AG1493–AG16054) in achieving offsetting changes in fair value or cash flows attributable to the hedged risk, consistently with the originally documented risk management strategy for that particular hedging relationship.

(c) For cash flow hedges, a forecast transaction that is the subject of the hedge must be highly probable and must present an exposure to variations in cash flows that could ultimately affect surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

(d) The effectiveness of the hedge can be reliably measured, i.e. the fair value or cash flows of the hedged item that are attributable to the hedged risk and the fair value of the hedging instrument can be reliably measured (see paragraphs 486 and 497 and Appendix A paragraphs AG1171 and AG1182 for guidance on determining fair value).

(e) The hedge is assessed on an ongoing basis and determined actually to have been highly effective throughout the financial reporting periods for which the hedge was designated.

Fair Value Hedges

997. If a fair value hedge meets the conditions in paragraph 986 during the period, it shall be accounted for as follows: IAS 39.89; amended for public sector terminology and references to IPSASs.

- (a) The gain or loss from remeasuring the hedging instrument at fair value (for a derivative hedging instrument) or the foreign currency component of its carrying amount measured in accordance with IPSAS 4 IAS 21 (for a non-derivative hedging instrument) shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~; and
- (b) The gain or loss on the hedged item attributable to the hedged risk shall adjust the carrying amount of the hedged item and be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. This applies if the hedged item is otherwise measured at cost. Recognition of the gain or loss attributable to the hedged risk in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ applies if the hedged item is an available-for-sale financial asset.

1009
8.

For a fair value hedge of the interest rate exposure of a portion of a portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities (and only in such a hedge), the requirement in paragraph 997(b) may be met by presenting the gain or loss attributable to the hedged item either:

IAS 39.89A; no amendment.

- (a) In a single separate line item within assets, for those repricing time periods for which the hedged item is an asset; or
- (b) In a single separate line item within liabilities, for those repricing time periods for which the hedged item is a liability.

The separate line items referred to in (a) and (b) above shall be presented next to financial assets or financial liabilities. Amounts included in these line items shall be removed from the statement of financial position when the assets or liabilities to which they relate are derecognized.

1019
9.

If only particular risks attributable to a hedged item are hedged, recognized changes in the fair value of the hedged item unrelated to the hedged risk are recognized as set out in paragraph 642.

IAS 39.90; no amendment.

1020.

An entity shall discontinue prospectively the hedge accounting specified in paragraph 997 if:

IAS 39.91; no amendment.

- (a) The hedging instrument expires or is sold, terminated or exercised (for this purpose, the replacement or rollover of a hedging instrument into another hedging instrument is not an expiration or termination if such replacement or rollover is part of the entity's documented hedging strategy);
- (b) the hedge no longer meets the criteria for hedge accounting in paragraph 986; or
- (c) The entity revokes the designation.

1034. Any adjustment arising from paragraph 997(b) to the carrying amount of a hedged financial instrument for which the effective interest method is used (or, in the case of a portfolio hedge of interest rate risk, to the separate line item in the statement of financial position described in paragraph 10098) shall be amortized to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. Amortization may begin as soon as an adjustment exists and shall begin no later than when the hedged item ceases to be adjusted for changes in its fair value attributable to the risk being hedged. The adjustment is based on a recalculated effective interest rate at the date amortization begins. However, if, in the case of a fair value hedge of the interest rate exposure of a portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities (and only in such a hedge), amortizing using a recalculated effective interest rate is not practicable, the adjustment shall be amortized using a straight-line method. The adjustment shall be amortized fully by maturity of the financial instrument or, in the case of a portfolio hedge of interest rate risk, by expiry of the relevant repricing time period.
- IAS 39.92; amended for public sector terminology.
1042. When an unrecognized firm commitment is designated as a hedged item, the subsequent cumulative change in the fair value of the firm commitment attributable to the hedged risk is recognized as an asset or liability with a corresponding gain or loss recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (see paragraph 997(b)). The changes in the fair value of the hedging instrument are also recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.
- IAS 39.93; amended for public sector terminology.
1053. When an entity enters into a firm commitment to acquire an asset or assume a liability that is a hedged item in a fair value hedge, the initial carrying amount of the asset or liability that results from the entity meeting the firm commitment is adjusted to include the cumulative change in the fair value of the firm commitment attributable to the hedged risk that was recognized in the statement of financial position.
- IAS 39.94; ~~amended for public sector terminology~~ no amendment.

Cash Flow Hedges

1064. If a cash flow hedge meets the conditions in paragraph 986 during the period, it shall be accounted for as follows:
- IAS 39.95; amended for public sector terminology.
- (a) The portion of the gain or loss on the hedging instrument that is determined to be an effective hedge (see paragraph 986) shall be recognized directly in net assets/equity through the statement of changes in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~; and
 - (b) The ineffective portion of the gain or loss on the hedging instrument shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

1075. More specifically, a cash flow hedge is accounted for as follows:
- (a) The separate component of net assets/equity associated with the hedged item is adjusted to the lesser of the following (in absolute amounts):
 - (i) The cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument from inception of the hedge; and
 - (ii) The cumulative change in fair value (present value) of the expected future cash flows on the hedged item from inception of the hedge;
 - (b) Any remaining gain or loss on the hedging instrument or designated component of it (that is not an effective hedge) is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~; and
 - (c) If an entity's documented risk management strategy for a particular hedging relationship excludes from the assessment of hedge effectiveness a specific component of the gain or loss or related cash flows on the hedging instrument (see paragraphs 831, 842 and 986(a)), that excluded component of gain or loss is recognized in accordance with paragraph 642.
- IAS 39.96; amended for public sector terminology.
1086. **If a hedge of a forecast transaction subsequently results in the recognition of a financial asset or a financial liability, the associated gains or losses that were recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with paragraph 1064 shall be reclassified ~~from equity into surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment (see IAS 1 (as revised in 2007)) in the same period or periods during which the hedged forecast transaction asset acquired or liability assumed affects surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (such as in the periods that interest revenue income or interest expense is recognized). However, if an entity expects that all or a portion of a loss recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ will not be recovered in one or more future periods, it shall reclassify into surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ the amount that is not expected to be recovered.**
- IAS 39.97; amended for public sector terminology.
- Deleted reference to “a reclassification adjustment” as this change was made as a result of revisions made to IAS 1 in 2007. Previous version of IAS 39.97 refers to gains and losses recognized directly in net assets/equity; and refers to “reclassified”.
- Amended term “income” to “revenue”.
- Included amendment from IASB improvements project 08/09 even though not approved. Amendment is as follows: ...in the same period or periods during which the hedged forecast transaction asset acquired or liability assumed affects surplus or deficit
The amendment that proposes to add ‘as a reclassification adjustment’ to the last sentence has not been added as this changes relates to revisions made to IAS 1 which have not been considered by the IPSASB.
1097. **If a hedge of a forecast transaction subsequently results in the recognition of a non-financial asset or a non-financial liability, or a forecast transaction for a non-financial asset or non-financial liability becomes a firm commitment for which fair value hedge accounting is applied, then the entity shall adopt (a) or (b) below:**
- (a) It reclassifies the associated gains and losses that were recognized directly in net
- IAS 39.98; amended for public sector terminology.
- Deleted reference to “a reclassification adjustment” as this change was made as a result of revisions made to IAS 1 in 2007. Previous version of IAS 39.908 refers to “recognized directly in equity”
- Deleted reference to “cost of sales” as this

	<p>assets/equity other comprehensive income in accordance with paragraph 1064 <u>into surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment</u> (see IAS 1 (revised 2007)) in the same period or periods during which the asset acquired or liability assumed affects <u>surplus or deficit profit or loss</u> (such as in the periods that depreciation <u>or inventories are recognized as an expense or cost of sales is recognized</u>). However, if an entity expects that all or a portion of a loss recognized <u>directly in net assets/equity other comprehensive income</u> will not be recovered in one or more future periods, it shall reclassify from <u>net assets/equity into surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment</u> the amount that is not expected to be recovered.</p>	<p>classification is not likely in the public sector. Instead redrafted to refer to inventories being recognized as an expense.</p>
	<p>(b) It removes the associated gains and losses that were recognized <u>directly in net assets/equity other comprehensive income</u> in accordance with paragraph 10604, and includes them in the initial cost or other carrying amount of the asset or liability.</p>	
1109 8	<p>An entity shall adopt either (a) or (b) in paragraph 1097 as its accounting policy and shall apply it consistently to all hedges to which paragraph 1097 relates.</p>	<p>IAS 39.99; no amendment.</p>
1119 9	<p>For cash flow hedges other than those covered by paragraphs 1086 and 1097, amounts that had been recognized <u>directly in net assets/equity other comprehensive income</u> shall be <u>recognized in reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment</u> (see IAS 1 (revised 2007)) in the same period or periods during which the hedged forecast <u>cash flows transaction</u> affects <u>surplus or deficit profit or loss</u> (for example, when a forecast sale occurs).</p>	<p>IAS 39.100; amended for public sector terminology.</p> <p>Deleted reference to “a reclassification adjustment” as this change was made as a result of revisions made to IAS 1 in 2007.</p> <p><u>Included IASB 08/09 improvements which replaces the word ‘transaction’ with ‘cash flows’ in the last sentence.</u></p>
1129	<p>In any of the following circumstances an entity shall discontinue prospectively the hedge accounting specified in paragraphs 1064–1109:</p> <p>(a) The hedging instrument expires or is sold, terminated or exercised (for this purpose, the replacement or rollover of a hedging instrument into another hedging instrument is not an expiration or termination if such replacement or rollover is part of the entity’s documented hedging strategy). In this case, the cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument that has been <u>remains</u> recognized <u>directly in net assets/equity other comprehensive income</u> from the period when the hedge was effective (see paragraph 1064(a)) shall remain separately <u>recognized in net assets/equity</u> until the forecast transaction occurs. When the transaction occurs, paragraph 1086, 1097 or 1109 applies.</p>	<p>IAS 39.101; amended for public sector terminology.</p> <p>IAS 1 changes not yet effected to IPSAS 1, reverted to original text.</p>

- (b) The hedge no longer meets the criteria for hedge accounting in paragraph 986. In this case, the cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument that remains ~~has been~~ recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ from the period when the hedge was effective (see paragraph 1064(a)) shall remain separately recognized in net assets/equity until the forecast transaction occurs. When the transaction occurs, paragraph 1086, 1097 or 1109 applies.
- (c) The forecast transaction is no longer expected to occur, in which case any related cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument that has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ from the period when the hedge was effective (see paragraph 1064(a)) shall be recognized in ~~reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment~~. A forecast transaction that is no longer highly probable (see paragraph 986(c)) may still be expected to occur.
- (d) The entity revokes the designation. For hedges of a forecast transaction, the cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument that remains ~~has been~~ recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ from the period when the hedge was effective (see paragraph 1064(a)) shall remain separately recognized in net assets/equity until the forecast transaction occurs or is no longer expected to occur. When the transaction occurs, paragraph 1086, 1097 or 1109 applies. If the transaction is no longer expected to occur, the cumulative gain or loss that had been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ shall be recognized in ~~reclassified from net assets/equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment~~.

IAS 1 changes not yet effected to IPSAS 1, reverted to original text.

Hedges of a Net Investment

- 1134. Hedges of a net investment in a foreign operation, including a hedge of a monetary item that is accounted for as part of the net investment (see IPSAS 4 IAS 21), shall be accounted for similarly to cash flow hedges:
 - (a) The portion of the gain or loss on the hedging instrument that is determined to be an effective hedge (see paragraph 986) shall be recognized directly in net assets/equity through the statement of changes in net assets/equity (see IPSAS 1) ~~other comprehensive income~~; and

IAS 39.102; amended for public sector terminology.

Deleted reference to “a reclassification adjustment” as this change was made as a result of revisions made to IAS 1 in 2007; reverted to original text.

- (b) The ineffective portion shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

The gain or loss on the hedging instrument relating to the effective portion of the hedge that has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ shall be recognized in reclassified from net assets/equity to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment~~ (see ~~IAS 1 (revised 2007)~~) in accordance with paragraphs 56–57 of IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ on the disposal or period ~~partial~~ disposal of the foreign operation.

Amendments to IAS 27 not considered yet in IPSAS, therefore references to “partial-period disposal” omitted. ‘Period’ disposal agrees with June 08 electronic version of IAS39.

Effective Date and Transition Transitional Provisions

~~An entity shall apply this Standard (including the amendments issued in March 2004) for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2005. Earlier application is permitted. An entity shall not apply this Standard (including the amendments issued in March 2004) for annual periods beginning before 1 January 2005 unless it also applies IAS 32 (issued December 2003). If an entity applies this Standard for a period beginning before 1 January 2005, it shall disclose that fact.~~

IAS 39.102 Not applicable for first time adoption of IPSAS.

Effective date paragraph prescribes the early adoption of IAS 32 if IAS 39 early adopted.

~~An entity shall apply the amendment in paragraph 2(j) for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006. If an entity applies IFRIC 5 *Rights to Interests arising from Decommissioning, Restoration and Environmental Rehabilitation Funds* for an earlier period, this amendment shall be applied for that earlier period.~~

IAS 39.103A Not applicable to the first time adoption of IPSAS.

~~*Financial Guarantee Contracts* (Amendments to IAS 39 and IFRS 4), issued in August 2005, amended paragraphs 2(e) and (h), 4, 47 and AG4, added paragraph AG4A, added a new definition of financial guarantee contracts in paragraph 9, and deleted paragraph 3. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006. Earlier application is encouraged. If an entity applies these changes for an earlier period, it shall disclose that fact and apply the related amendments to IAS 32* and IFRS 4 at the same time.~~

IAS 39.103B Not applicable to the first time adoption of IPSAS.

~~IAS 1 (as revised in 2007) amended the terminology used throughout IFRSs. In addition it amended paragraphs 26, 27, 34, 54, 55, 57, 67, 68, 95(a), 97, 98, 100, 102, 105, 108, AG4D, AG4E(d)(i), AG56, AG67, AG83 and AG99B. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. If an entity applies IAS 1 (revised 2007) for an earlier period, the amendments shall be applied for that earlier period.~~

IAS 39.103C - Not applicable as these amendments have not been incorporated into the IPSAS.

~~IFRS 3 (as revised in 2008) deleted paragraph 2(f). An entity shall apply that amendment for annual periods~~

IAS 39.103D; retained exclusion in scope.

~~beginning on or after 1 July 2009. If an entity applies IFRS 3 (revised 2008) for an earlier period, the amendment shall also be applied for that earlier period.~~

~~IAS 27 (as amended in 2008) amended paragraph 102. An entity shall apply that amendment for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2009. If an entity applies IAS 27 (amended 2008) for an earlier period, the amendment shall be applied for that earlier period.~~

~~An entity shall apply the amendment in paragraph 2 for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. If an entity applies *Puttable Financial Instruments and Obligations Arising on Liquidation* (amendments to IAS 32 and IAS 1) issued in February 2008, for an earlier period, the amendment in paragraph 2 shall be applied for that earlier period.~~

~~*Reclassification of Financial Assets* (Amendments to IAS 39 and IFRS 7), issued in October 2008, amended paragraphs 50 and AG8, and added paragraphs 50B–50F. An entity shall apply those amendments from 1 July 2008. An entity shall not reclassify a financial asset in accordance with paragraph 50B, 50D or 50E before 1 July 2008. Any reclassification of a financial asset made in periods beginning on or after 1 November 2008 shall take effect only from the date when the reclassification is made. Any reclassification of a financial asset in accordance with paragraph 50B, 50D or 50E shall not be applied retrospectively to reporting periods ended before the effective date set out in this paragraph.~~

~~An entity shall apply paragraphs AG99BA, AG99E, AG99F, AG110A and AG110B retrospectively for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2009, in accordance with IAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies *Eligible Hedged Items* (Amendment to IAS 39) for periods beginning before 1 July 2009, it shall disclose that fact.~~

~~Improvements to IFRSs issued in [date] amended paragraphs 2(g), 11A, 97–100 and AG33(d). An entity shall apply those amendments prospectively for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2010. earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies the amendments for an earlier period it shall disclose that fact.~~

~~An entity shall apply the amended paragraph 12 for annual periods ending on or after 15 December 2008.~~

1142. This Standard shall be applied retrospectively except as specified in paragraphs 1153–1242. The opening balance of accumulated surplus or deficit retained earnings for the earliest prior period

IAS 39.103E

Consider when updating IPSAS 6.

IAS 39.103F; from amendments to IAS 32 on puttable instruments. Not applicable, as changes will be adopted once IPSAS effective & all financial instrument IPSASs to be adopted simultaneously.

IAS 39.103G – Resulting from reclassification amendments to IAS 39 and IFRS 7

Not included as only applicable to those entities that have applied a version of IAS 39; these changes are effective immediately and would have been applied by the time the IPSAS is introduced.

IAS 39.103G – consequential amendments as a result of changes made to IAS 39 on eligible hedged items.

Not included as these changes would already have been applied once IPSAS becomes effective.

Note: both amendments numbered 103G in the IASs.

IAS 39.103H; transitional provisions relating to the IASB 08/09 improvements.

IAS 39.103J; transitional provisions relating to the IASB's amendments relating to embedded derivatives published in December 2008.

IAS 39.104; amended for public sector terminology.

presented and all other comparative amounts shall be adjusted as if this Standard had always been in use unless restating the information would be impracticable. If restatement is impracticable, the entity shall disclose that fact and indicate the extent to which the information was restated.

1153. When this Standard is first applied, an entity is permitted to designate a financial asset, including those that may have been recognized ~~a previously, recognized financial asset as available for sale~~. For any such financial asset the entity shall recognize all cumulative changes in fair value in a separate component of net assets/equity until subsequent derecognition or impairment, when the entity shall transfer ~~reclassify~~ that cumulative gain or loss ~~from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment (see IAS 1 (revised 2007))~~. For financial assets that were previously recognized, ~~The entity shall also:~~

- (a) Restate the financial asset using the new designation in the comparative financial statements; and
- (b) Disclose the fair value of the financial assets at the date of designation and their classification and carrying amount in the previous financial statements.

1164. ~~An entity shall apply paragraphs 11A, 48A, AG4B–AG4K, AG33A and AG33B and the 2005 amendments in paragraphs 9, 12 and 13 for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006. Earlier application is encouraged.~~

1175. When this Standard is first applied, an entity is permitted to designate a financial asset or a financial liability, including those that may have been recognized previously, at fair value through surplus or deficit that meet the criteria for designation in ~~An entity that first applies paragraphs 108, 131, 142, 153, 5149 AG68–AG157, AG468 and AG489. Where an entity previously recognized financial assets and financial liabilities, the following apply:~~

- (a) ~~Is permitted, when those new and amended paragraphs are first applied, to designate as at fair value through profit or loss any previously recognized financial asset or financial liability that then qualifies for such designation. When the annual period begins before 1 September 2005, such designations need not be completed until 1 September 2005 and may also include financial assets and financial liabilities recognized between the beginning of that annual period and 1 September 2005. Notwithstanding paragraph 11109, any~~

IAS 39.105.; amended wording slightly to cater for entities that are adopting accrual accounting for the first time, as well as those that are applying this Standard for the first time but already apply an accrual basis of accounting.

Approach for designation on initial application of the Standard consistent with IFRS 1.

IAS 1 amendments not yet considered by IPSASB, therefore reverted to original text which refers to a transfer rather than a reclassification.

IAS 39.105A

11A, AG33A and AG33B – Embedded derivatives

48A – Best evidence of fair value

AG4B – AG4K – Designation of instruments at fair value.

IAS 39.105B – Retained transitional provisions from IAS 39 as they will be relevant for entities adopting this Standard for the first time. Approach for designation on initial application of the Standard consistent with IFRS 1.

However, have amended the paragraph so that it can cater for entities that are adopting accrual accounting for the first time, as well as those that are applying this Standard for the first time but already apply an accrual basis of accounting.

Sub-paragraphs (a) to (d) have been included as some entities may have adopted IAS 39 or a version thereof.

financial assets and financial liabilities designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in accordance with this subparagraph that were previously designated as the hedged item in fair value hedge accounting relationships shall be de-designated from those relationships at the same time they are designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

- (b) Shall disclose the fair value of any financial assets or financial liabilities designated in accordance with subparagraph (a) at the date of designation and their classification and carrying amount in the previous financial statements.
- (c) Shall de-designate any financial asset or financial liability previously designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ if it does not qualify for such designation in accordance with those ~~new and amended~~ paragraphs. When a financial asset or financial liability will be measured at amortized cost after de-designation, the date of de-designation is deemed to be its date of initial recognition.
- (d) Shall disclose the fair value of any financial assets or financial liabilities de-designated in accordance with subparagraph (c) at the date of de-designation and their new classifications.

~~An entity that first applies paragraphs 11A, 48A, AG4B AG4K, AG33A and AG33B and the 2005 amendments in paragraphs 9, 12 and 13 in its annual period beginning on or after 1 January 2006~~

IAS 39.105C; deleted as the approach in the preceding paragraph has been adopted.

- ~~(a) shall de-designate any financial asset or financial liability previously designated as at fair value through profit or loss only if it does not qualify for such designation in accordance with those new and amended paragraphs. When a financial asset or financial liability will be measured at amortized cost after de designation, the date of de designation is deemed to be its date of initial recognition.~~
- ~~(b) shall not designate as at fair value through profit or loss any previously recognized financial assets or financial liabilities.~~
- ~~(c) shall disclose the fair value of any financial assets or financial liabilities de-designated in accordance with subparagraph (a) at the date of de designation and their new classifications.~~

- 1186. An entity shall restate its comparative financial statements using the new designations in paragraph 11715 ~~or 105C~~ provided that, in the case of a financial asset, financial liability, or group of financial assets, financial liabilities or both,

IAS 39.105D; retained and amended terminology.

designated as at fair value through ~~surplus or deficit~~ ~~profit or loss~~, those items or groups would have met the criteria in paragraph ~~108(b)(i)~~, ~~108(b)(ii)~~ or 11 at the beginning of the comparative period or, if acquired after the beginning of the comparative period, would have met the criteria in paragraph ~~108(b)(i)~~, ~~108(b)(ii)~~ or ~~131~~ at the date of initial recognition.

1197. Except as permitted by paragraph ~~12018~~, an entity shall apply the derecognition requirements in paragraphs ~~175–397~~ and Appendix A paragraphs ~~AG502–AG724~~ prospectively. If an entity derecognized financial assets under another basis of accounting as a result of a transaction that occurred before the adoption of this Standard and those assets would not have been derecognized under this Standard, it shall not recognize those assets. Accordingly, if an entity derecognized financial assets under IAS 39 (revised 2000) as a result of a transaction that occurred before 1 January 2004 and those assets would not have been derecognized under this Standard, it shall not recognize those assets.

IAS 39.106 (similar to IFRS 1.27 and 27A); amended to refer to “another basis of accounting” rather than IAS 39.

- ~~1204~~ 8. Notwithstanding paragraph ~~1197~~, an entity may apply the derecognition requirements in paragraphs ~~175–397~~ and Appendix A paragraphs ~~AG502–AG724~~ retrospectively from a date of the entity’s choosing, provided that the information needed to apply this Standard ~~IAS 39~~ to assets and liabilities derecognized as a result of past transactions was obtained at the time of initially accounting for those transactions.

IAS 39.107 (similar to IFRS 1.27 and 27A)

- ~~1214~~ 9. Notwithstanding paragraph ~~1142~~, an entity may apply the requirements in the last sentence of paragraph ~~AG11206~~, and paragraph ~~AG11397~~, in either of the following ways:

IAS 39.107A (same as IFRS 1.25G)

Amended to allow entities to either apply the requirements prospectively, or retrospectively provided the relevant information is available.

- (a) Prospectively to transactions entered into after the adoption of this Standard ~~after 25 October 2002~~; or
- (b) Retrospectively from a date of the entity’s choosing, provided that the information needed to apply this Standard ~~IAS 39~~ to assets and liabilities as a result of past transactions was obtained at the time of initially accounting for those transactions. At prospectively to transactions entered into after 1 January 2004.

- ~~1229~~. An entity shall not adjust the carrying amount of non-financial assets and non-financial liabilities to exclude gains and losses related to cash flow hedges that were included in the carrying amount before the beginning of the financial year in which this Standard is first applied. At the beginning of the financial period in which this Standard is first applied, any amount recognized ~~outside profit or loss (in other comprehensive income or directly in net assets/equity)~~ for a hedge of a firm commitment

IAS 39.108 – retained. Given that some entities have applied IAS 39 or a version thereof, propose to retain this transitional provision, ~~but believe that the transitional provision in IFRS 1 for hedge accounting may be usefully combined with these transitional provisions, albeit it as a new paragraph.~~

~~IFRS 1.29 states: An entity shall not reflect in its opening IFRS statement of financial~~

that under this Standard is accounted for as a fair value hedge shall be reclassified as an asset or liability, except for a hedge of foreign currency risk that continues to be treated as a cash flow hedge.

~~position a hedging relationship of a type that does not qualify for hedge accounting under IAS 39 (for example, many hedging relationships where the hedging instrument is a cash instrument or written option; where the hedged item is a net position; or where the hedge covers interest risk in a held-to-maturity investment).~~

1234. ~~An entity shall apply the last sentence of paragraph 80, and paragraphs AG99A and AG99B, for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006. Earlier application is encouraged. If an entity has designated as the hedged item an external forecast transaction that:~~

IAS 39.108A – retained. Given that some entities have applied IAS 39 or a version thereof, propose to retain this transitional provision, ~~but believe that the transitional provision in IFRS 1 for hedge accounting may be usefully combined with these transitional provisions, albeit it as a new paragraph.~~

- (a) Is denominated in the functional currency of the entity entering into the transaction;
- (b) Gives rise to an exposure that will have an effect on consolidated surplus or deficit profit or loss (i.e. is denominated in a currency other than the economic entity's group's presentation currency); and
- (c) Would have qualified for hedge accounting had it not been denominated in the functional currency of the entity entering into it,

it may apply hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements in the period(s) before the date of first application of this Standard ~~the last sentence of paragraph 80, and paragraphs AG99A and AG99B.~~

1242. ~~An entity need not apply paragraph AG1393 to comparative information relating to periods before the date of application of the last sentence of paragraph 975 and paragraph AG1371.~~

IAS 39.108B; retained with no amendment. See rationale outlined above.

~~Paragraphs 9, 73 and AG8 were amended and paragraph 50A added by *Improvements to IFRSs* issued in May 2008. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. An entity shall apply the amendments in paragraphs 9 and 50A as of the date and in the manner it applied the 2005 amendments described in paragraph 105A. Earlier application of all the amendments is permitted. If an entity applies the amendments for an earlier period it shall disclose that fact.~~

IAS 39.108C; resulting from improvements project.

Not included as amendments will be adopted as part of the IPSASs when it becomes effective.

Effective Date

1253. An entity shall apply this International Public Sector Accounting Standard for annual financial statements covering periods beginning on or after Month, Day, Year. Earlier application is encouraged. If an entity adopts this Standard for a period beginning before Month, Day, Year, it shall disclose that fact.

Added standard wording included in IPSAS.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1264. <u>An entity shall not apply this International Public Sector Accounting Standard before Month, Day, Year, unless it also applies ED 37 and ED 39.</u> | Added paragraph to explain the early adoption of the financial instrument standards as a package of Standards. |
| 1275. <u>When an entity adopts the accrual basis of accounting, as defined by International Public Sector Accounting Standards, for financial reporting purposes, subsequent to this effective date, this Standard applies to the entity's annual financial statements covering periods beginning on or after the date of adoption.</u> | Standard wording in IPSASs. |

Withdrawal of Other Pronouncements

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>This Standard supersedes IAS 39, "Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement" revised in October 2000.</u> | <u>IAS 39.109; deleted as not relevant to the IPSAS.</u> |
| <u>This Standard and the accompanying Implementation Guidance supersede the Implementation Guidance issued by the IAS 39 Implementation Guidance Committee, established by the former IASC.</u> | <u>IAS 39.110; deleted as not relevant to the IPSAS.</u> |

Appendix A - Application Guidance

This appendix is an integral part of ~~ED 38~~the Standard.

Scope (paragraphs 2–~~86~~)

- AG1 This Standard does not change the requirements relating to employee benefit plans that comply with the international or national accounting standard on ~~IAS 26~~ accounting and reporting by retirement benefit plans and royalty agreements based on the volume of sales or service revenues that are accounted for under IPSAS 9 ~~IAS 18~~.
- IAS 39.AG2; amended references from IFRSs to IPSASs.

Investments in Controlled Entities, Associates and Joint Ventures

- AG2 Sometimes, an entity makes what it views as a ‘strategic investment’ in equity instruments issued by another entity, with the intention of establishing or maintaining a long-term operating relationship with the entity in which the investment is made. The investor entity uses IPSAS 7 ~~IAS 28~~ to determine whether the equity method of accounting is appropriate for such an investment. Similarly, the investor entity uses IPSAS 8 ~~IAS 31~~ to determine whether proportionate consolidation or the equity method is appropriate for such an investment. If neither the equity method nor proportionate consolidation is appropriate, the entity applies this Standard to that strategic investment.
- IAS 39.AG2; amended references to IPSASs.
- AG3 ~~IPSAS 6, “Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements”, allows an entity to measure its investment in a controlled entity, associate or joint venture in its separate financial statements either:~~
- ~~• At cost;~~
 - ~~• Using the equity method; or~~
 - ~~• As a financial instrument.~~
- Added paragraph from IAS 32 to explain application of this Standard to such investments.
- AG4 ~~Where an entity elects to measure an investment in a controlled entity, associate or joint venture as a financial instrument, the requirements of this Standard apply.~~
- Added paragraph from IAS 32 to explain application of this Standard to such investments.

Insurance Contracts

- AG~~35~~ This Standard applies to the financial assets and financial liabilities of insurers, other than rights and obligations that paragraph 2(e) excludes because they arise from insurance contracts ~~under contracts within the scope of IFRS 4~~. An entity does however apply this Standard to financial guarantee contracts as well as embedded derivatives included in insurance contracts.
- IAS 39.AG3A; deleted references to contracts within the scope of IFRS 4 and referred to insurance contracts in general.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

An entity may, but is not required to, apply this Standard to other insurance contracts that involve the transfer of financial risks.

AG46 Financial guarantee contracts may have various legal forms, such as a guarantee, some types of letter of credit, a credit default contract or an insurance contract. Their accounting treatment does not depend on their legal form. The following are examples of the appropriate treatment (see paragraph 2(e)):

- (a) ~~Although a financial guarantee contract meets the definition of an insurance contract in IFRS 4 if the risk transferred is significant, the issuer applies this Standard. Nevertheless, if the issuer has previously asserted explicitly that it regards such contracts as insurance contracts and has used accounting applicable to insurance contracts, the issuer may elect to apply either this Standard or IFRS 4 to such financial guarantee contracts. If this Standard applies, paragraph 453~~ requires the issuer to recognize a financial guarantee contract initially at fair value. If the financial guarantee contract was issued to an unrelated party in a stand-alone arm's length transaction, its fair value at inception is likely to equal the premium received, unless there is evidence to the contrary. Subsequently, unless the financial guarantee contract was designated at inception as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ or unless paragraphs 3129-397 and AG679-AG724 apply (when a transfer of a financial asset does not qualify for derecognition or the continuing involvement approach applies), the issuer measures it at the higher of:
 - (i) The amount determined in accordance with IPSAS 19 ~~IAS 37~~; and
 - (ii) The amount initially recognized less, when appropriate, cumulative amortization recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9 ~~IAS 18~~ (see paragraph 497(c)).
- (b) Some credit-related guarantees do not, as a precondition for payment, require that the holder is exposed to, and has incurred a loss on, the failure of the debtor to make payments on the guaranteed asset when due. An example of such a guarantee is one that requires payments in response to changes in a specified credit rating or credit index. Such guarantees are not financial guarantee contracts, as defined in this Standard, and are not insurance contracts, ~~as defined in IFRS 4~~. Such guarantees are derivatives and the issuer applies this Standard to them.

IAS 39.AG4; amended based on the amended scope which does not allow entities to either apply IFRS 4 or ED38 to financial guarantee contracts. -

Review once guidance on financial guarantees included

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- (c) If a financial guarantee contract was issued in connection with the sale of goods, the issuer applies IPSAS 9 ~~IAS 18~~ in determining when it recognizes the revenue from the guarantee and from the sale of goods.

~~Assertions that an issuer regards contracts as insurance contracts are typically found throughout the issuer's communications with customers and regulators, contracts, business documentation and financial statements. Furthermore, insurance contracts are often subject to accounting requirements that are distinct from the requirements for other types of transaction, such as contracts issued by banks or commercial companies. In such cases, an issuer's financial statements typically include a statement that the issuer has used those accounting requirements.~~

IAS 39.AG4A; deleted as this requirement has been amended.

- AG~~57~~ Some contracts require a payment based on climatic, geological or other physical variables. (Those based on climatic variables are sometimes referred to as 'weather derivatives'.) If those contracts are not insurance contracts ~~within the scope of IFRS 4~~, they are within the scope of this Standard.

IAS 39.AG1; amended as all insurance contracts are in principle outside the scope of this Standard and not just those included in IFRS 4.

Relocated to a section dealing with insurance contracts.

Definitions (paragraphs 97 and 108)

Designation as at Fair Value through Surplus or Deficit ~~profit or loss~~

- AG~~68~~ Paragraph 108 of this Standard allows an entity to designate a financial asset, a financial liability, or a group of financial instruments (financial assets, financial liabilities or both) as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ provided that doing so results in more relevant information.

IAS 39.AG4B; amended for public sector terminology.

- AG~~79~~ The decision of an entity to designate a financial asset or financial liability as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is similar to an accounting policy choice (although, unlike an accounting policy choice, it is not required to be applied consistently to all similar transactions). When an entity has such a choice, paragraph 17(b) of IPSAS 3, ~~14(b) of IAS 8~~ "Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors" requires the chosen policy to result in the financial statements providing reliable and more relevant information about the effects of transactions, other events and conditions on the entity's financial position, financial performance or cash flows. In the case of designation as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, paragraph 108 sets out the two circumstances when the requirement for more relevant information will be met. Accordingly, to choose such designation in accordance with paragraph 108, the

IAS 39.AG4C; amended terminology to be public sector specific and amended references to IFRSs.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

entity needs to demonstrate that it falls within one (or both) of these two circumstances.

Paragraph 108(b)(i): Designation eliminates or significantly reduces a measurement or recognition inconsistency that would otherwise arise

AG840 Under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~, measurement of a financial asset or financial liability and classification of recognized changes in its value are determined by the item's classification and whether the item is part of a designated hedging relationship. Those requirements can create a measurement or recognition inconsistency (sometimes referred to as an 'accounting mismatch') when, for example, in the absence of designation as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, a financial asset would be classified as available for sale (with most changes in fair value recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~) and a liability the entity considers related would be measured at amortized cost (with changes in fair value not recognized). In such circumstances, an entity may conclude that its financial statements would provide more relevant information if both the asset and the liability were classified as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

IAS 39.AG4D; amended for public sector terminology.

AG944 The following examples show when this condition could be met. In all cases, an entity may use this condition to designate financial assets or financial liabilities as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ only if it meets the principle in paragraph 108(b)(i).

IAS 39.AG4E; amended for public sector terminology.

- (a) An entity has liabilities whose cash flows are contractually based on the performance of assets that would otherwise be classified as available for sale. For example, an insurer may have liabilities containing a discretionary participation feature that pay benefits based on realized and/or unrealized investment returns of a specified pool of the insurer's assets. If the measurement of those liabilities reflects current market prices, classifying the assets as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ means that changes in the fair value of the financial assets are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in the same period as related changes in the value of the liabilities.
- (b) An entity has liabilities under insurance contracts whose measurement incorporates current information ~~(as permitted by IFRS 4, paragraph 24)~~, and financial assets it considers related that would otherwise be classified as available for sale or measured at amortized cost.
- (c) An entity has financial assets, financial liabilities

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

or both that share a risk, such as interest rate risk, that gives rise to opposite changes in fair value that tend to offset each other. However, only some of the instruments would be measured at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (i.e. are derivatives, or are classified as held for trading). It may also be the case that the requirements for hedge accounting are not met, for example because the requirements for effectiveness in paragraph 9888 are not met.

- (d) An entity has financial assets, financial liabilities or both that share a risk, such as interest rate risk, that gives rise to opposite changes in fair value that tend to offset each other and the entity does not qualify for hedge accounting because none of the instruments is a derivative. Furthermore, in the absence of hedge accounting there is a significant inconsistency in the recognition of gains and losses. For example:

- (i) The entity has financed a portfolio of fixed rate assets that would otherwise be classified as available for sale with fixed rate debentures whose changes in fair value tend to offset each other. Reporting both the assets and the debentures at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ corrects the inconsistency that would otherwise arise from measuring the assets at fair value with changes reported in net assets/equity ~~recognised in other comprehensive income~~ and the debentures at amortized cost.
- (ii) The entity has financed a specified group of loans by issuing traded bonds whose changes in fair value tend to offset each other. If, in addition, the entity regularly buys and sells the bonds but rarely, if ever, buys and sells the loans, reporting both the loans and the bonds at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ eliminates the inconsistency in the timing of recognition of gains and losses that would otherwise result from measuring them both at amortized cost and recognizing a gain or loss each time a bond is repurchased.

IAS 1 amendments not yet considered by the IPSASB, therefore omitted.

AG102 In cases such as those described in the preceding paragraph, to designate, at initial recognition, the financial assets and financial liabilities not otherwise so measured as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ may eliminate or significantly reduce the measurement or recognition inconsistency and produce more relevant information. For practical purposes, the entity need not enter into all of the assets and liabilities giving rise to the measurement or recognition inconsistency at exactly the same time. A reasonable

IAS 39.AG4F; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

delay is permitted provided that each transaction is designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ at its initial recognition and, at that time, any remaining transactions are expected to occur.

AG1~~13~~ It would not be acceptable to designate only some of the financial assets and financial liabilities giving rise to the inconsistency as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ if to do so would not eliminate or significantly reduce the inconsistency and would therefore not result in more relevant information. However, it would be acceptable to designate only some of a number of similar financial assets or similar financial liabilities if doing so achieves a significant reduction (and possibly a greater reduction than other allowable designations) in the inconsistency. For example, assume an entity has a number of similar financial liabilities that sum to CU100¹ and a number of similar financial assets that sum to CU50 but are measured on a different basis. The entity may significantly reduce the measurement inconsistency by designating at initial recognition all of the assets but only some of the liabilities (for example, individual liabilities with a combined total of CU45) as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. However, because designation as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ can be applied only to the whole of a financial instrument, the entity in this example must designate one or more liabilities in their entirety. It could not designate either a component of a liability (e.g. changes in value attributable to only one risk, such as changes in a benchmark interest rate) or a proportion (i.e. percentage) of a liability.

IAS 39.AG4G; amended for public sector terminology.

Paragraph ~~108~~(b)(ii): A group of financial assets, financial liabilities or both is managed and its performance is evaluated on a fair value basis, in accordance with a documented risk management or investment strategy

AG1~~24~~ An entity may manage and evaluate the performance of a group of financial assets, financial liabilities or both in such a way that measuring that group at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ results in more relevant information. The focus in this instance is on the way the entity manages and evaluates performance, rather than on the nature of its financial instruments.

IAS 39.AG4H; amended for public sector terminology.

AG1~~35~~ The following examples show when this condition could be met. In all cases, an entity may use this condition to designate financial assets or financial liabilities as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ only if it meets the principle in paragraph ~~108~~(b)(ii).

IAS 39.AG4I; amended for public sector terminology and references to IFRSs.

(b) Not likely that an entity in the public sector issues 'structured products'.

¹ In this Standard, monetary amounts are denominated in 'currency units' (CU).

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- (a) The entity is a venture capital organization, mutual fund, unit trust or similar entity whose business is investing in financial assets with a view to profiting from their total return in the form of interest, ~~or dividends~~ or similar distributions and changes in fair value. IPSAS 7 IAS 28 and IPSAS 8 IAS 31 allow such investments to be excluded from their scope provided they are measured at fair value through ~~surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss. An entity may apply the same accounting policy to other investments managed on a total return basis but over which its influence is insufficient for them to be within the scope of IPSAS 7 IAS 28 or IPSAS 8 IAS 31.
- (b) The entity has financial assets and financial liabilities that share one or more risks and those risks are managed and evaluated on a fair value basis in accordance with a documented policy of asset and liability management. An example could be an entity that has issued ‘structured products’ containing multiple embedded derivatives and manages the resulting risks on a fair value basis using a mix of derivative and non-derivative financial instruments. A similar example could be an entity that originates fixed interest rate loans and manages the resulting benchmark interest rate risk using a mix of derivative and non-derivative financial instruments.
- (c) The entity is an insurer that holds a portfolio of financial assets, manages that portfolio so as to maximize its total return (i.e. interest, ~~or dividends~~ or similar distributions and changes in fair value), and evaluates its performance on that basis. The portfolio may be held to back specific liabilities, net assets/equity or both. If the portfolio is held to back specific liabilities, the condition in paragraph 108(b)(ii) may be met for the assets regardless of whether the insurer also manages and evaluates the liabilities on a fair value basis. The condition in paragraph 108(b)(ii) may be met when the insurer’s objective is to maximize total return on the assets over the longer term even if amounts paid to holders of participating contracts depend on other factors such as the amount of gains realized in a shorter period (e.g. a year) or are subject to the insurer’s discretion.

AG146 As noted above, this condition relies on the way the entity manages and evaluates performance of the group of financial instruments under consideration. Accordingly, (subject to the requirement of designation

IAS 39.AG4J; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

at initial recognition) an entity that designates financial instruments as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ on the basis of this condition shall so designate all eligible financial instruments that are managed and evaluated together.

- | | | |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG157 | Documentation of the entity's strategy need not be extensive but should be sufficient to demonstrate compliance with paragraph 108(b)(ii). Such documentation is not required for each individual item, but may be on a portfolio basis. For example, if the performance management system <u>within an entity</u> for a department —as approved by the entity's key management personnel—clearly demonstrates that its performance is evaluated on a total return basis, no further documentation is required to demonstrate compliance with paragraph 108(b)(ii). | IAS 39.AG4K; no amendment. |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|

Effective Interest Rate

- | | | |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| AG168 | In some cases, financial assets are acquired at a deep discount that reflects incurred credit losses. Entities include such incurred credit losses in the estimated cash flows when computing the effective interest rate. | IAS 39.AG5; no amendment. |
| AG179 | When applying the effective interest method, an entity generally amortizes any fees, points paid or received, transaction costs and other premiums or discounts included in the calculation of the effective interest rate over the expected life of the instrument. However, a shorter period is used if this is the period to which the fees, points paid or received, transaction costs, premiums or discounts relate. This will be the case when the variable to which the fees, points paid or received, transaction costs, premiums or discounts relate is repriced to market rates before the expected maturity of the instrument. In such a case, the appropriate amortization period is the period to the next such repricing date. For example, if a premium or discount on a floating rate instrument reflects interest that has accrued on the instrument since interest was last paid, or changes in market rates since the floating interest rate was reset to market rates, it will be amortized to the next date when the floating interest is reset to market rates. This is because the premium or discount relates to the period to the next interest reset date because, at that date, the variable to which the premium or discount relates (i.e. interest rates) is reset to market rates. If, however, the premium or discount results from a change in the credit spread over the floating rate specified in the instrument, or other variables that are not reset to market rates, it is amortized over the expected life of the instrument. | IAS 39.AG6; no amendment. |

- | | | |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| AG182 | For floating rate financial assets and floating rate | IAS 39.AG7; no amendment. |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

9 financial liabilities, periodic re-estimation of cash flows to reflect movements in market rates of interest alters the effective interest rate. If a floating rate financial asset or floating rate financial liability is recognized initially at an amount equal to the principal receivable or payable on maturity, re-estimating the future interest payments normally has no significant effect on the carrying amount of the asset or liability.

AG192¹ If an entity revises its estimates of payments or receipts, the entity shall adjust the carrying amount of the financial asset or financial liability (or group of financial instruments) to reflect actual and revised estimated cash flows. The entity recalculates the carrying amount by computing the present value of estimated future cash flows at the financial instrument's original effective interest rate or, when applicable, the revised effective interest rate calculated in accordance with paragraph 121. The adjustment is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ as revenue ~~income~~ or expense. ~~in profit or loss~~. If a financial asset is reclassified in accordance with paragraph 553, 575 or 586, and the entity subsequently increases its estimates of future cash receipts as a result of increased recoverability of those cash receipts, the effect of that increase shall be recognized as an adjustment to the effective interest rate from the date of the change in estimate rather than as an adjustment to the carrying amount of the asset at the date of the change in estimate.

IAS 39.AG8; amended for public sector terminology.

IASB Improvements Project – May 2008; reclassification amendments – October 2008.

Derivatives

AG202 Typical examples of derivatives are futures and forward, swap and option contracts. A derivative usually has a notional amount, which is an amount of currency, a number of shares, a number of units of weight or volume or other units specified in the contract. However, a derivative instrument does not require the holder or writer to invest or receive the notional amount at the inception of the contract. Alternatively, a derivative could require a fixed payment or payment of an amount that can change (but not proportionally with a change in the underlying) as a result of some future event that is unrelated to a notional amount. For example, a contract may require a fixed payment of CU1,000² if the six-month interbank offerer rate ~~LIBOR~~ increases by 100 basis points. Such a contract is a derivative even though a notional amount is not specified.

IAS 39.AG9; no amendment.

~~Retained references to LIBOR although another rate probably more appropriate for all countries (or more countries). Amended references from LIBOR to an interbank rate.~~

AG213 The definition of a derivative in this Standard includes

IAS 39.AG10; no amendment.

² In this Standard, monetary amounts are denominated in 'currency units' (CU).

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

contracts that are settled gross by delivery of the underlying item (e.g. a forward contract to purchase a fixed rate debt instrument). An entity may have a contract to buy or sell a non-financial item that can be settled net in cash or another financial instrument or by exchanging financial instruments (e.g. a contract to buy or sell a commodity at a fixed price at a future date). Such a contract is within the scope of this Standard unless it was entered into and continues to be held for the purpose of delivery of a non-financial item in accordance with the entity's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements (see paragraphs 4–~~66~~).

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| AG2 24 | One of the defining characteristics of a derivative is that it has an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors. An option contract meets that definition because the premium is less than the investment that would be required to obtain the underlying financial instrument to which the option is linked. A currency swap that requires an initial exchange of different currencies of equal fair values meets the definition because it has a zero initial net investment. | IAS 39.AG11; no amendment. |
| AG2 35 | A regular way purchase or sale gives rise to a fixed price commitment between trade date and settlement date that meets the definition of a derivative. However, because of the short duration of the commitment it is not recognized as a derivative financial instrument. Rather, this Standard provides for special accounting for such regular way contracts (see paragraphs 4038 and AG7 35 –AG7 68). | IAS 39.AG12; no amendment. |
| AG2 46 | The definition of a derivative refers to non-financial variables that are not specific to a party to the contract. These include an index of earthquake losses in a particular region and an index of temperatures in a particular city. Non-financial variables specific to a party to the contract include the occurrence or non-occurrence of a fire that damages or destroys an asset of a party to the contract. A change in the fair value of a non-financial asset is specific to the owner if the fair value reflects not only changes in market prices for such assets (a financial variable) but also the condition of the specific non-financial asset held (a non-financial variable). For example, if a guarantee of the residual value of a specific car exposes the guarantor to the risk of changes in the car's physical condition, the change in that residual value is specific to the owner of the car. | IAS 39.AG12A; no amendment. |

Transaction Costs

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG2 57 | Transaction costs include fees and commissions paid to | IAS 39.AG13; no amendment. |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

agents (including employees acting as selling agents), advisers, brokers and dealers, levies by regulatory agencies and securities exchanges, and transfer taxes and duties. Transaction costs do not include debt premiums or discounts, financing costs or internal administrative or holding costs.

Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities Held for Trading

- | | | |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG268 | Trading generally reflects active and frequent buying and selling, and financial instruments held for trading generally are used with the objective of generating a profit from short-term fluctuations in price or dealer's margin. | IAS 39.AG14; no amendment.

Consistent with the text of ED37/IPSAS XX and this Standard, retained reference to 'dealer's margin' |
| AG279 | Financial liabilities held for trading include: | IAS 39.AG15; no amendment. |
- (a) Derivative liabilities that are not accounted for as hedging instruments;
 - (b) Obligations to deliver financial assets borrowed by a short seller (i.e. an entity that sells financial assets it has borrowed and does not yet own);
 - (c) Financial liabilities that are incurred with an intention to repurchase them in the near term (e.g. a quoted debt instrument that the issuer may buy back in the near term depending on changes in its fair value); and
 - (d) Financial liabilities that are part of a portfolio of identified financial instruments that are managed together and for which there is evidence of a recent pattern of short-term profit-taking.
- The fact that a liability is used to fund trading activities does not in itself make that liability one that is held for trading.

Held-to-Maturity Investments

- | | | |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG283
0 | An entity does not have a positive intention to hold to maturity an investment in a financial asset with a fixed maturity if: | IAS 39.AG16; no amendment. |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
- (a) The entity intends to hold the financial asset for an undefined period;
 - (b) The entity stands ready to sell the financial asset (other than if a situation arises that is non-recurring and could not have been reasonably anticipated by the entity) in response to changes in market interest rates or risks, liquidity needs, changes in the availability of and the yield on alternative investments, changes in financing

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

sources and terms or changes in foreign currency risk; or

- (c) The issuer has a right to settle the financial asset at an amount significantly below its amortized cost.

AG293 A debt instrument with a variable interest rate can IAS 39.AG17; no amendment.
+ satisfy the criteria for a held-to-maturity investment.

Equity instruments cannot be held-to-maturity investments either because they have an indefinite life (such as ordinary shares) or because the amounts the holder may receive can vary in a manner that is not predetermined (such as for share options, warrants and similar rights). With respect to the definition of held-to-maturity investments, fixed or determinable payments and fixed maturity mean that a contractual arrangement defines the amounts and dates of payments to the holder, such as interest and principal payments. A significant risk of non-payment does not preclude classification of a financial asset as held to maturity as long as its contractual payments are fixed or determinable and the other criteria for that classification are met. If the terms of a perpetual debt instrument provide for interest payments for an indefinite period, the instrument cannot be classified as held to maturity because there is no maturity date.

AG302 The criteria for classification as a held-to-maturity IAS 39.AG18; no amendment.

investment are met for a financial asset that is callable by the issuer if the holder intends and is able to hold it until it is called or until maturity and the holder would recover substantially all of its carrying amount. The call option of the issuer, if exercised, simply accelerates the asset's maturity. However, if the financial asset is callable on a basis that would result in the holder not recovering substantially all of its carrying amount, the financial asset cannot be classified as a held-to-maturity investment. The entity considers any premium paid and capitalized transaction costs in determining whether the carrying amount would be substantially recovered.

AG313 A financial asset that is puttable (i.e. the holder has the IAS 39.AG19; no amendment.

right to require that the issuer repay or redeem the financial asset before maturity) cannot be classified as a held-to-maturity investment because paying for a put feature in a financial asset is inconsistent with expressing an intention to hold the financial asset until maturity.

AG324 For most financial assets, fair value is a more IAS 39.AG20; no amendment.

appropriate measure than amortized cost. The held-to-maturity classification is an exception, but only if the entity has a positive intention and the ability to hold the investment to maturity. When an entity's actions cast

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

doubt on its intention and ability to hold such investments to maturity, paragraph 108 precludes the use of the exception for a reasonable period of time.

AG335 A disaster scenario that is only remotely possible, such as a run on a bank or a similar situation affecting an insurer, is not something that is assessed by an entity in deciding whether it has the positive intention and ability to hold an investment to maturity. IAS 39.AG21; no amendment

AG346 Sales before maturity could satisfy the condition in paragraph 108—and therefore not raise a question about the entity’s intention to hold other investments to maturity—if they are attributable to any of the following: IAS 39.AG22; amended for public sector terminology.

(a) A significant deterioration in the issuer’s creditworthiness. For example, a sale following a downgrade in a credit rating by an external rating agency would not necessarily raise a question about the entity’s intention to hold other investments to maturity if the downgrade provides evidence of a significant deterioration in the issuer’s creditworthiness judged by reference to the credit rating at initial recognition. Similarly, if an entity uses internal ratings for assessing exposures, changes in those internal ratings may help to identify issuers for which there has been a significant deterioration in creditworthiness, provided the entity’s approach to assigning internal ratings and changes in those ratings give a consistent, reliable and objective measure of the credit quality of the issuers. If there is evidence that a financial asset is impaired (see paragraphs 675 and 686), the deterioration in creditworthiness is often regarded as significant.

(b) A change in tax law that eliminates or significantly reduces the tax-exempt status of interest on the held-to-maturity investment (but not a change in tax law that revises the marginal tax rates applicable to interest ~~revenue~~~~income~~).

(c) A major ~~entity business~~ combination or major disposition (such as a sale of a segment that necessitates the sale or transfer of held-to-maturity investments to maintain the entity’s existing interest rate risk position or credit risk policy (although the ~~entity business~~ combination is an event within the entity’s control, the changes to its investment portfolio to maintain an interest rate risk position or credit risk policy may be consequential rather than anticipated).

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- (d) A change in statutory or regulatory requirements significantly modifying either what constitutes a permissible investment or the maximum level of particular types of investments, thereby causing an entity to dispose of a held-to-maturity investment.
- (e) A significant increase in the industry's regulatory capital requirements that causes the entity to downsize by selling held-to-maturity investments.
- (f) A significant increase in the risk weights of held-to-maturity investments used for regulatory risk-based capital purposes.

AG357 An entity does not have a demonstrated ability to hold to maturity an investment in a financial asset with a fixed maturity if: IAS 39.AG23; no amendment.

- (a) It does not have the financial resources available to continue to finance the investment until maturity; or
- (b) It is subject to an existing legal or other constraint that could frustrate its intention to hold the financial asset to maturity. (However, an issuer's call option does not necessarily frustrate an entity's intention to hold a financial asset to maturity—see paragraph AG302.)

AG368 Circumstances other than those described in paragraphs AG2830–AG357 can indicate that an entity does not have a positive intention or the ability to hold an investment to maturity. IAS 39.AG24; no amendment.

AG379 An entity assesses its intention and ability to hold its held-to-maturity investments to maturity not only when those financial assets are initially recognized, but also at the end of each subsequent reporting period. IAS 39.AG25; no amendment.

Loans and Receivables

AG384 Any non-derivative financial asset with fixed or determinable payments (including loan assets, ~~trade~~ receivables, investments in debt instruments and deposits held in banks) could potentially meet the definition of loans and receivables. However, a financial asset that is quoted in an active market (such as a quoted debt instrument, see paragraph AG1074) does not qualify for classification as a loan or receivable. Financial assets that do not meet the definition of loans and receivables may be classified as held-to-maturity investments if they meet the conditions for that classification (see paragraphs 108 and AG2830–AG377). On initial recognition of a IAS 39.AG26; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

financial asset that would otherwise be classified as a loan or receivable, an entity may designate it as a financial asset at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, or available for sale.

Embedded Derivatives (paragraphs 119–153)

AG394
+ If a host contract has no stated or predetermined maturity and represents a residual interest in the net assets of an entity, then its economic characteristics and risks are those of an equity instrument, and an embedded derivative would need to possess ~~equity~~ characteristics of the net assets/equity related to the same entity to be regarded as closely related. If the host contract is not an equity instrument and meets the definition of a financial instrument, then its economic characteristics and risks are those of a debt instrument.

IAS 39.AG27; amended to accommodate public sector terminology. ~~no amendment.~~

AG402 An embedded non-option derivative (such as an embedded forward or swap) is separated from its host contract on the basis of its stated or implied substantive terms, so as to result in it having a fair value of zero at initial recognition. An embedded option-based derivative (such as an embedded put, call, cap, floor or swaption) is separated from its host contract on the basis of the stated terms of the option feature. The initial carrying amount of the host instrument is the residual amount after separating the embedded derivative.

IAS 39.AG28; no amendment.

AG413 Generally, multiple embedded derivatives in a single instrument are treated as a single compound embedded derivative. However, embedded derivatives that are classified as equity instruments (see ED 37 IAS-32) are accounted for separately from those classified as assets or liabilities. In addition, if an instrument has more than one embedded derivative and those derivatives relate to different risk exposures and are readily separable and independent of each other, they are accounted for separately from each other.

IAS 39.AG29; amended “equity” to “equity instrument” and amended references to IFRSs.

AG424 The economic characteristics and risks of an embedded derivative are not closely related to the host contract (paragraph 120(a)) in the following examples. In these examples, assuming the conditions in paragraph 120(b) and (c) are met, an entity accounts for the embedded derivative separately from the host contract.

IAS 39.AG30; amended references to IFRSs and “equity” element and amended example of gold to oil (consistent with ED 37).

(a) A put option embedded in an instrument that enables the holder to require the issuer to reacquire the instrument for an amount of cash or other assets that varies on the basis of the change in an equity or commodity price or index is not closely related to a host debt instrument.

(b) A call option embedded in an equity instrument

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

that enables the issuer to reacquire that equity instrument at a specified price is not closely related to the host equity instrument from the perspective of the holder (from the issuer's perspective, the call option is an equity instrument provided it meets the conditions for that classification under ED 37 IAS 32, in which case it is excluded from the scope of this Standard).

- (c) An option or automatic provision to extend the remaining term to maturity of a debt instrument is not closely related to the host debt instrument unless there is a concurrent adjustment to the approximate current market rate of interest at the time of the extension. If an entity issues a debt instrument and the holder of that debt instrument writes a call option on the debt instrument to a third party, the issuer regards the call option as extending the term to maturity of the debt instrument provided the issuer can be required to participate in or facilitate the remarketing of the debt instrument as a result of the call option being exercised.
- (d) Equity-indexed interest or principal payments embedded in a host debt instrument or insurance contract—by which the amount of interest or principal is indexed to the value of equity instruments—are not closely related to the host instrument because the risks inherent in the host and the embedded derivative are dissimilar.
- (e) Commodity-indexed interest or principal payments embedded in a host debt instrument or insurance contract—by which the amount of interest or principal is indexed to the price of a commodity (such as oil ~~gold~~)—are not closely related to the host instrument because the risks inherent in the host and the embedded derivative are dissimilar.
- (f) An equity conversion feature embedded in a convertible debt instrument is not closely related to the host debt instrument from the perspective of the holder of the instrument (from the issuer's perspective, the equity conversion option is an equity instrument and excluded from the scope of this Standard provided it meets the conditions for that classification under ED 37 IAS 32).
- (g) A call, put, or prepayment option embedded in a host debt contract or host insurance contract is not closely related to the host contract unless the option's exercise price is approximately equal on each exercise date to the amortized cost of the host debt instrument or the carrying amount of the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

host insurance contract. From the perspective of the issuer of a convertible debt instrument with an embedded call or put option feature, the assessment of whether the call or put option is closely related to the host debt contract is made before separating the ~~equity~~ element of net assets/equity under ED 37 ~~IAS 32~~.

- (h) Credit derivatives that are embedded in a host debt instrument and allow one party (the ‘beneficiary’) to transfer the credit risk of a particular reference asset, which it may not own, to another party (the ‘guarantor’) are not closely related to the host debt instrument. Such credit derivatives allow the guarantor to assume the credit risk associated with the reference asset without directly owning it.

AG435 An example of a hybrid instrument is a financial instrument that gives the holder a right to put the financial instrument back to the issuer in exchange for an amount of cash or other financial assets that varies on the basis of the change in an equity or commodity index that may increase or decrease (a ‘puttable instrument’). Unless the issuer on initial recognition designates the puttable instrument as a financial liability at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, it is required to separate an embedded derivative (i.e. the indexed principal payment) under paragraph 129 because the host contract is a debt instrument under paragraph AG3944 and the indexed principal payment is not closely related to a host debt instrument under paragraph AG424(a). Because the principal payment can increase and decrease, the embedded derivative is a non-option derivative whose value is indexed to the underlying variable.

IAS 39.AG31; amended for public sector terminology.

AG446 In the case of a puttable instrument that can be put back at any time for cash equal to a proportionate share of the net asset value of an entity (such as units of an open-ended mutual fund or some unit-linked investment products), the effect of separating an embedded derivative and accounting for each component is to measure the combined instrument at the redemption amount that is payable at the end of the reporting period if the holder exercised its right to put the instrument back to the issuer.

IAS 39.AG32; no amendment.

AG457 The economic characteristics and risks of an embedded derivative are closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of the host contract in the following examples. In these examples, an entity does not account for the embedded derivative separately from the host contract.

IAS 39.AG33; amended references to IFRSs and amended for public sector terminology.

- (a) An embedded derivative in which the underlying is an interest rate or interest rate index that can

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

change the amount of interest that would otherwise be paid or received on an interest-bearing host debt contract or insurance contract is closely related to the host contract unless the combined instrument can be settled in such a way that the holder would not recover substantially all of its recognized investment or the embedded derivative could at least double the holder's initial rate of return on the host contract and could result in a rate of return that is at least twice what the market return would be for a contract with the same terms as the host contract.

- (b) An embedded floor or cap on the interest rate on a debt contract or insurance contract is closely related to the host contract, provided the cap is at or above the market rate of interest and the floor is at or below the market rate of interest when the contract is issued, and the cap or floor is not leveraged in relation to the host contract. Similarly, provisions included in a contract to purchase or sell an asset (e.g. a commodity) that establish a cap and a floor on the price to be paid or received for the asset are closely related to the host contract if both the cap and floor were out of the money at inception and are not leveraged.
- (c) An embedded foreign currency derivative that provides a stream of principal or interest payments that are denominated in a foreign currency and is embedded in a host debt instrument (e.g. a dual currency bond) is closely related to the host debt instrument. Such a derivative is not separated from the host instrument because IPSAS 4 IAS 21 requires foreign currency gains and losses on monetary items to be recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss.
- (d) An embedded foreign currency derivative in a host contract that is an insurance contract or not a financial instrument ~~(such as a contract for the purchase or sale of a non-financial item where the price is denominated in a foreign currency)~~ is integral to the arrangement and hence closely related to the host contract provided it is not leveraged, does not contain an option feature, and requires payments denominated in one of the following currencies:
 - (i) The functional currency of any substantial party to that contract;
 - (ii) The currency in which the price of the related good or service that is acquired or delivered is routinely denominated in commercial transactions around the world (such as the US dollar for crude oil

Included amendments from 08/09 improvements project eventhough not approved. See below for proposed amendments.

Proposed amendment to (d) in 2008/09 Improvements Project, monitor developments: Part (d) is amended as follows: ... ~~(such as a contract for the purchase or sale of a non-financial item where the price is denominated in a foreign currency)~~ is integral to the arrangement and hence is closely.

Proposed amendment to (iii) in 2008/09 Improvements Project, monitor developments. Part (iii) amended as follows: a currency that has one or more characteristics of a functional

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

transactions); or

- (iii) A currency that has one or more of the characteristics of a functional currency, as set out in paragraph 11 of IPSAS 4 – 9 of IAS 21, of a substantial party to the contract is commonly used in contracts to purchase or sell non financial items in the economic environment in which the transaction takes place (e.g. a relatively stable and liquid currency that is commonly used in local business transactions or external trade).

currency, as set out in paragraph 9 of IAS 21, of a substantial party to the contract, is commonly used in contracts to purchase or sell non financial items in the economic environment in which the transaction takes place (eg a relatively stable and liquid currency that is commonly used in local business transactions or external trade)

Note: At the January IASB meeting, deliberations on this amendment were deferred. It is unclear whether this amendment will be approved by the IASB.

- (e) An embedded prepayment option in an interest-only or principal-only strip is closely related to the host contract provided the host contract (i) initially resulted from separating the right to receive contractual cash flows of a financial instrument that, in and of itself, did not contain an embedded derivative, and (ii) does not contain any terms not present in the original host debt contract.
- (f) An embedded derivative in a host lease contract is closely related to the host contract if the embedded derivative is (i) an inflation-related index such as an index of lease payments to a consumer price index (provided that the lease is not leveraged and the index relates to inflation in the entity's own economic environment), (ii) contingent rentals based on related sales or (iii) contingent rentals based on variable interest rates.
- (g) A unit-linking feature embedded in a host financial instrument or host insurance contract is closely related to the host instrument or host contract if the unit-denominated payments are measured at current unit values that reflect the fair values of the assets of the fund. A unit-linking feature is a contractual term that requires payments denominated in units of an internal or external investment fund.
- (h) A derivative embedded in an insurance contract is closely related to the host insurance contract if the embedded derivative and host insurance contract are so interdependent that an entity cannot measure the embedded derivative separately (i.e. without considering the host contract).

Instruments Containing Embedded Derivatives

AG4~~68~~ When an entity becomes a party to a hybrid (combined) instrument that contains one or more embedded derivatives, paragraph 1~~29~~ requires the entity to identify any such embedded derivative, assess whether

IAS 39.AG33A; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

it is required to be separated from the host contract and, for those that are required to be separated, measure the derivatives at fair value at initial recognition and subsequently. These requirements can be more complex, or result in less reliable measures, than measuring the entire instrument at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. For that reason this Standard permits the entire instrument to be designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

- AG479 Such designation may be used whether paragraph 120 requires the embedded derivatives to be separated from the host contract or prohibits such separation. However, paragraph 134 would not justify designating the hybrid (combined) instrument as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in the cases set out in paragraph 134(a) and (b) because doing so would not reduce complexity or increase reliability. IAS 39.AG33B; amended for public sector terminology.

Recognition and Derecognition (paragraphs 164–442)

Initial Recognition (paragraph 164)

- AG485 As a consequence of the principle in paragraph 164, an entity recognizes all of its contractual rights and obligations under derivatives in its statement of financial position as assets and liabilities, respectively, except for derivatives that prevent a transfer of financial assets from being accounted for as a sale (see paragraph AG6971). If a transfer of a financial asset does not qualify for derecognition, the transferee does not recognize the transferred asset as its asset (see paragraph AG702). IAS 39.AG34; no amendment.

- AG495 The following are examples of applying the principle in paragraph 164: IAS 39.AG35; no amendment.

- (a) Unconditional receivables and payables are recognized as assets or liabilities when the entity becomes a party to the contract and, as a consequence, has a legal right to receive or a legal obligation to pay cash.
- (b) Assets to be acquired and liabilities to be incurred as a result of a firm commitment to purchase or sell goods or services are generally not recognized until at least one of the parties has performed under the agreement. For example, an entity that receives a firm order does not generally recognize an asset (and the entity that places the order does not recognize a liability) at the time of the commitment but, rather, delays recognition until the ordered goods or services have been shipped, delivered or rendered. If a firm commitment to buy or sell non-financial items is within the scope of this Standard under

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

paragraphs 4–6, its net fair value is recognized as an asset or liability on the commitment date (see (c) below). In addition, if a previously unrecognized firm commitment is designated as a hedged item in a fair value hedge, any change in the net fair value attributable to the hedged risk is recognized as an asset or liability after the inception of the hedge (see paragraphs 1042 and 1053).

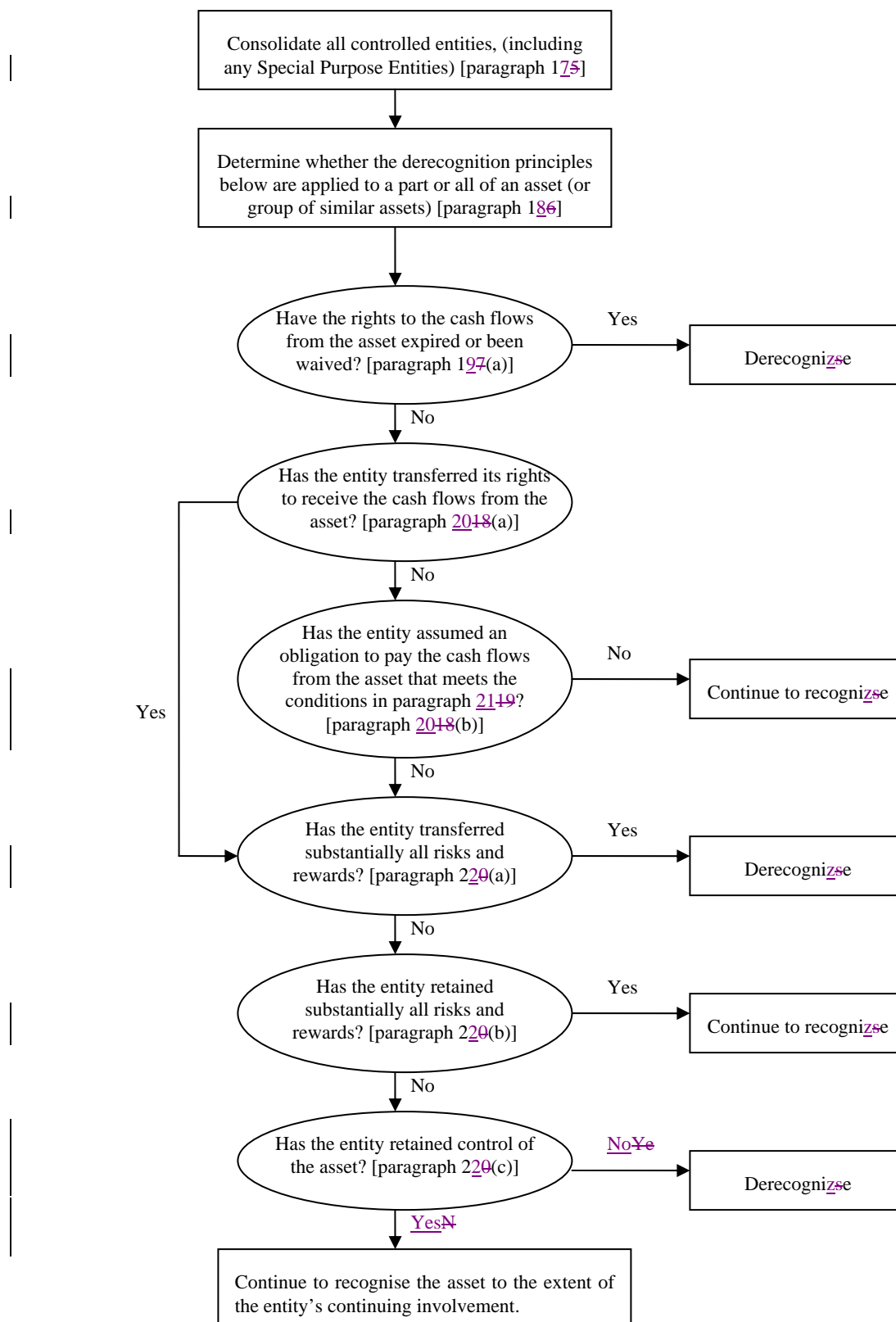
- (c) A forward contract that is within the scope of this Standard (see paragraphs 2–6) is recognized as an asset or a liability on the commitment date, rather than on the date on which settlement takes place. When an entity becomes a party to a forward contract, the fair values of the right and obligation are often equal, so that the net fair value of the forward is zero. If the net fair value of the right and obligation is not zero, the contract is recognized as an asset or liability.
- (d) Option contracts that are within the scope of this Standard (see paragraphs 2–6) are recognized as assets or liabilities when the holder or writer becomes a party to the contract.
- (e) Planned future transactions, no matter how likely, are not assets and liabilities because the entity has not become a party to a contract.

Derecognition of a Financial Asset (paragraphs 175–397)

AG502 The following flow chart illustrates the evaluation of whether and to what extent a financial asset is derecognized.

IAS 39.AG36; diagram refers to “controlled entities” and refers to the waiver of rights to cash flows ([link to concessionary loans](#))

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT



FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Consolidating ~~of~~ Special Purpose Entities (paragraph 17~~5~~)

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG5 13 | <u>An entity may be created to accomplish a narrow and well-defined objective (e.g. to effect a lease, research and development activities or a securitization of financial assets). Such a special purpose entity ('SPE') may take the form of a corporation, trust, partnership or unincorporated entity. SPEs often are created with legal arrangements that impose strict and sometimes permanent limits on the decision-making powers of their governing board, trustee or management over the operations of the SPE. Frequently, these provisions specify that the policy guiding the ongoing activities of the SPE cannot be modified, other than perhaps by its creator or sponsor (i.e. they operate on so-called 'autopilot').</u> | Added paragraphs from SIC 12 to explain what "special purpose entities" are and how they should be consolidated. Once the IFRICs and SICs are dealt with (either as part of the existing Standards or as separate documents, this guidance can be withdrawn).

SIC 12.1 |
| AG5 24 | <u>The sponsor (or entity on whose behalf the SPE was created) frequently transfers assets to the SPE, obtains the right to use assets held by the SPE or performs services for the SPE, while other parties ('capital providers') may provide the funding to the SPE. An entity that engages in transactions with an SPE (frequently the creator or sponsor) may in substance control the SPE.</u> | SIC 12.2 |
| AG5 35 | <u>A beneficial interest in an SPE may, for example, take the form of a debt instrument, an equity instrument, a participation right, a residual interest or a lease. Some beneficial interests may simply provide the holder with a fixed or stated rate of return, while others give the holder rights or access to other future economic benefits or service potential of the SPE's activities. In most cases, the creator or sponsor (or the entity on whose behalf the SPE was created) retains a significant beneficial interest in the SPE's activities, even though it may own little or none of the SPE's equity instruments.</u> | SIC 12.3; added the word "instruments" to the end of the paragraph <u>as well as a reference to 'service potential'.</u> - |
| AG5 46 | <u>An SPE shall be is consolidated when the substance of the relationship between an entity and the SPE indicates that the SPE is controlled by that entity.</u> | SIC12.8; amended wording, "shall" generally only used in the bold letter paragraphs of the text of the standards. |
| AG5 57 | <u>In the context of an SPE, control may arise through the predetermination of the activities of the SPE (operating on 'autopilot') or otherwise. IAS 27.13 indicates several circumstances which result in control even in cases where an entity owns one half or less of the voting power of another entity. Similarly, control may exist even in cases where an entity owns little or none of the SPE's equity. An entity considers the power and benefit conditions and indicators in paragraphs 38-40 of IPSAS 6, "Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements" in determining whether control exists. The application of the control concept requires, in each case, judgment in the context of all relevant factors.</u> | SIC 12.9; amended wording to refer to the power and benefit indicators and conditions in IPSASs. |
| AG5 68 | <u>In addition to the situations described in IPSAS 6 IAS 27.13, the following circumstances, for example, may indicate a relationship in which an entity controls an SPE and consequently should consolidate the SPE (additional guidance is provided in the</u> | SIC12.10; amended references to IFRSs and deleted references to guidance in the appendix, as this guidance has not been included in |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Appendix to this Interpretation):

- (a) In substance, the activities of the SPE are being conducted on behalf of the entity according to its specific operational business needs so that the entity obtains benefits from the SPE's operation;
- (b) In substance, the entity has the decision-making powers to obtain the majority of the benefits of the activities of the SPE or, by setting up an 'autopilot' mechanism, the entity has delegated these decision-making powers;
- (c) In substance, the entity has rights to obtain the majority of the benefits of the SPE and therefore may be exposed to risks incident to the activities of the SPE; or
- (d) -In substance, the entity retains the majority of the residual or ownership risks related to the SPE or its assets in order to obtain benefits from its activities.

the application guidance.

Deleted reference to “business” and replaced with “operational”, as “business” is more relevant for the private sector.

Arrangements under which an entity retains the contractual rights to receive the cash flows of a financial asset, but assumes a contractual obligation to pay the cash flows to one or more recipients (paragraph 2048(b))

AG579 The situation described in paragraph 2048(b) (when an entity retains the contractual rights to receive the cash flows of the financial asset, but assumes a contractual obligation to pay the cash flows to one or more recipients) occurs, for example, if the entity is a SPE ~~special purpose entity~~ or trust, and issues to investors beneficial interests in the underlying financial assets that it owns and provides servicing of those financial assets. In that case, the financial assets qualify for derecognition if the conditions in paragraphs 2149 and 220 are met.

IAS 39.AG37; no amendment.

AG5860 In applying paragraph 2149, the entity could be, for example, the originator of the financial asset, or it could be a group that includes a consolidated SPE ~~special purpose entity~~ that has acquired the financial asset and passes on cash flows to unrelated third party investors.

IAS 39.AG38; no amendment.

Evaluation of the transfer of risks and rewards of ownership (paragraph 220)

AG5964 Examples of when an entity has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership are:

IAS 39.AG39; no amendment.

- (a) An unconditional sale of a financial asset;
- (b) A sale of a financial asset together with an option to repurchase the financial asset at its fair value at the time of repurchase; and
- (c) A sale of a financial asset together with a put or call option that is deeply out of the money (i.e. an option that is so far out of the money it is highly unlikely to go into the money before expiry).

AG602 Examples of when an entity has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership are:

IAS 39.AG40; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- (a) A sale and repurchase transaction where the repurchase price is a fixed price or the sale price plus a lender's return;
- (b) A securities lending agreement;
- (c) A sale of a financial asset together with a total return swap that transfers the market risk exposure back to the entity;
- (d) A sale of a financial asset together with a deep in-the-money put or call option (i.e. an option that is so far in the money that it is highly unlikely to go out of the money before expiry); and
- (e) A sale of short-term receivables in which the entity guarantees to compensate the transferee for credit losses that are likely to occur.

AG613	If an entity determines that as a result of the transfer, it has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the transferred asset, it does not recognize the transferred asset again in a future period, unless it reacquires the transferred asset in a new transaction.	IAS 39.AG41; no amendment.
-------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------

Evaluation of the Transfer of Control

AG624	An entity has not retained control of a transferred asset if the transferee has the practical ability to sell the transferred asset. An entity has retained control of a transferred asset if the transferee does not have the practical ability to sell the transferred asset. A transferee has the practical ability to sell the transferred asset if it is traded in an active market because the transferee could repurchase the transferred asset in the market if it needs to return the asset to the entity. For example, a transferee may have the practical ability to sell a transferred asset if the transferred asset is subject to an option that allows the entity to repurchase it, but the transferee can readily obtain the transferred asset in the market if the option is exercised. A transferee does not have the practical ability to sell the transferred asset if the entity retains such an option and the transferee cannot readily obtain the transferred asset in the market if the entity exercises its option.	IAS 39.AG42; no amendment.
-------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------

AG635	<p>The transferee has the practical ability to sell the transferred asset only if the transferee can sell the transferred asset in its entirety to an unrelated third party and is able to exercise that ability unilaterally and without imposing additional restrictions on the transfer. The critical question is what the transferee is able to do in practice, not what contractual rights the transferee has concerning what it can do with the transferred asset or what contractual prohibitions exist. In particular:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) A contractual right to dispose of the transferred asset has little practical effect if there is no market for the transferred asset; and (b) An ability to dispose of the transferred asset has little practical effect if it cannot be exercised freely. For that reason: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) The transferee's ability to dispose of the transferred asset must be independent of the actions of others (i.e. 	IAS 39.AG43; no amendment.
-------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

it must be a unilateral ability); and

- (ii) The transferee must be able to dispose of the transferred asset without needing to attach restrictive conditions or ‘strings’ to the transfer (e.g. conditions about how a loan asset is serviced or an option giving the transferee the right to repurchase the asset).

AG646	That the transferee is unlikely to sell the transferred asset does not, of itself, mean that the transferor has retained control of the transferred asset. However, if a put option or guarantee constrains the transferee from selling the transferred asset, then the transferor has retained control of the transferred asset. For example, if a put option or guarantee is sufficiently valuable it constrains the transferee from selling the transferred asset because the transferee would, in practice, not sell the transferred asset to a third party without attaching a similar option or other restrictive conditions. Instead, the transferee would hold the transferred asset so as to obtain payments under the guarantee or put option. Under these circumstances the transferor has retained control of the transferred asset.	IAS 39.AG44; no amendment
-------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------

Transfers that Qualify for Derecognition

AG657	An entity may retain the right to a part of the interest payments on transferred assets as compensation for servicing those assets. The part of the interest payments that the entity would give up upon termination or transfer of the servicing contract is allocated to the servicing asset or servicing liability. The part of the interest payments that the entity would not give up is an interest-only strip receivable. For example, if the entity would not give up any interest upon termination or transfer of the servicing contract, the entire interest spread is an interest-only strip receivable. For the purposes of applying paragraph 297, the fair values of the servicing asset and interest-only strip receivable are used to allocate the carrying amount of the receivable between the part of the asset that is derecognized and the part that continues to be recognized. If there is no servicing fee specified or the fee to be received is not expected to compensate the entity adequately for performing the servicing, a liability for the servicing obligation is recognized at fair value.	IAS 39.AG45; no amendment.
-------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------

AG668	In estimating the fair values of the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is derecognized for the purposes of applying paragraph 297, an entity applies the fair value measurement requirements in paragraphs 5048–5249 and AG10599–AG1193 in addition to paragraph 3028.	IAS 39.AG46; no amendment.
-------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------

Transfers that do not Qualify for Derecognition

AG679	The following is an application of the principle outlined in paragraph 3129. If a guarantee provided by the entity for default losses on the transferred asset prevents a transferred asset from being derecognized because the entity has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the transferred asset, the transferred asset continues to be recognized in its entirety and the	IAS 39.AG47; no amendment.
-------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

consideration received is recognized as a liability.

Continuing Involvement in Transferred Assets

AG~~6870~~ The following are examples of how an entity measures a transferred asset and the associated liability under paragraph 3~~29~~.

IAS 39.AG48; amended for public sector terminology and references to IFRSs.

All assets

- (a) If a guarantee provided by an entity to pay for default losses on a transferred asset prevents the transferred asset from being derecognized to the extent of the continuing involvement, the transferred asset at the date of the transfer is measured at the lower of (i) the carrying amount of the asset and (ii) the maximum amount of the consideration received in the transfer that the entity could be required to repay ('the guarantee amount'). The associated liability is initially measured at the guarantee amount plus the fair value of the guarantee (which is normally the consideration received for the guarantee). Subsequently, the initial fair value of the guarantee is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ on a time proportion basis (see IPSAS 9-IAS 18) and the carrying value of the asset is reduced by any impairment losses.

Note: May need to amend (a) depending on the application guidance developed for financial guarantees.

Assets measured at amortized cost

- (b) If a put option obligation written by an entity or call option right held by an entity prevents a transferred asset from being derecognized and the entity measures the transferred asset at amortized cost, the associated liability is measured at its cost (i.e. the consideration received) adjusted for the amortization of any difference between that cost and the amortized cost of the transferred asset at the expiration date of the option. For example, assume that the amortized cost and carrying amount of the asset on the date of the transfer is CU98 and that the consideration received is CU95. The amortized cost of the asset on the option exercise date will be CU100. The initial carrying amount of the associated liability is CU95 and the difference between CU95 and CU100 is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ using the effective interest method. If the option is exercised, any difference between the carrying amount of the associated liability and the exercise price is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Assets measured at fair value

- (c) If a call option right retained by an entity prevents a transferred asset from being derecognized and the entity measures the transferred asset at fair value, the asset continues to be measured at its fair value. The associated liability is measured at (i) the option exercise price less the time value of the option if the option is in or at the money, or (ii) the fair value of the transferred asset less the time value of the option if the option is out of the money. The adjustment to the measurement of the associated liability ensures that the net carrying amount of the asset and the associated liability is the fair value of the call option right. For example, if the fair value of the underlying asset is CU80, the option exercise price is CU95 and the time value of the option is CU5, the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

carrying amount of the associated liability is CU75 (CU80 – CU5) and the carrying amount of the transferred asset is CU80 (i.e. its fair value).

- (d) If a put option written by an entity prevents a transferred asset from being derecognized and the entity measures the transferred asset at fair value, the associated liability is measured at the option exercise price plus the time value of the option. The measurement of the asset at fair value is limited to the lower of the fair value and the option exercise price because the entity has no right to increases in the fair value of the transferred asset above the exercise price of the option. This ensures that the net carrying amount of the asset and the associated liability is the fair value of the put option obligation. For example, if the fair value of the underlying asset is CU120, the option exercise price is CU100 and the time value of the option is CU5, the carrying amount of the associated liability is CU105 (CU100 + CU5) and the carrying amount of the asset is CU100 (in this case the option exercise price).
- (e) If a collar, in the form of a purchased call and written put, prevents a transferred asset from being derecognized and the entity measures the asset at fair value, it continues to measure the asset at fair value. The associated liability is measured at (i) the sum of the call exercise price and fair value of the put option less the time value of the call option, if the call option is in or at the money, or (ii) the sum of the fair value of the asset and the fair value of the put option less the time value of the call option if the call option is out of the money. The adjustment to the associated liability ensures that the net carrying amount of the asset and the associated liability is the fair value of the options held and written by the entity. For example, assume an entity transfers a financial asset that is measured at fair value while simultaneously purchasing a call with an exercise price of CU120 and writing a put with an exercise price of CU80. Assume also that the fair value of the asset is CU100 at the date of the transfer. The time value of the put and call are CU1 and CU5 respectively. In this case, the entity recognizes an asset of CU100 (the fair value of the asset) and a liability of CU96 [(CU100 + CU1) – CU5]. This gives a net asset value of CU4, which is the fair value of the options held and written by the entity.

All Transfers

- | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <p>AG6974</p> | <p>To the extent that a transfer of a financial asset does not qualify for derecognition, the transferor's contractual rights or obligations related to the transfer are not accounted for separately as derivatives if recognizing both the derivative and either the transferred asset or the liability arising from the transfer would result in recognizing the same rights or obligations twice. For example, a call option retained by the transferor may prevent a transfer of financial assets from being accounted for as a sale. In that case, the call option is not separately recognized as a derivative asset.</p> | <p>IAS 39.AG49; no amendment.</p> |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- | | | |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG702 | To the extent that a transfer of a financial asset does not qualify for derecognition, the transferee does not recognize the transferred asset as its asset. The transferee derecognizes the cash or other consideration paid and recognizes a receivable from the transferor. If the transferor has both a right and an obligation to reacquire control of the entire transferred asset for a fixed amount (such as under a repurchase agreement), the transferee may account for its receivable as a loan or receivable. | IAS 39.AG50; no amendment. |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|

Examples

- | | | |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG713 | The following examples illustrate the application of the derecognition principles of this Standard. | IAS 39.AG51; no amendment. |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|

- (a) *Repurchase agreements and securities lending.* If a financial asset is sold under an agreement to repurchase it at a fixed price or at the sale price plus a lender's return or if it is loaned under an agreement to return it to the transferor, it is not derecognized because the transferor retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership. If the transferee obtains the right to sell or pledge the asset, the transferor reclassifies the asset in its statement of financial position, for example, as a loaned asset or repurchase receivable.
- (b) *Repurchase agreements and securities lending—assets that are substantially the same.* If a financial asset is sold under an agreement to repurchase the same or substantially the same asset at a fixed price or at the sale price plus a lender's return or if a financial asset is borrowed or loaned under an agreement to return the same or substantially the same asset to the transferor, it is not derecognized because the transferor retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (c) *Repurchase agreements and securities lending—right of substitution.* If a repurchase agreement at a fixed repurchase price or a price equal to the sale price plus a lender's return, or a similar securities lending transaction, provides the transferee with a right to substitute assets that are similar and of equal fair value to the transferred asset at the repurchase date, the asset sold or lent under a repurchase or securities lending transaction is not derecognized because the transferor retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (d) *Repurchase right of first refusal at fair value.* If an entity sells a financial asset and retains only a right of first refusal to repurchase the transferred asset at fair value if the transferee subsequently sells it, the entity derecognizes the asset because it has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (e) *Wash sale transaction.* The repurchase of a financial asset shortly after it has been sold is sometimes referred to as a wash sale. Such a repurchase does not preclude derecognition provided that the original transaction met the derecognition requirements. However, if an agreement to sell a financial asset is entered into concurrently with an agreement to

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

repurchase the same asset at a fixed price or the sale price plus a lender's return, then the asset is not derecognized.

- (f) *Put options and call options that are deeply in the money.* If a transferred financial asset can be called back by the transferor and the call option is deeply in the money, the transfer does not qualify for derecognition because the transferor has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership. Similarly, if the financial asset can be put back by the transferee and the put option is deeply in the money, the transfer does not qualify for derecognition because the transferor has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (g) *Put options and call options that are deeply out of the money.* A financial asset that is transferred subject only to a deep out-of-the-money put option held by the transferee or a deep out-of-the-money call option held by the transferor is derecognized. This is because the transferor has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (h) *Readily obtainable assets subject to a call option that is neither deeply in the money nor deeply out of the money.* If an entity holds a call option on an asset that is readily obtainable in the market and the option is neither deeply in the money nor deeply out of the money, the asset is derecognized. This is because the entity (i) has neither retained nor transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership, and (ii) has not retained control. However, if the asset is not readily obtainable in the market, derecognition is precluded to the extent of the amount of the asset that is subject to the call option because the entity has retained control of the asset.
- (i) *A not readily obtainable asset subject to a put option written by an entity that is neither deeply in the money nor deeply out of the money.* If an entity transfers a financial asset that is not readily obtainable in the market, and writes a put option that is not deeply out of the money, the entity neither retains nor transfers substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership because of the written put option. The entity retains control of the asset if the put option is sufficiently valuable to prevent the transferee from selling the asset, in which case the asset continues to be recognized to the extent of the transferor's continuing involvement (see paragraph AG6466). The entity transfers control of the asset if the put option is not sufficiently valuable to prevent the transferee from selling the asset, in which case the asset is derecognized.
- (j) *Assets subject to a fair value put or call option or a forward repurchase agreement.* A transfer of a financial asset that is subject only to a put or call option or a forward repurchase agreement that has an exercise or repurchase price equal to the fair value of the financial asset at the time of repurchase results in derecognition because of the transfer of substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (k) *Cash settled call or put options.* An entity evaluates the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

transfer of a financial asset that is subject to a put or call option or a forward repurchase agreement that will be settled net in cash to determine whether it has retained or transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership. If the entity has not retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the transferred asset, it determines whether it has retained control of the transferred asset. That the put or the call or the forward repurchase agreement is settled net in cash does not automatically mean that the entity has transferred control (see paragraphs AG~~6466~~ and (g), (h) and (i) above).

- (l) *Removal of accounts provision.* A removal of accounts provision is an unconditional repurchase (call) option that gives an entity the right to reclaim assets transferred subject to some restrictions. Provided that such an option results in the entity neither retaining nor transferring substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership, it precludes derecognition only to the extent of the amount subject to repurchase (assuming that the transferee cannot sell the assets). For example, if the carrying amount and proceeds from the transfer of loan assets are CU100,000 and any individual loan could be called back but the aggregate amount of loans that could be repurchased could not exceed CU10,000, CU90,000 of the loans would qualify for derecognition.
- (m) *Clean-up calls.* An entity, which may be a transferor, that services transferred assets may hold a clean-up call to purchase remaining transferred assets when the amount of outstanding assets falls to a specified level at which the cost of servicing those assets becomes burdensome in relation to the benefits of servicing. Provided that such a clean-up call results in the entity neither retaining nor transferring substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership and the transferee cannot sell the assets, it precludes derecognition only to the extent of the amount of the assets that is subject to the call option.
- (n) *Subordinated retained interests and credit guarantees.* An entity may provide the transferee with credit enhancement by subordinating some or all of its interest retained in the transferred asset. Alternatively, an entity may provide the transferee with credit enhancement in the form of a credit guarantee that could be unlimited or limited to a specified amount. If the entity retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the transferred asset, the asset continues to be recognized in its entirety. If the entity retains some, but not substantially all, of the risks and rewards of ownership and has retained control, derecognition is precluded to the extent of the amount of cash or other assets that the entity could be required to pay.
- (o) *Total return swaps.* An entity may sell a financial asset to a transferee and enter into a total return swap with the transferee, whereby all of the interest payment cash flows from the underlying asset are remitted to the entity in exchange for a fixed payment or variable rate payment and any increases or declines in the fair value of the underlying asset are absorbed by the entity. In such a case, derecognition

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

of all of the asset is prohibited.

- (p) *Interest rate swaps.* An entity may transfer to a transferee a fixed rate financial asset and enter into an interest rate swap with the transferee to receive a fixed interest rate and pay a variable interest rate based on a notional amount that is equal to the principal amount of the transferred financial asset. The interest rate swap does not preclude derecognition of the transferred asset provided the payments on the swap are not conditional on payments being made on the transferred asset.
- (q) *Amortizing interest rate swaps.* An entity may transfer to a transferee a fixed rate financial asset that is paid off over time, and enter into an amortizing interest rate swap with the transferee to receive a fixed interest rate and pay a variable interest rate based on a notional amount. If the notional amount of the swap amortizes so that it equals the principal amount of the transferred financial asset outstanding at any point in time, the swap would generally result in the entity retaining substantial prepayment risk, in which case the entity either continues to recognize all of the transferred asset or continues to recognize the transferred asset to the extent of its continuing involvement. Conversely, if the amortization of the notional amount of the swap is not linked to the principal amount outstanding of the transferred asset, such a swap would not result in the entity retaining prepayment risk on the asset. Hence, it would not preclude derecognition of the transferred asset provided the payments on the swap are not conditional on interest payments being made on the transferred asset and the swap does not result in the entity retaining any other significant risks and rewards of ownership on the transferred asset.

AG724 This paragraph illustrates the application of the continuing involvement approach when the entity's continuing involvement is in a part of a financial asset. IAS 39.AG52; amended for public sector terminology.

Assume an entity has a portfolio of prepayable loans whose coupon and effective interest rate is 10 per cent and whose principal amount and amortized cost is CU10,000. It enters into a transaction in which, in return for a payment of CU9,115, the transferee obtains the right to CU9,000 of any collections of principal plus interest thereon at 9.5 per cent. The entity retains rights to CU1,000 of any collections of principal plus interest thereon at 10 per cent, plus the excess spread of 0.5 per cent on the remaining CU9,000 of principal. Collections from prepayments are allocated between the entity and the transferee proportionately in the ratio of 1:9, but any defaults are deducted from the entity's interest of CU1,000 until that interest is exhausted. The fair value of the loans at the date of the transaction is CU10,100 and the estimated fair value of the excess spread of 0.5 per cent is CU40.

The entity determines that it has transferred some significant risks and rewards of ownership (for example, significant prepayment risk) but has also retained some significant risks and rewards of ownership (because of its subordinated retained interest) and has retained control. It therefore applies the continuing involvement approach.

To apply this Standard, the entity analyses the transaction as (a) a retention of a fully proportionate retained interest of CU1,000, plus (b) the subordination of that retained interest to provide credit enhancement to the transferee for credit losses.

The entity calculates that CU9,090 (90 per cent × CU10,100) of the consideration received of CU9,115 represents the consideration for a fully proportionate 90 per cent share. The remainder of the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

consideration received (CU25) represents consideration received for subordinating its retained interest to provide credit enhancement to the transferee for credit losses. In addition, the excess spread of 0.5 per cent represents consideration received for the credit enhancement. Accordingly, the total consideration received for the credit enhancement is CU65 (CU25 + CU40).

The entity calculates the gain or loss on the sale of the 90 per cent share of cash flows. Assuming that separate fair values of the 90 per cent part transferred and the 10 per cent part retained are not available at the date of the transfer, the entity allocates the carrying amount of the asset in accordance with paragraph 3028 as follows:

	<i>Estimated fair value</i>	<i>Percentage</i>	<i>Allocated carrying amount</i>
Portion transferred	9,090	90%	9,000
Portion retained	1,010	10%	1,000
Total	10,100		10,000

The entity computes its gain or loss on the sale of the 90 per cent share of the cash flows by deducting the allocated carrying amount of the portion transferred from the consideration received, i.e. CU90 (CU9,090 – CU9,000). The carrying amount of the portion retained by the entity is CU1,000.

In addition, the entity recognizes the continuing involvement that results from the subordination of its retained interest for credit losses. Accordingly, it recognizes an asset of CU1,000 (the maximum amount of the cash flows it would not receive under the subordination), and an associated liability of CU1,065 (which is the maximum amount of the cash flows it would not receive under the subordination, i.e. CU1,000 plus the fair value of the subordination of CU65). The entity uses all of the above information to account for the transaction as follows:

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Original asset	–	9,000
Asset recognized for subordination or the residual interest	1,000	–
Asset for the consideration received in the form of excess spread	40	–
Surplus or deficit Profit or loss (gain on transfer)	–	90
Liability	–	1,065
Cash received	9,115	–
Total	10,155	10,155

Immediately following the transaction, the carrying amount of the asset is CU2,040 comprising CU1,000, representing the allocated cost of the portion retained, and CU1,040, representing the entity's additional continuing involvement from the subordination of its retained interest for credit losses (which includes the excess spread of CU40).

In subsequent periods, the entity recognizes the consideration received for the credit enhancement (CU65) on a time proportion basis, accrues interest on the recognized asset using the effective interest method and recognizes any credit impairment on the recognized assets. As an example of the latter, assume that in the following year there is a credit impairment loss on the underlying loans of CU300. The entity reduces its recognized asset by CU600 (CU300 relating to its retained interest and CU300 relating to the additional continuing involvement that arises from the subordination of its retained interest for credit losses), and reduces its recognized liability by CU300. The net result is a charge to

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

~~surplus or deficit~~ ~~profit or loss~~ for credit impairment of CU300.

Regular Way Purchase or Sale of a Financial Asset (paragraph ~~40~~38)

- | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| AG7 3 5 | A regular way purchase or sale of financial assets is recognized using either trade date accounting or settlement date accounting as described in paragraphs AG7 5 7 and AG7 6 8. The method used is applied consistently for all purchases and sales of financial assets that belong to the same category of financial assets defined in paragraph 108. For this purpose assets that are held for trading form a separate category from assets designated at fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss . | IAS 39.AG53; amended for public sector terminology. |
| AG7 4 6 | A contract that requires or permits net settlement of the change in the value of the contract is not a regular way contract. Instead, such a contract is accounted for as a derivative in the period between the trade date and the settlement date. | IAS 39.AG54; no amendment. |
| AG7 5 7 | The trade date is the date that an entity commits itself to purchase or sell an asset. Trade date accounting refers to (a) the recognition of an asset to be received and the liability to pay for it on the trade date, and (b) derecognition of an asset that is sold, recognition of any gain or loss on disposal and the recognition of a receivable from the buyer for payment on the trade date. Generally, interest does not start to accrue on the asset and corresponding liability until the settlement date when title passes. | IAS 39.AG55; no amendment. |
| AG7 6 8 | The settlement date is the date that an asset is delivered to or by an entity. Settlement date accounting refers to (a) the recognition of an asset on the day it is received by the entity, and (b) the derecognition of an asset and recognition of any gain or loss on disposal on the day that it is delivered by the entity. When settlement date accounting is applied an entity accounts for any change in the fair value of the asset to be received during the period between the trade date and the settlement date in the same way as it accounts for the acquired asset. In other words, the change in value is not recognized for assets carried at cost or amortized cost; it is recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss for assets classified as financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss ; and it is recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income for assets classified as available for sale. | IAS 39.AG56; amended for public sector terminology. |

Derecognition of a Financial Liability (paragraphs ~~41~~39–~~42~~2)

- | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG7 7 9 | A financial liability (or part of it) is extinguished when the debtor either: | IAS 39.AG57; no amendment. |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- (a) Discharges the liability (or part of it) by paying the creditor, normally with cash, other financial assets, goods or services; or
- (b) Is legally released from primary responsibility for the liability (or part of it) either by process of law or by the creditor. (If the debtor has given a guarantee this condition may still be met.)

AG7889	If an issuer of a debt instrument repurchases that instrument, the debt is extinguished even if the issuer is a market maker in that instrument or intends to resell it in the near term.	IAS 39.AG58; no amendment.
AG7981	Payment to a third party, including a trust (sometimes called 'in-substance defeasance'), does not, by itself, relieve the debtor of its primary obligation to the creditor, in the absence of legal release.	IAS 39.AG59; no amendment.
AG802	If a debtor pays a third party to assume an obligation and notifies its creditor that the third party has assumed its debt obligation, the debtor does not derecognize the debt obligation unless the condition in paragraph AG779(b) is met. If the debtor pays a third party to assume an obligation and obtains a legal release from its creditor, the debtor has extinguished the debt. However, if the debtor agrees to make payments on the debt to the third party or direct to its original creditor, the debtor recognizes a new debt obligation to the third party.	IAS 39.AG60; no amendment.
AG813	<u>If a third party assumes an obligation of an entity, and the entity provides either no or only nominal consideration to that third party in return, an entity applies the derecognition requirements of this Standard as well as paragraphs 84 to 87 of IPSAS 23.</u>	Added paragraph to explain the assumption of liabilities by a third party.
AG824	<u>Lenders will sometimes waive their right to collect debt owed by a public sector entity, for example, a national government may cancel a loan owed by a local government. This waiver of debt would constitute a legal release of the debt owing by the borrower to the lender. Where an entity's obligations have been waived as part of a non-exchange transaction it applies the derecognition requirements of this Standard as well as paragraphs 84 to 87 of IPSAS 23.</u>	Added paragraph to explain the waiver of debt as part of a non-exchange transaction.
AG835	Although legal release, whether judicially or by the creditor, results in derecognition of a liability, the entity may recognize a new liability if the derecognition criteria in paragraphs 175–397 are not met for the financial assets transferred. If those criteria are not met, the transferred assets are not	IAS 39.AG61; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

derecognized, and the entity recognizes a new liability relating to the transferred assets.

AG846 For the purpose of paragraph 429, the terms are substantially different if the discounted present value of the cash flows under the new terms, including any fees paid net of any fees received and discounted using the original effective interest rate, is at least 10 per cent different from the discounted present value of the remaining cash flows of the original financial liability. If an exchange of debt instruments or modification of terms is accounted for as an extinguishment, any costs or fees incurred are recognized as part of the gain or loss on the extinguishment. If the exchange or modification is not accounted for as an extinguishment, any costs or fees incurred adjust the carrying amount of the liability and are amortized over the remaining term of the modified liability. IAS 39.AG62; no amendment.

AG857 In some cases, a creditor releases a debtor from its present obligation to make payments, but the debtor assumes a guarantee obligation to pay if the party assuming primary responsibility defaults. In this circumstance the debtor:

- (a) Recognizes a new financial liability based on the fair value of its obligation for the guarantee; and
- (b) Recognizes a gain or loss based on the difference between (i) any proceeds paid and (ii) the carrying amount of the original financial liability less the fair value of the new financial liability.

IAS 39.AG63; no amendment.

Measurement (paragraphs 453–8677)

Initial Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities (paragraph 453)

AG868 The fair value of a financial instrument on initial recognition is normally the transaction price (i.e. the fair value of the consideration given or received, see also paragraph AG11206). However, if part of the consideration given or received is for something other than the financial instrument, the fair value of the financial instrument is estimated, using a valuation technique (see paragraphs AG11004–AG11169). For example, the fair value of a long-term loan or receivable that carries no interest can be estimated as the present value of all future cash receipts discounted using the prevailing market rate(s) of interest for a similar instrument (similar as to currency, term, type of interest rate and other factors) with a similar credit rating. Any additional amount lent is an expense or a reduction of revenue. IAS 39.AG64; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

~~income~~ unless it qualifies for recognition as some other type of asset.

- | | | |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| AG879 | If an entity originates a loan that bears an off-market interest rate (e.g. 5 per cent when the market rate for similar loans is 8 per cent), and receives an up-front fee as compensation, the entity recognizes the loan at its fair value, i.e. net of the fee it receives. The entity accretes the discount to <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss using the effective interest rate method. | IAS 39.AG65; amended for public sector terminology. |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

Concessionary Loans

- | | | |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG8890 | <u>Concessionary loans are loans granted to or received by an entity in terms of specific public policy objectives and, as a result, - These loans - are usually granted or received with flexible repayment terms and bear either below market interest low or no interest. "Public policy" for purposes of this Standard refers to the stated policies of governments, which entities execute in accordance with their stated mandate. Policies of government may include, for example, the promotion of economic growth, the reduction of unemployment and the provision of housing for no or low income individuals.</u> | Added additional guidance on concessionary loans; outline of the nature of concessionary loans.

<u>Based on comment received, clarified that concessionary loans should relate to the achievement of public policy objectives, but also that the key feature of these loans is that they are granted on concessional terms.</u> |
| AG8994 | <u>Examples of concessionary loans granted by entities include loans to developing countries, small emerging farmers, student loans granted to qualifying students for tertiary education and housing loans granted to low income families. Entities may receive concessionary loans, for example, from development agencies and other government entities.</u> | Added additional guidance on concessionary loans; typical examples of concessionary. |
| AG902 | <u>As concessionary loans are granted or received to achieve particular policy objectives of governments, the transaction price on initial recognition of the loan, may not be its fair value. At initial recognition, an entity therefore analyses the substance of the loan granted or received into its component parts, and accounts for those components using the principles in paragraphs AG93 and AG94 below.</u> | Added additional guidance on concessionary loans; explanation of why concessionary loans require specific accounting treatment. |
| AG913 | <u>An entity firstly assesses whether the substance of the concessionary loan is in fact a loan, rather than a grant or capital contribution, by applying the principles in ED378 and paragraphs 42 to 58 of IPSAS 23. Onee If an entity has determined that the transaction is a loan, it assesses whether the transaction price represents the fair value of the loan on initial recognition. An entity determines the fair value of the loan by discounting the agreed contractual cash flows of the loan using a market related rate of interest for a similar loan (see</u> | Added additional guidance on concessionary loans; initial analysis of the loan into its component parts by assessing whether the fair value of the loan is equal to the transaction price on initial recognition. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

	<u>AG868).</u>	
AG924	<u>Any difference between the fair value of the loan and the transaction price (the loan proceeds) is treated as follows:</u>	Added additional guidance on concessionary loans; accounting for the components of the transaction.
	(a) <u>Where the loan is received by an entity, it considers whether the difference is non-exchange revenue and should be accounted for the difference is treated as non-exchange revenue in accordance with IPSAS 23.</u>	Note: Once an IPSAS on social benefits has been developed, part (b) may need to be amended. E.g. if loans are granted to individuals, the off-market portion may be considered a social benefit.
	(b) <u>Where the loan is granted by an entity, the difference is treated as an expense in surplus or deficit at initial recognition.</u>	Alternatively, additional text could be added to (b) to state that an entity assesses whether the difference between the fair value of the loan and the transaction price constitutes a social benefit; social benefits are accounted for in accordance with an entity's accounting policies.
	<u>Illustrative examples are provided in paragraph IG54 of IPSAS 23 as well as paragraphs IE37 to IE39 accompanying of this Standard.</u>	<u>Based on comment received, part (a) has been drafted to reflect that the difference between the loan proceeds and the transaction price may be non-exchange revenue.</u>
AG935	<u>After initial recognition, an entity subsequently measures concessionary loans using the categories defined in paragraph 108.</u>	Added additional guidance on concessionary loans;

Non-Exchange Revenue Transactions

AG94	<u>The initial recognition and measurement of assets and liabilities resulting from non-exchange revenue transactions is dealt with in IPSAS 23. Assets and liabilities resulting from non-exchange revenue transactions can arise out of both contractual and non-contractual arrangements (see ED 37 paragraphs AG18 and AG19). Where these assets and liabilities arise out of contractual arrangements and otherwise meet the definition of a financial instrument, they are initially and subsequently measured as well as derecognized in accordance with this Standard. See illustrative example 5 in Appendix C.</u>	<u>Added guidance on the treatment of contractual non-exchange revenue transactions that meet the definition of a financial instrument.</u> <u>See consequential amendments to IPSAS 23; proposal to measure financial assets acquired as part of a non-exchange revenue transaction using ED38 rather than IPSAS 23 (consistent with the direction taken for biological assets).</u>
------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Valuing Financial Guarantees Issued at No or Nominal Consideration

AG95	<u>In paragraph 10 a “financial guarantee contract” is defined as “a contract that requires the issuer to make specified payments to reimburse the holder for a loss it incurs because a specified debtor fails to make payment when due in accordance with the original or modified terms of a debt instrument.” Under the requirements of this Standard, financial guarantee contracts, like other financial assets and financial liabilities, are required to be initially recognized at fair value plus, except for financial assets or financial liabilities through surplus or deficit, transaction costs</u>	<u>Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.</u>
------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

directly linked to acquisition or issue. Paragraphs 50-52 of this Standard provide commentary and guidance on determining fair value and this is complemented by Application Guidance in paragraphs AG105-AG120. Subsequent measurement for financial guarantee contracts is at the higher of the amount determined in accordance with IPSAS 19, “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Liabilities” and the amount initially recognized less, when appropriate, cumulative amortization.

AG96

In the public sector, guarantees are frequently provided for no or nominal consideration generally to further the reporting entity’s economic and social objectives. Such purposes include supporting infrastructure projects, supporting corporate entities at times of economic distress, guaranteeing the bond issues of entities in other tiers of governments and the loans of employees to finance motor vehicles that are to be used for performance of their duties as employees. At initial recognition, where no fee is charged, a reporting entity firstly considers whether there are quoted prices available in an active market for guarantee contracts directly equivalent to that entered into. The fact that a financial guarantee contract has been entered into at no consideration by the debtor to the issuer is not, of itself, conclusive evidence of the absence of an active market. Guarantees may be available from commercial issuers, but the reporting entity has agreed to enter into a financial guarantee contract, because the debtor would be unable to afford a commercial fee, and initiation of a project in fulfillment of one of the reporting entity’s social or policy objectives would be imperiled unless a financial guarantee contract were to be entered into. In such instances a fair value may be determined by quotes provided in an active market.

Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.

AG97

Where a fee is payable by the debtor to the reporting entity (issuer), the reporting entity must determine whether it reflects a price in an active market and therefore represents a fair value. If the fee payable does not represent a fair value, the reporting entity adopts the same approach as for a financial guarantee contract at nil consideration in paragraph AG98 below.

Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.

AG98

Where there is no active market for a directly equivalent guarantee contract; the reporting entity considers whether a valuation technique is available. Such valuation techniques include those highlighted in paragraph AG 110 of this Standard, such as recent arm’s length market transactions between knowledgeable willing parties, reference to the

Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

current fair value of another financial guarantee contract that is substantially the same as that provided at nil consideration by the issuer or a mathematical model. For example, National Government W guarantees a bond issue of Municipality X. As Municipality X has a government guarantee backing its bond issue, its bonds have a lower coupon than if they were not secured by a government guarantee. This is because the guarantee lowers the risk profile of the bonds for investors. The guarantee fee could be determined by using the credit spread between what the coupon rate would have been had the issue not been backed by a government guarantee and the rate with the guarantee in place. Where a fair value is obtainable either by reference to an active market or through a valuation technique the entity recognizes the financial guarantee at that fair value in the statement of financial position and recognizes an expense of an equivalent amount in the statement of financial performance.

G99

If no fair value can be determined, either by direct reference to an active market or through a valuation technique, an entity is required to measure the financial guarantee contract both at initial recognition and subsequently in accordance with IPSAS 19. The reporting entity assesses whether a present obligation has arisen as a result of a past event related to a financial guarantee contract, whether it is probable that such a present obligation will result in a cash outflow in accordance with the terms of the contract and a reliable estimate can be made of the outflow. It is possible, that a present obligation related to a financial guarantee contract will arise at initial recognition where, for example, a reporting entity enters into a financial guarantee contract to guarantee loans to a large number of small enterprises and, based on past experience, is aware that a high proportion of these enterprises will default.

Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.

AG100

Where the fair value of a financial guarantee in a non-exchange transaction is determined in accordance with paragraphs AG97 to AG98 that amount is recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9.

Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.

AG101

Only contractual financial guarantees (or guarantees that are in substance, contractual) are within the scope. Non-contractual guarantees are not within the scope of this Standard as they do not meet the definition of a financial guarantee contract. Financial guarantee contracts where the reporting entity is the holder of the contract, rather than the issuer of the contract, are outside the scope of this Standard.

Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Valuing Financial Guarantees Issued at No or Nominal Consideration (Alternative Approach Omitting the Valuation Model Stage)

<u>AGXX.</u>	<u>In paragraph 10 a “financial guarantee contract” is defined as “a contract that requires the issuer to make specified payments to reimburse the holder for a loss it incurs because a specified debtor fails to make payment when due in accordance with the original or modified terms of a debt instrument.” Under the requirements of this Standard, financial guarantee contracts, like other financial assets and financial liabilities, are required to be initially recognized at fair value plus, except for financial assets or financial liabilities through surplus or deficit, transaction costs directly linked to acquisition or issue. Paragraphs 50-52 of this Standard provide commentary and guidance on determining fair value and this is complemented by Application Guidance in paragraphs AG105-AG120. Subsequent measurement for financial guarantee contracts is at the higher of the amount determined in accordance with IPSAS 19, “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Liabilities” and the amount initially recognized less, when appropriate, cumulative amortization.</u>	<u>Alternative wording added which omits the valuation model stage.</u> <u>Note: the text has been referenced to the paragraphs outlined above and not the alternative approach.</u>
<u>AGXX.</u>	<u>In the public sector, guarantees are frequently provided for no or nominal consideration generally to further the reporting entity’s economic and social objectives. Such purposes include supporting infrastructure projects, supporting corporate entities at times of economic distress, guaranteeing the bond issues of entities in other tiers of governments and the loans of employees to finance motor vehicles that are to be used for performance of their duties as employees. At initial recognition, where no fee is charged, a reporting entity firstly considers whether there are quoted prices available in an active market for guarantee contracts directly equivalent to that entered into. The fact that a financial guarantee contract has been entered into at no consideration by the debtor to the issuer is not, of itself, conclusive evidence of the absence of an active market. Guarantees may be available from commercial issuers, but the reporting entity has agreed to enter into a financial guarantee contract, because the debtor would be unable to afford a commercial fee, and initiation of a project in fulfillment of one of the reporting entity’s social or policy objectives would be imperiled unless a financial guarantee contract were to be entered into. In such instances a fair value may be determined by quotes provided in an active market.</u>	<u>Alternative wording added which omits the valuation model stage.</u>
<u>AGXX.</u>	<u>Where a fee is payable by the debtor to the reporting</u>	<u>Alternative wording added which omits the</u>

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

	<u>entity (issuer), the reporting entity must determine whether it reflects a price in an active market and therefore represents a fair value. If the fee payable does not represent a fair value, the reporting entity adopts the same approach as for a financial guarantee contract at nil consideration in paragraph AGXX below.</u>	<u>valuation model stage.</u>
<u>AGXX.</u>	<u>Where there is no active market for a directly equivalent financial guarantee contract an entity is required to measure the financial guarantee contract both at initial recognition and subsequently in accordance with IPSAS 19. The reporting entity assesses whether a present obligation has arisen as a result of a past event related to a financial guarantee contract, whether it is probable that such a present obligation will result in a cash outflow in accordance with the terms of the contract and a reliable estimate can be made of the outflow. It is possible, that a present obligation related to a financial guarantee contract will arise at initial recognition where for example a reporting entity enters into a financial guarantee contract to guarantee loans to a large number of small enterprises and, based on past experience, is aware that a high proportion of these enterprises will default.</u>	<u>Alternative wording added which omits the valuation model stage.</u>
<u>AGXX.</u>	<u>Where the fair value of a financial guarantee in a non-exchange transaction is determined in accordance with paragraphs AG97 to AG98 that amount is recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9.</u>	<u>Alternative wording added which omits the valuation model stage.</u>
<u>AGXX.</u>	<u>Only contractual financial guarantees (or guarantees that are in substance, contractual) are within the scope. Non-contractual guarantees are not within the scope of this Standard as they do not meet the definition of a financial guarantee contract. Financial guarantee contracts where the reporting entity is the holder of the contract, rather than the issuer of the contract, are outside the scope of this Standard.</u>	<u>Alternative wording added which omits the valuation model stage.</u>

Subsequent Measurement of Financial Assets (paragraphs 475 and 486)

<u>AG10296</u>	If a financial instrument that was previously recognized as a financial asset is measured at fair value and its fair value falls below zero, it is a financial liability measured in accordance with paragraph <u>497</u> .	IAS 39.AG66; no amendment.
<u>AG10397</u>	The following example illustrates the accounting for transaction costs on the initial and subsequent measurement of an available-for-sale financial asset. An asset is acquired for CU100 plus a purchase commission of CU2. Initially, the asset is recognized at CU102. The end of the reporting period occurs	IAS 39.AG67; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

one day later, when the quoted market price of the asset is CU100. If the asset were sold, a commission of CU3 would be paid. On that date, the asset is measured at CU100 (without regard to the possible commission on sale) and a loss of CU2 is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. If the available-for-sale financial asset has fixed or determinable payments, the transaction costs are amortized to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ using the effective interest method. If the available-for-sale financial asset does not have fixed or determinable payments, the transaction costs are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ when the asset is derecognized or becomes impaired.

AG10498 Instruments that are classified as loans and receivables are measured at amortized cost without regard to the entity's intention to hold them to maturity. IAS 39.AG68; no amendment.

Fair Value Measurement Considerations (paragraphs 5048–529)

AG10599 Underlying the definition of fair value is a presumption that an entity is a going concern without any intention or need to liquidate, to curtail materially the scale of its operations or to undertake a transaction on adverse terms. Fair value is not, therefore, the amount that an entity would receive or pay in a forced transaction, involuntary liquidation or distress sale. However, fair value reflects the credit quality of the instrument. IAS 39.AG69; no amendment.

AG1060 This Standard uses the terms 'bid price' and 'asking price' (sometimes referred to as 'current offer price') in the context of quoted market prices, and the term 'the bid-ask spread' to include only transaction costs. Other adjustments to arrive at fair value (e.g. for counterparty credit risk) are not included in the term 'bid-ask spread'. IAS 39.AG70; no amendment.

Active Market: Quoted Price

AG1074 A financial instrument is regarded as quoted in an active market if quoted prices are readily and regularly available from an exchange, dealer, broker, industry group, pricing service or regulatory agency, and those prices represent actual and regularly occurring market transactions on an arm's length basis. Fair value is defined in terms of a price agreed by a willing buyer and a willing seller in an arm's length transaction. The objective of determining fair value for a financial instrument that is traded in an active market is to arrive at the price at which a transaction would occur at the end of the reporting period in that instrument (i.e. without modifying or IAS 39.AG71; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

repackaging the instrument) in the most advantageous active market to which the entity has immediate access. However, the entity adjusts the price in the more advantageous market to reflect any differences in counterparty credit risk between instruments traded in that market and the one being valued. The existence of published price quotations in an active market is the best evidence of fair value and when they exist they are used to measure the financial asset or financial liability.

AG1082

The appropriate quoted market price for an asset held or liability to be issued is usually the current bid price and, for an asset to be acquired or liability held, the asking price. When an entity has assets and liabilities with offsetting market risks, it may use mid-market prices as a basis for establishing fair values for the offsetting risk positions and apply the bid or asking price to the net open position as appropriate. When current bid and asking prices are unavailable, the price of the most recent transaction provides evidence of the current fair value as long as there has not been a significant change in economic circumstances since the time of the transaction. If conditions have changed since the time of the transaction (e.g. a change in the risk-free interest rate following the most recent price quote for a government ~~corporate~~ bond), the fair value reflects the change in conditions by reference to current prices or rates for similar financial instruments, as appropriate. Similarly, if the entity can demonstrate that the last transaction price is not fair value (e.g. because it reflected the amount that an entity would receive or pay in a forced transaction, involuntary liquidation or distress sale), that price is adjusted. The fair value of a portfolio of financial instruments is the product of the number of units of the instrument and its quoted market price. If a published price quotation in an active market does not exist for a financial instrument in its entirety, but active markets exist for its component parts, fair value is determined on the basis of the relevant market prices for the component parts.

IAS 39.AG72; deleted reference to “corporate” bond and replaced with “government” bond.

AG1093

If a rate (rather than a price) is quoted in an active market, the entity uses that market-quoted rate as an input into a valuation technique to determine fair value. If the market-quoted rate does not include credit risk or other factors that market participants would include in valuing the instrument, the entity adjusts for those factors.

IAS 39.AG73; no amendment.

No Active Market: Valuation Technique

AG11004

If the market for a financial instrument is not active, an entity establishes fair value by using a valuation

IAS 39.AG74; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

technique. Valuation techniques include using recent arm's length market transactions between knowledgeable, willing parties, if available, reference to the current fair value of another instrument that is substantially the same, discounted cash flow analysis and option pricing models. If there is a valuation technique commonly used by market participants to price the instrument and that technique has been demonstrated to provide reliable estimates of prices obtained in actual market transactions, the entity uses that technique.

- | | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG1 1105 | The objective of using a valuation technique is to establish what the transaction price would have been on the measurement date in an arm's length exchange motivated by normal <u>operating</u> business considerations. Fair value is estimated on the basis of the results of a valuation technique that makes maximum use of market inputs, and relies as little as possible on entity-specific inputs. A valuation technique would be expected to arrive at a realistic estimate of the fair value if (a) it reasonably reflects how the market could be expected to price the instrument and (b) the inputs to the valuation technique reasonably represent market expectations and measures of the risk-return factors inherent in the financial instrument. | IAS 39.AG75; amended reference from "business" to "operating" considerations as more appropriate for the public sector. |
| AG1 1206 | Therefore, a valuation technique (a) incorporates all factors that market participants would consider in setting a price and (b) is consistent with accepted economic methodologies for pricing financial instruments. Periodically, an entity calibrates the valuation technique and tests it for validity using prices from any observable current market transactions in the same instrument (i.e. without modification or repackaging) or based on any available observable market data. An entity obtains market data consistently in the same market where the instrument was originated or purchased. The best evidence of the fair value of a financial instrument at initial recognition is the transaction price (i.e. the fair value of the consideration given or received) unless the fair value of that instrument is evidenced by comparison with other observable current market transactions in the same instrument (i.e. without modification or repackaging) or based on a valuation technique whose variables include only data from observable markets. | IAS 39.AG76; no amendment. |
| AG1 1307 | The subsequent measurement of the financial asset or financial liability and the subsequent recognition of gains and losses shall be consistent with the requirements of this Standard. The application of paragraph AG1 1206 may result in no gain or loss being recognized on the initial recognition of a | IAS 39.AG76A; changed references to IFRSs. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

financial asset or financial liability. In such a case, ~~ED 38~~~~IAS 39~~ requires that a gain or loss shall be recognized after initial recognition only to the extent that it arises from a change in a factor (including time) that market participants would consider in setting a price.

AG1~~1408~~ The initial acquisition or origination of a financial asset or incurrence of a financial liability is a market transaction that provides a foundation for estimating the fair value of the financial instrument. In particular, if the financial instrument is a debt instrument (such as a loan), its fair value can be determined by reference to the market conditions that existed at its acquisition or origination date and current market conditions or interest rates currently charged by the entity or by others for similar debt instruments (i.e. similar remaining maturity, cash flow pattern, currency, credit risk, collateral and interest basis). Alternatively, provided there is no change in the credit risk of the debtor and applicable credit spreads after the origination of the debt instrument, an estimate of the current market interest rate may be derived by using a benchmark interest rate reflecting a better credit quality than the underlying debt instrument, holding the credit spread constant, and adjusting for the change in the benchmark interest rate from the origination date. If conditions have changed since the most recent market transaction, the corresponding change in the fair value of the financial instrument being valued is determined by reference to current prices or rates for similar financial instruments, adjusted as appropriate, for any differences from the instrument being valued. IAS 39.AG77; no amendment.

AG1~~1509~~ The same information may not be available at each measurement date. For example, at the date that an entity makes a loan or acquires a debt instrument that is not actively traded, the entity has a transaction price that is also a market price. However, no new transaction information may be available at the next measurement date and, although the entity can determine the general level of market interest rates, it may not know what level of credit or other risk market participants would consider in pricing the instrument on that date. An entity may not have information from recent transactions to determine the appropriate credit spread over the basic interest rate to use in determining a discount rate for a present value computation. It would be reasonable to assume, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, that no changes have taken place in the spread that existed at the date the loan was made. However, the entity would be expected to make reasonable efforts to determine whether there is evidence that there has been a change in such factors. When evidence of a IAS 39.AG78; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

change exists, the entity would consider the effects of the change in determining the fair value of the financial instrument.

- | | | |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG1169 | In applying discounted cash flow analysis, an entity uses one or more discount rates equal to the prevailing rates of return for financial instruments having substantially the same terms and characteristics, including the credit quality of the instrument, the remaining term over which the contractual interest rate is fixed, the remaining term to repayment of the principal and the currency in which payments are to be made. Short-term receivables and payables with no stated interest rate may be measured at the original invoice amount if the effect of discounting is immaterial. | IAS 39.AG79; no amendment. |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|

No Active Market: Equity Instruments

- | | | |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG1174 | The fair value of investments in equity instruments that do not have a quoted market price in an active market and derivatives that are linked to and must be settled by delivery of such an unquoted equity instrument (see paragraphs 486(c) and 497) is reliably measurable if (a) the variability in the range of reasonable fair value estimates is not significant for that instrument or (b) the probabilities of the various estimates within the range can be reasonably assessed and used in estimating fair value. | IAS 39.AG80; no amendment. |
| AG1182 | There are many situations in which the variability in the range of reasonable fair value estimates of investments in equity instruments that do not have a quoted market price and derivatives that are linked to and must be settled by delivery of such an unquoted equity instrument (see paragraphs 486(c) and 497) is likely not to be significant. Normally it is possible to estimate the fair value of a financial asset that an entity has acquired from an outside party. However, if the range of reasonable fair value estimates is significant and the probabilities of the various estimates cannot be reasonably assessed, an entity is precluded from measuring the instrument at fair value. | IAS 39.AG81; no amendment. |

Inputs to Valuation Techniques

- | | | |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG1193 | An appropriate technique for estimating the fair value of a particular financial instrument would incorporate observable market data about the market conditions and other factors that are likely to affect the instrument's fair value. The fair value of a financial instrument will be based on one or more of the following factors (and perhaps others). | IAS 39.AG82; retained reference to government bonds as this has been used in other IPSASs to reflect a "risk free rate". |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
- (a) *The time value of money (i.e. interest at the*
- Should the explanation of "Some entities in these countries may have a better credit standing and a lower borrowing rate than the central government.." and related explanations be retained given that the government bond rate is

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

basic or risk-free rate). Basic interest rates can usually be derived from observable government bond prices and are often quoted in financial publications. These rates typically vary with the expected dates of the projected cash flows along a yield curve of interest rates for different time horizons. For practical reasons, an entity may use a well-accepted and readily observable general rate, such as an interbank offered rate e.g., LIBOR or a swap rate, as the benchmark rate. (Because a rate such as an interbank offered rate LIBOR is not the risk-free interest rate, the credit risk adjustment appropriate to the particular financial instrument is determined on the basis of its credit risk in relation to the credit risk in this benchmark rate.) In some countries, the central government's bonds may carry a significant credit risk and may not provide a stable benchmark basic interest rate for instruments denominated in that currency. Some entities in these countries may have a better credit standing and a lower borrowing rate than the central government. In such a case, basic interest rates may be more appropriately determined by reference to interest rates for the highest rated corporate bonds issued in the currency of that jurisdiction.

advocated in IPSAS (except if there is no deep market in government bonds).

Amended references from LIBOR to an interbank rate.

- (b) *Credit risk.* The effect on fair value of credit risk (i.e. the premium over the basic interest rate for credit risk) may be derived from observable market prices for traded instruments of different credit quality or from observable interest rates charged by lenders for loans of various credit ratings.
- (c) *Foreign currency exchange prices.* Active currency exchange markets exist for most major currencies, and prices are quoted daily in financial publications.
- (d) *Commodity prices.* There are observable market prices for many commodities.
- (e) *Equity prices.* Prices (and indexes of prices) of traded equity instruments are readily observable in some markets. Present value based techniques may be used to estimate the current market price of equity instruments for which there are no observable prices.
- (f) *Volatility (i.e. magnitude of future changes in price of the financial instrument or other item).* Measures of the volatility of actively traded items can normally be reasonably estimated on the basis of historical market data or by using

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

volatilities implied in current market prices.

- (g) *Prepayment risk and surrender risk.* Expected prepayment patterns for financial assets and expected surrender patterns for financial liabilities can be estimated on the basis of historical data. (The fair value of a financial liability that can be surrendered by the counterparty cannot be less than the present value of the surrender amount—see paragraph 529.)
- (h) *Servicing costs for a financial asset or a financial liability.* Costs of servicing can be estimated using comparisons with current fees charged by other market participants. If the costs of servicing a financial asset or financial liability are significant and other market participants would face comparable costs, the issuer would consider them in determining the fair value of that financial asset or financial liability. It is likely that the fair value at inception of a contractual right to future fees equals the origination costs paid for them, unless future fees and related costs are out of line with market comparables.

Gains and Losses (paragraphs 642–664)

AG12014 An entity applies IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ to financial assets and financial liabilities that are monetary items in accordance with IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ and denominated in a foreign currency. Under IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~, any foreign exchange gains and losses on monetary assets and monetary liabilities are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. An exception is a monetary item that is designated as a hedging instrument in either a cash flow hedge (see paragraphs 1064–1129) or a hedge of a net investment (see paragraph 1134). For the purpose of recognizing foreign exchange gains and losses under IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~, a monetary available-for-sale financial asset is treated as if it were carried at amortized cost in the foreign currency. Accordingly, for such a financial asset, exchange differences resulting from changes in amortized cost are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and other changes in carrying amount are recognized in accordance with paragraph 642(b). For available-for-sale financial assets that are not monetary items under IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ (for example, equity instruments), the gain or loss that is recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ under paragraph 642(b) includes any related foreign exchange component. If there is a hedging relationship between a non-derivative monetary asset

IAS 39.AG83; amended for public sector terminology and references to IFRSs.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

and a non-derivative monetary liability, changes in the foreign currency component of those financial instruments are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Impairment and Uncollectibility of Financial Assets (paragraphs ~~675~~–~~797~~)

Financial Assets Carried at Amortized Cost (paragraphs ~~720~~–~~742~~)

- | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG1 2145 | Impairment of a financial asset carried at amortized cost is measured using the financial instrument's original effective interest rate because discounting at the current market rate of interest would, in effect, impose fair value measurement on financial assets that are otherwise measured at amortized cost. If the terms of a loan, receivable or held-to-maturity investment are renegotiated or otherwise modified because of financial difficulties of the borrower or issuer, impairment is measured using the original effective interest rate before the modification of terms. Cash flows relating to short-term receivables are not discounted if the effect of discounting is immaterial. If a loan, receivable or held-to-maturity investment has a variable interest rate, the discount rate for measuring any impairment loss under paragraph 720 is the current effective interest rate(s) determined under the contract. As a practical expedient, a creditor may measure impairment of a financial asset carried at amortized cost on the basis of an instrument's fair value using an observable market price. The calculation of the present value of the estimated future cash flows of a collateralized financial asset reflects the cash flows that may result from foreclosure less costs for obtaining and selling the collateral, whether or not foreclosure is probable. | IAS 39.AG84; no amendment. |
| AG1 2246 | The process for estimating impairment considers all credit exposures, not only those of low credit quality. For example, if an entity uses an internal credit grading system it considers all credit grades, not only those reflecting a severe credit deterioration. | IAS 39.AG85; no amendment. |
| AG1 2347 | The process for estimating the amount of an impairment loss may result either in a single amount or in a range of possible amounts. In the latter case, the entity recognizes an impairment loss equal to the best estimate within the range taking into account all relevant information available before the financial statements are issued about conditions existing at the end of the reporting period (<u>IPSAS 19, paragraph 47, contains guidance on how to determine the best estimate in a range of possible outcomes</u>). | IAS 39.AG86.; added footnote into the text of the application guidance. |
| AG1 2448 | For the purpose of a collective evaluation of impairment, financial assets are grouped on the basis | IAS 39.AG87; no amendment. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

of similar credit risk characteristics that are indicative of the debtors' ability to pay all amounts due according to the contractual terms (for example, on the basis of a credit risk evaluation or grading process that considers asset type, industry, geographical location, collateral type, past-due status and other relevant factors). The characteristics chosen are relevant to the estimation of future cash flows for groups of such assets by being indicative of the debtors' ability to pay all amounts due according to the contractual terms of the assets being evaluated. However, loss probabilities and other loss statistics differ at a group level between (a) assets that have been individually evaluated for impairment and found not to be impaired and (b) assets that have not been individually evaluated for impairment, with the result that a different amount of impairment may be required. If an entity does not have a group of assets with similar risk characteristics, it does not make the additional assessment.

- | | | |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| AG125+9 | Impairment losses recognized on a group basis represent an interim step pending the identification of impairment losses on individual assets in the group of financial assets that are collectively assessed for impairment. As soon as information is available that specifically identifies losses on individually impaired assets in a group, those assets are removed from the group. | IAS 39.AG88; no amendment. |
| AG1269 | Future cash flows in a group of financial assets that are collectively evaluated for impairment are estimated on the basis of historical loss experience for assets with credit risk characteristics similar to those in the group. Entities that have no entity-specific loss experience or insufficient experience, use peer group experience for comparable groups of financial assets. Historical loss experience is adjusted on the basis of current observable data to reflect the effects of current conditions that did not affect the period on which the historical loss experience is based and to remove the effects of conditions in the historical period that do not exist currently. Estimates of changes in future cash flows reflect and are directionally consistent with changes in related observable data from period to period (such as changes in unemployment rates, property prices, commodity prices, payment status or other factors that are indicative of incurred losses in the group and their magnitude). The methodology and assumptions used for estimating future cash flows are reviewed regularly to reduce any differences between loss estimates and actual loss experience. | IAS 39.AG89; no amendment. |
| AG127+4 | As an example of applying paragraph AG1269, an entity may determine, on the basis of historical | IAS 39.AG90; deleted reference to "credit card". |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

experience, that one of the main causes of default on ~~credit-card~~ loans is the death of the borrower. The entity may observe that the death rate is unchanged from one year to the next. Nevertheless, some of the borrowers in the entity's group of ~~credit-card~~ loans may have died in that year, indicating that an impairment loss has occurred on those loans, even if, at the year-end, the entity is not yet aware which specific borrowers have died. It would be appropriate for an impairment loss to be recognized for these 'incurred but not reported' losses. However, it would not be appropriate to recognize an impairment loss for deaths that are expected to occur in a future period, because the necessary loss event (the death of the borrower) has not yet occurred.

AG12~~82~~ When using historical loss rates in estimating future cash flows, it is important that information about historical loss rates is applied to groups that are defined in a manner consistent with the groups for which the historical loss rates were observed. Therefore, the method used should enable each group to be associated with information about past loss experience in groups of assets with similar credit risk characteristics and relevant observable data that reflect current conditions. IAS 39.AG91; no amendment.

AG12~~93~~ Formula-based approaches or statistical methods may be used to determine impairment losses in a group of financial assets (e.g. for smaller balance loans) as long as they are consistent with the requirements in paragraphs ~~720–742~~ and AG1~~24+8–~~AG12~~82~~. Any model used would incorporate the effect of the time value of money, consider the cash flows for all of the remaining life of an asset (not only the next year), consider the age of the loans within the portfolio and not give rise to an impairment loss on initial recognition of a financial asset. IAS 39.AG92; no amendment.

Interest ~~Revenue~~ Income After Impairment Recognition

AG1~~3024~~ Once a financial asset or a group of similar financial assets has been written down as a result of an impairment loss, interest revenue ~~income~~ is thereafter recognized using the rate of interest used to discount the future cash flows for the purpose of measuring the impairment loss. IAS 39.AG93; amended term 'income' to revenue.

Hedging (paragraphs ~~8078–1131~~)

Hedging Instruments (paragraphs ~~8179–864~~)

Qualifying Instruments (paragraphs ~~8179~~ and ~~820~~)

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG1 <u>3125</u> | The potential loss on an option that an entity writes could be significantly greater than the potential gain in value of a related hedged item. In other words, a written option is not effective in reducing the <u>surplus or deficit profit or loss</u> exposure of a hedged item on surplus or deficit . Therefore, a written option does not qualify as a hedging instrument unless it is designated as an offset to a purchased option, including one that is embedded in another financial instrument (for example, a written call option used to hedge a callable liability). In contrast, a purchased option has potential gains equal to or greater than losses and therefore has the potential to reduce <u>surplus or deficit profit or loss</u> exposure from changes in fair values or cash flows on surplus or deficit . Accordingly, it can qualify as a hedging instrument. | IAS 39.AG94; amended for public sector terminology and redrafted to accommodate new terminology . |
| AG1 <u>3226</u> | A held-to-maturity investment carried at amortized cost may be designated as a hedging instrument in a hedge of foreign currency risk. | IAS 39.AG95; no amendment. |
| AG1 <u>3327</u> | An investment in an unquoted equity instrument that is not carried at fair value because its fair value cannot be reliably measured or a derivative that is linked to and must be settled by delivery of such an unquoted equity instrument (see paragraphs 486 (c) and 497) cannot be designated as a hedging instrument. | IAS 39.AG96; no amendment. |
| AG1 <u>3428</u> | An entity's own equity instruments are not financial assets or financial liabilities of the entity and therefore cannot be designated as hedging instruments. | IAS 39.AG97; no amendment. |

Hedged items (paragraphs ~~875~~–~~942~~)

Qualifying items (paragraphs ~~875~~–~~897~~)

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG1 <u>3529</u> | A firm commitment to acquire <u>an entity or an integrated set of activities</u> a business in an <u>entity business</u> combination cannot be a hedged item, except for foreign exchange risk, because the other risks being hedged cannot be specifically identified and measured. These other risks are general <u>operational business</u> risks. | IAS 39.AG98; deleted references to a “business combination” but retained the reference to the acquisition of a “business” as an equivalent term will need to be determined as part of the entity combinations project and eluded to the fact that a ‘business’ as envisaged by IFRS could be an entity or an ‘integrated set of activities’. The wording should however correlate with the proposal in the project on entity combinations.

Also retained reference to “business” in the context of risk associated with a business combination as it is more likely that these transactions are commercially based and thus “business” risk is appropriate. |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- | | | |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG1369 | An equity method investment cannot be a hedged item in a fair value hedge because the equity method recognizes in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss the investor's share of the associate's <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss , rather than changes in the investment's fair value. For a similar reason, an investment in a consolidated <u>controlled entity</u> subsidiary cannot be a hedged item in a fair value hedge because consolidation recognizes in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss the <u>controlled entity's</u> subsidiary's <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss , rather than changes in the investment's fair value. A hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation is different because it is a hedge of the foreign currency exposure, not a fair value hedge of the change in the value of the investment. | IAS 39.AG99; amended for public sector terminology. |
| AG1374 | Paragraph 897 states that in consolidated financial statements the foreign currency risk of a highly probable forecast <u>intra-group</u> transaction within the economic entity may qualify as a hedged item in a cash flow hedge, provided the transaction is denominated in a currency other than the functional currency of the entity entering into that transaction and the foreign currency risk will affect consolidated <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss . For this purpose an entity can be a parent, <u>controlled entity</u> subsidiary , associate, joint venture or branch. If the foreign currency risk of a forecast <u>intra-group</u> transaction within the economic entity does not affect consolidated <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss , the <u>intra-group</u> transaction cannot qualify as a hedged item. This is usually the case for royalty payments, interest payments or management charges between members of the same <u>economic entity</u> group unless there is a related external transaction. However, when the foreign currency risk of a forecast <u>intra-group</u> transaction within the economic entity will affect consolidated <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss , the <u>intra-group</u> transaction can qualify as a hedged item. An example is forecast sales or purchases of inventories between members of the same <u>economic entity</u> group if there is an onward sale of the inventory to a party external to the <u>economic entity</u> group . Similarly, a forecast <u>intra-group</u> sale of property, plant and equipment within the economic entity from the group-entity that constructed <u>manufactured</u> it to <u>the a-group</u> entity that will use the <u>property, plant and equipment</u> in its operations may affect consolidated <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss . This could occur, for example, because the plant and equipment will be depreciated by the purchasing entity and the amount initially recognized for the plant and equipment may change if the forecast <u>intra-group</u> transaction <u>within the economic</u> | IAS 39.AG99A; amended for public sector terminology. Referred to “transactions within the economic entity” instead of “intragroup” transactions.

Amended example of the sale of plant and equipment & the manufacture thereof to the construction of property, plant and equipment. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

	<u>entity</u> is denominated in a currency other than the functional currency of the purchasing entity.	
<u>AG138</u>	<u>If a hedge of a forecast intragroup transaction within the economic entity qualifies for hedge accounting, any gain or loss that is recognized directly in net assets/equity in other comprehensive income in accordance with paragraph 106(a) shall be reclassified into from equity to profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment surplus or deficit in the same period or periods during which the foreign currency risk of the hedged transaction affects consolidated surplus or deficit profit or loss.</u>	<u>IAS 39.AG99B; amended for public sector terminology.</u> <u>IAS 1 amendments not yet considered by the IPSASB, therefore omitted.</u> <u>Note: repositioned paragraph in accordance with comment received.</u>
<u>AG139</u> <u>AG132</u>	An entity can designate all changes in the cash flows or fair value of a hedged item in a hedging relationship. An entity can also designate only changes in the cash flows or fair value of a hedged item above or below a specified price or other variable (a one-sided risk). The intrinsic value of a purchased option hedging instrument (assuming that it has the same principal terms as the designated risk), but not its time value, reflects a one-sided risk in a hedged item. For example, an entity can designate the variability of future cash flow outcomes resulting from a price increase of a forecast commodity purchase. In such a situation, only cash flow losses that result from an increase in the price above the specified level are designated. The hedged risk does not include the time value of a purchased option because the time value is not a component of the forecast transaction that affects surplus or deficit <u>profit or loss</u> (paragraph 9 <u>64</u> (b)).	<u>IAS 39.AG99BA; amended for public sector terminology.</u> <u>Included A</u> amendments to IAS 39 – Eligible Hedged Items <u>Amendment numbered AG99BA positioned between AG99A and AG99B: Not sure if this is the correct positioning.</u>
<u>AG133</u>	<u>If a hedge of a forecast intragroup transaction within the economic entity qualifies for hedge accounting, any gain or loss that is recognized directly in net assets/equity in other comprehensive income in accordance with paragraph 104(a) shall be reclassified into from equity to profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment surplus or deficit in the same period or periods during which the foreign currency risk of the hedged transaction affects consolidated surplus or deficit profit or loss.</u>	<u>IAS 39.AG99B; amended for public sector terminology.</u> <u>IAS 1 amendments not yet considered by the IPSASB, therefore omitted.</u>
Designation of Financial Items as Hedged Items (paragraphs <u>9088</u> and <u>9189</u>)		
<u>AG14034</u>	If a portion of the cash flows of a financial asset or financial liability is designated as the hedged item, that designated portion must be less than the total cash flows of the asset or liability. For example, in the case of a liability whose effective interest rate is below <u>the interbank offered rate LIBOR</u> , an entity cannot designate (a) a portion of the liability equal to the principal amount plus interest at <u>the interbank offered rate LIBOR</u> and (b) a negative residual	<u>IAS 39.AG99C; Amended references from LIBOR to an interbank rate. no amendment.</u>

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

portion. However, the entity may designate all of the cash flows of the entire financial asset or financial liability as the hedged item and hedge them for only one particular risk (e.g. only for changes that are attributable to changes in the interbank offered rate LIBOR). For example, in the case of a financial liability whose effective interest rate is 100 basis points below the interbank offered rate LIBOR, an entity can designate as the hedged item the entire liability (i.e. principal plus interest at the interbank offered rate LIBOR minus 100 basis points) and hedge the change in the fair value or cash flows of that entire liability that is attributable to changes in the interbank offered rate LIBOR. The entity may also choose a hedge ratio of other than one to one in order to improve the effectiveness of the hedge as described in paragraph AG14438.

AG14135 In addition, if a fixed rate financial instrument is hedged some time after its origination and interest rates have changed in the meantime, the entity can designate a portion equal to a benchmark rate that is higher than the contractual rate paid on the item. The entity can do so provided that the benchmark rate is less than the effective interest rate calculated on the assumption that the entity had purchased the instrument on the day it first designates the hedged item. For example, assume an entity originates a fixed rate financial asset of CU100 that has an effective interest rate of 6 per cent at a time when the interbank offered rate LIBOR is 4 per cent. It begins to hedge that asset some time later when the interbank offered rate LIBOR has increased to 8 per cent and the fair value of the asset has decreased to CU90. The entity calculates that if it had purchased the asset on the date it first designates it as the hedged item for its then fair value of CU90, the effective yield would have been 9.5 per cent. Because the interbank offered rate LIBOR is less than this effective yield, the entity can designate a LIBOR portion of the interbank offered rate of 8 per cent that consists partly of the contractual interest cash flows and partly of the difference between the current fair value (i.e. CU90) and the amount repayable on maturity (i.e. CU100).

IAS 39.AG99D; Amended references from LIBOR to an interbank rate. no amendment.

AG14236 Paragraph 9688 permits an entity to designate something other than the entire fair value change or cash flow variability of a financial instrument. For example:

IAS 39.AG99E; no amendment.

Amendments to IAS 39 – Eligible Hedged Items

- (a) All of the cash flows of a financial instrument may be designated for cash flow or fair value changes attributable to some (but not all) risks; or
- (b) Some (but not all) of the cash flows of a

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

financial instrument may be designated for cash flow or fair value changes attributable to all or only some risks (i.e. a 'portion' of the cash flows of the financial instrument may be designated for changes attributable to all or only some risks).

AG14337 To be eligible for hedge accounting, the designated risks and portions must be separately identifiable components of the financial instrument, and changes in the cash flows or fair value of the entire financial instrument arising from changes in the designated risks and portions must be reliably measurable. For example:

- (a) For a fixed rate financial instrument hedged for changes in fair value attributable to changes in a risk-free or benchmark interest rate, the risk-free or benchmark rate is normally regarded as both a separately identifiable component of the financial instrument and reliably measurable.
- (b) Inflation is not separately identifiable and reliably measurable and cannot be designated as a risk or a portion of a financial instrument unless the requirements in (c) are met.
- (c) A contractually specified inflation portion of the cash flows of a recognized inflation-linked bond (assuming there is no requirement to account for an embedded derivative separately) is separately identifiable and reliably measurable as long as other cash flows of the instrument are not affected by the inflation portion.

IAS 39.AG99F; no amendment.

Included ~~A~~ amendments to IAS 39 – Eligible Hedged Items

Designation of Non-Financial Items as Hedged Items (paragraph 920)

AG14438 Changes in the price of an ingredient or component of a non-financial asset or non-financial liability generally do not have a predictable, separately measurable effect on the price of the item that is comparable to the effect of, say, a change in market interest rates on the price of a bond. Thus, a non-financial asset or non-financial liability is a hedged item only in its entirety or for foreign exchange risk. If there is a difference between the terms of the hedging instrument and the hedged item (such as for a hedge of the forecast purchase of Brent Crude oil ~~Brazilian coffee~~ using a forward contract to purchase Light Sweet Crude oil ~~Colombian coffee~~ on otherwise similar terms), the hedging relationship nonetheless can qualify as a hedge relationship provided all the conditions in paragraph 9888 are met, including that the hedge is expected to be highly effective. For this purpose, the amount of the hedging instrument may be greater or less than that

IAS 39.AG100; amended public sector terminology.

Replaced the coffee bean example with oil as it was not public sector specific.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

of the hedged item if this improves the effectiveness of the hedging relationship. For example, a regression analysis could be performed to establish a statistical relationship between the hedged item (e.g. a transaction in Brent Crude oil ~~Brazilian coffee~~) and the hedging instrument (e.g. a transaction in Light Sweet Crude oil ~~Colombian coffee~~). If there is a valid statistical relationship between the two variables (i.e. between the unit prices of Brent Crude oil and Light Sweet Crude oil ~~Brazilian coffee and Colombian coffee~~), the slope of the regression line can be used to establish the hedge ratio that will maximize expected effectiveness. For example, if the slope of the regression line is 1.02, a hedge ratio based on 0.98 quantities of hedged items to 1.00 quantities of the hedging instrument maximizes expected effectiveness. However, the hedging relationship may result in ineffectiveness that is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ during the term of the hedging relationship.

Designation of Groups of Items as Hedged Items (paragraphs ~~931~~ and ~~942~~)

- | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>AG14539</p> | <p>A hedge of an overall net position (e.g. the net of all fixed rate assets and fixed rate liabilities with similar maturities), rather than of a specific hedged item, does not qualify for hedge accounting. However, almost the same effect on <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss of hedge accounting for this type of hedging relationship can be achieved by designating as the hedged item part of the underlying items. For example, if a bank has CU100 of assets and CU90 of liabilities with risks and terms of a similar nature and hedges the net CU10 exposure, it can designate as the hedged item CU10 of those assets. This designation can be used if such assets and liabilities are fixed rate instruments, in which case it is a fair value hedge, or if they are variable rate instruments, in which case it is a cash flow hedge. Similarly, if an entity has a firm commitment to make a purchase in a foreign currency of CU100 and a firm commitment to make a sale in the foreign currency of CU90, it can hedge the net amount of CU10 by acquiring a derivative and designating it as a hedging instrument associated with CU10 of the firm purchase commitment of CU100.</p> | <p>IAS 39.AG101; amended for public sector terminology.</p> |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|

Hedge Accounting (paragraphs ~~953–1131~~)

- | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <p>AG1469</p> | <p>An example of a fair value hedge is a hedge of exposure to changes in the fair value of a fixed rate debt instrument as a result of changes in interest rates. Such a hedge could be entered into by the issuer or by the holder.</p> | <p>IAS 39.AG102; no amendment.</p> |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

AG14~~71~~⁷⁴ An example of a cash flow hedge is the use of a swap to change floating rate debt to fixed rate debt (i.e. a hedge of a future transaction where the future cash flows being hedged are the future interest payments). IAS 39.AG103; no amendment.

AG14~~82~~⁸² A hedge of a firm commitment (e.g. a hedge of the change in fuel price relating to an unrecognized contractual commitment by an electric utility to purchase fuel at a fixed price) is a hedge of an exposure to a change in fair value. Accordingly, such a hedge is a fair value hedge. However, under paragraph 9~~75~~⁷⁵ a hedge of the foreign currency risk of a firm commitment could alternatively be accounted for as a cash flow hedge. IAS 39.AG104; no amendment.

Assessing Hedge Effectiveness

AG14~~93~~⁹³ A hedge is regarded as highly effective only if both of the following conditions are met: IAS 39.AG105; no amendment.

- (a) At the inception of the hedge and in subsequent periods, the hedge is expected to be highly effective in achieving offsetting changes in fair value or cash flows attributable to the hedged risk during the period for which the hedge is designated. Such an expectation can be demonstrated in various ways, including a comparison of past changes in the fair value or cash flows of the hedged item that are attributable to the hedged risk with past changes in the fair value or cash flows of the hedging instrument, or by demonstrating a high statistical correlation between the fair value or cash flows of the hedged item and those of the hedging instrument. The entity may choose a hedge ratio of other than one to one in order to improve the effectiveness of the hedge as described in paragraph AG1~~44~~⁴⁴~~38~~.
- (b) The actual results of the hedge are within a range of 80–125 per cent. For example, if actual results are such that the loss on the hedging instrument is CU120 and the gain on the cash instrument is CU100, offset can be measured by 120/100, which is 120 per cent, or by 100/120, which is 83 per cent. In this example, assuming the hedge meets the condition in (a), the entity would conclude that the hedge has been highly effective.

AG1~~50~~⁵⁰~~44~~ Effectiveness is assessed, at a minimum, at the time an entity prepares its annual ~~or interim~~ financial statements. IAS 39.AG106; deleted reference to interim financial statements as IPSASs do not deal with interim reporting nor do they mention interim reporting. In the out of session consultation it was noted that 'annual' should also be deleted.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| AG1 5145 | This Standard does not specify a single method for assessing hedge effectiveness. The method an entity adopts for assessing hedge effectiveness depends on its risk management strategy. For example, if the entity's risk management strategy is to adjust the amount of the hedging instrument periodically to reflect changes in the hedged position, the entity needs to demonstrate that the hedge is expected to be highly effective only for the period until the amount of the hedging instrument is next adjusted. In some cases, an entity adopts different methods for different types of hedges. An entity's documentation of its hedging strategy includes its procedures for assessing effectiveness. Those procedures state whether the assessment includes all of the gain or loss on a hedging instrument or whether the instrument's time value is excluded. | IAS 39.AG107; no amendment. |
| AG1 5246 | If an entity hedges less than 100 per cent of the exposure on an item, such as 85 per cent, it shall designate the hedged item as being 85 per cent of the exposure and shall measure ineffectiveness based on the change in that designated 85 per cent exposure. However, when hedging the designated 85 per cent exposure, the entity may use a hedge ratio of other than one to one if that improves the expected effectiveness of the hedge, as explained in paragraph AG1 4438 . | IAS 39.AG107A; no amendment. |
| AG1 5347 | <p>If the principal terms of the hedging instrument and of the hedged asset, liability, firm commitment or highly probable forecast transaction are the same, the changes in fair value and cash flows attributable to the risk being hedged may be likely to offset each other fully, both when the hedge is entered into and afterwards. For example, an interest rate swap is likely to be an effective hedge if the notional and principal amounts, term, repricing dates, dates of interest and principal receipts and payments, and basis for measuring interest rates are the same for the hedging instrument and the hedged item. In addition, a hedge of a highly probable forecast purchase of a commodity with a forward contract is likely to be highly effective if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) The forward contract is for the purchase of the same quantity of the same commodity at the same time and location as the hedged forecast purchase; (b) The fair value of the forward contract at inception is zero; and (c) Either the change in the discount or premium on the forward contract is excluded from the assessment of effectiveness and recognized in | IAS 39.AG108; amended for public sector terminology. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

~~surplus or deficit~~ ~~profit or loss~~ or the change in expected cash flows on the highly probable forecast transaction is based on the forward price for the commodity.

- | | | |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG1548 | Sometimes the hedging instrument offsets only part of the hedged risk. For example, a hedge would not be fully effective if the hedging instrument and hedged item are denominated in different currencies that do not move in tandem. Also, a hedge of interest rate risk using a derivative would not be fully effective if part of the change in the fair value of the derivative is attributable to the counterparty's credit risk. | IAS 39.AG109; no amendment. |
| AG1549 | To qualify for hedge accounting, the hedge must relate to a specific identified and designated risk, and not merely to the entity's general <u>operational business</u> risks, and must ultimately affect the entity's surplus or deficit profit or loss . A hedge of the risk of obsolescence of a physical asset or the risk of <u>legislative changes relating to the rehabilitation of damage to the environment</u> expropriation of property by a government is not eligible for hedge accounting; effectiveness cannot be measured because those risks are not measurable reliably. | IAS 39.AG110; amended for public sector terminology.

Amended the example relating to expropriation of land, to legal changes resulting in the rehabilitation of environmental damage. |
| AG1569 | Paragraph 831 (a) permits an entity to separate the intrinsic value and time value of an option contract and designate as the hedging instrument only the change in the intrinsic value of the option contract. Such a designation may result in a hedging relationship that is perfectly effective in achieving offsetting changes in cash flows attributable to a hedged one-sided risk of a forecast transaction, if the principal terms of the forecast transaction and hedging instrument are the same. | IAS 39.AG110A; no amendment.

<u>Included</u> A amendments to IAS 39 – Eligible Hedged Items |
| AG1574 | If an entity designates a purchased option in its entirety as the hedging instrument of a one-sided risk arising from a forecast transaction, the hedging relationship will not be perfectly effective. This is because the premium paid for the option includes time value and, as stated in paragraph AG1392, a designated one-sided risk does not include the time value of an option. Therefore, in this situation, there will be no offset between the cash flows relating to the time value of the option premium paid and the designated hedged risk. | IAS 39.AG110B; no amendment.

<u>Included</u> A amendments to IAS 39 – Eligible Hedged Items |
| AG1582 | In the case of interest rate risk, hedge effectiveness may be assessed by preparing a maturity schedule for financial assets and financial liabilities that shows the net interest rate exposure for each time period, provided that the net exposure is associated with a specific asset or liability (or a specific group of | IAS 39.AG111; no amendment. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

assets or liabilities or a specific portion of them) giving rise to the net exposure, and hedge effectiveness is assessed against that asset or liability.

AG1593 In assessing the effectiveness of a hedge, an entity generally considers the time value of money. The fixed interest rate on a hedged item need not exactly match the fixed interest rate on a swap designated as a fair value hedge. Nor does the variable interest rate on an interest-bearing asset or liability need to be the same as the variable interest rate on a swap designated as a cash flow hedge. A swap's fair value derives from its net settlements. The fixed and variable rates on a swap can be changed without affecting the net settlement if both are changed by the same amount. IAS 39.AG112; no amendment.

AG16054 If an entity does not meet hedge effectiveness criteria, the entity discontinues hedge accounting from the last date on which compliance with hedge effectiveness was demonstrated. However, if the entity identifies the event or change in circumstances that caused the hedging relationship to fail the effectiveness criteria, and demonstrates that the hedge was effective before the event or change in circumstances occurred, the entity discontinues hedge accounting from the date of the event or change in circumstances. IAS 39.AG113; no amendment.

Fair Value Hedge Accounting for a Portfolio Hedge of Interest Rate Risk

AG16155 For a fair value hedge of interest rate risk associated with a portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities, an entity would meet the requirements of this Standard if it complies with the procedures set out in (a)–(i) and paragraphs AG16256–AG1793 below. IAS 39.AG114; amended for public sector terminology.
Added the footnote to (i) to the text of the Standard; with minor changes.

- (a) As part of its risk management process the entity identifies a portfolio of items whose interest rate risk it wishes to hedge. The portfolio may comprise only assets, only liabilities or both assets and liabilities. The entity may identify two or more portfolios (e.g. the entity may group its available-for-sale assets into a separate portfolio), in which case it applies the guidance below to each portfolio separately.
- (b) The entity analyses the portfolio into repricing time periods based on expected, rather than contractual, repricing dates. The analysis into repricing time periods may be performed in various ways including scheduling cash flows into the periods in which they are expected to

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

occur, or scheduling notional principal amounts into all periods until repricing is expected to occur.

- (c) On the basis of this analysis, the entity decides the amount it wishes to hedge. The entity designates as the hedged item an amount of assets or liabilities (but not a net amount) from the identified portfolio equal to the amount it wishes to designate as being hedged. This amount also determines the percentage measure that is used for testing effectiveness in accordance with paragraph AG17367(b).
- (d) The entity designates the interest rate risk it is hedging. This risk could be a portion of the interest rate risk in each of the items in the hedged position, such as a benchmark interest rate (e.g. an interbank offered rate such as LIBOR).
- (e) The entity designates one or more hedging instruments for each repricing time period.
- (f) Using the designations made in (c)–(e) above, the entity assesses at inception and in subsequent periods, whether the hedge is expected to be highly effective during the period for which the hedge is designated.
- (g) Periodically, the entity measures the change in the fair value of the hedged item (as designated in (c)) that is attributable to the hedged risk (as designated in (d)), on the basis of the expected repricing dates determined in (b). Provided that the hedge is determined actually to have been highly effective when assessed using the entity's documented method of assessing effectiveness, the entity recognizes the change in fair value of the hedged item as a gain or loss in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and in one of two line items in the statement of financial position as described in paragraph 10098. The change in fair value need not be allocated to individual assets or liabilities.
- (h) The entity measures the change in fair value of the hedging instrument(s) (as designated in (e)) and recognizes it as a gain or loss in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. The fair value of the hedging instrument(s) is recognized as an asset or liability in the statement of financial position.
- (i) Any ineffectiveness will be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ as the difference between the change in fair value referred to in (g) and that referred to in (h) (effectiveness is

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

measured using the same materiality considerations as in other IPSASs).

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG1 62 56 | This approach is described in more detail below. The approach shall be applied only to a fair value hedge of the interest rate risk associated with a portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities. | IAS 39.AG115; no amendment. |
| AG1 63 57 | The portfolio identified in paragraph AG1 61 55 (a) could contain assets and liabilities. Alternatively, it could be a portfolio containing only assets, or only liabilities. The portfolio is used to determine the amount of the assets or liabilities the entity wishes to hedge. However, the portfolio is not itself designated as the hedged item. | IAS 39.AG116; no amendment. |
| AG1 64 58 | In applying paragraph AG1 61 55 (b), the entity determines the expected repricing date of an item as the earlier of the dates when that item is expected to mature or to reprice to market rates. The expected repricing dates are estimated at the inception of the hedge and throughout the term of the hedge, based on historical experience and other available information, including information and expectations regarding prepayment rates, interest rates and the interaction between them. Entities that have no entity-specific experience or insufficient experience use peer group experience for comparable financial instruments. These estimates are reviewed periodically and updated in the light of experience. In the case of a fixed rate item that is prepayable, the expected repricing date is the date on which the item is expected to prepay unless it reprices to market rates on an earlier date. For a group of similar items, the analysis into time periods based on expected repricing dates may take the form of allocating a percentage of the group, rather than individual items, to each time period. An entity may apply other methodologies for such allocation purposes. For example, it may use a prepayment rate multiplier for allocating amortizing loans to time periods based on expected repricing dates. However, the methodology for such an allocation shall be in accordance with the entity's risk management procedures and objectives. | IAS 39.AG117; no amendment. |
| AG1 65 59 | As an example of the designation set out in paragraph AG1 61 55 (c), if in a particular repricing time period an entity estimates that it has fixed rate assets of CU100 and fixed rate liabilities of CU80 and decides to hedge all of the net position of CU20, it designates as the hedged item assets in the amount of CU20 (a portion of the assets <u>is designated as the Standard permits an entity to designate any amount of the available qualifying assets or liabilities, i.e. in this example any amount of the assets between CU0 and CU100</u>). The designation is expressed as an | IAS 39.AG118; added footnotes into the text of the standard. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

‘amount of a currency’ (e.g. an amount of dollars, euro, pounds or rand) rather than as individual assets. It follows that all of the assets (or liabilities) from which the hedged amount is drawn—i.e. all of the CU100 of assets in the above example—must be:

- (a) Items whose fair value changes in response to changes in the interest rate being hedged; and
- (b) Items that could have qualified for fair value hedge accounting if they had been designated as hedged individually. In particular, because paragraph 529 of the Standard specifies that the fair value of a financial liability with a demand feature (such as demand deposits and some types of time deposits) is not less than the amount payable on demand, discounted from the first date that the amount could be required to be paid, such an item cannot qualify for fair value hedge accounting for any time period beyond the shortest period in which the holder can demand payment. In the above example, the hedged position is an amount of assets. Hence, such liabilities are not a part of the designated hedged item, but are used by the entity to determine the amount of the asset that is designated as being hedged. If the position the entity wished to hedge was an amount of liabilities, the amount representing the designated hedged item must be drawn from fixed rate liabilities other than liabilities that the entity can be required to repay in an earlier time period, and the percentage measure used for assessing hedge effectiveness in accordance with paragraph AG17367(b) would be calculated as a percentage of these other liabilities. For example, assume that an entity estimates that in a particular repricing time period it has fixed rate liabilities of CU100, comprising CU40 of demand deposits and CU60 of liabilities with no demand feature, and CU70 of fixed rate assets. If the entity decides to hedge all of the net position of CU30, it designates as the hedged item liabilities of CU30 or 50 per cent $(CU30 / (CU100 - CU40) = 50 \text{ per cent})$ of the liabilities with no demand feature.

AG1669 The entity also complies with the other designation and documentation requirements set out in paragraph 986. For a portfolio hedge of interest rate risk, this designation and documentation specifies the entity’s policy for all of the variables that are used to identify the amount that is hedged and how effectiveness is measured, including the following:

IAS39.AG119; no amendment.

- (a) Which assets and liabilities are to be included

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

in the portfolio hedge and the basis to be used for removing them from the portfolio.

- (b) How the entity estimates repricing dates, including what interest rate assumptions underlie estimates of prepayment rates and the basis for changing those estimates. The same method is used for both the initial estimates made at the time an asset or liability is included in the hedged portfolio and for any later revisions to those estimates.
- (c) The number and duration of repricing time periods.
- (d) How often the entity will test effectiveness and which of the two methods in paragraph AG1~~7367~~ it will use.
- (e) The methodology used by the entity to determine the amount of assets or liabilities that are designated as the hedged item and, accordingly, the percentage measure used when the entity tests effectiveness using the method described in paragraph AG1~~7367~~(b).
- (f) When the entity tests effectiveness using the method described in paragraph AG1~~7367~~(b), whether the entity will test effectiveness for each repricing time period individually, for all time periods in aggregate, or by using some combination of the two.

The policies specified in designating and documenting the hedging relationship shall be in accordance with the entity's risk management procedures and objectives. Changes in policies shall not be made arbitrarily. They shall be justified on the basis of changes in market conditions and other factors and be founded on and consistent with the entity's risk management procedures and objectives.

AG16~~74~~ The hedging instrument referred to in paragraph AG1~~6155~~(e) may be a single derivative or a portfolio of derivatives all of which contain exposure to the hedged interest rate risk designated in paragraph AG1~~6155~~(d) (e.g. a portfolio of interest rate swaps all of which contain exposure to an interbank offered rate ~~LIBOR~~). Such a portfolio of derivatives may contain offsetting risk positions. However, it may not include written options or net written options, because paragraph 86 of the Standard and paragraph AG13125 ~~does~~ not permit such options to be designated as hedging instruments (except when a written option is designated as an offset to a purchased option). If the hedging instrument hedges the amount designated in paragraph AG1~~6155~~(c) for more than one repricing time period, it is allocated to all of the time periods that it hedges. However, the

IAS 39.AG120; added footnotes into the text of the Standard.

Amended references from LIBOR to an interbank rate.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

whole of the hedging instrument must be allocated to those repricing time periods because paragraph 84 of the Standard does not permit a hedging relationship to be designated for only a portion of the time period during which a hedging instrument remains outstanding.

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| AG16 82 ⁹² | When the entity measures the change in the fair value of a prepayable item in accordance with paragraph AG1 6155 ⁶¹⁵⁵ (g), a change in interest rates affects the fair value of the prepayable item in two ways: it affects the fair value of the contractual cash flows and the fair value of the prepayment option that is contained in a prepayable item. Paragraph 9088 ⁹⁰⁸⁸ of the Standard permits an entity to designate a portion of a financial asset or financial liability, sharing a common risk exposure, as the hedged item, provided effectiveness can be measured. For prepayable items, paragraph 9189 ⁹¹⁸⁹ permits this to be achieved by designating the hedged item in terms of the change in the fair value that is attributable to changes in the designated interest rate on the basis of <i>expected</i> , rather than <i>contractual</i> , repricing dates. However, the effect that changes in the hedged interest rate have on those expected repricing dates shall be included when determining the change in the fair value of the hedged item. Consequently, if the expected repricing dates are revised (e.g. to reflect a change in expected prepayments), or if actual repricing dates differ from those expected, ineffectiveness will arise as described in paragraph AG1 7367 ⁷³⁶⁷ . Conversely, changes in expected repricing dates that (a) clearly arise from factors other than changes in the hedged interest rate, (b) are uncorrelated with changes in the hedged interest rate and (c) can be reliably separated from changes that are attributable to the hedged interest rate (e.g. changes in prepayment rates clearly arising from a change in demographic factors or tax regulations rather than changes in interest rate) are excluded when determining the change in the fair value of the hedged item, because they are not attributable to the hedged risk. If there is uncertainty about the factor that gave rise to the change in expected repricing dates or the entity is not able to separate reliably the changes that arise from the hedged interest rate from those that arise from other factors, the change is assumed to arise from changes in the hedged interest rate. | IAS 39.AG121; no amendment. |
| AG16 93 ⁹³ | The Standard does not specify the techniques used to determine the amount referred to in paragraph AG1 6155 ⁶¹⁵⁵ (g), namely the change in the fair value of the hedged item that is attributable to the hedged risk. If statistical or other estimation techniques are used for such measurement, management must | IAS 39.AG122; no amendment. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

expect the result to approximate closely that which would have been obtained from measurement of all the individual assets or liabilities that constitute the hedged item. It is not appropriate to assume that changes in the fair value of the hedged item equal changes in the value of the hedging instrument.

AG17064 Paragraph 10098 requires that if the hedged item for a particular repricing time period is an asset, the change in its value is presented in a separate line item within assets. Conversely, if the hedged item for a particular repricing time period is a liability, the change in its value is presented in a separate line item within liabilities. These are the separate line items referred to in paragraph AG16155(g). Specific allocation to individual assets (or liabilities) is not required. IAS 39.AG123; no amendment.

AG17165 Paragraph AG16155(i) notes that ineffectiveness arises to the extent that the change in the fair value of the hedged item that is attributable to the hedged risk differs from the change in the fair value of the hedging derivative. Such a difference may arise for a number of reasons, including:

- (a) Actual repricing dates being different from those expected, or expected repricing dates being revised;
- (b) Items in the hedged portfolio becoming impaired or being derecognized;
- (c) The payment dates of the hedging instrument and the hedged item being different; and
- (d) Other causes (e.g. when a few of the hedged items bear interest at a rate below the benchmark rate for which they are designated as being hedged, and the resulting ineffectiveness is not so great that the portfolio as a whole fails to qualify for hedge accounting).

Such ineffectiveness (applying the same materiality considerations in other IPSASs) shall be identified and recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

AG17266 Generally, the effectiveness of the hedge will be improved: IAS 39.AG125; no amendment.

- (a) If the entity schedules items with different prepayment characteristics in a way that takes account of the differences in prepayment behavior.
- (b) When the number of items in the portfolio is larger. When only a few items are contained in

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

the portfolio, relatively high ineffectiveness is likely if one of the items prepays earlier or later than expected. Conversely, when the portfolio contains many items, the prepayment behavior can be predicted more accurately.

- (c) When the repricing time periods used are narrower (e.g. 1-month as opposed to 3-month repricing time periods). Narrower repricing time periods reduce the effect of any mismatch between the repricing and payment dates (within the repricing time period) of the hedged item and those of the hedging instrument.
- (d) The greater the frequency with which the amount of the hedging instrument is adjusted to reflect changes in the hedged item (e.g. because of changes in prepayment expectations).

AG17367 An entity tests effectiveness periodically. If estimates of repricing dates change between one date on which an entity assesses effectiveness and the next, it shall calculate the amount of effectiveness either: IAS 39.AG126; no amendment.

- (a) As the difference between the change in the fair value of the hedging instrument (see paragraph AG16155(h)) and the change in the value of the entire hedged item that is attributable to changes in the hedged interest rate (including the effect that changes in the hedged interest rate have on the fair value of any embedded prepayment option); or
- (b) Using the following approximation. The entity:
 - (i) Calculates the percentage of the assets (or liabilities) in each repricing time period that was hedged, on the basis of the estimated repricing dates at the last date it tested effectiveness.
 - (ii) Applies this percentage to its revised estimate of the amount in that repricing time period to calculate the amount of the hedged item based on its revised estimate.
 - (iii) Calculates the change in the fair value of its revised estimate of the hedged item that is attributable to the hedged risk and presents it as set out in paragraph AG16155(g).
 - (iv) Recognizes ineffectiveness equal to the difference between the amount determined in (iii) and the change in the fair value of the hedging instrument (see paragraph AG16155(h)).

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

AG17460	<p>When measuring effectiveness, the entity distinguishes revisions to the estimated repricing dates of existing assets (or liabilities) from the origination of new assets (or liabilities), with only the former giving rise to ineffectiveness. All revisions to estimated repricing dates (other than those excluded in accordance with paragraph AG1682), including any reallocation of existing items between time periods, are included when revising the estimated amount in a time period in accordance with paragraph AG17367(b)(ii) and hence when measuring effectiveness. Once ineffectiveness has been recognized as set out above, the entity establishes a new estimate of the total assets (or liabilities) in each repricing time period, including new assets (or liabilities) that have been originated since it last tested effectiveness, and designates a new amount as the hedged item and a new percentage as the hedged percentage. The procedures set out in paragraph AG17367(b) are then repeated at the next date it tests effectiveness.</p>	IAS 39.AG127; no amendment.
AG17569	<p>Items that were originally scheduled into a repricing time period may be derecognized because of earlier than expected prepayment or write-offs caused by impairment or sale. When this occurs, the amount of change in fair value included in the separate line item referred to in paragraph AG16155(g) that relates to the derecognized item shall be removed from the statement of financial position, and included in the gain or loss that arises on derecognition of the item. For this purpose, it is necessary to know the repricing time period(s) into which the derecognized item was scheduled, because this determines the repricing time period(s) from which to remove it and hence the amount to remove from the separate line item referred to in paragraph AG16155(g). When an item is derecognized, if it can be determined in which time period it was included, it is removed from that time period. If not, it is removed from the earliest time period if the derecognition resulted from higher than expected prepayments, or allocated to all time periods containing the derecognized item on a systematic and rational basis if the item was sold or became impaired.</p>	IAS 39.AG128; no amendment.
AG1760	<p>In addition, any amount relating to a particular time period that has not been derecognized when the time period expires is recognized in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss at that time (see paragraph 10098). For example, assume an entity schedules items into three repricing time periods. At the previous redesignation, the change in fair value reported in the single line item in the statement of financial position was an asset of CU25. That amount represents amounts</p>	IAS 39.AG129; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

attributable to periods 1, 2 and 3 of CU7, CU8 and CU10, respectively. At the next redesignation, the assets attributable to period 1 have been either realized or rescheduled into other periods. Therefore, CU7 is derecognized from the statement of financial position and recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. CU8 and CU10 are now attributable to periods 1 and 2, respectively. These remaining periods are then adjusted, as necessary, for changes in fair value as described in paragraph AG1~~6155~~(g).

AG17~~74~~ As an illustration of the requirements of the previous two paragraphs, assume that an entity scheduled assets by allocating a percentage of the portfolio into each repricing time period. Assume also that it scheduled CU100 into each of the first two time periods. When the first repricing time period expires, CU110 of assets are derecognized because of expected and unexpected repayments. In this case, all of the amount contained in the separate line item referred to in paragraph AG1~~6155~~(g) that relates to the first time period is removed from the statement of financial position, plus 10 per cent of the amount that relates to the second time period. IAS 39.AG130; no amendment.

AG17~~82~~ If the hedged amount for a repricing time period is reduced without the related assets (or liabilities) being derecognized, the amount included in the separate line item referred to in paragraph AG1~~6155~~(g) that relates to the reduction shall be amortized in accordance with paragraph 10~~34~~. IAS 39.AG131

AG17~~93~~ An entity may wish to apply the approach set out in paragraphs AG1~~6155~~–AG17~~82~~ to a portfolio hedge that had previously been accounted for as a cash flow hedge in accordance with ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~. Such an entity would revoke the previous designation of a cash flow hedge in accordance with paragraph 11~~29~~(d), and apply the requirements set out in that paragraph. It would also redesignate the hedge as a fair value hedge and apply the approach set out in paragraphs AG1~~6155~~–AG17~~82~~ prospectively to subsequent accounting periods. IAS 39.AG132; amended references to IFRSs.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Transition (paragraphs 112–122)

~~AG166 An entity may have designated a forecast intragroup transaction within an economic entity as a hedged item at the start of an annual period beginning on or after 1 January 2005 (or, for the purpose of restating comparative information, the start of an earlier comparative period) in a hedge that would qualify for hedge accounting in accordance with this Standard (as amended by the last sentence of paragraph 80). Such an entity may use that designation to apply hedge accounting in consolidated financial statements from the start of the annual period beginning on or after 1 January 2005 (or the start of the earlier comparative period). Such an entity shall also apply paragraphs AG99A and AG99B from the start of the annual period beginning on or after 1 January 2005. However, in accordance with paragraph 108B, it need not apply paragraph AG99B to comparative information for earlier periods.~~

IAS 39.AG133; dealt with in the transitional provisions of the Standard and dates irrelevant for the adoption of IPSASs.

Appendix B – Reassessment of Embedded Derivatives

This appendix is an integral part of ED 38 the Standard.

Introduction

Background

- 1 ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ paragraph 119 describes an embedded derivative as ‘a component of a hybrid (combined) instrument that also includes a non-derivative host contract— with the effect that some of the cash flows of the combined instrument vary in a way similar to a stand-alone derivative.’
- 2 ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ paragraph 120 requires an embedded derivative to be separated from the host contract and accounted for as a derivative if, and only if:
 - (a) The economic characteristics and risks of the embedded derivative are not closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of the host contract;
 - (b) A separate instrument with the same terms as the embedded derivative would meet the definition of a derivative; and
 - (c) The hybrid (combined) instrument is not measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognised in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (i.e. a derivative that is embedded in a financial asset or financial liability at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is not separated).

Scope

- 3 ~~Subject to paragraphs 4 and 5 below, this Interpretation applies to all embedded derivatives within the scope of IAS 39.~~
 - 4 ~~This Interpretation does not address remeasurement issues arising from a reassessment of embedded derivatives.~~
 - 5 ~~This Interpretation does not address the acquisition of contracts with embedded derivatives in a business combination nor their possible reassessment at the date of acquisition.~~
- ~~* IFRS 3 (as revised in 2008) addresses the acquisition of contracts with embedded derivatives in a business combination.~~

Issues

- 3 ~~6 IAS 39~~ ED 38 requires an entity, when it first becomes a party to a contract, to assess whether any embedded derivatives contained in the contract are required to be separated from the host contract and accounted for as derivatives under the Standard. This appendix Interpretation ~~addresses whether the following issues:~~
 - (a) ~~Does IAS 39 ED 38~~ requires such an assessment ~~should~~ to be made only when the entity first becomes a party to the contract, or ~~if should~~ the assessment should be reconsidered throughout the life of the contract.?
 - (b) ~~Should a~~ A first-time adopter makes its assessment on the basis of the conditions that existed when the entity first became a party to the contract, or those prevailing when the entity adopts this IPSAS-IFRSs for the first time.?
- 4 ~~3 Subject to paragraphs 4 and 5 below, this appendix Interpretation applies to all embedded derivatives within the scope of ED 38 IAS 39 except; the acquisition of contracts with embedded derivatives in an entity-business combination nor their possible reassessment at the date of acquisition.~~

Consensus Application of ED 38 IPSAS XX to the Reassessment of Embedded Derivatives

- 5 ~~7~~—An entity shall assess whether an embedded derivative is required to be separated from the host contract and accounted for as a derivative when the entity first becomes a party to the contract. Subsequent reassessment is prohibited unless there is either (a) a change in the terms of the contract that significantly modifies the cash flows that otherwise would be required under the contract or (b) reclassification of a financial asset out of fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss category; in which cases an reassessment is required. An entity determines whether a modification to cash flows is significant by considering the extent to which the expected future cash flows associated with the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

embedded derivative, the host contract or both have changed and whether the change is significant relative to the previously expected cash flows on the contract.

6 ~~7A~~–The assessment whether an embedded derivative is required to be separated from the host contract and accounted for as a derivative on reclassification of a financial asset out of the fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category in accordance with paragraph 5 ~~7~~ shall be made on the basis of the circumstances that existed when the entity first became a party to the contract.

76 ~~8~~–On first time adoption of ED 38, an entity ~~A first-time adopter~~ shall assess whether an embedded derivative is required to be separated from the host contract and accounted for as a derivative on the basis of the conditions that existed at the later of the date it first became a party to the contract and the date a reassessment is required by paragraph 5.

Appendix C – Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation

This appendix is an integral part of ED 38 the Standard.

Introduction

Background

- 1 Many reporting entities have investments in foreign operations (as defined in IPSAS 4 IAS 24 paragraph 10.8). Such foreign operations may be controlled entities subsidiaries, associates, joint ventures or branches. IAS 24 IPSAS 4 requires an entity to determine the functional currency of each of its foreign operations as the currency of the primary economic environment of that operation. When translating the results and financial position of a foreign operation into a presentation currency, the entity is required to recognize foreign exchange differences directly in net assets/equity other comprehensive income until it disposes of the foreign operation.
- 2 Hedge accounting of the foreign currency risk arising from a net investment in a foreign operation will apply only when the net assets of that foreign operation are included in the financial statements. [* This will be the case for consolidated financial statements, financial statements in which investments are accounted for using the equity method, and financial statements in which venturers' interests in joint ventures are proportionately consolidated. (subject to change as proposed in ED 9 Joint Arrangements published by the International Accounting Standards Board in September 2007) and financial statements that include a branch.] The item being hedged with respect to the foreign currency risk arising from the net investment in a foreign operation may be an amount of net assets equal to or less than the carrying amount of the net assets of the foreign operation.
- 3 IAS 39 ED 38 requires the designation of an eligible hedged item and eligible hedging instruments in a hedge accounting relationship. If there is a designated hedging relationship, in the case of a net investment hedge, the gain or loss on the hedging instrument that is determined to be an effective hedge of the net investment is recognized directly in net assets/equity other comprehensive income and is included with the foreign exchange differences arising on translation of the results and financial position of the foreign operation. [* This will be the case for consolidated financial statements, financial statements in which investments are accounted for using the equity method, financial statements in which venturers' interests in joint ventures are proportionately consolidated (subject to change as proposed in ED 9 Joint Arrangements published by the International Accounting Standards Board in September 2007) and financial statements that include a branch.]
- 4 7 This appendix Interpretation applies to an entity that hedges the foreign currency risk arising from its net investments in foreign operations and wishes to qualify for hedge accounting in accordance with ED 38 IAS 39. It should not be applied by analogy to other types of hedge accounting. For convenience this Interpretation This appendix refers to such an entity as a controlling parent entity and to the financial statements in which the net assets of foreign operations are included as consolidated financial statements. All references to a controlling parent entity apply equally to an entity that has a net investment in a foreign operation that is a joint venture, an associate or a branch.
- 5 This appendix provides guidance on:
 - (a) ~~An entity with many foreign operations may be exposed to a number of foreign currency risks. This Interpretation provides guidance on identifying the foreign currency risks that qualify as a hedged risk in the hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation, given that an entity with many foreign operations may be exposed to a number of foreign currency risks. It specifically addresses:~~
 - (i) Whether the controlling parent entity may designate as a hedged risk only the foreign exchange differences arising from a difference between the functional currencies of the controlling parent entity and its foreign operation, or whether it may also designate as the hedged risk the foreign exchange differences arising from the difference between the presentation currency of the controlling parent entity's consolidated financial statements and the functional currency of the foreign operation; and
 - (ii) If the parent entity holds the foreign operation indirectly, whether the hedged risk may include only the foreign exchange differences arising from differences in functional currencies between the foreign operation and its immediate controlling parent entity, or whether the hedged risk may also include any foreign exchange differences between the functional currency of the foreign operation and any intermediate or ultimate controlling parent entity (i.e. whether the fact that the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

net investment in the foreign operation is held through an intermediate parent affects the economic risk to the ultimate parent).

- (b) (i) ~~5 IAS 39 ED 38~~ allows an entity to designate either a derivative or a non-derivative financial instrument (or a combination of derivative and non-derivative financial instruments) as hedging instruments for foreign currency risk. This appendix addresses whether the nature of the hedging instrument (derivative or non-derivative) or the method of consolidation affects the assessment of hedge effectiveness.
- (ii) This appendix also addresses where, within a group, hedging instruments that are hedges of a net investment in a foreign operation can be held to qualify for hedge accounting i.e. whether a qualifying hedge accounting relationship can be established only if the entity hedging its net investment is a party to the hedging instrument or whether any entity within ~~in~~ the ~~group~~ economic entity, regardless of its functional currency, can hold the hedging instrument.
- (c) ~~6 IAS 21 and IAS 39 require cumulative amounts recognized in other comprehensive income relating to both the foreign exchange differences arising on translation of the results and financial position of the foreign operation and the gain or loss on the hedging instrument that is determined to be an effective hedge of the net investment to be reclassified from equity to profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment when the parent disposes of the foreign operation. This Interpretation provides guidance on h~~How an entity should determine what amount of the gain or loss recognized in net assets/equity should the amounts to be reclassified from equity to be recognized **directly** in surplus or deficit profit or loss for both the hedging instrument and the hedged item, as IAS 21 IPSAS 4 and IAS 39 ED 38 require cumulative amounts recognized **directly** in other comprehensive income net assets/equity relating to both the foreign exchange differences arising on translation of the results and financial position of the foreign operation and the gain or loss on the hedging instrument that is determined to be an effective hedge of the net investment to be recognized **directly** in reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment when the parent disposes of the foreign operation. It specifically addresses:
 - (i) ~~When a foreign operation that was hedged is disposed of, what amounts from the controlling parent entity's foreign currency translation reserve in respect of the hedging instrument and in respect of that foreign operation should be reclassified from equity to recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss in the controlling parent entity's consolidated financial statements;~~
 - (ii) ~~Whether the method of consolidation affects the determination of the amounts to be recognized in surplus or deficit reclassified from equity to profit or loss.~~

Scope

- 7 ~~This Interpretation applies to an entity that hedges the foreign currency risk arising from its net investments in foreign operations and wishes to qualify for hedge accounting in accordance with IAS 39. For convenience this Interpretation refers to such an entity as a parent entity and to the financial statements in which the net assets of foreign operations are included as consolidated financial statements. All references to a parent entity apply equally to an entity that has a net investment in a foreign operation that is a joint venture, an associate or a branch.~~
- 8 ~~This Interpretation applies only to hedges of net investments in foreign operations; it should not be applied by analogy to other types of hedge accounting.~~

Issues Application of IPSAS XX to Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation

- 9 ~~Investments in foreign operations may be held directly by a parent entity or indirectly by its subsidiary or subsidiaries. The issues addressed in this Interpretation are:~~
 - (a) ~~the nature of the hedged risk and the amount of the hedged item for which a hedging relationship may be designated;~~
 - (i) ~~whether the parent entity may designate as a hedged risk only the foreign exchange differences arising from a difference between the functional currencies of the parent entity and its foreign operation, or whether it may also designate as the hedged risk the foreign exchange differences arising from the difference between the presentation currency of the parent entity's consolidated financial statements and the functional currency of the foreign operation;~~
 - (ii) ~~if the parent entity holds the foreign operation indirectly, whether the hedged risk may include only the foreign exchange differences arising from differences in functional currencies~~

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

~~between the foreign operation and its immediate parent entity, or whether the hedged risk may also include any foreign exchange differences between the functional currency of the foreign operation and any intermediate or ultimate parent entity (ie whether the fact that the net investment in the foreign operation is held through an intermediate parent affects the economic risk to the ultimate parent).~~

~~(b) where in a group the hedging instrument can be held:~~

~~(i) whether a qualifying hedge accounting relationship can be established only if the entity hedging its net investment is a party to the hedging instrument or whether any entity in the group, regardless of its functional currency, can hold the hedging instrument;~~

~~(ii) whether the nature of the hedging instrument (derivative or non-derivative) or the method of consolidation affects the assessment of hedge effectiveness.~~

~~(c) what amounts should be reclassified from equity to profit or loss as reclassification adjustments on disposal of the foreign operation:~~

~~(i) when a foreign operation that was hedged is disposed of, what amounts from the parent entity's foreign currency translation reserve in respect of the hedging instrument and in respect of that foreign operation should be reclassified from equity to profit or loss in the parent entity's consolidated financial statements;~~

~~(ii) whether the method of consolidation affects the determination of the amounts to be reclassified from equity to profit or loss.~~

Consensus

Nature of the Hedged Risk and Amount of the Hedged Item for which a Hedging Relationship may be Designated

- 6 ~~10~~ Hedge accounting may be applied only to the foreign exchange differences arising between the functional currency of the foreign operation and the controlling parent entity's functional currency.
- 7 ~~11~~ In a hedge of the foreign currency risks arising from a net investment in a foreign operation, the hedged item can be an amount of net assets equal to or less than the carrying amount of the net assets of the foreign operation in the consolidated financial statements of the controlling parent entity. The carrying amount of the net assets of a foreign operation that may be designated as the hedged item in the consolidated financial statements of a controlling entity parent depends on whether any lower level controlling entity parent of the foreign operation has applied hedge accounting for all or part of the net assets of that foreign operation and that accounting has been maintained in the controlling entity's parent's consolidated financial statements.
- 8 ~~12~~ The hedged risk may be designated as the foreign currency exposure arising between the functional currency of the foreign operation and the functional currency of any controlling parent entity (the immediate, intermediate or ultimate controlling parent entity) of that foreign operation. The fact that the net investment is held through an intermediate controlling entity parent does not affect the nature of the economic risk arising from the foreign currency exposure to the ultimate controlling parent entity.
- 9 ~~13~~ An exposure to foreign currency risk arising from a net investment in a foreign operation may qualify for hedge accounting only once in the consolidated financial statements. Therefore, if the same net assets of a foreign operation are hedged by more than one controlling parent entity within the economic entity group (for example, both a direct and an indirect controlling parent entity) for the same risk, only one hedging relationship will qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements of the ultimate controlling entity parent. A hedging relationship designated by one controlling parent entity in its consolidated financial statements need not be maintained by another higher level controlling parent entity. However, if it is not maintained by the higher level controlling parent entity, the hedge accounting applied by the lower level controlling entity parent must be reversed before the higher level controlling entity's parent's hedge accounting is recognized.

Where the Hedging Instrument can be Held

- 10 ~~14~~ A derivative or a non-derivative instrument (or a combination of derivative and non-derivative instruments) may be designated as a hedging instrument in a hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation. The hedging instrument(s) may be held by any entity or entities within the economic entity group (except the foreign operation that itself is being hedged), as long as the designation, documentation and effectiveness requirements of ED 38 IAS 39 paragraph 9896 that relate to a net investment hedge are

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

satisfied. In particular, the hedging strategy of the economic entity group should be clearly documented because of the possibility of different designations at different levels of the economic entity group.

- 11 ~~15~~ For the purpose of assessing effectiveness, the change in value of the hedging instrument in respect of foreign exchange risk is computed by reference to the functional currency of the controlling parent entity against whose functional currency the hedged risk is measured, in accordance with the hedge accounting documentation. Depending on where the hedging instrument is held, in the absence of hedge accounting the total change in value might be recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss, directly in net assets/equity other comprehensive income, or both. However, the assessment of effectiveness is not affected by whether the change in value of the hedging instrument is recognized in surplus or deficit or directly in net assets/equity profit or loss or in other comprehensive income. As part of the application of hedge accounting, the total effective portion of the change is included directly in net assets/equity other comprehensive income. The assessment of effectiveness is not affected by whether the hedging instrument is a derivative or a non-derivative instrument or by the method of consolidation.

Disposal of a Hedged Foreign Operation

- 12 ~~16~~ When a foreign operation that was hedged is disposed of, the amount reclassified to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment from the foreign currency translation reserve in the consolidated financial statements of the controlling entity parent in respect of the hedging instrument is the amount that ED 38 IAS 39 paragraph 113~~4~~ requires to be identified. That amount is the cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument that was determined to be an effective hedge.
- 13 ~~17~~ The amount recognized in surplus or deficit upon transfer reclassified to profit or loss from the foreign currency translation reserve in the consolidated financial statements of a controlling entity parent in respect of the net investment in that foreign operation in accordance with IPSAS 4 IAS 21 paragraph 57 is the amount included in that controlling entity's parent's foreign currency translation reserve in respect of that foreign operation. In the ultimate controlling entity's parent's consolidated financial statements, the aggregate net amount recognized in the foreign currency translation reserve in respect of all foreign operations is not affected by the consolidation method. However, whether the ultimate controlling entity parent uses the direct or the step-by-step method of consolidation, this may affect the amount included in its foreign currency translation reserve in respect of an individual foreign operation.
- 14 The direct method is the method of consolidation in which the financial statements of the foreign operation are translated directly into the functional currency of the ultimate controlling entity parent. The step-by-step method is the method of consolidation in which the financial statements of the foreign operation are first translated into the functional currency of any intermediate controlling entity(ies) parent(s) and then translated into the functional currency of the ultimate controlling entity parent (or the presentation currency if different).
- 15 The use of the step-by-step method of consolidation may result in a different amount being recognized in surplus or deficit the reclassification to profit or loss of an amount different from that used to determine hedge effectiveness. This difference may be eliminated by determining the amount relating to that foreign operation that would have arisen if the direct method of consolidation had been used. Making this adjustment is not required by IPSAS 4 IAS 21. However, it is an accounting policy choice that should be followed consistently for all net investments.

Example

Appendix

Application guidance

This appendix is an integral part of the Interpretation.

- 16 ~~AG1~~ The following example ~~This appendix~~ illustrates the application of the preceding paragraphs ~~Interpretation~~ using the entity corporate structure illustrated below. In all cases the hedging relationships described would be tested for effectiveness in accordance with ED 38 IAS 39, although this testing is not discussed in ~~this appendix~~. Entity ABC Parent, being the ultimate controlling entity parent entity, presents its consolidated financial statements in its functional currency of euro (EUR). Each of the controlled entities i.e. Entity A, Entity B and Entity C, subsidiaries is wholly owned. Entity ABC Parent's £500 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary B (functional currency pounds sterling (GBP)) includes the £159 million equivalent of Entity Subsidiary B's US\$300 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary C (functional currency US dollars (USD)). In other words, Entity Subsidiary B's net assets other than its investment in Entity Subsidiary C are £341 million.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Nature of Hedged Risk for which a Hedging Relationship may be Designated (paragraphs 6–9)

- 17 ~~AG2~~ ~~Parent~~ Entity ABC can hedge its net investment in each of ~~Entities~~ Subsidiaries A, B and C for the foreign exchange risk between their respective functional currencies (Japanese yen (JPY), pounds sterling and US dollars) and euro. In addition, Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ can hedge the USD/GBP foreign exchange risk between the functional currencies of Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ B and Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C. In its consolidated financial statements, Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ B can hedge its net investment in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C for the foreign exchange risk between their functional currencies of US dollars and pounds sterling. In the following examples the designated risk is the spot foreign exchange risk because the hedging instruments are not derivatives. If the hedging instruments were forward contracts, Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ could designate the forward foreign exchange risk.

Amount of Hedged item for which a Hedging Relationship may be Designated (paragraphs 6–9)

- 18 ~~AG3~~ Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ wishes to hedge the foreign exchange risk from its net investment in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C. Assume that Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A has an external borrowing of US\$300 million. The net assets of Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A at the start of the reporting period are ¥400,000 million including the proceeds of the external borrowing of US\$300 million.
- 19 ~~AG4~~ The hedged item can be an amount of net assets equal to or less than the carrying amount of ~~Parent's~~ Entity ABC's net investment in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C (US\$300 million) in its consolidated financial statements. In its consolidated financial statements Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ can designate the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A as a hedge of the EUR/USD spot foreign exchange risk associated with its net investment in the US\$300 million net assets of Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C. In this case, both the EUR/USD foreign exchange difference on the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A and the EUR/USD foreign exchange difference on the US\$300 million net investment in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C are included in the foreign currency translation reserve in Entity ABC ~~Parent's~~ consolidated financial statements after the application of hedge accounting.
- 20 ~~AG5~~ In the absence of hedge accounting, the total USD/EUR foreign exchange difference on the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A would be recognized in Entity ABC ~~Parent's~~ consolidated financial statements as follows:

- USD/JPY spot foreign exchange rate change, translated to euro, in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, and
- JPY/EUR spot foreign exchange rate change directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

Instead of the designation in paragraph 19, in its consolidated financial statements Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ can designate the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A as a hedge of the GBP/USD spot foreign exchange risk between Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C and Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ B. In this case, the total USD/EUR foreign exchange difference on the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A would instead be recognized in Entity ABC ~~Parent's~~ consolidated financial statements as follows:

- The GBP/USD spot foreign exchange rate change in the foreign currency translation reserve relating to Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C,
- GBP/JPY spot foreign exchange rate change, translated to euro, in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, and
- JPY/EUR spot foreign exchange rate change directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

- 21 ~~AG6~~ Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ cannot designate the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A as a hedge of both the EUR/USD spot foreign exchange risk and the GBP/USD spot foreign exchange risk in its consolidated financial statements. A single hedging instrument can hedge the same designated risk only once. Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ B cannot apply hedge accounting in its consolidated financial statements because the hedging instrument is held outside the economic entity group comprising Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ B and Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C.

Where in an Economic Entity group can the Hedging Instrument be Held (paragraphs 10 and 11)?

- 22 ~~AG7~~ As noted in paragraph ~~2049~~, the total change in value in respect of foreign exchange risk of the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A would be recorded in both surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (USD/JPY spot risk) and directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (EUR/JPY spot risk) in Entity ABC ~~Parent's~~ consolidated financial statements in the absence of hedge

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

accounting. Both amounts are included for the purpose of assessing the effectiveness of the hedge designated in paragraph AG194 because the change in value of both the hedging instrument and the hedged item are computed by reference to the euro functional currency of Entity ABC Parent against the US dollar functional currency of Entity Subsidiary C, in accordance with the hedge documentation. The method of consolidation (i.e. direct method or step-by-step method) does not affect the assessment of the effectiveness of the hedge.

Amounts ~~reclassified to profit or loss~~ Recognized in Surplus or Deficit on Disposal of a Foreign Operation (paragraphs 12 and 13)

23 ~~AG8~~ When Entity Subsidiary C is disposed of, the amounts are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified to profit or loss in Entity ABC Parent's consolidated financial statements~~ upon transfer from its foreign currency translation reserve (FCTR) are:

- (a) In respect of the US\$300 million external borrowing of Entity Subsidiary A, the amount that ~~IAS 39 ED 38~~ requires to be identified, i.e. the total change in value in respect of foreign exchange risk that was recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ as the effective portion of the hedge; and
- (b) In respect of the US\$300 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary C, the amount determined by the entity's consolidation method. If Entity ABC Parent uses the direct method, its FCTR in respect of Entity Subsidiary C will be determined directly by the EUR/USD foreign exchange rate. If Entity ABC Parent uses the step-by-step method, its FCTR in respect of Entity Subsidiary C will be determined by the FCTR recognized by Entity Subsidiary B reflecting the GBP/USD foreign exchange rate, translated to Entity ABC Parent's functional currency using the EUR/GBP foreign exchange rate. Entity ABC Parent's use of the step-by-step method of consolidation in prior periods does not require it to or preclude it from determining the amount of FCTR to be reclassified recognized in surplus or deficit when it disposes of Entity Subsidiary C to be the amount that it would have recognized if it had always used the direct method, depending on its accounting policy.

Hedging More Than One Foreign Operation (paragraphs 7, 9 and 11)

24 ~~AG9~~ The following examples illustrate that in the consolidated financial statements of Entity ABC Parent, the risk that can be hedged is always the risk between its functional currency (euro) and the functional currencies of Entities Subsidiaries B and C. No matter how the hedges are designated, the maximum amounts that can be effective hedges to be included in the foreign currency translation reserve in Entity ABC Parent's consolidated financial statements when both foreign operations are hedged are US\$300 million for EUR/USD risk and £341 million for EUR/GBP risk. Other changes in value due to changes in foreign exchange rates are included in Entity ABC Parent's consolidated surplus or deficit profit or loss. Of course, it would be possible for Entity ABC Parent to designate US\$300 million only for changes in the USD/GBP spot foreign exchange rate or £500 million only for changes in the GBP/EUR spot foreign exchange rate.

Parent Entity ABC holds both USD and GBP Hedging Instruments

25 ~~AG10~~ Entity ABC Parent may wish to hedge the foreign exchange risk in relation to its net investment in Entity Subsidiary B as well as that in relation to Entity Subsidiary C. Assume that Entity ABC Parent holds suitable hedging instruments denominated in US dollars and pounds sterling that it could designate as hedges of its net investments in Entity Subsidiary B and Entity Subsidiary C. The designations Entity ABC Parent can make in its consolidated financial statements include, but are not limited to, the following:

- (a) US\$300 million hedging instrument designated as a hedge of the US\$300 million of net investment in Entity Subsidiary C with the risk being the spot foreign exchange exposure (EUR/USD) between Entity ABC Parent and Entity Subsidiary C and up to £341 million hedging instrument designated as a hedge of £341 million of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary B with the risk being the spot foreign exchange exposure (EUR/GBP) between Entity ABC Parent and Entity Subsidiary B.
- (b) US\$300 million hedging instrument designated as a hedge of the US\$300 million of net investment in Entity Subsidiary C with the risk being the spot foreign exchange exposure (GBP/USD) between Entity Subsidiary B and Entity Subsidiary C and up to £500 million hedging instrument designated as a hedge of £500 million of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary B with the risk being the spot foreign exchange exposure (EUR/GBP) between Entity ABC Parent and Entity Subsidiary B.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- 26 ~~AG11~~ The EUR/USD risk from Entity ABC-Parent's net investment in Entity Subsidiary C is a different risk from the EUR/GBP risk from Entity ABC-Parent's net investment in Entity Subsidiary B. However, in the case described in paragraph 25(a), by its designation of the USD hedging instrument it holds, Entity ABC-Parent has already fully hedged the EUR/USD risk from its net investment in Entity Subsidiary C. If Entity ABC-Parent also designated a GBP instrument it holds as a hedge of its £500 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary B, £159 million of that net investment, representing the GBP equivalent of its USD net investment in Entity Subsidiary C, would be hedged twice for GBP/EUR risk in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements.
- 27 ~~AG12~~ In the case described in paragraph 25(b), if Entity ABC-Parent designates the hedged risk as the spot foreign exchange exposure (GBP/USD) between Entity Subsidiary B and Entity Subsidiary C, only the GBP/USD part of the change in the value of its US\$300 million hedging instrument is included in Entity ABC-Parent's foreign currency translation reserve relating to Entity Subsidiary C. The remainder of the change (equivalent to the GBP/EUR change on £159 million) is included in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated surplus or deficit profit or loss, as in paragraph 20. Because the designation of the USD/GBP risk between Entities Subsidiaries B and C does not include the GBP/EUR risk, Entity ABC-Parent is also able to designate up to £500 million of its net investment in Entity Subsidiary B with the risk being the spot foreign exchange exposure (GBP/EUR) between Entity ABC-Parent and Entity Subsidiary B.

Subsidiary Entity B Holds the USD Hedging Instrument

- 28 ~~AG13~~ Assume that Entity Subsidiary B holds US\$300 million of external debt, the proceeds of which were transferred to Entity ABC-Parent by an inter-company-entity loan denominated in pounds sterling. Because both its assets and liabilities increased by £159 million, Entity Subsidiary B's net assets are unchanged. Entity Subsidiary B could designate the external debt as a hedge of the GBP/USD risk of its net investment in Entity Subsidiary C in its consolidated financial statements. Entity ABC-Parent could maintain Entity Subsidiary B's designation of that hedging instrument as a hedge of its US\$300 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary C for the GBP/USD risk (see paragraph 9) and Parent Entity ABC could designate the GBP hedging instrument it holds as a hedge of its entire £500 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary B. The first hedge, designated by Entity Subsidiary B, would be assessed by reference to Entity Subsidiary B's functional currency (pounds sterling) and the second hedge, designated by Entity ABC-Parent, would be assessed by reference to Entity ABC-Parent's functional currency (euro). In this case, only the GBP/USD risk from Entity ABC-Parent's net investment in Entity Subsidiary C has been hedged in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements by the USD hedging instrument, not the entire EUR/USD risk. Therefore, the entire EUR/GBP risk from Entity ABC-Parent's £500 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary B may be hedged in the consolidated financial statements of Entity ABC-Parent.
- 29 ~~AG14~~ However, the accounting for Entity ABC-Parent's £159 million loan payable to Entity Subsidiary B must also be considered. If Entity ABC-Parent's loan payable is not considered part of its net investment in Entity Subsidiary B because it does not satisfy the conditions in IPSAS 4 IAS 21 paragraph 19, the GBP/EUR foreign exchange difference arising on translating it would be included in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated surplus or deficit profit or loss. If the £159 million loan payable to Entity Subsidiary B is considered part of Entity ABC-Parent's net investment, that net investment would be only £341 million and the amount Entity ABC-Parent could designate as the hedged item for GBP/EUR risk would be reduced from £500 million to £341 million accordingly.
- 30 ~~AG15~~ If Entity ABC-Parent reversed the hedging relationship designated by Entity Subsidiary B, Entity ABC-Parent could designate the US\$300 million external borrowing held by Entity Subsidiary B as a hedge of its US\$300 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary C for the EUR/USD risk and designate the GBP hedging instrument it holds itself as a hedge of only up to £341 million of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary B. In this case the effectiveness of both hedges would be computed by reference to Entity ABC-Parent's functional currency (euro). Consequently, both the USD/GBP change in value of the external borrowing held by Entity Subsidiary B and the GBP/EUR change in value of Entity ABC-Parent's loan payable to Entity Subsidiary B (equivalent to USD/EUR in total) would be included in the foreign currency translation reserve in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements. Because Entity ABC-Parent has already fully hedged the EUR/USD risk from its net investment in Entity Subsidiary C, it can hedge only up to £341 million for the EUR/GBP risk of its net investment in Entity Subsidiary B.

Illustrative example

This example accompanies, but is not part of, IFRIC 16.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Amendments to other IPSASs

The amendments in this appendix shall be applied for annual financial statements covering periods beginning on or after Month, Day, Year. If an entity applies this Standard for an earlier period, these amendments shall be applied for that earlier period.

A1 The references to “international or national accounting standards dealing with the recognition and measurement of financial instruments” are amended to “IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” in the following IPSASs:

- (a) IPSAS 1, “Presentation of Financial Statements” paragraphs 79, 82 and 101
- (b) IPSAS 4, “The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates” paragraphs 3, 4, 31 and 61(a)
- (c) IPSAS 6, “Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements” paragraphs 22, 52, 61, and IG8
- (d) IPSAS 7, “Investments in Associates” paragraphs 1, 2, 20, 21, 24, 25, 37, 38 and 39
- (e) IPSAS 8, “Interests in Joint Ventures” paragraph 1, 2, 47 and 58
- (f) IPSAS 9, “Revenue from Exchange Transactions” paragraph 10(c)
- (g) IPSAS 26, “Impairment of Cash-Generating Assets” paragraphs 2(c) and 8

IPSAS 4, “The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates”

A2 IPSAS 4, paragraph 5 is amended as follows:

This Standard does not apply to hedge accounting for foreign currency items, including the hedging of a net investment in a foreign operation. Accordingly, entities may apply the relevant international or national accounting standards dealing with hedge accounting. IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” applies to hedge accounting.

IPSAS 6, “Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements”

A3 IPSAS 6, paragraph 58(c) is amended as follows:

- (c) As financial instruments: in accordance with IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement.”

IPSAS 12, “Inventories”

A4 IPSAS 12, paragraph 2(b) is amended as follows:

- (b) Financial instruments (see IPSAS ED 37, “Financial Instruments: Presentation” and IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement.”

IPSAS 21, “Impairment of Non-Cash-Generating Assets”

A5 IPSAS 21, paragraph 2(c) is amended as follows:

- (c) Financial assets that are included in the scope of IPSAS 15, “Financial Instruments: Disclosure and Presentation” IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement.”

A6 IPSAS 21, paragraph 8 is amended as follow:

This Standard does not apply to financial assets that are included in the scope of IPSAS 15 IPSAS ED 37. Impairment of these assets will be dealt with in any IPSAS that the IPSASB develops on the basis of IAS 39, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement to deal with the recognition and measurement of financial instruments is dealt with in IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement.”

IPSAS 23, “Revenue from Non-Exchange Transactions (Taxes and Transfers)”

A7+ Paragraph 4 is to be amended as follows:

- 4. This Standard addresses revenue arising from non-exchange transactions. Revenue arising from exchange transactions is addressed in ~~the Standard of GRAP-IPSAS 9, on “Revenue~~

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

from Exchange Transactions”. While revenues received by public sector entities arise from exchange and non-exchange transactions, the majority of revenue of governments and other public sector entities is typically derived from non-exchange transactions such as:

- (a) Taxes; and
- (b) Transfers (whether cash or non-cash), including grants, debt forgiveness, fines, bequests, gifts, donations, ~~and~~ goods and services in-kind, and concessionary loans received.

A8.2 Amend paragraph 10 as follows:

- 10 There is a further group of non-exchange transactions where the entity may provide some consideration directly in return for the resources received, but that consideration does not approximate the fair value of the resources received. In these cases the entity determines whether there is a combination of exchange and non-exchange transactions, each component of which is recognized separately. For example, an entity receives CUR6 million funding from a multi-lateral development agency. The agreement stipulates that the entity must repay CUR5 million of the funding received over a period of 10 years, at 5% interest when the market rate for a similar loan is 11%. The entity has effectively received a CUR1 million grant (CUR6 million received less, CUR5 million to be repaid) and entered into CUR5 million concessionary loan which attracts interest at 6% below the market interest rate for a similar loan. The CUR1 million grant received, as well as the off-market portion of the interest payments in terms of the agreement, are non-exchange transactions. The contractual capital and interest payments over the period of the loan are exchange transactions.

A9 Amend paragraph 42 as follows:

42. An asset acquired through a non-exchange transaction shall initially be measured at its fair value as at the date of acquisition except for:

- (a) A biological asset or agricultural produce recognized in accordance with IPSAS xx "Agriculture"; and
- (b) A financial asset which is measured in accordance with IPSAS XX, "Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement".

A103 Amend paragraph 87 as follows:

- 87 Revenue arising from debt forgiveness is measured at the carrying amount of the debt forgiven. fair value of the debt forgiven. This will normally be the carrying amount of the debt forgiven.

A114 Add the following paragraphs under a new section “Concessionary Loans”:

Concessionary Loans

- 105A Concessionary loans are loans received by an entity in terms of specific public policy objectives and, as a result, are usually received with flexible repayment terms and bear either no or low interest. “Public policy” refers to the stated policies of governments, which entities execute in accordance with their stated mandate. Policies of government may include, for example, the promotion of economic growth, the reduction of unemployment and the provision of housing for no or low income individuals. Concessionary loans are loans granted to entities on favourable terms in order to meet public policy objectives, for example, to reduce poverty and unemployment or promote economic growth. Concessionary loans are usually granted with flexible repayment terms, and are usually granted at below market interest rates.
- 105B The portion of the loan that is repayable, along with any interest payments, is an exchange transaction and is accounted for in accordance with ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”. An entity considers whether any difference between the transaction price (loan proceeds) and the fair value of the loan on initial recognition (see ED 38) is non-exchange revenue that should be accounted for in accordance with this Standard.
- 105C Where an entity determines that the difference between the transaction price (loan proceeds) and the fair value of the loan on initial recognition is non-exchange revenue, an entity recognizes the difference as revenue, except if a present obligation exists, e.g. where specific conditions imposed on the transferred assets by the recipient result in a present obligation.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Where a present obligation exists, it is recognized as a liability. As the entity satisfies the present obligation, the liability is reduced and an equal amount of revenue is recognized.

A125 Amend paragraph 1064 as follows:

106.

- (d) *the amount of liabilities recognized in respect of transferred assets subject to conditions;*
- (e) *the amount of liabilities recognized in respect of concessionary loans that are subject to conditions on transferred assets;*
- (f) *the amount of assets recognized that are subject to restrictions and the nature of those restrictions;...*

A136 Add an additional example, Example 263, to Appendix B – Illustrative Examples:

Example 26: Concessionary Loans (paragraphs 105A to 105C)

IG54 An entity receives CU6 million funding from a multi-lateral development agency to build 10 schools ~~in~~ over the next 5 years. The funding is provided on the following conditions:

- CU1 million of the funding need not be repaid, provided that the schools are built.
- CU5 million of the funding is to be repaid as follows:
 - Year 1: no capital to be repaid
 - Year 2: 10% of the capital to be repaid
 - Year 3: 20% of the capital to be repaid
 - Year 4: 30% of the capital to be repaid
 - Year 5: 40% of the capital to be repaid
- Interest is charged at 5% per annum over the period of the loan (assume interest is paid annually in arrears). The market rate of interest for a similar loan is 10%.
- To the extent that schools have not been built, the funding provided should be returned to the donor (assume that the donor has effective monitoring systems in place and has a past history of requiring any unspent funds to be returned).
- The entity built the following schools over the period of the loan:
 - Year 1: 1 school completed
 - Year 2: 3 schools completed
 - Year 3: 5 schools completed
 - Year 4: 10 schools completed

Analysis:

The entity has effectively received a grant of CU1 million and a loan of CU5 million (Note: An entity would consider whether the substance of the R1 million is a contribution from owners or revenue; assume for purposes of this example that the R1million is ~~a~~ revenue). It has also received an additional grant of CU784,550* (which is the difference between the proceeds of the loan of CU5 million and the present value of the contractual cash flows of the loan, discounted using the market related rate of interest of 10%).

The grant of CU1 million + CU784,550 is accounted for in accordance with this Standard and, the loan with its related contractual interest and capital payments, in accordance with ED 38.

1. On initial recognition, the entity will recognize the following:

Dr Bank	CU6,000,000	
Cr Loan		CU4,215,450
Cr Liability		CU1,784,550

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

2. Year 1: the entity will recognize the following:

Dr Liability	CU178,455
Cr Non-exchange revenue	CU178,455

(1/10 of the schools built X CU1,784,550)

(Note: The journal entries for the repayment of interest and capital and interest accruals, have not been reflected in this example as it is intended to illustrate the recognition of revenue arising from concessionary loans. Comprehensive examples are included in the Illustrative Examples to ED 38.)
3. Year 2: the entity will recognize the following (assuming that the entity subsequently measures the concessionary loan at amortized cost):

Dr Liability	CU356,910
Cr Non-exchange revenue	CU356,910

(3/10 schools built X CU1,784,500 – CU178,455 already recognized)
4. Year 3: the entity will recognize the following:

Dr Liability	CU356,910
Cr Non-exchange revenue	CU356,910

(5/10 schools built X CU1,784,550 – CU535,365 already recognized)
5. Year 4: the entity will recognize the following:

Dr Liability	CU892,275
Cr Non-exchange revenue	CU892,275

(All schools built, CU1,784,550 – CU892,275)

If the concessionary loan was granted with no conditions, the entity would recognize the following on initial recognition:

Dr Bank	CU6,000,000
Cr Loan	CU4,215,450
Cr Non-exchange revenue	CU1,784,550

IPSAS 26, “Impairment of Cash-Generating Assets”

A14 IPSAS 26, paragraph 2(c) is amended as follows:

- (c) Financial assets that are within the scope of IPSAS 15, “Financial Instruments: Disclosure and Presentation” IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”;

A15 IPSAS 26, paragraph 8 is amended as follows:

This Standard does not apply to financial assets that are included in the scope of IPSAS 15 IPSAS ED 37. Impairment of these assets will be dealt with in any IPSAS that the IPSASB develops to deal with the recognition and measurement of financial instruments is dealt with in IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement.”

Illustrative Examples

These examples accompany, but are not part of, ED 38.

Example 1

Facts

IE1 On ~~4~~ January, 1 20X1, ~~1~~ Entity A identifies a portfolio comprising assets and liabilities whose interest rate risk it wishes to hedge. The liabilities include demandable deposit liabilities that the depositor may withdraw at any time without notice. For risk management purposes, the entity views all of the items in the portfolio as fixed rate items.

IE2 For risk management purposes, Entity A analyzes the assets and liabilities in the portfolio into repricing time periods based on expected repricing dates. The entity uses monthly time periods and schedules items for the next five years (i.e. it has 60 separate monthly time periods).¹ The assets in the portfolio are prepayable assets that Entity A allocates into time periods based on the expected prepayment dates, by allocating a percentage of all of the assets, rather than individual items, into each time period. The portfolio also includes demandable liabilities that the entity expects, on a portfolio basis, to repay between one month and five years and, for risk management purposes, are scheduled into time periods on this basis. On the basis of this analysis, Entity A decides what amount it wishes to hedge in each time period.

IE3 This example deals only with the repricing time period expiring in three months' time, i.e. the time period maturing on ~~31~~ March, 31 20X1, ~~31~~ (a similar procedure would be applied for each of the other 59 time periods). Entity A has scheduled assets of CU100 million and liabilities of CU80 million into this time period. All of the liabilities are repayable on demand.

IE4 Entity A decides, for risk management purposes, to hedge the net position of CU20 million and accordingly enters into an interest rate swap² on ~~1~~ January, 1 20X1, 1 to pay a fixed rate and receive LIBOR, with a notional principal amount of CU20 million and a fixed life of three months.

IE5 This example makes the following simplifying assumptions:

- (a) The coupon on the fixed leg of the swap is equal to the fixed coupon on the asset;
- (b) The coupon on the fixed leg of the swap becomes payable on the same dates as the interest payments on the asset; and
- (c) The interest on the variable leg of the swap is the overnight LIBOR rate. As a result, the entire fair value change of the swap arises from the fixed leg only, because the variable leg is not exposed to changes in fair value due to changes in interest rates.

In cases when these simplifying assumptions do not hold, greater ineffectiveness will arise. (The ineffectiveness arising from (a) could be eliminated by designating as the hedged item a portion of the cash flows on the asset that are equivalent to the fixed leg of the swap.)

IE6 It is also assumed that Entity A tests effectiveness on a monthly basis.

IE7 The fair value of an equivalent non-prepayable asset of CU20 million, ignoring changes in value that are not attributable to interest rate movements, at various times during the period of the hedge is as follows:

¹ In this example principal cash flows have been scheduled into time periods but the related interest cash flows have been included when calculating the change in fair value of the hedged item. Other methods of scheduling assets and liabilities are also possible. Also, in this example, monthly repricing time periods have been used. An entity may choose narrower or wider time periods.

² This example uses a swap as the hedging instrument. An entity may use forward rate agreements or other derivatives as hedging instruments.

	<u>1 Jan, 1 20X1</u>	<u>31 Jan, 31 20X1</u>	<u>1 Feb, 1 20X1</u>	<u>28 Feb, 28 20X1</u>	<u>31 Mar, 31 20X1</u>
Fair value (asset) (CU)	20,000,000	20,047,408	20,047,408	20,023,795	Nil

IE8 The fair value of the swap at various times during the period of the hedge is as follows:

	<u>1 Jan, 1 20X1</u>	<u>31 Jan, 31 20X1</u>	<u>1 Feb, 1 20X1</u>	<u>28 Feb, 28 20X1</u>	<u>31 Mar, 31 20X1</u>
Fair value (liability) (CU)	Nil	(47,408)	(47,408)	(23,795)	Nil

Accounting treatment

IE9 On ~~1~~ January, ~~1~~ 20X1, Entity A designates as the hedged item an amount of CU20 million of assets in the three-month time period. It designates as the hedged risk the change in the value of the hedged item (i.e. the CU20 million of assets) that is attributable to changes in LIBOR. It also complies with the other designation requirements set out in paragraphs ~~9896~~(d) and AG16~~60~~ of the Standard.

IE10 Entity A designates as the hedging instrument the interest rate swap described in paragraph IE4.

End of month 1 (~~31~~ January, ~~31~~ 20X1)

IE11 On ~~31~~ January, ~~31~~ 20X1 (at the end of month 1) when Entity A tests effectiveness, LIBOR has decreased. Based on historical prepayment experience, Entity A estimates that, as a consequence, prepayments will occur faster than previously estimated. As a result it re-estimates the amount of assets scheduled into this time period (excluding new assets originated during the month) as CU96 million.

IE12 The fair value of the designated interest rate swap with a notional principal of CU20 million is (CU47,408)³ (the swap is a liability).

IE13 Entity A computes the change in the fair value of the hedged item, taking into account the change in estimated prepayments, as follows.

- First, it calculates the percentage of the initial estimate of the assets in the time period that was hedged. This is 20 per cent (CU20 million ÷ CU100 million).
- Second, it applies this percentage (20 per cent) to its revised estimate of the amount in that time period (CU96 million) to calculate the amount that is the hedged item based on its revised estimate. This is CU19.2 million.
- Third, it calculates the change in the fair value of this revised estimate of the hedged item (CU19.2 million) that is attributable to changes in LIBOR. This is CU45,511 (CU47,408⁴ × (CU19.2 million ÷ CU20 million)).

IE14 Entity A makes the following accounting entries relating to this time period:

Dr	Cash	CU172,097	
	Cr	<u>Profit or loss-Surplus or deficit (interest-income-revenue)</u> ⁵	CU172,097
		<i>To recognize the interest received on the hedged amount (CU19.2 million).</i>	

³ See paragraph IE8

⁴ i.e. CU20,047,408 – CU 20,000,000, see paragraph IE7

⁵ This example does not show how amounts of interest revenue and interest expense are calculated.

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest expense)	CU179,268
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest income <u>revenue</u>)	CU179,268
Cr	Cash	Nil

To recognize the interest received and paid on the swap designated as the hedging instrument.

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (loss)	CU47,408
Cr	Derivative liability	CU47,408

To recognize the change in the fair value of the swap.

Dr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position	CU45,511
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (gain)	CU45,511

To recognize the change in the fair value of the hedged amount.

- IE15 The net result on ~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit (excluding interest ~~income~~ revenue and interest expense) is to recognize a loss of (CU1,897). This represents ineffectiveness in the hedging relationship that arises from the change in estimated prepayment dates.

Beginning of month 2

- IE16 On 1 February, 1 20X1 Entity A sells a proportion of the assets in the various time periods. Entity A calculates that it has sold $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent of the entire portfolio of assets. Because the assets were allocated into time periods by allocating a percentage of the assets (rather than individual assets) into each time period, Entity A determines that it cannot ascertain into which specific time periods the sold assets were scheduled. Hence it uses a systematic and rational basis of allocation. Based on the fact that it sold a representative selection of the assets in the portfolio, Entity A allocates the sale proportionately over all time periods.

- IE17 On this basis, Entity A computes that it has sold $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent of the assets allocated to the three-month time period, i.e. CU8 million ($8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent of CU96 million). The proceeds received are CU8,018,400, equal to the fair value of the assets.⁶ On derecognition of the assets, Entity A also removes from the separate line item in the statement of financial position an amount that represents the change in the fair value of the hedged assets that it has now sold. This is $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent of the total line item balance of CU45,511, i.e. CU3,793.

- IE18 Entity A makes the following accounting entries to recognize the sale of the asset and the removal of part of the balance in the separate line item in the statement of financial position:

Dr	Cash	CU8,018,400
Cr	Asset	CU8,000,000
Cr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position	CU3,793
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (gain)	CU14,607

To recognize the sale of the asset at fair value and to recognize a gain on sale.

Because the change in the amount of the assets is not attributable to a change in the hedged interest rate no ineffectiveness arises.

⁶ The amount realized on sale of the asset is the fair value of a prepayable asset, which is less than the fair value of the equivalent non-prepayable asset shown in IE7.

IE19 Entity A now has CU88 million of assets and CU80 million of liabilities in this time period. Hence the net amount Entity A wants to hedge is now CU8 million and, accordingly, it designates CU8 million as the hedged amount.

IE20 Entity A decides to adjust the hedging instrument by designating only a proportion of the original swap as the hedging instrument. Accordingly, it designates as the hedging instrument CU8 million or 40 per cent of the notional amount of the original swap with a remaining life of two months and a fair value of CU18,963.⁷ It also complies with the other designation requirements in paragraphs 986(a) and AG1669 of the Standard. The CU12 million of the notional amount of the swap that is no longer designated as the hedging instrument is either classified as held for trading with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, or is designated as the hedging instrument in a different hedge.⁸

IE21 As at ~~1~~February, ~~1~~ 20X1 and after accounting for the sale of assets, the separate line item in the statement of financial position is CU41,718 (CU45,511 – CU3,793), which represents the cumulative change in fair value of CU17.6⁹ million of assets. However, as at ~~1~~February, ~~1~~ 20X1, Entity A is hedging only CU8 million of assets that have a cumulative change in fair value of CU18,963.¹⁰ The remaining separate line item in the statement of financial position of CU22,755¹¹ relates to an amount of assets that Entity A still holds but is no longer hedging. Accordingly Entity A amortizes this amount over the remaining life of the time period, i.e. it amortizes CU22,755 over two months.

IE22 Entity A determines that it is not practicable to use a method of amortization based on a recalculated effective yield and hence uses a straight-line method.

End of month 2 (~~28~~ February, 28 20X1)

IE23 On ~~28~~ February, ~~28~~ 20X1 when Entity A next tests effectiveness, LIBOR is unchanged. Entity A does not revise its prepayment expectations. The fair value of the designated interest rate swap with a notional principal of CU8 million is (CU9,518)¹² (the swap is a liability). Also, Entity A calculates the fair value of the CU8 million of the hedged assets as at ~~28~~ February, 28 20X1 as CU8,009,518.¹³

IE24 Entity A makes the following accounting entries relating to the hedge in this time period:

Dr	Cash	CU71,707	
	Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest income revenue)	CU71,707

To recognize the interest received on the hedged amount (CU8 million).

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest expense)	CU71,707	
	Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest income revenue)	CU62,115
	Cr	Cash	CU9,592

To recognize the interest received and paid on the portion of the swap designated as

⁷ CU47,408 x 40 per cent

⁸ The entity could instead enter into an offsetting swap with a notional principle of CU12 million to adjust its position and designate as the hedging instrument all CU20 million of the existing swap and all CU12 million of the new offsetting swap.

⁹ CU19.2 million – (8/3 x CU19.2 million)

¹⁰ CU41,718 x (CU8 million/CU17.6 million)

¹¹ CU41,718 – CU9,963

¹² CU23,795 [see paragraph IE8] x (CU8 million/CU20 million)

¹³ CU20,023,795 [see paragraph IE7] x (CU8 million/CU20 million)

the hedging instrument (CU8 million).

Dr	Derivative liability	CU9,445
Cr	Surplus or deficit Surplus or deficit(gain)	CU9,445

To recognize the change in the fair value of the portion of the swap designated as the hedging instrument (CU8 million) (CU9,518 – CU18,963).

Dr	Profit or loss Surplus or deficit (loss)	CU9,445
Cr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position	CU9,445

To recognize the change in the fair value of the hedged amount (CU8,009,518 – CU8,018,963).

IE25 The net effect on ~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit (excluding interest ~~income~~ revenue and interest expense) is nil reflecting that the hedge is fully effective.

IE26 Entity A makes the following accounting entry to amortize the line item balance for this time period:

Dr	Profit or loss Surplus or deficit Surplus or deficit (loss)	CU11,378
Cr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position	CU11,378 (a)

To recognize the amortization charge for the period.

(a) $CU22,755 \div 2$

End of month 3

IE27 During the third month there is no further change in the amount of assets or liabilities in the three-month time period. On ~~31~~ March, 31-20X1 the assets and the swap mature and all balances are recognized in ~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit.

IE28 Entity A makes the following accounting entries relating to this time period:

Dr	Cash	CU8,071,707
Cr	Asset (statement of financial position)	CU8,000,000
Cr	Profit or loss Surplus or deficit (interest income revenue)	CU71,707

To recognize the interest and cash received on maturity of the hedged amount (CU8 million).

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest expense)	CU71,707	
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest income revenue)		CU62,115
Cr	Cash		CU9,592

To recognize the interest received and paid on the portion of the swap designated as the hedging instrument (CU8 million).

Dr	Derivative liability	CU9,518	
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (gain)		CU9,518

To recognize the expiry of the portion of the swap designated as the hedging instrument (CU8 million).

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (gain)	CU9,518	
Cr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position		CU9,518

To remove the remaining line item balance on expiry of the time period.

IE29 The net effect on ~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit (excluding interest ~~income~~ revenue and interest expense) is nil reflecting that the hedge is fully effective.

IE30 Entity A makes the following accounting entry to amortize the line item balance for this time period:

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (loss)	CU11,377	
Cr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position		CU11,377 ^(a)

To recognize the amortization charge for the period.

(a) $CU22,755 \div 2$

Summary

IE31 The tables below summarize:

- (a) Changes in the separate line item in the statement of financial position;
- (b) The fair value of the derivative;
- (c) The surplus or deficit effect of the hedge for the entire three-month period of the hedge; and
- (d) Interest ~~income~~ revenue and interest expense relating to the amount designated as hedged.

Description	<u>1</u> Jan, 1 20X1	<u>31</u> Jan, 31 20X1	<u>1</u> Feb, 1 20X1	<u>28</u> Feb, 28 20X1	<u>31</u> Mar, 31 20X1
	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU
Amount of asset hedged	20,000,000	19,200,000	8,000,000	8,000,000	8,000,000
(a) Changes in the separate line item in the statement of financial position					
Brought forward:					
Balance to be amortized	Nil	Nil	Nil	22,755	11,377
Remaining balance	Nil	Nil	45,511	18,963	9,518
Less: Adjustment on sale of asset	Nil	Nil	(3,793)	Nil	Nil
Adjustment for change in fair value of the hedged asset	Nil	45,511	Nil	(9,445)	(9,518)
Amortization	Nil	Nil	Nil	(11,378)	(11,377)
Carried forward:					
Balance to be amortized	Nil	Nil	22,755	11,377	Nil
Remaining balance	Nil	45,511	18,963	9,518	Nil
(b) The fair value of the derivative					
CU20,000,000	Nil	47,408	–	–	–
CU12,000,000	Nil	–	28,445	No longer designated as the hedging instrument.	
CU8,000,000	Nil	–	18,963	9,518	Nil
Total	Nil	47,408	47,408	9,518	Nil
(c) Profit or loss Effect of the hedge on <u>surplus or deficit</u>					
Change in line item: asset	Nil	45,511	N/A	(9,445)	(9,518)
Change in derivative fair value	Nil	(47,408)	N/A	9,445	9,518
Net effect	Nil	(1,897)	N/A	Nil	Nil
Amortization	Nil	Nil	N/A	(11,378)	(11,377)

In addition, there is a gain on sale of assets of CU14,607 at 1February, 1 20X1.

(d) Interest ~~income~~ revenue and interest expense relating to the amount designated as hedged

	<u>1-Jan, 1</u> 20X1	<u>31-Jan, 31</u> 20X1	<u>1-Feb, 1</u> 20X1	<u>28-Feb, 28</u> 20X1	<u>31-Mar, 31</u> 20X1
	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU
Interest income revenue					
– on the asset	Nil	172,097	N/A	71,707	71,707
– on the swap	Nil	179,268	N/A	62,115	62,115
Interest expense					
– on the swap	Nil	(179,268)	N/A	(71,707)	(71,707)

Example 2 - Disposal of a Foreign Operation

IE32 ~~IE1~~ This example illustrates the application of paragraphs 12 and 13 of Appendix C in connection with the amount recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassification adjustment~~ on the disposal of a foreign operation.

Background

IE33 ~~IE2~~ This example assumes the economic entity group structure set out in the application guidance and that Entity ABC-Parent used a USD borrowing in Entity Subsidiary A to hedge the EUR/USD risk of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary C in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements. Entity ABC-Parent uses the step-by-step method of consolidation. Assume the hedge was fully effective and the full USD/EUR accumulated change in the value of the hedging instrument before disposal of Entity Subsidiary C is €24 million (gain). This is matched exactly by the fall in value of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary C, when measured against the functional currency of Entity ABC-Parent (euro).

IE34 ~~IE3~~ If the direct method of consolidation is used, the fall in the value of Entity ABC-Parent's net investment in Entity Subsidiary C of €24 million would be reflected totally in the foreign currency translation reserve relating to Entity Subsidiary C in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements. However, because Entity ABC-Parent uses the step-by-step method, this fall in the net investment value in Entity Subsidiary C of €24 million would be reflected both in Entity Subsidiary B's foreign currency translation reserve relating to Entity Subsidiary C and in Entity ABC-Parent's foreign currency translation reserve relating to Entity Subsidiary B.

IE35 ~~IE4~~ The aggregate amount recognized in the foreign currency translation reserve in respect of Entities Subsidiaries B and C is not affected by the consolidation method. Assume that using the direct method of consolidation, the foreign currency translation reserves for Entities Subsidiaries B and C in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements are €62 million gain and €24 million loss respectively; using the step-by-step method of consolidation those amounts are €49 million gain and €1 million loss respectively.

Reclassification

IE36 ~~IE5~~ When the investment in Entity Subsidiary C is disposed of, ED 38 IAS 39 requires the full €24 million gain on the hedging instrument to be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified to profit or loss~~. Using the step-by-step method, the amount to be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified to profit or loss~~ in respect of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary C would be only €1 million loss. Entity ABC-Parent could adjust the foreign currency translation reserves of both Entities Subsidiaries B and C by €13 million in order to match the amounts reclassified in respect of the hedging instrument and the net investment as would have been the case if the direct method of

consolidation had been used, if that was its accounting policy. An entity that had not hedged its net investment could make the same reclassification.

Example 3 - Receipt of **Aa** Concessionary Loan

IE37 A local authority receives loan funding to the value of CU5 million from an international development agency to build primary healthcare clinics over a period of 5 years. The agreement stipulates that loan should be repaid over the 5 year period as follows:

Year 1: no capital repayments

Year 2: 10% of the capital

Year 3: 20% of the capital

Year 4: 30% of the capital

Year 5: 40% of the capital

Interest is paid annually in arrears, at a rate of 5% per annum on the outstanding balance of the loan. A market related rate of interest for a similar transaction is 10%.

IE38 The entity has received a concessionary loan of CU5 million, which will be repaid at 5% below the current market interest rate. The difference between the proceeds of the loan and the present value of the contractual payments in terms of the loan agreement, discounted using the market related rate of interest, is recognized as non-exchange revenue.

IE39 The journal entries to account for the concessionary loan are as follows:

1. On initial recognition, the entity recognizes the following (assuming that the entity subsequently measures concessionary loan at amortized cost):

Dr Bank	5,000,000	
Cr Loan (refer to Table 2 below)		4,215,450
Cr Liability or non-exchange revenue		784,550

Recognition of the receipt of the loan at fair value

The IPSAS 23 is considered in recognizing either a liability or revenue for the off-market portion of the loan. Example 26 of that IPSAS provides journal entries for the recognition and measurement of the off-market portion of the loan deemed to be non-exchange revenue.

2. Year 1: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Interest (refer to Table 3 below)	421,545	
Cr Loan		421,545

Recognition of interest using the effective interest rate method (CU4,215,450 X 10%)

Dr Loan (refer to Table 1 below)	250,000	
Cr Bank		250,000

Recognition of interest paid on outstanding balance (CU5m X 5%)

3. Year 2: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Interest	438,700	
Cr Loan		438,700

Recognition of interest using the effective interest rate method (CU, 38, 995 X 10%)

Dr Loan	750,000	
Cr Bank		750,000

Recognition of interest paid on outstanding balance (CU5m X 5% + CU500,000 capital repaid)

4. Year 3: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Interest	407,569	
Cr Loan		407,569

Recognition of interest using the effective interest rate method (CU4,075,695 X 10%)

Dr Loan	1,225,000	
Cr Bank		1,225,000

Recognition of interest paid on outstanding balance (CU4.5m X 5% + CU1m capital repaid)

5. Year 4: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Interest	325,826	
Cr Loan		325,826

Recognition of interest using the effective interest rate method (CU 3,258,264 X 10%)

Dr Loan	1,675,000	
Cr Bank		1,675,000

Recognition of interest paid on outstanding balance (CU3.5m X 5% + CU1.5m capital repaid)

6. Year 5: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Interest	190,909	
Cr Loan		190,909

Recognition of interest using the effective interest rate method (CU1,909,091 X 10%)

Dr Loan	2,100,000	
Cr Bank		2,100,000

Recognition of interest paid on outstanding balance (CU2m X 5% + CU2m capital repaid)

Calculations:

Table 1: Amortization schedule (using contractual repayments at 5% interest):

	Capital	Interest	Payments	Balance		
	CU	CU	CU	CU		
Year 0	5,000,000	-	-	5,000,000		
Year 1	5,000,000	250,000	250,000	5,000,000		
Year 2	5,000,000	250,000	750,000	4,500,000		
Year 3	4,500,000	225,000	1,225,000	3,500,000		
Year 4	3,500,000	175,000	1,675,000	2,000,000		
Year 5	2,000,000	100,000	2,100,000	-		

	Year 0	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU
Capital	5,000,000	5,000,000	5,000,000	4,500,000	3,500,000	2,000,000

<u>Interest</u>	=	<u>250,000</u>	<u>250,000</u>	<u>225,000</u>	<u>175,000</u>	<u>100,000</u>
<u>Payments</u>	=	<u>250,000</u>	<u>750,000</u>	<u>1,225,000</u>	<u>1,675,000</u>	<u>2,100,000</u>
<u>Balance</u>		<u>5,000,000</u>	<u>5,000,000</u>	<u>4,500,000</u>	<u>3,500,000</u>	<u>2,000,000</u>
						=

Table 2: Discounting contractual cash flows (based on a market rate of 10%)

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU
Capital balance	5,000,000	4,500,000	3,500,000	2,000,000	-
Interest payable	250,000	250,000	225,000	175,000	100,000
Total payments (capital and interest)	250,000	750,000	1,225,000	1,675,000	2,100,000
Present value of payments	<u>227,272</u>	619,835	920,360	1,144,048	1,303,935
Total present value of payments	<u>4,215,450</u>				

Proceeds received	5,000,000
Less: Present value of outflows (fair value of loan on initial recognition)	<u>4,215,450</u>
Off-market portion of loan to be recognized as non-exchange revenue	<u>784,550</u>

Table 3: Calculation of loan balance and interest using the effective interest method:

	Capital	Interest accrual	Interest and capital payments	Balance
	CU	CU	CU	CU
Year 1	4,215,540	421,554	250,000	4,386,995
Year 2	4,386,995	438,700	750,000	4,075,695
Year 3	4,075,695	407,569	1,225,000	3,258,264
Year 4	3,258,264	325,826	1,675,000	1,909,091
Year 5	1,909,091	190,909	2,100,000	2,100,000

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU
Capital	4,215,450	4,386,995	4,075,695	3,258,264	1,909,091
Interest accrual	421,545	438,700	407,569	325,827	190,909
Interest and capital payments	250,000	750,000	1,225,000	1,675,000	2,100,000
Balance	4,386,995	4,075,695	3,258,264	1,909,091	-

Example 4 - Payment of ~~Aa~~ Ceoncessionary Lloan

IE40 The department of education makes low interest loans available to qualifying students on flexible repayment terms as a means of promoting tertiary education.

IE41 The department advanced CU250 million to various students at the beginning of the financial year, with the following terms and conditions:

- Capital is repaid as follows:
 - Year 1 to 3: no capital repayments
 - Year 3: 30% capital to be repaid
 - Year 4: 30% capital to be repaid
 - Year 5: 40% capital to be repaid
- Interest is calculated at 6% interest on the outstanding loan balance, and is paid annually in arrears. Assume the market rate of interest for a similar loan is 11.5%.

IE42 The journal entries to account for the concessionary loan are as follows:

1. On initial recognition, the entity recognizes the following:

Dr Loan	199,345,480	
Dr Expense	50,654,520	
Cr Bank		250,000,000

2. Year 1: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Loan	22,924,730	
Cr Interest revenue		22,924,730
<i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU199,345,480 X 11.5%)</i>		
Dr Bank	15,000,000	
Cr Loan		15,000,000
<i>(Interest payment of CU250m X 6%)</i>		

3. Year 2: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Loan	23,836,074	
Cr Interest revenue		23,836,074
<i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU216,106,284 X 11.5%)</i>		
Dr Bank	15,000,000	
Cr Loan		15,000,000
<i>(Interest payment of CU250m X 6%)</i>		

4. Year 3: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Loan	24,852,223	
Cr Interest revenue		24,852,223
<i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU216,106,284 X 11.5%)</i>		
Dr Bank	15,000,000	
Cr Loan		15,000,000

5. Year 4: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Loan	25,985,228	
Cr Interest revenue		25,985,228
<i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU225,958,507 X 11.5%)</i>		
Dr Bank	90,000,000	
Cr Loan		90,000,000
<i>(Interest payment of CU250m X 6% + CU75m capital repaid)</i>		

6. Year 5: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Loan	18,623,530	
Cr Interest revenue		18,623,530
<i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU161,943,735 X 11.5%)</i>		
Dr Bank	85,500,000	
Cr Loan		85,500,000
<i>(Interest payment of CU175m X 6% + CU75m capital repaid)</i>		

7. Year 6: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Loan	10,932,735	
Cr Interest revenue		10,932,735
<i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU95,067,265 X 11.5%)</i>		
Dr Bank	106,000,000	
Cr Loan		106,000 000
<i>(Interest payment of CU100m X 6% + CU100m capital repaid)</i>		

Example 5 – Acquisition of Shares through a Non-Exchange Revenue Transaction

Background

IE43 An individual donates his shares in listed entity X to public sector entity A on January,1 20X8. At that date, the shares in entity X have a fair value of CU1,000,000; at December,31 20X8 the fair value of the shares is CU900,000. As part of the arrangement, entity A incurs the transfer duty to have the shares transferred into its name. These costs amount to CU10,000.

IE44 Listed entity X provides telecommunications infrastructure and related services to the public. During 20X9, new technology was introduced into the telecommunications industry, making the infrastructure and equipment used by entity X almost obsolete. This resulted in a permanent decline in the value of listed entity X. The value of the impairment loss as at December, 31 20X9 is CU700,000.

IE45 Entity A has a policy of accounting for investments in shares as an available for sale financial asset.

IE46 Assume that the arrangement is a contractual arrangement, no present obligations arise from the donation and that the entity's reporting period ends on December,31 20X8.

Analysis

IE47 As entity A received the shares as a donation, it uses IPSAS 23 to initially recognize the shares acquired and the related non-exchange revenue. However, because entity A has acquired a financial asset, it considers the initial measurement requirements of IPSAS 23 and ED 38.

IE48 IPSAS 23 prescribes that assets acquired as part of a non-exchange revenue transaction are initially measured at fair value, while ED 38 prescribes that financial assets are initially be measured at fair value and, depending on the subsequent measurement, transaction costs may or may not be included. As the entity has a policy of accounting for investments in shares as available for sale financial assets, the transaction costs of CU10,000 are added to the value of the shares of CU1,000,000 on initial measurement.

IE49 The subsequent measurement and derecognition of the shares is addressed in ED 38. The entity classifies investments in shares as available for sale financial assets which means that the shares are measured at fair value with any subsequent changes in fair value recognized in net assets/equity. Impairment losses are however recognized in surplus or deficit in the period in which they occur.

IE50 The journal entries at initial acquisition and at the reporting dates are as follows:

1. Acquisition of shares through donation

Dr	Available for sale financial asset (investment in entity X)	1,010,000
Cr	Non-exchange revenue	1,000,000
Cr	Bank (Transfer costs paid)	10,000

2. Subsequent measurement at December, 31 20X8

Dr	Net assets/equity (fair value adjustment of investment)	100,000
Cr	Available for sale financial asset (investment in entity X)	100,000

3. Subsequent measurement at December, 31 20X9

Dr	Impairment loss (surplus or deficit)	700,000
Cr	Available for sale financial asset	700,000

Example 6 - Financial Guarantee Contract Provided at Nominal Consideration

IE50. Entity C is a major motor vehicle manufacturer in Jurisdiction A. On January, 1 201V Government A (the issuer) enters into a financial guarantee contract with Entity B (the holder) to reimburse Entity B against the financial effects of default by Entity C (the debtor) for a 30 year loan of 50 million Currency Units (CUs) repayable in two equal installments of 25 million CUs in 201Z and 204X. Entity C provides nominal consideration of 30,000 CUs to Government A. Prior to entering into negotiation with Government A, Entity C had approached a number of other entities to issue a guarantee, but none of these entities was prepared to issue such a guarantee. There are no recent examples of financial guarantee contracts in the motor manufacturing sector of the economy in Jurisdiction A or in neighboring Jurisdictions D & E. Government A concludes that it is not feasible to obtain a fair value by an alternative valuation technique. Government A therefore determines to measure the financial guarantee contract in accordance with IPSAS 19.

IE51. On December 31 201V Government A, having reviewed the financial position and performance of Entity C, Government A determines that there is no present obligation to Entity C in respect of the financial guarantee contract. Government A does not recognize a liability in its statement of

financial position. Government A makes the disclosures relating to fair value and credit risk in ED 39, “Financial Instruments: Disclosures” related to the financial guarantee contract. It also discloses a contingent liability of 50 million CUs in accordance with IPSAS 19. In its statement of financial performance Government A recognizes revenue of 1,000 CUs in respect of the nominal consideration payable by Entity C.

IE52. In 201Z there has been a further downturn in the motor manufacturing sector affecting Entity C. Entity C is seeking bankruptcy protection and has defaulted on the first repayment of principal, although it has met its obligations for interest payments. Government A determines that Entity C is unlikely to recover, but negotiations are advanced with a potential acquirer (Entity D), which will restructure Entity B. Entity D has indicated that it will assume responsibility for the final installment of the loan with Entity B, but not the initial installment. Government A recognizes an expense and liability for 25 million CUs and discloses a contingent liability of 25 million CUs.

Alternative example if approach adopted that omits the valuation phase

IExx. Entity C is a major motor vehicle manufacturer in Jurisdiction A. On January 1 201V Government A (the issuer) enters into a financial guarantee contract with Entity B (the holder) to reimburse Entity B against the financial effects of default by Entity C (the debtor) for a 30 year loan of 50 million Currency Units (CUs) repayable in two equal installments of 25 million CUs in 201Z and 204X. Entity C provides nominal consideration of 30,000 CUs to Government A. Prior to entering into negotiation with Government A, Entity C had approached a number of other entities to issue a guarantee, but none of these entities was prepared to issue such a guarantee. There are no recent examples of financial guarantee contracts in the motor manufacturing sector of the economy in Jurisdiction A or in neighboring Jurisdictions D & E. Government A therefore determines to measure the financial guarantee contract in accordance with IPSAS 19.

IExx. On December 31 201V Government A, having reviewed the financial position and performance of Entity C, Government A determines that there is no present obligation to Entity C in respect of the financial guarantee contract. Government A does not recognize a liability in its statement of financial position. Government A makes the disclosures relating to fair value and credit risk in ED 39, “Financial Instruments: Disclosures” related to the financial guarantee contract. It also discloses a contingent liability of 50 million CUs in accordance with IPSAS 19. In its statement of financial performance Government A recognizes revenue of 1,000 CUs in respect of the nominal consideration payable by Entity C.

IExx. In 201Z there has been a further downturn in the motor manufacturing sector affecting Entity C. Entity C is seeking bankruptcy protection and has defaulted on the first repayment of principal, although it has met its obligations for interest payments. Government A determines that Entity C is unlikely to recover, but negotiations are advanced with a potential acquirer (Entity D), which will restructure Entity B. Entity D has indicated that it will assume responsibility for the final installment of the loan with Entity B, but not the initial installment. Government A recognizes an expense and liability for 25 million CUs and discloses a contingent liability of 25 million CUs.

Implementation Guidance

This guidance accompanies, but is not part of, ED 38.

Section A - Scope

A.1 Practice of Settling Net: Forward Contract to Purchase a Commodity

Entity XYZ enters into a fixed price forward contract to purchase one million ~~liters of oil~~ kilograms of ~~copper~~ in accordance with its expected usage requirements. The contract permits XYZ to take physical delivery of the ~~oil~~ copper at the end of twelve months or to pay or receive a net settlement in cash, based on the change in fair value of ~~oil~~ copper. Is the contract accounted for as a derivative?

While such a contract meets the definition of a derivative, it is not necessarily accounted for as a derivative. The contract is a derivative instrument because there is no initial net investment, the contract is based on the price of ~~oil~~ copper, and it is to be settled at a future date. However, if XYZ intends to settle the contract by taking delivery and has no history for similar contracts of settling net in cash or of taking delivery of the ~~oil~~ copper and selling it within a short period after delivery for the purpose of generating a profit from short-term fluctuations in price or dealer's margin, the contract is not accounted for as a derivative under ~~ED 38~~IAS 39. Instead, it is accounted for as an executory contract.

A.2 Option to Put a Non-Financial Asset

Entity XYZ owns an office building. XYZ enters into a put option with an investor that permits XYZ to put the building to the investor for CU150 million. The current value of the building is CU175 million. The option expires in five years. The option, if exercised, may be settled through physical delivery or net cash, at XYZ's option. How do both XYZ and the investor account for the option?

XYZ's accounting depends on XYZ's intention and past practice for settlement. Although the contract meets the definition of a derivative, XYZ does not account for it as a derivative if XYZ intends to settle the contract by delivering the building if XYZ exercises its option and there is no past practice of settling net (~~ED 38.4 and ED38. AG213~~ IAS39.5 and IAS39.AG10).

The investor, however, cannot conclude that the option was entered into to meet the investor's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements because the investor does not have the ability to require delivery (~~ED 38.6~~ IAS 39.6). In addition, the option may be settled net in cash. Therefore, the investor has to account for the contract as a derivative. Regardless of past practices, the investor's intention does not affect whether settlement is by delivery or in cash. The investor has written an option, and a written option in which the holder has a choice of physical settlement or net cash settlement can never satisfy the normal delivery requirement for the exemption from ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39 because the option writer does not have the ability to require delivery.

However, if the contract were a forward contract rather than an option, and if the contract required physical delivery and the reporting entity had no past practice of settling net in cash or of taking delivery of the building and selling it within a short period after delivery for the purpose of generating a profit from short-term fluctuations in price or dealer's margin, the contract would not be accounted for as a derivative.

Section B - Definitions

~~B.1 Definition of a financial instrument: gold bullion~~

~~Is gold bullion a financial instrument (like cash) or is it a commodity?~~

~~It is a commodity. Although bullion is highly liquid, there is no contractual right to receive cash or another financial asset inherent in bullion.~~

B.1 Definition of a Derivative: Examples of Derivatives and Underlyings

What are examples of common derivative contracts and the identified underlying?

~~ED 38~~ IAS 39 defines a derivative as follows:

A *derivative* is a financial instrument or other contract within the scope of this Standard with all three of the following characteristics:

- (a) **Its value changes in response to the change in a specified interest rate, financial instrument price, commodity price, foreign exchange rate, index of prices or rates, credit rating or credit index, or other variable, provided in the case of a non-financial variable that the variable is not specific to a party to the contract (sometimes called the ‘underlying’);**
- (b) **It requires no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors; and**
- (c) **It is settled at a future date.**

Type of contract	Main pricing-settlement variable (underlying variable)
Interest rate swap	Interest rates
Currency swap (foreign exchange swap)	Currency rates
Commodity swap	Commodity prices
Equity swap	Equity prices (equity <u>instruments</u> of another entity)
Credit swap	Credit rating, credit index or credit price
Total return swap	Total fair value of the reference asset and interest rates
Purchased or written treasury bond option (call or put)	Interest rates
Purchased or written currency option (call or put)	Currency rates
Purchased or written commodity option (call or put)	Commodity prices
Purchased or written stock option (call or put)	Equity prices (equity <u>instruments</u> of another entity)
Interest rate futures linked to government debt (treasury futures)	Interest rates
Currency futures	Currency rates
Commodity futures	Commodity prices
Interest rate forward linked to government debt (treasury forward)	Interest rates
Currency forward	Currency rates
Commodity forward	Commodity prices
Equity forward	Equity prices (equity <u>instruments</u> of another entity)

The above list provides examples of contracts that normally qualify as derivatives under ED 38 IAS 39. The list is not exhaustive. Any contract that has an underlying may be a derivative. Moreover, even if an instrument meets the definition of a derivative contract, special provisions of ED 38 IAS 39 may apply, for example, if it is a weather derivative (see IAS39.AG1-ED 38.AG57), a contract to buy or sell a non-financial item such as commodity (see IAS39.5 and IAS39.AG10 ED 38.34 and ED 38.AG213) or a

contract settled in an entity's own shares (see ~~IAS32.21–IAS32.24~~ ED 37.25 – ED 37.29). Therefore, an entity must evaluate the contract to determine whether the other characteristics of a derivative are present and whether special provisions apply.

B.2 Definition of a Derivative: Settlement at a Future Date, Interest Rate Swap with Net or Gross Settlement

For the purpose of determining whether an interest rate swap is a derivative financial instrument under ~~ED38 IAS 39~~, does it make a difference whether the parties pay the interest payments to each other (gross settlement) or settle on a net basis?

No. The definition of a derivative does not depend on gross or net settlement.

To illustrate: Entity ABC enters into an interest rate swap with a counterparty (XYZ) that requires ABC to pay a fixed rate of 8 per cent and receive a variable amount based on three-month LIBOR, reset on a quarterly basis. The fixed and variable amounts are determined based on a CU100 million notional amount. ABC and XYZ do not exchange the notional amount. ABC pays or receives a net cash amount each quarter based on the difference between 8 per cent and three-month LIBOR. Alternatively, settlement may be on a gross basis.

The contract meets the definition of a derivative regardless of whether there is net or gross settlement because its value changes in response to changes in an underlying variable (LIBOR), there is no initial net investment, and settlements occur at future dates.

B.3 Definition of a Derivative: Prepaid Interest Rate Swap (Fixed Rate Payment Obligation Prepaid at Inception or Subsequently)

If a party prepays its obligation under a pay-fixed, receive-variable interest rate swap at inception, is the swap a derivative financial instrument?

Yes.

To illustrate: Entity S enters into a CU100 million notional amount five-year pay-fixed, receive-variable interest rate swap with Counterparty C. The interest rate of the variable part of the swap is reset on a quarterly basis to three-month LIBOR. The interest rate of the fixed part of the swap is 10 per cent per year. Entity S prepays its fixed obligation under the swap of CU50 million (CU100 million × 10 per cent × 5 years) at inception, discounted using market interest rates, while retaining the right to receive interest payments on the CU100 million reset quarterly based on three-month LIBOR over the life of the swap.

The initial net investment in the interest rate swap is significantly less than the notional amount on which the variable payments under the variable leg will be calculated. The contract requires an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors, such as a variable rate bond. Therefore, the contract fulfils the 'no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors' provision of ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~. Even though Entity S has no future performance obligation, the ultimate settlement of the contract is at a future date and the value of the contract changes in response to changes in the LIBOR index. Accordingly, the contract is regarded as a derivative contract.

Would the answer change if the fixed rate payment obligation is prepaid subsequent to initial recognition?

If the fixed leg is prepaid during the term, that would be regarded as a termination of the old swap and an origination of a new instrument that is evaluated under ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~.

B.4 Definition of a Derivative: Prepaid Pay-Variable, Receive-Fixed Interest Rate Swap

If a party prepays its obligation under a pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap at inception of the contract or subsequently, is the swap a derivative financial instrument?

No. A prepaid pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap is not a derivative if it is prepaid at inception and it is no longer a derivative if it is prepaid after inception because it provides a return on the prepaid (invested) amount comparable to the return on a debt instrument with fixed cash flows. The prepaid amount fails the ‘no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors’ criterion of a derivative.

To illustrate: Entity S enters into a CU100 million notional amount five-year pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap with Counterparty C. The variable leg of the swap is reset on a quarterly basis to three-month LIBOR. The fixed interest payments under the swap are calculated as 10 per cent times the swap’s notional amount, i.e. CU10 million per year. Entity S prepays its obligation under the variable leg of the swap at inception at current market rates, while retaining the right to receive fixed interest payments of 10 per cent on CU100 million per year.

The cash inflows under the contract are equivalent to those of a financial instrument with a fixed annuity stream since Entity S knows it will receive CU10 million per year over the life of the swap. Therefore, all else being equal, the initial investment in the contract should equal that of other financial instruments that consist of fixed annuities. Thus, the initial net investment in the pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap is equal to the investment required in a non-derivative contract that has a similar response to changes in market conditions. For this reason, the instrument fails the ‘no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors’ criterion of ~~ED 38~~IAS 39. Therefore, the contract is not accounted for as a derivative under ~~ED 38~~IAS 39. By discharging the obligation to pay variable interest rate payments, Entity S in effect provides a loan to Counterparty C.

B.5 Definition of a Derivative: Offsetting Loans

Entity A makes a five-year fixed rate loan to Entity B, while B at the same time makes a five-year variable rate loan for the same amount to A. There are no transfers of principal at inception of the two loans, since A and B have a netting agreement. Is this a derivative under ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39?

Yes. This meets the definition of a derivative (that is to say, there is an underlying variable, no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors, and future settlement). The contractual effect of the loans is the equivalent of an interest rate swap arrangement with no initial net investment. Non-derivative transactions are aggregated and treated as a derivative when the transactions result, in substance, in a derivative. Indicators of this would include:

- They are entered into at the same time and in contemplation of one another
- They have the same counterparty
- They relate to the same risk
- There is no apparent economic need or substantive business purpose for structuring the transactions separately that could not also have been accomplished in a single transaction.

The same answer would apply if Entity A and Entity B did not have a netting agreement, because the definition of a derivative instrument in ~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.108 does not require net settlement.

B.6 Definition of a Derivative: Option Not Expected to be Exercised

The definition of a derivative in ED 38.8 requires that the instrument ‘is settled at a future date’. Is this criterion met even if an option is expected not to be exercised, for example, because it is out of the money?

Yes. An option is settled upon exercise or at its maturity. Expiry at maturity is a form of settlement even though there is no additional exchange of consideration.

B.7 Definition of a Derivative: Foreign Currency Contract Based on Sales Volume

A South African entity, Entity XYZ, whose functional currency is the South African ~~rand~~ US dollar, sells ~~electricity products to Mozambique in France~~ denominated in US dollars ~~euro~~. XYZ enters into a contract with an investment bank to convert ~~euro to~~ US dollars to rand at a fixed exchange rate. The contract requires XYZ to remit rand ~~euro~~ based on its sales volume in Mozambique France in exchange for US dollars at a fixed exchange rate of 6.00. Is that contract a derivative?

Yes. The contract has two underlying variables (the foreign exchange rate and the volume of sales), no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors, and a payment provision. ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ does not exclude from its scope derivatives that are based on sales volume.

B.8 Definition of a Derivative: Prepaid Forward

An entity enters into a forward contract to purchase shares of stock in one year at the forward price. It prepays at inception based on the current price of the shares. Is the forward contract a derivative?

No. The forward contract fails the ‘no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors’ test for a derivative.

To illustrate: Entity XYZ enters into a forward contract to purchase one million T ordinary shares in one year. The current market price of T is CU50 per share; the one-year forward price of T is CU55 per share. XYZ is required to prepay the forward contract at inception with a CU50 million payment. The initial investment in the forward contract of CU50 million is less than the notional amount applied to the underlying, one million shares at the forward price of CU55 per share, i.e. CU55 million. However, the initial net investment approximates the investment that would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors because T’s shares could be purchased at inception for the same price of CU50. Accordingly, the prepaid forward contract does not meet the initial net investment criterion of a derivative instrument.

B.9 Definition of a Derivative: Initial Net Investment

Many derivative instruments, such as futures contracts and exchange traded written options, require margin accounts. Is the margin account part of the initial net investment?

No. The margin account is not part of the initial net investment in a derivative instrument. Margin accounts are a form of collateral for the counterparty or clearing house and may take the form of cash, securities or other specified assets, typically liquid assets. Margin accounts are separate assets that are accounted for separately.

B.10 Definition of Held for Trading: Portfolio with a Recent Actual Pattern of Short-Term Profit-Taking

The definition of a financial asset or financial liability held for trading states that ‘a financial asset or financial liability is classified as held for trading if it is ... part of a portfolio of identified financial instruments that are managed together and for which there is evidence of a recent actual pattern of short-term profit-taking’. What is a ‘portfolio’ for the purposes of applying this definition?

Although the term ‘portfolio’ is not explicitly defined in ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~, the context in which it is used suggests that a portfolio is a group of financial assets or financial liabilities that are managed as part of that group (IAS 39.9-ED 38.108). If there is evidence of a recent actual pattern of short-term profit-taking on financial instruments included in such a portfolio, those financial instruments qualify as held for trading even though an individual financial instrument may in fact be held for a longer period of time.

B.11 Definition of Held for Trading: Balancing a Portfolio

Entity A has an investment portfolio of debt and equity instruments. The documented portfolio management guidelines specify that the equity exposure of the portfolio should be limited to between 30 and 50 per cent of total portfolio value. The investment manager of the portfolio is authorized to

balance the portfolio within the designated guidelines by buying and selling equity and debt instruments. Is Entity A permitted to classify the instruments as available for sale?

It depends on Entity A's intentions and past practice. If the portfolio manager is authorized to buy and sell instruments to balance the risks in a portfolio, but there is no intention to trade and there is no past practice of trading for short-term profit, the instruments can be classified as available for sale. If the portfolio manager actively buys and sells instruments to generate short-term profits, the financial instruments in the portfolio are classified as held for trading.

B.12 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: Index-Linked Principal

Entity A purchases a five-year equity-index-linked note with an original issue price of CU10 at a market price of CU12 at the time of purchase. The note requires no interest payments before maturity. At maturity, the note requires payment of the original issue price of CU10 plus a supplemental redemption amount that depends on whether a specified share price index exceeds a predetermined level at the maturity date. If the share index does not exceed or is equal to the predetermined level, no supplemental redemption amount is paid. If the share index exceeds the predetermined level, the supplemental redemption amount equals the product of 1.15 and the difference between the level of the share index at maturity and the level of the share index when the note was issued divided by the level of the share index at the time of issue. Entity A has the positive intention and ability to hold the note to maturity. Can Entity A classify the note as a held-to-maturity investment?

Yes. The note can be classified as a held-to-maturity investment because it has a fixed payment of CU10 and fixed maturity and Entity A has the positive intention and ability to hold it to maturity (~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.8). However, the equity index feature is a call option not closely related to the debt host, which must be separated as an embedded derivative under ~~IAS 39.11~~ ED 38.120. The purchase price of CU12 is allocated between the host debt instrument and the embedded derivative. For example, if the fair value of the embedded option at acquisition is CU4, the host debt instrument is measured at CU8 on initial recognition. In this case, the discount of CU2 that is implicit in the host bond (principal of CU10 minus the original carrying amount of CU8) is amortized to ~~surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss over the term to maturity of the note using the effective interest method.

B.13 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: Index-Linked Interest

Can a bond with a fixed payment at maturity and a fixed maturity date be classified as a held-to-maturity investment if the bond's interest payments are indexed to the price of a commodity or equity, and the entity has the positive intention and ability to hold the bond to maturity?

Yes. However, the commodity-indexed ~~or equity-indexed~~ interest payments result in an embedded derivative that is separated and accounted for as a derivative at fair value (~~IAS 39.11~~ ED 38.120). ~~IAS 39.12~~ ED 38.142 is not applicable since it should be straightforward to separate the host debt investment (the fixed payment at maturity) from the embedded derivative (the index-linked interest payments).

B.14 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: Sale Following Rating Downgrade

Would a sale of a held-to-maturity investment following a downgrade of the issuer's credit rating by a rating agency raise a question about the entity's intention to hold other investments to maturity?

Not necessarily. A downgrade is likely to indicate a decline in the issuer's creditworthiness. ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39 specifies that a sale due to a significant deterioration in the issuer's creditworthiness could satisfy the condition in ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39 and therefore not raise a question about the entity's intention to hold other investments to maturity. However, the deterioration in creditworthiness must be significant judged by reference to the credit rating at initial recognition. Also, the rating downgrade must not have been reasonably anticipated when the entity classified the investment as held to maturity in order to meet the condition in ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39. A credit downgrade of a notch within a class or from one rating class to the immediately lower rating class could often be regarded as reasonably anticipated. If the rating downgrade in combination with other information provides evidence of impairment, the deterioration in creditworthiness often would be regarded as significant.

B.15 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: Permitted Sales

Would sales of held-to-maturity financial assets due to a change in management compromise the classification of other financial assets as held to maturity?

Yes. A change in management is not identified under ~~IAS 39.AG22~~ ED 38.AG36 as an instance where sales or transfers from held-to-maturity do not compromise the classification as held to maturity. Sales in response to such a change in management would, therefore, call into question the entity's intention to hold investments to maturity.

To illustrate: Entity X has a portfolio of financial assets that is classified as held to maturity. In the current period, at the direction of the governing body ~~board of directors~~, the senior management team has been replaced. The new management wishes to sell a portion of the held-to-maturity financial assets in order to carry out an expansion strategy designated and approved by the governing body ~~board~~. Although the previous management team had been in place since the entity's inception and Entity X had never before undergone a major restructuring, the sale nevertheless calls into question Entity X's intention to hold remaining held-to-maturity financial assets to maturity.

B.16 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Investments: Sales in Response to Entity-Specific Capital Requirements

In some countries, regulators of banks or other industries may set *entity-specific* capital requirements that are based on an assessment of the risk in that particular entity. ~~IAS 39.AG22(e)~~ ED 38.AG346(e) indicates that an entity that sells held-to-maturity investments in response to an unanticipated significant increase by the regulator in the industry's capital requirements may do so under ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ without necessarily raising a question about its intention to hold other investments to maturity. Would sales of held-to-maturity investments that are due to a significant increase in *entity-specific* capital requirements imposed by regulators (i.e. capital requirements applicable to a particular entity, but not to the industry) raise such doubt?

Yes, such sales 'taint' the entity's intention to hold other financial assets as held to maturity unless it can be demonstrated that the sales fulfill the condition in ~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.108 in that they result from an increase in capital requirements, which is an isolated event that is beyond the entity's control, is non-recurring and could not have been reasonably anticipated by the entity.

B.17 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: Pledged Collateral, Repurchase Agreements (repos) and Securities Lending Agreements

An entity cannot have a demonstrated ability to hold to maturity an investment if it is subject to a constraint that could frustrate its intention to hold the financial asset to maturity. Does this mean that a debt instrument that has been pledged as collateral, or transferred to another party under a repo or securities lending transaction, and continues to be recognized cannot be classified as a held-to-maturity investment?

No. An entity's intention and ability to hold debt instruments to maturity is not necessarily constrained if those instruments have been pledged as collateral or are subject to a repurchase agreement or securities lending agreement. However, an entity does not have the positive intention and ability to hold the debt instruments until maturity if it does not expect to be able to maintain or recover access to the instruments.

B18. Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: 'Tainting'

In response to unsolicited tender offers, Entity A sells a significant amount of financial assets classified as held to maturity on economically favorable terms. Entity A does not classify any financial assets acquired after the date of the sale as held to maturity. However, it does not reclassify the remaining held-to-maturity investments since it maintains that it still intends to hold them to maturity. Is Entity A in compliance with ~~ED 38~~IAS 39?

No. Whenever a sale or transfer of more than an insignificant amount of financial assets classified as held to maturity (HTM) results in the conditions in ~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.108 and ~~ED 38.AG346~~ ~~IAS 39.AG22~~ not being satisfied, no instruments should be classified in that category. Accordingly, any remaining HTM

assets are reclassified as available-for-sale financial assets. The reclassification is recorded in the reporting period in which the sales or transfers occurred and is accounted for as a change in classification under IAS 39.51 ED 38.6058. ED 38.108 IAS 39.9 makes it clear that at least two full financial years must pass before an entity can again classify financial assets as HTM.

B.21 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Investments: Sub-Categorization for the Purpose of Applying the ‘Tainting’ Rule

Can an entity apply the conditions for held-to-maturity classification in ED 38.108 IAS 39.9 separately to different categories of held-to-maturity financial assets, such as debt instruments denominated in US dollars and debt instruments denominated in euro?

No. The ‘tainting rule’ in ED 38.108 IAS 39.9 is clear. If an entity has sold or reclassified more than an insignificant amount of held-to-maturity investments, it cannot classify any financial assets as held-to-maturity financial assets.

B.20 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Investments: Application of the ‘Tainting’ Rule on Consolidation

Can an entity apply the conditions in ED 38.108 IAS 39.9 separately to held-to-maturity financial assets held by different entities in a consolidated group, for example, if those group entities are in different countries with different legal or economic environments?

No. If an entity has sold or reclassified more than an insignificant amount of investments classified as held-to-maturity in the consolidated financial statements, it cannot classify any financial assets as held-to-maturity financial assets in the consolidated financial statements unless the conditions in ED 38.108 IAS 39.9 are met.

B.21 Definition of Loans and Receivables: Equity Instrument

Can an equity instrument, such as a preference share, with fixed or determinable payments be classified within loans and receivables by the holder?

Yes. If a non-derivative equity instrument would be recorded as a liability by the issuer, and it has fixed or determinable payments and is not quoted in an active market, it can be classified within loans and receivables by the holder, provided the definition is otherwise met. ED 37.13 – ED 37.26 IAS32.15–IAS32.22 provide guidance about the classification of a financial instrument as a liability or as an equity instrument from the perspective of the issuer of a financial instrument. If an instrument meets the definition of an equity instrument under ED 37 IAS 32, it cannot be classified within loans and receivables by the holder.

B.22 Definition of Loans and Receivables: Banks’ Deposits in Other Banks

Banks make term deposits with a central bank or other banks. Sometimes, the proof of deposit is negotiable, sometimes not. Even if negotiable, the depositor bank may or may not intend to sell it.

Would such a deposit fall within loans and receivables under IAS 39.9 ED 38.108?

Such a deposit meets the definition of loans and receivables, whether or not the proof of deposit is negotiable, unless the depositor bank intends to sell the instrument immediately or in the near term, in which case the deposit is classified as a financial asset held for trading.

B.23 Definition of Amortized Cost: Perpetual Debt Instruments with Fixed or Market-Based Variable Rate

Sometimes entities purchase or issue debt instruments that are required to be measured at amortized cost and in respect of which the issuer has no obligation to repay the principal amount. Interest may be paid either at a fixed rate or at a variable rate. Would the difference between the initial amount paid or received and zero (‘the maturity amount’) be amortized immediately on initial recognition for the purpose of determining amortized cost if the rate of interest is fixed or specified as a market-based variable rate?

No. Since there are no repayments of principal, there is no amortization of the difference between the initial amount and the maturity amount if the rate of interest is fixed or specified as a market-based variable rate. Because interest payments are fixed or market-based and will be paid in perpetuity, the amortized cost (the present value of the stream of future cash payments discounted at the effective interest rate) equals the principal amount in each period (~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.108).

B.24 Definition of Amortized Cost: Perpetual Debt Instruments with Decreasing Interest Rate

If the stated rate of interest on a perpetual debt instrument decreases over time, would amortized cost equal the principal amount in each period?

No. From an economic perspective, some or all of the interest payments are repayments of the principal amount. For example, the interest rate may be stated as 16 per cent for the first ten years and as zero per cent in subsequent periods. In that case, the initial amount is amortized to zero over the first ten years using the effective interest method, since a portion of the interest payments represents repayments of the principal amount. The amortized cost is zero after year 10 because the present value of the stream of future cash payments in subsequent periods is zero (there are no further cash payments of either principal or interest in subsequent periods).

B.25 Example of Calculating Amortized Cost: Financial Asset

Financial assets that are excluded from fair valuation and have a fixed maturity should be measured at amortized cost. How is amortized cost calculated?

Under ~~ED 38~~IAS 39, amortized cost is calculated using the effective interest method. The effective interest rate inherent in a financial instrument is the rate that exactly discounts the estimated cash flows associated with the financial instrument through the expected life of the instrument or, where appropriate, a shorter period to the net carrying amount at initial recognition. The computation includes all fees and points paid or received that are an integral part of the effective interest rate, directly attributable transaction costs and all other premiums or discounts.

The following example illustrates how amortized cost is calculated using the effective interest method. Entity A purchases a debt instrument with five years remaining to maturity for its fair value of CU1,000 (including transaction costs). The instrument has a principal amount of CU1,250 and carries fixed interest of 4.7 per cent that is paid annually ($\text{CU1,250} \times 4.7 \text{ per cent} = \text{CU59 per year}$). The contract also specifies that the borrower has an option to prepay the instrument and that no penalty will be charged for prepayment. At inception, the entity expects the borrower not to prepay.

It can be shown that in order to allocate interest receipts and the initial discount over the term of the debt instrument at a constant rate on the carrying amount, they must be accrued at the rate of 10 per cent annually. The table below provides information about the amortized cost, interest ~~revenue~~ ~~income~~ and cash flows of the debt instrument in each reporting period.

Year	(a)	(b = a × 10%)	(c)	(d = a + b – c)
	Amortized cost at the beginning of the year	Interest revenue income	Cash flows	Amortized cost at the end of the year
20X0	1,000	100	59	1,041
20X1	1,041	104	59	1,086
20X2	1,086	109	59	1,136
20X3	1,136	113	59	1,190
20X4	1,190	119	1,250 + 59	–

On the first day of 20X2 the entity revises its estimate of cash flows. It now expects that 50 per cent of the principal will be prepaid at the end of 20X2 and the remaining 50 per cent at the end of 20X4. In accordance with [IAS 39.AG8](#) [ED 38.AG1924](#), the opening balance of the debt instrument in 20X2 is adjusted. The adjusted amount is calculated by discounting the amount the entity expects to receive in 20X2 and subsequent years using the original effective interest rate (10 per cent). This results in the new opening balance in 20X2 of CU1,138. The adjustment of CU52 (CU1,138 – CU1,086) is recorded in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in 20X2. The table below provides information about the amortized cost, interest revenue ~~income~~ and cash flows as they would be adjusted taking into account the change in estimate.

Year	(a)	(b = a × 10%)	(c)	(d = a + b – c)
	Amortized cost at the beginning of the year	Interest <u>revenue</u> income	Cash flows	Amortized cost at the end of the year
20X0	1,000	100	59	1,041
20X1	1,041	104	59	1,086
20X2	1,086 + 52	114	625 + 59	568
20X3	568	57	30	595
20X4	595	60	625 + 30	–

If the debt instrument becomes impaired, say, at the end of 20X3, the impairment loss is calculated as the difference between the carrying amount (CU595) and the present value of estimated future cash flows discounted at the original effective interest rate (10 per cent).

B.26 Example of Calculating Amortized Cost: Debt Instruments with Stepped Interest Payments

Sometimes entities purchase or issue debt instruments with a predetermined rate of interest that increases or decreases progressively ('stepped interest') over the term of the debt instrument. If a debt instrument with stepped interest and no embedded derivative is issued at CU1,250 and has a maturity amount of CU1,250, would the amortized cost equal CU1,250 in each reporting period over the term of the debt instrument?

No. Although there is no difference between the initial amount and maturity amount, an entity uses the effective interest method to allocate interest payments over the term of the debt instrument to achieve a constant rate on the carrying amount ([IAS 39.9](#) [ED 38.108](#)).

The following example illustrates how amortized cost is calculated using the effective interest method for an instrument with a predetermined rate of interest that increases or decreases over the term of the debt instrument ('stepped interest').

On ~~1~~ January, ~~1~~ 2000, Entity A issues a debt instrument for a price of CU1,250. The principal amount is CU1,250 and the debt instrument is repayable on ~~31~~ December, ~~31~~ 2004. The rate of interest is specified in the debt agreement as a percentage of the principal amount as follows: 6.0 per cent in 2000 (CU75), 8.0 per cent in 2001 (CU100), 10.0 per cent in 2002 (CU125), 12.0 per cent in 2003 (CU150), and 16.4 per cent in 2004 (CU205). In this case, the interest rate that exactly discounts the stream of future cash payments through maturity is 10 per cent. Therefore, cash interest payments are reallocated over the term of the debt instrument for the purposes of determining amortized cost in each period. In each period, the amortized cost at the beginning of the period is multiplied by the effective interest rate of 10 per cent and added to the amortized cost. Any cash payments in the period are deducted from the resulting number. Accordingly, the amortized cost in each period is as follows:

Year	(a)	(b = a × 10%)	(c)	(d = a + b – c)
	Amortized cost at the beginning of the year	Interest revenue income	Cash flows	Amortized cost at the end of the year
2000	1,250	125	75	1,300
2001	1,300	130	100	1,330
2002	1,330	133	125	1,338
2003	1,338	134	150	1,322
2004	1,322	133	1,250 + 205	–

B.27 Regular Way Contracts: No Established Market

Can a contract to purchase a financial asset be a regular way contract if there is no established market for trading such a contract?

Yes. ED 38.108 IAS 39.9 refers to terms that require delivery of the asset within the time frame established generally by regulation or convention in the marketplace concerned. Marketplace, as that term is used in IAS 39.9 – ED 38.108, is not limited to a formal stock exchange or organized over-the-counter market. Rather, it means the environment in which the financial asset is customarily exchanged. An acceptable time frame would be the period reasonably and customarily required for the parties to complete the transaction and prepare and execute closing documents.

For example, a market for private issue financial instruments can be a marketplace.

B.28 Regular Way Contracts: Forward Contract

Entity ABC enters into a forward contract to purchase one million of M's ordinary shares in two months for CU10 per share. The contract is ~~with an individual and is not an exchange-traded contract~~. The contract requires ABC to take physical delivery of the shares and pay the counterparty CU10 million in cash. M's shares trade in an active public market at an average of 100,000 shares a day. Regular way delivery is three days. Is the forward contract regarded as a regular way contract?

No. The contract must be accounted for as a derivative because it is not settled in the way established by regulation or convention in the marketplace concerned.

B.29 Regular Way Contracts: Which Customary Settlement Provisions Apply?

If an entity's financial instruments trade in more than one active market, and the settlement provisions differ in the various active markets, which provisions apply in assessing whether a contract to purchase those financial instruments is a regular way contract?

The provisions that apply are those in the market in which the purchase actually takes place.

To illustrate: Entity XYZ purchases one million shares of Entity ABC on a US stock exchange, for example, through a broker. The settlement date of the contract is six business days later. Trades for equity shares on US exchanges customarily settle in three business days. Because the trade settles in six business days, it does not meet the exemption as a regular way trade.

However, if XYZ did the same transaction on a foreign exchange that has a customary settlement period of six business days, the contract would meet the exemption for a regular way trade.

B.30 Regular Way Contracts: Share Purchase by Call Option

Entity A purchases a call option in a public market permitting it to purchase 100 shares of Entity XYZ at any time over the next three months at a price of CU100 per share. If Entity A exercises its option, it has 14 days to settle the transaction according to regulation or convention in the options

market. XYZ shares are traded in an active public market that requires three-day settlement. Is the purchase of shares by exercising the option a regular way purchase of shares?

Yes. The settlement of an option is governed by regulation or convention in the marketplace for options and, therefore, upon exercise of the option it is no longer accounted for as a derivative because settlement by delivery of the shares within 14 days is a regular way transaction.

B.31 Recognition and Derecognition of Financial Liabilities Using Trade Date or Settlement Date Accounting

~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 has special rules about recognition and derecognition of financial assets using trade date or settlement date accounting. Do these rules apply to transactions in financial instruments that are classified as financial liabilities, such as transactions in deposit liabilities and trading liabilities?

No. ~~ED 38~~ ~~IAS 39~~ does not contain any specific requirements about trade date accounting and settlement date accounting in the case of transactions in financial instruments that are classified as financial liabilities. Therefore, the general recognition and derecognition requirements in ~~IAS 39.16 and IAS 39.41~~ ~~ED 38.164~~ and ~~ED 38.4139~~ apply. ~~ED 38.164~~ ~~IAS 39.16~~ states that financial liabilities are recognized on the date the entity ‘becomes a party to the contractual provisions of the instrument’. Such contracts generally are not recognized unless one of the parties has performed or the contract is a derivative contract not exempted from the scope of ~~IAS 39~~. ~~ED 38.4139~~ ~~IAS 39.41~~ specifies that financial liabilities are derecognized only when they are extinguished, i.e. when the obligation specified in the contract is discharged or cancelled or expires.

Section C Embedded Derivatives

C.1 Embedded Derivatives: Separation of Host Debt Instrument

If an embedded non-option derivative is required to be separated from a host debt instrument, how are the terms of the host debt instrument and the embedded derivative identified? For example, would the host debt instrument be a fixed rate instrument, a variable rate instrument or a zero coupon instrument?

The terms of the host debt instrument reflect the stated or implied substantive terms of the hybrid instrument. In the absence of implied or stated terms, the entity makes its own judgment of the terms. However, an entity may not identify a component that is not specified or may not establish terms of the host debt instrument in a manner that would result in the separation of an embedded derivative that is not already clearly present in the hybrid instrument, that is to say, it cannot create a cash flow that does not exist. For example, if a five-year debt instrument has fixed interest payments of CU40,000 annually and a principal payment at maturity of CU1,000,000 multiplied by the change in an equity price index, it would be inappropriate to identify a floating rate host contract and an embedded equity swap that has an offsetting floating rate leg in lieu of identifying a fixed rate host. In that example, the host contract is a fixed rate debt instrument that pays CU40,000 annually because there are no floating interest rate cash flows in the hybrid instrument.

In addition, the terms of an embedded non-option derivative, such as a forward or swap, must be determined so as to result in the embedded derivative having a fair value of zero at the inception of the hybrid instrument. If it were permitted to separate embedded non-option derivatives on other terms, a single hybrid instrument could be decomposed into an infinite variety of combinations of host debt instruments and embedded derivatives, for example, by separating embedded derivatives with terms that create leverage, asymmetry or some other risk exposure not already present in the hybrid instrument. Therefore, it is inappropriate to separate an embedded non-option derivative on terms that result in a fair value other than zero at the inception of the hybrid instrument. The determination of the terms of the embedded derivative is based on the conditions existing when the financial instrument was issued.

C.2 Embedded Derivatives: Separation of Embedded Option

The response to Question C.1 states that the terms of an embedded non-option derivative should be determined so as to result in the embedded derivative having a fair value of zero at the initial recognition of the hybrid instrument. When an embedded option-based derivative is separated, must

the terms of the embedded option be determined so as to result in the embedded derivative having either a fair value of zero or an intrinsic value of zero (that is to say, be at the money) at the inception of the hybrid instrument?

No. The economic behavior of a hybrid instrument with an option-based embedded derivative depends critically on the strike price (or strike rate) specified for the option feature in the hybrid instrument, as discussed below. Therefore, the separation of an option-based embedded derivative (including any embedded put, call, cap, floor, capton, floortion or swaption feature in a hybrid instrument) should be based on the stated terms of the option feature documented in the hybrid instrument. As a result, the embedded derivative would not necessarily have a fair value or intrinsic value equal to zero at the initial recognition of the hybrid instrument.

If an entity were required to identify the terms of an embedded option-based derivative so as to achieve a fair value of the embedded derivative of zero, the strike price (or strike rate) generally would have to be determined so as to result in the option being infinitely out of the money. This would imply a zero probability of the option feature being exercised. However, since the probability of the option feature in a hybrid instrument being exercised generally is not zero, it would be inconsistent with the likely economic behavior of the hybrid instrument to assume an initial fair value of zero. Similarly, if an entity were required to identify the terms of an embedded option-based derivative so as to achieve an intrinsic value of zero for the embedded derivative, the strike price (or strike rate) would have to be assumed to equal the price (or rate) of the underlying variable at the initial recognition of the hybrid instrument. In this case, the fair value of the option would consist only of time value. However, such an assumption would not be consistent with the likely economic behavior of the hybrid instrument, including the probability of the option feature being exercised, unless the agreed strike price was indeed equal to the price (or rate) of the underlying variable at the initial recognition of the hybrid instrument.

The economic nature of an option-based embedded derivative is fundamentally different from a forward-based embedded derivative (including forwards and swaps), because the terms of a forward are such that a payment based on the difference between the price of the underlying and the forward price will occur at a specified date, while the terms of an option are such that a payment based on the difference between the price of the underlying and the strike price of the option may or may not occur depending on the relationship between the agreed strike price and the price of the underlying at a specified date or dates in the future. Adjusting the strike price of an option-based embedded derivative, therefore, alters the nature of the hybrid instrument. On the other hand, if the terms of a non-option embedded derivative in a host debt instrument were determined so as to result in a fair value of any amount other than zero at the inception of the hybrid instrument, that amount would essentially represent a borrowing or lending. Accordingly, as discussed in the answer to Question C.1, it is not appropriate to separate a non-option embedded derivative in a host debt instrument on terms that result in a fair value other than zero at the initial recognition of the hybrid instrument.

C.3 Embedded Derivatives: Accounting for a Convertible Bond

What is the accounting treatment of an investment in a bond (financial asset) that is convertible into shares equity instruments of the issuing entity or another entity before maturity?

An investment in a convertible bond that is convertible before maturity generally cannot be classified as a held-to-maturity investment because that would be inconsistent with paying for the conversion feature—the right to convert into equity ~~instruments~~ shares before maturity.

An investment in a convertible bond can be classified as an available-for-sale financial asset provided it is not purchased for trading purposes. The equity conversion option is an embedded derivative.

If the bond is classified as available for sale (i.e. fair value changes recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ until the bond is sold), the equity conversion option (the embedded derivative) is separated. The amount paid for the bond is split between the debt instrument without the conversion option and the equity conversion option. Changes in the fair value of the equity conversion option are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ unless the option is part of a cash flow hedging relationship.

If the convertible bond is measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, separating the embedded derivative from the host bond is not permitted.

C.4 Embedded Derivatives: Equity Kicker

In some instances, venture capital entities providing subordinated loans agree that if and when the borrower lists its shares on a stock exchange, the venture capital entity is entitled to receive shares of the borrowing entity free of charge or at a very low price (an ‘equity kicker’) in addition to interest and repayment of principal. As a result of the equity kicker feature, the interest on the subordinated loan is lower than it would otherwise be. Assuming that the subordinated loan is not measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (ED38.120(c)–IAS 39.11(e)), does the equity kicker feature meet the definition of an embedded derivative even though it is contingent upon the future listing of the borrower?

Yes. The economic characteristics and risks of an equity return are not closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of a host debt instrument (IAS 39.11(a)–ED 38.120(a)). The equity kicker meets the definition of a derivative because it has a value that changes in response to the change in the price of the shares of the borrower, it requires no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors, and it is settled at a future date (IAS 39.11(b) and IAS 39.9(a)–ED 38.120(b) and ED38.108(a)). The equity kicker feature meets the definition of a derivative even though the right to receive shares is contingent upon the future listing of the borrower. ED38.120(c)–IAS 39.11(e) states that a derivative could require a payment as a result of some future event that is unrelated to a notional amount. An equity kicker feature is similar to such a derivative except that it does not give a right to a fixed payment, but an option right, if the future event occurs.

C.5 Embedded Derivatives: Identifying Debt or Equity Instruments as Host Contracts

Entity A purchases a five-year ‘debt’ instrument issued by Entity B with a principal amount of CU1 million that is indexed to the share price of Entity C. At maturity, Entity A will receive from Entity B the principal amount plus or minus the change in the fair value of 10,000 shares of Entity C. The current share price is CU110. No separate interest payments are made by Entity B. The purchase price is CU1 million. Entity A classifies the debt instrument as available for sale. Entity A concludes that the instrument is a hybrid instrument with an embedded derivative because of the equity-indexed principal. For the purposes of separating an embedded derivative, is the host contract an equity instrument or a debt instrument?

The host contract is a debt instrument because the hybrid instrument has a stated maturity, i.e. it does not meet the definition of an equity instrument (ED 37.9 and ED37.14). It is accounted for as a zero coupon debt instrument. Thus, in accounting for the host instrument, Entity A imputes interest on CU1 million over five years using the applicable market interest rate at initial recognition. The embedded non-option derivative is separated so as to have an initial fair value of zero (see Question C.1).

C.6 Embedded Derivatives: Synthetic Instruments

Entity A acquires a five-year floating rate debt instrument issued by Entity B. At the same time, it enters into a five-year pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap with Entity C. Entity A regards the combination of the debt instrument and swap as a synthetic fixed rate instrument and classifies the instrument as a held-to-maturity investment, since it has the positive intention and ability to hold it to maturity. Entity A contends that separate accounting for the swap is inappropriate since ED 38.120(c)–IAS 39.11(e) requires an embedded derivative to be classified together with its host instrument if the derivative is linked to an interest rate that can change the amount of interest that would otherwise be paid or received on the host debt contract. Is the entity’s analysis correct?

No. Embedded derivative instruments are terms and conditions that are included in non-derivative host contracts. It is generally inappropriate to treat two or more separate financial instruments as a single combined instrument (‘synthetic instrument’ accounting) for the purpose of applying ED 38. Each of the financial instruments has its own terms and conditions and each may be transferred or settled separately. Therefore, the debt instrument and the swap are classified separately. The transactions described here differ from the transactions discussed in Question B.5, which had no substance apart from the resulting interest rate swap.

C.7 Embedded Derivatives: Purchases and Sales Contracts in Foreign Currency Instruments

A supply contract provides for payment in a currency other than (a) the functional currency of either party to the contract, (b) the currency in which the product is routinely denominated in commercial transactions around the world and (c) the currency that is commonly used in contracts to purchase or sell non-financial items in the economic environment in which the transaction takes place. Is there an embedded derivative that should be separated under IAS 39-ED 38?

Yes. To illustrate: a Norwegian entity agrees to sell oil to an entity in France. The oil contract is denominated in Swiss francs, although oil contracts are routinely denominated in US dollars in commercial transactions around the world, and Norwegian krone are commonly used in contracts to purchase or sell non-financial items in Norway. Neither entity carries out any significant activities in Swiss francs. In this case, the Norwegian entity regards the supply contract as a host contract with an embedded foreign currency forward to purchase Swiss francs. The French entity regards the supply contract as a host contract with an embedded foreign currency forward to sell Swiss francs. Each entity includes fair value changes on the currency forward in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ unless the reporting entity designates it as a cash flow hedging instrument, if appropriate.

C.8 Embedded Foreign Currency Derivatives: Unrelated Foreign Currency Provision

Entity A, which measures items in its financial statements on the basis of the euro (its functional currency), enters into a contract with Entity B, which has the Norwegian krone as its functional currency, to purchase oil in six months for 1,000 US dollars. The host oil contract is not within the scope of ED 38 IAS 39 because it was entered into and continues to be for the purpose of delivery of a non-financial item in accordance with the entity's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements (IAS 39.5 and IAS 39.AG10(a)-ED 389.475 and ED 38.AG357). The oil contract includes a leveraged foreign exchange provision that states that the parties, in addition to the provision of, and payment for, oil will exchange an amount equal to the fluctuation in the exchange rate of the US dollar and Norwegian krone applied to a notional amount of 100,000 US dollars. Under IAS 39.11 ED 38.120, is that embedded derivative (the leveraged foreign exchange provision) regarded as closely related to the host oil contract?

No, that leveraged foreign exchange provision is separated from the host oil contract because it is not closely related to the host oil contract (IAS 39.AG33(d)-ED38.AG457(d)).

The payment provision under the host oil contract of 1,000 US dollars can be viewed as a foreign currency derivative because the US dollar is neither Entity A's nor Entity B's functional currency. This foreign currency derivative would not be separated because it follows from IAS 39.AG33(d)-ED 38.AG457(d) that a crude oil contract that requires payment in US dollars is not regarded as a host contract with a foreign currency derivative.

The leveraged foreign exchange provision that states that the parties will exchange an amount equal to the fluctuation in the exchange rate of the US dollar and Norwegian krone applied to a notional amount of 100,000 US dollars is in addition to the required payment for the oil transaction. It is unrelated to the host oil contract and therefore separated from the host oil contract and accounted for as an embedded derivative under IAS 39.11 ED 38.120.

C.9 Embedded Foreign Currency Derivatives: Currency of International Commerce

ED 38.AG47(d) IAS 39.AG33(d) refers to the currency in which the price of the related goods or services is routinely denominated in commercial transactions around the world. Could it be a currency that is used for a certain product or service in commercial transactions within the local area of one of the substantial parties to the contract?

No. The currency in which the price of the related goods or services is routinely denominated in commercial transactions around the world is only a currency that is used for similar transactions all around the world, not just in one local area. For example, if cross-border transactions in natural gas in North America are routinely denominated in US dollars and such transactions are routinely denominated in euro

in Europe, neither the US dollar nor the euro is a currency in which the goods or services are routinely denominated in commercial transactions around the world.

C.10 Embedded Derivatives: Holder Permitted, But Not Required, to Settle Without Recovering Substantially all of its Recognized Investment

If the terms of a combined instrument permit, but do not require, the holder to settle the combined instrument in a manner that causes it not to recover substantially all of its recognized investment and the issuer does not have such a right (for example, a puttable debt instrument), does the contract satisfy the condition in IAS 39.AG33(a) ED 38.AG457(a) that the holder would not recover substantially all of its recognized investment?

No. The condition that ‘the holder would not recover substantially all of its recognized investment’ is not satisfied if the terms of the combined instrument permit, but do not require, the investor to settle the combined instrument in a manner that causes it not to recover substantially all of its recognized investment and the issuer has no such right. Accordingly, an interest-bearing host contract with an embedded interest rate derivative with such terms is regarded as closely related to the host contract. The condition that ‘the holder would not recover substantially all of its recognized investment’ applies to situations in which the holder can be forced to accept settlement at an amount that causes the holder not to recover substantially all of its recognized investment.

C.11 Embedded Derivatives: Reliable Determination of Fair Value

If an embedded derivative that is required to be separated cannot be reliably measured because it will be settled by an unquoted equity instrument whose fair value cannot be reliably measured, is the embedded derivative measured at cost?

No. In this case, the entire combined contract is treated as a financial instrument held for trading (IAS 39.12 ED 38.142). If the fair value of the combined instrument can be reliably measured, the combined contract is measured at fair value. The entity might conclude, however, that the equity component of the combined instrument may be sufficiently significant to preclude it from obtaining a reliable estimate of the entire instrument. In that case, the combined instrument is measured at cost less impairment.

C12 Identifying Contracts Containing Embedded Derivatives

The examples below illustrate whether an embedded derivative exists in the following contracts. Assume for purposes of the examples, that the entity’s functional currency is US dollars:

<u>Description of contract and related features</u>	<u>Impact of the conditions?</u>	<u>Why is it an embedded derivative or not?</u>
<u>Leases</u>		
<u>An entity is the tenant in a 10 year lease of a property with the rental payments contractually determined for the first year, but thereafter increase in line with:</u>		
(a) <u>Consumer Price Index (CPI)</u>	<u>The rental payments due in terms of the rental agreement will fluctuate in accordance with CPI.</u>	<u>The rental payments escalate in accordance with an inflation index in the same economic environment as the lease. Therefore this feature is closely related to the host contract, and no embedded derivative exists (see AG457(d)). The entire lease contract should be accounted for in accordance with IPSAS 13, “Leases”.</u>
(b) <u>Three times CPI</u>	<u>The rental payments due in terms of the rental agreement will</u>	<u>Although the rental payments escalate in accordance with an</u>

	<u>fluctuate in accordance with three times the CPI.</u>	<u>inflation index in the same economic environment as the lease, but the index is leveraged (i.e. it is a multiple of CPI, see AG4562(d)). The embedded derivative should be separated from the host lease contract and accounted for as a financial instrument (the lease contract should be accounted for in accordance with IPSAS 13).</u>
(c) <u>US Property Price Index</u>	<u>The rental payments due in terms of the rental agreement will fluctuate in accordance with a property price index.</u>	<u>The rental payments escalate in accordance with an inflation index in the same economic environment as the lease. Therefore this feature is closely related to the host contract, and no embedded derivative exists (see AG4565(d)(i)). The entire lease contract should be accounted for in accordance with IPSAS 13.</u>
(d) <u>UK Property Price Index</u>	<u>The rental payments due in terms of the rental agreement will fluctuate in accordance an index which is in a foreign currency.</u>	<u>The rental payments escalate in accordance with an inflation index which is not in the same economic environment as the lease. Therefore this feature is not closely related to the host contract, and an embedded derivative exists (see AG4565(d)). The embedded derivative should be separated from the host lease contract and accounted for as a financial instrument (the lease contract should be accounted for in accordance with IPSAS 13).</u>
<u>Contracts for the purchase or supply of goods</u>		
<u>A local authority contracts with a firm to build low cost houses in various sites over the next five years. The contract stipulates that the building price escalates by: 60% of the cost increases in line with a wage index; 20% of the cost increases in line with the price of steel; 20% of the cost increases with the cost of cement.</u>	<u>The effect of this clause in the contract is that the payments for the houses will increase based on the increases in raw materials and other inputs into the construction of the houses, in specific ratios.</u>	<u>If it can be proven reliably that the cost of building houses is comprised 60% of labor, 20% steel and 20% cement, these features are closely linked to the host contract. If not, it can be argued that the price is leveraged (because the ratios may be incorrect and do not reflect the cost structure). The entity will then need to account for the embedded derivative separately from the host contract.</u>
<u>The department of defense in the United States enters into an</u>	<u>The contract will be settled in US dollars, which is the functional</u>	<u>Even though the contract will be settled in US dollars (which is not</u>

<u>agreement to sell surplus arms and ammunitions to a country in Africa. The contract price is agreed at USD100 000.</u>	<u>currency of the supplier, but not the buyer.</u>	<u>the functional currency of the buyer), business transactions undertaken in Africa are usually denominated in US dollars, largely due to the instability of the currencies of the various countries in the region. Thus, the terms are closely related to the sale/purchase agreement, therefore no embedded derivative exists (see AG4565).</u>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

(Some of the examples in the table above are sourced and adapted from: Manual of Accounting – IFRS for the UK, issued by PricewaterhouseCoopers Inc in 2006)

Section D Recognition and Derecognition

D.1 Initial Recognition

D.1.1 Recognition: Cash Collateral

Entity B transfers cash to Entity A as collateral for another transaction with Entity A (for example, a securities borrowing transaction). The cash is not legally segregated from Entity A's assets. Should Entity A recognize the cash collateral it has received as an asset?

Yes. The ultimate realization of a financial asset is its conversion into cash and, therefore, no further transformation is required before the economic benefits of the cash transferred by Entity B can be realized by Entity A. Therefore, Entity A recognizes the cash as an asset and a payable to Entity B while Entity B derecognizes the cash and recognizes a receivable from Entity A.

D.2 Regular Way Purchase or Sale of a Financial Asset

D.2.1 Trade Date vs Settlement Date: Amounts to be Recorded for a Purchase

How are the trade date and settlement date accounting principles in the Standard applied to a purchase of a financial asset?

The following example illustrates the application of the trade date and settlement date accounting principles in the Standard for a purchase of a financial asset. On ~~29~~ December, 29 20X1, an entity commits itself to purchase a financial asset for CU1,000, which is its fair value on commitment (trade) date. Transaction costs are immaterial. On ~~31~~ December, 31 20X1 (financial year-end) and on ~~4~~ January, 4 20X2 (settlement date) the fair value of the asset is CU1,002 and CU1,003, respectively. The amounts to be recorded for the asset will depend on how it is classified and whether trade date or settlement date accounting is used, as shown in the two tables below.

Settlement date accounting			
Balances	Held-to-maturity investments carried at amortized cost	Available-for-sale assets remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income	Assets at fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss
<u>29 December, 29 20X1</u>			
Financial asset	—	—	—
Financial liability	—	—	—

<u>31 December, 31 20X1</u>			
Receivable	–	2	2
Financial asset	–	–	–
Financial liability	–	–	–
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	(2)	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit</u> (through surplus or deficit)	–	–	(2)
<u>Retained earnings</u> (through profit or loss)			
<u>4 January, 4 20X2</u>			
Receivable	–	–	–
Financial asset	1,000	1,003	1,003
Financial liability	–	–	–
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	(3)	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit</u> (through surplus or deficit)	–	–	(3)
<u>Retained earnings</u> (through profit or loss)			

Trade date accounting			
Balances	Held-to-maturity investments carried at amortized cost	Available-for-sale assets remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income	Assets at fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss
<u>29 December, 29 20X1</u>			
Financial asset	1,000	1,000	1,000
Financial liability	(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)
<u>31 December, 31 20X1</u>			
Receivable	–	–	–
Financial asset	1,000	1,002	1,002
Financial liability	(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	(2)	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit</u> (through surplus or deficit)	–	–	(2)

<u>or deficit</u>			
Retained earnings (through profit or loss)			
4-January, 4 20X2			
Receivable	–	–	–
Financial asset	1,000	1,003	1,003
Financial liability	–	–	–
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	(3)	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit</u> (through surplus or deficit)	–	–	(3)
Retained earnings (through profit or loss)			

D.2.2 Trade date vs settlement date: amounts to be recorded for a sale

How are the trade date and settlement date accounting principles in the Standard applied to a sale of a financial asset?

The following example illustrates the application of the trade date and settlement date accounting principles in the Standard for a sale of a financial asset. On ~~29-December, 29~~ 20X2 (trade date) an entity enters into a contract to sell a financial asset for its current fair value of CU1,010. The asset was acquired one year earlier for CU1,000 and its amortized cost is CU1,000. On ~~31-December, 31~~ 20X2 (financial year-end), the fair value of the asset is CU1,012. On 4-January, 4 20X3 (settlement date), the fair value is CU1,013. The amounts to be recorded will depend on how the asset is classified and whether trade date or settlement date accounting is used as shown in the two tables below (any interest that might have accrued on the asset is disregarded).

A change in the fair value of a financial asset that is sold on a regular way basis is not recorded in the financial statements between trade date and settlement date even if the entity applies settlement date accounting because the seller's right to changes in the fair value ceases on the trade date.

Settlement date accounting			
Balances	Held-to-maturity investments carried at amortized cost	Available-for-sale assets remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income	Assets at fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss
29 December, 29 20X2			
Receivable	–	–	–
Financial asset	1,000	1,010	1,010
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	10	–

<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit) Retained earnings (through profit or loss)</u>	–	–	10
31 December, 31 20X2			
Receivable	–	–	–
Financial asset	1,000	1,010	1,010
<u>Net assets/Equity (fair value adjustment)</u>	–	10	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit) Retained earnings (through profit or loss)</u>	–	–	10
4 January, 4 20X3			
<u>Net assets/Equity (fair value adjustment)</u>	–	–	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit) Retained earnings (through profit or loss)</u>	10	10	10

Trade date accounting			
Balances	Held-to-maturity investments carried at amortized cost	Available-for-sale assets remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income	Assets at fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss
29 December, 29 20X2			
Receivable	1,010	1,010	1,010
Financial asset	–	–	–
Equity (fair value adjustment)	–	–	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit) Retained earnings (through profit or loss)</u>	10	10	10
31 December, 31 20X2			
Receivable	1,010	1,010	1,010

Financial asset	—	—	—
<u>Net assets/Equity (fair value adjustment)</u>	—	—	—
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit) Retained earnings (through profit or loss)</u>	10	10	10
4-January, 4 20X3			
<u>Net assets/Equity (fair value adjustment)</u>	—	—	—
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit) Retained earnings (through profit or loss)</u>	10	10	10

D.2.3 Settlement Date Accounting: Exchange of Non-Cash Financial Assets

If an entity recognizes sales of financial assets using settlement date accounting, would a change in the fair value of a financial asset to be received in exchange for the non-cash financial asset that is sold be recognized in accordance with [ED38.66](#) ~~IAS 39.57~~?

It depends. Any change in the fair value of the financial asset to be received would be accounted for under ~~IAS 39.57~~ [ED38.66](#) if the entity applies settlement date accounting for that category of financial assets. However, if the entity classifies the financial asset to be received in a category for which it applies trade date accounting, the asset to be received is recognized on the trade date as described in ~~IAS 39.AG55~~ [ED38.AG75](#). In that case, the entity recognizes a liability of an amount equal to the carrying amount of the financial asset to be delivered on settlement date.

To illustrate: on ~~29-December, 29~~ 20X2 (trade date) Entity A enters into a contract to sell Note Receivable A, which is carried at amortized cost, in exchange for Bond B, which will be classified as held for trading and measured at fair value. Both assets have a fair value of CU1,010 on ~~29~~ December, ~~29~~, while the amortized cost of Note Receivable A is CU1,000. Entity A uses settlement date accounting for loans and receivables and trade date accounting for assets held for trading. On ~~31-December, 31~~ 20X2 (financial year-end), the fair value of Note Receivable A is CU1,012 and the fair value of Bond B is CU1,009. On 4 January, 4 20X3, the fair value of Note Receivable A is CU1,013 and the fair value of Bond B is CU1,007. The following entries are made:

29-December, 29 20X2

Dr	Bond B	CU1,010	
	Cr Payable		CU1,010

31-December, 31 20X2

Dr	Trading loss	CU1	
	Cr Bond B		CU1

4-January, 4 20X3

Dr	Payable	CU1,010	
----	---------	---------	--

Dr	Trading loss	CU2	
	Cr Note Receivable A		CU1,000
	Cr Bond B		CU2
	Cr Realization gain		CU10

Section E Measurement

E.1 Initial Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities

E.1.1 Initial Measurement: Transaction Costs

Transaction costs should be included in the initial measurement of financial assets and financial liabilities other than those at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. How should this requirement be applied in practice?

For financial assets, incremental costs that are directly attributable to the acquisition of the asset, for example fees and commissions, are added to the amount originally recognized. For financial liabilities, directly related costs of issuing debt are deducted from the amount of debt originally recognized. For financial instruments that are measured at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, transaction costs are not added to the fair value measurement at initial recognition.

For financial instruments that are carried at amortized cost, such as held-to-maturity investments, loans and receivables, and financial liabilities that are not at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, transaction costs are included in the calculation of amortized cost using the effective interest method and, in effect, amortized through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ over the life of the instrument.

For available-for-sale financial assets, transaction costs are recognized in other net assets/equity ~~comprehensive income~~ as part of a change in fair value at the next remeasurement. If an available-for-sale financial asset has fixed or determinable payments and does not have an indefinite life, the transaction costs are amortized to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ using the effective interest method. If an available-for-sale financial asset does not have fixed or determinable payments and has an indefinite life, the transaction costs are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ when the asset is derecognized or becomes impaired.

Transaction costs expected to be incurred on transfer or disposal of a financial instrument are not included in the measurement of the financial instrument.

E.2 Fair Value Measurement Considerations

E.2.1 Fair Value Measurement Considerations for Investment Funds

ED38.AG108 IAS 39.AG72 states that the current bid price is usually the appropriate price to be used in measuring the fair value of an asset held. The rules applicable to some investment funds require net asset values to be reported to investors on the basis of mid-market prices. In these circumstances, would it be appropriate for an investment fund to measure its assets on the basis of mid-market prices?

No. The existence of regulations that require a different measurement for specific purposes does not justify a departure from the general requirement in ED38.AG108 IAS 39.AG72 to use the current bid price in the absence of a matching liability position. In its financial statements, an investment fund measures its assets at current bid prices. In reporting its net asset value to investors, an investment fund may wish to provide a reconciliation between the fair values recognized in its statement of financial position and the prices used for the net asset value calculation.

E.2.2 Fair Value Measurement: Large Holding

Entity A holds 15 per cent of the share capital in Entity B. The shares are publicly traded in an active market. The currently quoted price is CU100. Daily trading volume is 0.1 per cent of outstanding shares. Because Entity A believes that the fair value of the Entity B shares it owns, if sold as a block, is greater than the quoted market price, Entity A obtains several independent estimates of the price it would obtain if it sells its holding. These estimates indicate that Entity A would be able to obtain a

price of CU105, i.e. a 5 per cent premium above the quoted price. Which figure should Entity A use for measuring its holding at fair value?

Under ~~IAS 39.AG74~~ **ED38.AG107**, a published price quotation in an active market is the best estimate of fair value. Therefore, Entity A uses the published price quotation (CU100). Entity A cannot depart from the quoted market price solely because independent estimates indicate that Entity A would obtain a higher (or lower) price by selling the holding as a block.

E.3 Gains and Losses

E.3.1 Available-For-Sale Financial Assets: Exchange of Shares

Entity A holds a small number of shares in Entity B. The shares are classified as available for sale. On ~~20 December, 20~~ 20X0, the fair value of the shares is CU120 and the cumulative gain recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ is CU20. On the same day, Entity B is acquired by Entity C, ~~a large public entity~~. As a result, Entity A receives shares in Entity C in exchange for those it had in Entity B of equal fair value. Under **ED38.64(b)** ~~IAS 39.55(b)~~, should Entity A reclassify the cumulative gain of CU20 recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income from equity to surplus or deficit~~ ~~profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment~~?

Yes. The transaction qualifies for derecognition under **ED38** ~~IAS 39~~. ~~IAS 39.55(b)~~ **ED38.64(b)** requires the cumulative gain or loss on an available-for-sale financial asset that has been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ to be reclassified from equity to recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ when the asset is derecognized. In the exchange of shares, Entity A disposes of the shares it had in Entity B and receives shares in Entity C.

E.3.2 ~~IAS 39 and IAS 21~~ **ED 38 and IPSAS 4** Available-For-Sale Financial Assets: Separation of Currency Component

For an available-for-sale monetary financial asset, the entity recognizes changes in the carrying amount relating to changes in foreign exchange rates in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in accordance with IPSAS 4.27(a) ~~IAS 21.23(a)~~ and IPSAS 4.32 ~~IAS 21.28~~ and other changes in the carrying amount in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with **ED 38** ~~IAS 39~~. How is the cumulative gain or loss that is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ determined?

It is the difference between the amortized cost (adjusted for impairment, if any) and fair value of the available-for-sale monetary financial asset in the functional currency of the reporting entity. For the purpose of applying IPSAS 4.32 ~~IAS 21.28~~ the asset is treated as an asset measured at amortized cost in the foreign currency.

To illustrate: on ~~31~~ December, 31 20X1 Entity A acquires a bond denominated in a foreign currency (FC) for its fair value of FC1,000. The bond has five years remaining to maturity and a principal amount of FC1,250, carries fixed interest of 4.7 per cent that is paid annually ($FC1,250 \times 4.7$ per cent = FC59 per year), and has an effective interest rate of 10 per cent. Entity A classifies the bond as available for sale, and thus recognizes gains and losses in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. The entity's functional currency is its local currency (LC). The exchange rate is FC1 to LC1.5 and the carrying amount of the bond is LC1,500 (= $FC1,000 \times 1.5$).

Dr	Bond	LC1,500	
	Cr	Cash	LC1,500

On ~~31~~ December, 31 20X2, the foreign currency has appreciated and the exchange rate is FC1 to LC2. The fair value of the bond is FC1,060 and thus the carrying amount is LC2,120 (= $FC1,060 \times 2$). The amortized cost is FC1,041 (= LC2,082). In this case, the cumulative gain or loss to be recognized and accumulated in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income and accumulated in equity~~ is the difference between the fair value and the amortized cost on ~~31~~ December, 31 20X2, i.e. LC38 (= $LC2,120 - LC2,082$).

Interest received on the bond on ~~31~~ December, 31 20X2 is FC59 (= LC118). Interest ~~revenue~~ income determined in accordance with the effective interest method is FC100 (= $1,000 \times 10$ per cent). The average exchange rate during the year is FC1 to LC1.75. For the purpose of this question, it is assumed that the use of the average exchange rate provides a reliable approximation of the spot rates applicable to the accrual of interest ~~revenue~~ income during the year (IPSAS 4.25 ~~IAS 21.22~~). Thus, reported interest ~~revenue~~ income is LC175 (= $FC100 \times 1.75$) including accretion of the initial discount of LC72 (= $[FC100 - FC59] \times 1.75$). Accordingly, the exchange difference on the bond that is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is LC510 (= $LC2,082 - LC1,500 - LC72$). Also, there is an exchange gain on the interest receivable for the year of LC15 (= $FC59 \times [2.00 - 1.75]$).

Dr	Bond	LC620	
Dr	Cash	LC118	
	Cr	Interest revenue <u>income</u>	LC175
	Cr	Exchange gain	LC525
	Cr	Fair value change in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income	LC38

On ~~31~~ December, 31 20X3, the foreign currency has appreciated further and the exchange rate is FC1 to LC2.50. The fair value of the bond is FC1,070 and thus the carrying amount is LC2,675 (= $FC1,070 \times 2.50$). The amortized cost is FC1,086 (= LC2,715). The cumulative gain or loss to be accumulated in net assets/equity is the difference between the fair value and the amortized cost on ~~31~~ December, 31 20X3, i.e. negative LC40 (= $LC2,675 - LC2,715$). Thus, the amount recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ equals the change in the difference during 20X3 of LC78 (= $LC40 + LC38$).

Interest received on the bond on ~~31~~ December, 31 20X3 is FC59 (= LC148). Interest ~~revenue~~ income determined in accordance with the effective interest method is FC104 (= $FC1,041 \times 10$ per cent). The average exchange rate during the year is FC1 to LC2.25. For the purpose of this question, it is assumed that the use of the average exchange rate provides a reliable approximation of the spot rates applicable to the accrual of interest ~~revenue~~ income during the year (IPSAS 4.25 ~~IAS 21.22~~). Thus, recognized interest ~~revenue~~ income is LC234 (= $FC104 \times 2.25$) including accretion of the initial discount of LC101 (= $[FC104 - FC59] \times 2.25$). Accordingly, the exchange difference on the bond that is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is LC532 (= $LC2,715 - LC2,082 - LC101$). Also, there is an exchange gain on the interest receivable for the year of LC15 (= $FC59 \times [2.50 - 2.25]$).

Dr	Bond	LC555	
Dr	Cash	LC148	
Dr	Fair value change in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income	LC78	
	Cr	Interest revenue <u>income</u>	LC234
	Cr	Exchange gain	LC547

E.3.3 ~~IAS 39 and IAS 21~~ ED 38 and IPSAS 4 Exchange Differences Arising on Translation of Foreign Entities: Net Assets/Equity or, Surplus or Deficit ~~other comprehensive income or profit or loss~~?

IPSAS 4.37 ~~IAS 21.32~~ and IPSAS 4.57 ~~IAS 21.48~~ states that all exchange differences resulting from translating the financial statements of a foreign operation should be recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ until disposal of the net investment. This would include exchange differences arising from financial instruments carried at fair value, which would include both financial assets classified as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and financial assets that are available for sale.

ED38.64 ~~IAS 39.55~~ requires that changes in fair value of financial assets classified as at fair value through ~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and

changes in fair value of available-for-sale investments should be recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

If the foreign operation is a controlled entity subsidiary whose financial statements are consolidated with those of its controlling entity parent, in the consolidated financial statements how are ED38.64 IAS 39.55 and IPSAS 4.44~~IAS 21.39~~ applied?

~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 applies in the accounting for financial instruments in the financial statements of a foreign operation and IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ applies in translating the financial statements of a foreign operation for incorporation in the financial statements of the reporting entity.

To illustrate: Entity A is domiciled in Country X and its functional currency and presentation currency are the local currency of Country X (LCX). A has a foreign controlled entity subsidiary (Entity B) in Country Y whose functional currency is the local currency of Country Y (LCY). B is the owner of a debt instrument, which is held for trading and therefore carried at fair value under ED 38~~IAS 39~~.

In B's financial statements for year 20X0, the fair value and carrying amount of the debt instrument is LCY100 in the local currency of Country Y. In A's consolidated financial statements, the asset is translated into the local currency of Country X at the spot exchange rate applicable at the end of the reporting period (2.00). Thus, the carrying amount is LCX200 (= LCY100 × 2.00) in the consolidated financial statements.

At the end of year 20X1, the fair value of the debt instrument has increased to LCY110 in the local currency of Country Y. B recognizes the trading asset at LCY110 in its statement of financial position and recognizes a fair value gain of LCY10 in its surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. During the year, the spot exchange rate has increased from 2.00 to 3.00 resulting in an increase in the fair value of the instrument from LCX200 to LCX330 (= LCY110 × 3.00) in the currency of Country X. Therefore, Entity A recognizes the trading asset at LCX330 in its consolidated financial statements.

Entity A translates the statement of changes in net assets/equity ~~comprehensive income~~ of B 'at the exchange rates at the dates of the transactions' (IPSAS 4.44(b) ~~IAS 21.39(b)~~). Since the fair value gain has accrued through the year, A uses the average rate as a practical approximation ($[3.00 + 2.00] / 2 = 2.50$, in accordance with IPSAS 4.25 ~~IAS 21.22~~). Therefore, while the fair value of the trading asset has increased by LCX130 (= LCX330 – LCX200), Entity A recognizes only LCX25 (= LCY10 × 2.5) of this increase in consolidated surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ to comply with IPSAS 4.44(b) ~~IAS 21.39(b)~~. The resulting exchange difference, i.e. the remaining increase in the fair value of the debt instrument (LCX130 – LCX25 = LCX105), is accumulated in net assets/equity until the disposal of the net investment in the foreign operation in accordance with IPSAS 4.57 ~~IAS 21.48~~.

E.3.4 IAS 39 and IAS 21 ED 38 and IPSAS 4: Interaction between IAS 39 and IAS 21 ED38 and IPSAS 4

IAS 39 ED 38 includes requirements about the measurement of financial assets and financial liabilities and the recognition of gains and losses on remeasurement in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ includes rules about the reporting of foreign currency items and the recognition of exchange differences in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. In what order are IPSAS 4 and ED 38 ~~IAS 21 and IAS 39~~ applied?

Statement of Financial Position

Generally, the measurement of a financial asset or financial liability at fair value, cost or amortized cost is first determined in the foreign currency in which the item is denominated in accordance with ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~. Then, the foreign currency amount is translated into the functional currency using the closing rate or a historical rate in accordance with IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ (ED38.AG120 ~~IAS 39.AG83~~). For example, if a monetary financial asset (such as a debt instrument) is carried at amortized cost under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~, amortized cost is calculated in the currency of denomination of that financial asset. Then, the foreign currency amount is recognized using the closing rate in the entity's financial statements (IPSAS 4.27 ~~IAS 21.23~~). That applies regardless of whether a monetary item is measured at cost, amortized cost or fair value in the foreign currency (IPSAS 4.28 ~~IAS 21.24~~). A non-monetary financial asset (such as an investment in an equity instrument) is translated using the closing rate if it is carried at fair value in the foreign currency (IPSAS 4.27(c) ~~IAS 21.23(e)~~) and at a historical rate if it is not carried at fair value under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~.

because its fair value cannot be reliably measured (~~IAS 21.23(b) and IAS 39.46(c)~~ IPSAS 4.27(b) and ED 38.48).

As an exception, if the financial asset or financial liability is designated as a hedged item in a fair value hedge of the exposure to changes in foreign currency rates under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~, the hedged item is remeasured for changes in foreign currency rates even if it would otherwise have been recognized using a historical rate under IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ (ED38.99 ~~IAS 39.89~~), i.e. the foreign currency amount is recognized using the closing rate. This exception applies to non-monetary items that are carried in terms of historical cost in the foreign currency and are hedged against exposure to foreign currency rates (IPSAS 4.27(b) ~~IAS 21.23(b)~~).

Profit or Loss Surplus or Deficit

The recognition of a change in the carrying amount of a financial asset or financial liability in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ depends on a number of factors, including whether it is an exchange difference or other change in carrying amount, whether it arises on a monetary item (for example, most debt instruments) or non-monetary item (such as most equity investments), whether the associated asset or liability is designated as a cash flow hedge of an exposure to changes in foreign currency rates, and whether it results from translating the financial statements of a foreign operation. The issue of recognizing changes in the carrying amount of a financial asset or financial liability held by a foreign operation is addressed in a separate question (see Question E.3.3).

Any exchange difference arising on recognizing a *monetary item* at a rate different from that at which it was initially recognized during the period, or recognized in previous financial statements, is recognized in profit or loss surplus or deficit or in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ (ED38.120 ~~IAS 39.AG83~~, IPSAS 4.32 ~~IAS 21.28~~ and IPSAS 4.37 ~~IAS 21.32~~), unless the monetary item is designated as a cash flow hedge of a highly probable forecast transaction in foreign currency, in which case the requirements for recognition of gains and losses on cash flow hedges in ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ apply (ED38.106 ~~IAS 39.95~~). Differences arising from recognizing a monetary item at a foreign currency amount different from that at which it was previously recognized are accounted for in a similar manner, since all changes in the carrying amount relating to foreign currency movements should be treated consistently. All other changes in the statement of financial position measurement of a monetary item are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ or in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~. For example, although an entity recognizes gains and losses on available-for-sale monetary financial assets in ~~other comprehensive income~~ net assets/equity (ED38.64(b) ~~IAS 39.55(b)~~), the entity nevertheless recognizes the changes in the carrying amount relating to changes in foreign exchange rates in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (IPSAS 4.27(a) ~~IAS 21.23(a)~~).

Any changes in the carrying amount of a *non-monetary item* are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ or in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ (ED38.AG120 ~~IAS 39.AG83~~). For example, for available-for-sale financial assets the entire change in the carrying amount, including the effect of changes in foreign currency rates, is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. If the non-monetary item is designated as a cash flow hedge of an unrecognized firm commitment or a highly probable forecast transaction in foreign currency, the requirements for recognition of gains and losses on cash flow hedges in ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ apply (ED38.106 ~~IAS 39.95~~).

When some portion of the change in carrying amount is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ and some portion is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, for example, if the amortized cost of a foreign currency bond classified as available for sale has increased in foreign currency (resulting in a gain in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~) but its fair value has decreased in the functional currency (resulting in a loss recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~), an entity cannot offset those two components for the purposes of determining gains or losses that should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ or in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

E.4 Impairment and Uncollectibility of Financial Assets

E.4.1 Objective Evidence of Impairment

Does ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ require that an entity be able to identify a single, distinct past causative event to conclude that it is probable that an impairment loss on a financial asset has been incurred?

No. ~~ED38.68~~ ~~IAS 39.59~~ states ‘It may not be possible to identify a single, discrete event that caused the impairment. Rather the combined effect of several events may have caused the impairment.’ Also, ~~IAS 39.60~~ ~~ED38.69~~ states that ‘a downgrade of an entity’s credit rating is not, of itself, evidence of impairment, although it may be evidence of impairment when considered with other available information’. Other factors that an entity considers in determining whether it has objective evidence that an impairment loss has been incurred include information about the debtors’ or issuers’ liquidity, solvency and business and financial risk exposures, levels of and trends in delinquencies for similar financial assets, national and local economic trends and conditions, and the fair value of collateral and guarantees. These and other factors may, either individually or taken together, provide sufficient objective evidence that an impairment loss has been incurred in a financial asset or group of financial assets.

E.4.2 Impairment: Future Losses

Does ~~ED 38~~ ~~IAS 39~~ permit the recognition of an impairment loss through the establishment of an allowance for future losses when a loan is given? For example, if Entity A lends CU1,000 to Customer B, can it recognize an immediate impairment loss of CU10 if Entity A, based on historical experience, expects that 1 per cent of the principal amount of loans given will not be collected?

No. ~~IAS 39.43~~ ~~ED38.45~~ requires a financial asset to be initially measured at fair value. For a loan asset, the fair value is the amount of cash lent adjusted for any fees and costs (unless a portion of the amount lent is compensation for other stated or implied rights or privileges). In addition, ~~IAS 39.58~~ ~~ED38.67~~ requires that an impairment loss is recognized only if there is objective evidence of impairment as a result of a past event that occurred after initial recognition. Accordingly, it is inconsistent with ~~ED 38.45~~ ~~IAS 39.43~~ and ~~ED38.67~~ ~~IAS 39.58~~ to reduce the carrying amount of a loan asset on initial recognition through the recognition of an immediate impairment loss.

E.4.3 Assessment of Impairment: Principal and Interest

Because of Customer B’s financial difficulties, Entity A is concerned that Customer B will not be able to make all principal and interest payments due on a loan in a timely manner. It negotiates a restructuring of the loan. Entity A expects that Customer B will be able to meet its obligations under the restructured terms. Would Entity A recognize an impairment loss if the restructured terms are as reflected in any of the following cases?

- (a) Customer B will pay the full principal amount of the original loan five years after the original due date, but none of the interest due under the original terms.
- (b) Customer B will pay the full principal amount of the original loan on the original due date, but none of the interest due under the original terms.
- (c) Customer B will pay the full principal amount of the original loan on the original due date with interest only at a lower interest rate than the interest rate inherent in the original loan.
- (d) Customer B will pay the full principal amount of the original loan five years after the original due date and all interest accrued during the original loan term, but no interest for the extended term.
- (e) Customer B will pay the full principal amount of the original loan five years after the original due date and all interest, including interest for both the original term of the loan and the extended term.

~~IAS 39.58~~ ~~ED38.67~~ indicates that an impairment loss has been incurred if there is objective evidence of impairment. The amount of the impairment loss for a loan measured at amortized cost is the difference between the carrying amount of the loan and the present value of future principal and interest payments discounted at the loan’s original effective interest rate. In cases (a)–(d) above, the present value of the future principal and interest payments discounted at the loan’s original effective interest rate will be lower than the carrying amount of the loan. Therefore, an impairment loss is recognized in those cases.

In case (e), even though the timing of payments has changed, the lender will receive interest on interest, and the present value of the future principal and interest payments discounted at the loan’s original effective interest rate will equal the carrying amount of the loan. Therefore, there is no impairment loss. However, this fact pattern is unlikely given Customer B’s financial difficulties.

E.4.4 Assessment of Impairment: Fair Value Hedge

A loan with fixed interest rate payments is hedged against the exposure to interest rate risk by a receive-variable, pay-fixed interest rate swap. The hedge relationship qualifies for fair value hedge accounting and is reported as a fair value hedge. Thus, the carrying amount of the loan includes an adjustment for fair value changes attributable to movements in interest rates. Should an assessment of impairment in the loan take into account the fair value adjustment for interest rate risk?

Yes. The loan's original effective interest rate before the hedge becomes irrelevant once the carrying amount of the loan is adjusted for any changes in its fair value attributable to interest rate movements. Therefore, the original effective interest rate and amortized cost of the loan are adjusted to take into account recognized fair value changes. The adjusted effective interest rate is calculated using the adjusted carrying amount of the loan.

An impairment loss on the hedged loan is calculated as the difference between its carrying amount after adjustment for fair value changes attributable to the risk being hedged and the estimated future cash flows of the loan discounted at the adjusted effective interest rate. When a loan is included in a portfolio hedge of interest rate risk, the entity should allocate the change in the fair value of the hedged portfolio to the loans (or groups of similar loans) being assessed for impairment on a systematic and rational basis.

E.4.5 Impairment: Provision Matrix

An ~~entity financial institution~~ calculates impairment in the unsecured portion of loans and receivables on the basis of a provision matrix that specifies fixed provision rates for the number of days a loan has been classified as non-performing (zero per cent if less than 90 days, 20 per cent if 90–180 days, 50 per cent if 181–365 days and 100 per cent if more than 365 days). Can the results be considered to be appropriate for the purpose of calculating the impairment loss on loans and receivables under ~~IAS 39.63~~ [ED38.72](#)?

Not necessarily. ~~IAS 39.63~~ [ED38.72](#) requires impairment or bad debt losses to be calculated as the difference between the asset's carrying amount and the present value of estimated future cash flows discounted at the financial instrument's original effective interest rate.

E.4.6 Impairment: Excess Losses

Does ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ permit an entity to recognize impairment or bad debt losses in excess of impairment losses that are determined on the basis of objective evidence about impairment in identified individual financial assets or identified groups of similar financial assets?

No. ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ does not permit an entity to recognize impairment or bad debt losses in addition to those that can be attributed to individually identified financial assets or identified groups of financial assets with similar credit risk characteristics (~~IAS 39.64~~ [ED38.73](#)) on the basis of objective evidence about the existence of impairment in those assets (~~IAS 39.58~~ [ED38.67](#)). Amounts that an entity might want to set aside for additional possible impairment in financial assets, such as reserves that cannot be supported by objective evidence about impairment, are not recognized as impairment or bad debt losses under ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~. However, if an entity determines that no objective evidence of impairment exists for an individually assessed financial asset, whether significant or not, it includes the asset in a group of financial assets with similar credit risk characteristics (~~IAS 39.64~~ [ED38.73](#)).

E.4.7 Recognition of Impairment on a Portfolio

~~IAS 39.63~~ [ED38.72](#) requires that impairment be recognized for financial assets carried at amortized cost. ~~IAS 39.64~~ [ED38.73](#) states that impairment may be measured and recognized individually or on a portfolio basis for a group of similar financial assets. If one asset in the group is impaired but the fair value of another asset in the group is above its amortized cost, does ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ allow non-recognition of the impairment of the first asset?

No. If an entity knows that an individual financial asset carried at amortized cost is impaired, [ED38.72](#) ~~IAS 39.63~~ requires that the impairment of that asset should be recognized. It states: 'the amount of the loss is measured as the difference between *the asset's* carrying amount and the present value of estimated future cash flows (excluding future credit losses that have not been incurred) discounted at the financial asset's original effective interest rate' (emphasis added). Measurement of impairment on a portfolio basis under

IAS 39.64 [ED38.73](#) may be applied to groups of small balance items and to financial assets that are individually assessed and found not to be impaired when there is indication of impairment in a group of similar assets and impairment cannot be identified with an individual asset in that group.

E.4.8 Impairment: Recognition of Collateral

If an impaired financial asset is secured by collateral that does not meet the recognition criteria for assets in other Standards, is the collateral recognized as an asset separate from the impaired financial asset?

No. The measurement of the impaired financial asset reflects the fair value of the collateral. The collateral is not recognized as an asset separate from the impaired financial asset unless it meets the recognition criteria for an asset in another Standard.

E.4.9 Impairment of Non-Monetary Available-For-Sale Financial Asset

If a non-monetary financial asset, such as an equity instrument, measured at fair value with gains and losses recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ becomes impaired, should the cumulative net loss recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~, including any portion attributable to foreign currency changes, be recognized in ~~reclassified from equity to~~ surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment~~?

Yes. [ED38.76](#) ~~IAS 39.67~~ states that when a decline in the fair value of an available-for-sale financial asset has been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ and there is objective evidence that the asset is impaired, the cumulative net loss that had been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ should be ~~reclassified from equity to~~ recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ even though the asset has not been derecognized. Any portion of the cumulative net loss that is attributable to foreign currency changes on that asset that had been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ is also recognized in ~~reclassified from equity to~~ surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. Any subsequent losses, including any portion attributable to foreign currency changes, are also recognized in ~~reclassified from equity to~~ surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ until the asset is derecognized.

E.4.10 Impairment: Whether the Available-For-Sale Reserve in Net Assets/Equity can be Negative

ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ requires that gains and losses arising from changes in fair value on available-for-sale financial assets are recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. If the aggregate fair value of such assets is less than their carrying amount, should the aggregate net loss that has been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ be recognized in ~~reclassified from equity to~~ surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment~~?

Not necessarily. The relevant criterion is not whether the aggregate fair value is less than the carrying amount, but whether there is objective evidence that a financial asset or group of assets is impaired. An entity assesses at the end of each reporting period whether there is any objective evidence that a financial asset or group of assets may be impaired, in accordance with [ED38.68-70](#) ~~IAS 39.59-61~~. ~~IAS 39.60~~ [ED38.69](#) states that a downgrade of an entity's credit rating is not, of itself, evidence of impairment, although it may be evidence of impairment when considered with other available information. Additionally, a decline in the fair value of a financial asset below its cost or amortized cost is not necessarily evidence of impairment (for example, a decline in the fair value of an investment in a debt instrument that results from an increase in the basic, risk-free interest rate).

Section F Hedging

F.1 Hedging Instruments

F1.1 Hedging the Fair Value Exposure of a Bond Denominated in a Foreign Currency

Entity J, whose functional currency is the Japanese yen, has issued 5 million five-year US dollar fixed rate debt. Also, it owns a 5 million five-year fixed rate US dollar bond which it has classified as available for sale. Can Entity J designate its US dollar liability as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge of the entire fair value exposure of its US dollar bond?

No. ~~IAS 39.72~~ [ED38.81](#) permits a non-derivative to be used as a hedging instrument only for a hedge of a foreign currency risk. Entity J's bond has a fair value exposure to foreign currency and interest rate changes and credit risk.

Alternatively, can the US dollar liability be designated as a fair value hedge or cash flow hedge of the foreign currency component of the bond?

Yes. However, hedge accounting is unnecessary because the amortized cost of the hedging instrument and the hedged item are both remeasured using closing rates. Regardless of whether Entity J designates the relationship as a cash flow hedge or a fair value hedge, the effect on surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is the same. Any gain or loss on the non-derivative hedging instrument designated as a cash flow hedge is immediately recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ to correspond with the recognition of the change in spot rate on the hedged item in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ as required by IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~.

F.1.2 Hedging with a Non-Derivative Financial Asset or Liability

Entity J's functional currency is the Japanese yen. It has issued a fixed rate debt instrument with semi-annual interest payments that matures in two years with principal due at maturity of 5 million US dollars. It has also entered into a fixed price sales commitment for 5 million US dollars that matures in two years and is not accounted for as a derivative because it meets the exemption for normal sales in paragraph 45. Can Entity J designate its US dollar liability as a fair value hedge of the entire fair value exposure of its fixed price sales commitment and qualify for hedge accounting?

No. ~~IAS 39.72~~ [ED38.81](#) permits a non-derivative asset or liability to be used as a hedging instrument only for a hedge of a foreign currency risk.

Alternatively, can Entity J designate its US dollar liability as a cash flow hedge of the foreign currency exposure associated with the future receipt of US dollars on the fixed price sales commitment?

Yes. ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ permits the designation of a non-derivative asset or liability as a hedging instrument in either a cash flow hedge or a fair value hedge of the exposure to changes in foreign exchange rates of a firm commitment (~~IAS 39.87~~ [ED38.97](#)). Any gain or loss on the non-derivative hedging instrument that is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ during the period preceding the future sale is recognized in ~~reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment when the sale takes place (~~IAS 39.95~~ [ED38.106](#)).

Alternatively, can Entity J designate the sales commitment as the hedging instrument instead of the hedged item?

No. Only a derivative instrument or a non-derivative financial asset or liability can be designated as a hedging instrument in a hedge of a foreign currency risk. A firm commitment cannot be designated as a hedging instrument. However, if the foreign currency component of the sales commitment is required to be separated as an embedded derivative under ~~IAS 39.11~~ [ED38.12](#) and [ED38.AG45](#) ~~IAS 39.AG33(d)~~, it could be designated as a hedging instrument in a hedge of the exposure to changes in the fair value of the maturity amount of the debt attributable to foreign currency risk.

F1.3 Hedge Accounting: Use of Written Options in Combined Hedging Instruments

Issue (a) – Does [ED38.AG131](#) ~~IAS 39.AG94~~ preclude the use of an interest rate collar or other derivative instrument that combines a written option component and a purchased option component as a hedging instrument?

It depends. An interest rate collar or other derivative instrument that includes a written option cannot be designated as a hedging instrument if it is a net written option, because [ED38.AG131](#) ~~IAS 39.AG94~~ precludes the use of a written option as a hedging instrument unless it is designated as an offset to a purchased option. An interest rate collar or other derivative instrument that includes a written option may be designated as a hedging instrument, however, if the combination is a net purchased option or zero cost collar.

Issue (b) – What factors indicate that an interest rate collar or other derivative instrument that combines a written option component and a purchased option component is not a net written option?

The following factors taken together suggest that an interest rate collar or other derivative instrument that includes a written option is not a net written option.

- (a) No net premium is received either at inception or over the life of the combination of options. The distinguishing feature of a written option is the receipt of a premium to compensate the writer for the risk incurred.
- (b) Except for the strike prices, the critical terms and conditions of the written option component and the purchased option component are the same (including underlying variable or variables, currency denomination and maturity date). Also, the notional amount of the written option component is not greater than the notional amount of the purchased option component.

F.1.4 Internal Hedges

Some entities use internal derivative contracts (internal hedges) to transfer risk exposures between different entities/companies within an economic entity a group or divisions within a single legal entity. Does ED38.82 ~~IAS 39.73~~ prohibit hedge accounting in such cases?

Yes, if the derivative contracts are internal to the entity being reported on. ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 does not specify how an entity should manage its risk. However, it states that internal hedging transactions do not qualify for hedge accounting. This applies both (a) in consolidated financial statements for ~~intragroup~~ hedging transactions within an economic entity, and (b) in the individual or separate financial statements of a legal entity for hedging transactions between divisions in the entity. The principles of preparing consolidated financial statements in IPSAS 6.45 ~~IAS 27.24~~ requires that '~~intragroup~~ Balances, transactions, revenue income and expenses within the economic entity shall be eliminated in full'.

On the other hand, ~~an intragroup~~ hedging transaction within an economic entity may be designated as a hedge in the individual or separate financial statements of ~~an individual entity-group entity~~, if the ~~intragroup~~ transaction is an external transaction from the perspective of the economic group entity. In addition, if the internal contract is offset with an external party the external contract may be regarded as the hedging instrument and the hedging relationship may qualify for hedge accounting.

The following summarizes the application of ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 to internal hedging transactions.

- ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 does not preclude an entity from using internal derivative contracts for risk management purposes and it does not preclude internal derivatives from being accumulated at the treasury level or some other central location so that risk can be managed on an entity-wide basis or at some higher level than the separate legal entity or division.
- Internal derivative contracts between two separate entities within ~~an consolidated group-economic entity~~ can qualify for hedge accounting by those entities in their individual or separate financial statements, even though the internal contracts are not offset by derivative contracts with a party external to the economic entity consolidated group.
- Internal derivative contracts between two separate divisions within the same legal entity can qualify for hedge accounting in the individual or separate financial statements of that legal entity only if those contracts are offset by derivative contracts with a party external to the legal entity.
- Internal derivative contracts between separate divisions within the same legal entity and between separate entities within the economic entity consolidated group can qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements only if the internal contracts are offset by derivative contracts with a party external to the economic entity consolidated group.
- If the internal derivative contracts are not offset by derivative contracts with external parties, the use of hedge accounting by ~~individual group~~ entities and divisions using internal contracts must be reversed on consolidation.

To illustrate: the ~~banking treasury~~ division of Entity A enters into an internal interest rate swap with ~~another the trading~~ division of the same entity. The purpose is to hedge the interest rate risk exposure of a loan (or group of similar loans) in the loan portfolio. Under the swap, the ~~treasury banking~~ division pays fixed interest payments to the trading division and receives variable interest rate payments in return.

If a hedging instrument is not acquired from an external party, ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 does not allow hedge accounting treatment for the hedging transaction undertaken by the ~~banking and trading treasury and other divisions~~. ED38.82 ~~IAS 39.73~~ indicates that only derivatives that involve a party external to the entity can be designated as hedging instruments and, further, that any gains or losses on ~~intragroup or intra-entity transactions within an economic entity or within individual entities~~ should be eliminated on consolidation. Therefore, transactions between different divisions within Entity A do not qualify for hedge accounting treatment in the financial statements of Entity A. Similarly, transactions between different entities within an economic entity ~~a group~~ do not qualify for hedge accounting treatment in consolidated financial statements.

However, if in addition to the internal swap in the above example the trading division enters into an interest rate swap or other contract with an external party that offsets the exposure hedged in the internal swap, hedge accounting is permitted under ED 38~~IAS 39~~. For the purposes of ED 38~~IAS 39~~, the hedged item is the loan (or group of similar loans) in the ~~treasury banking~~ division and the hedging instrument is the external interest rate swap or other contract.

The trading division may aggregate several internal swaps or portions of them that are not offsetting each other and enter into a single third party derivative contract that offsets the aggregate exposure. Under ED 38~~IAS 39~~, such external hedging transactions may qualify for hedge accounting treatment provided that the hedged items in the ~~treasury banking~~ division are identified and the other conditions for hedge accounting are met. It should be noted, however, that ED38.88 ~~IAS 39.79~~ does not permit hedge accounting treatment for held-to-maturity investments if the hedged risk is the exposure to interest rate changes.

F.1.5 Offsetting Internal Derivative Contracts Used to Manage Interest Rate Risk

If a central treasury function enters into internal derivative contracts with controlled entities subsidiaries and various divisions within the economic entity ~~consolidated group~~ to manage interest rate risk on a centralized basis, can those contracts qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements if, before laying off the risk, the internal contracts are first netted against each other and only the net exposure is offset in the marketplace with external derivative contracts?

No. An internal contract designated at the ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~ level or by a division as a hedge results in the recognition of changes in the fair value of the item being hedged in ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ (a fair value hedge) or in the recognition of the changes in the fair value of the internal derivative in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ (a cash flow hedge). There is no basis for changing the measurement attribute of the item being hedged in a fair value hedge unless the exposure is offset with an external derivative. There is also no basis for recognizing the gain or loss on the internal derivative in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ for one entity and recognizing it in ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ by the other entity unless it is offset with an external derivative. In cases where two or more internal derivatives are used to manage interest rate risk on assets or liabilities at the ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~ or division level and those internal derivatives are offset at the treasury level, the effect of designating the internal derivatives as hedging instruments is that the hedged non-derivative exposures at the ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~ or division levels would be used to offset each other on consolidation. Accordingly, since ~~IAS 39.72~~ ED38.81 does not permit designating non-derivatives as hedging instruments, except for foreign currency exposures, the results of hedge accounting from the use of internal derivatives at the ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~ or division level that are not laid off with external parties must be reversed on consolidation.

It should be noted, however, that there will be no effect on ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ and ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ of reversing the effect of hedge accounting in consolidation for internal derivatives that offset each other at the consolidation level if they are used in the same type of hedging relationship at the ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~ or division level and, in the case of cash flow hedges, where the hedged items affect ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ in the same period. Just as the internal derivatives offset at the treasury level, their use as fair value hedges by two separate entities or divisions within the consolidated group will also result in the offset of the fair value amounts recognized in ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~, and their use as cash flow hedges by two separate entities or divisions within the ~~economic entity consolidated group~~ will also result in the fair value amounts being offset against each other in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~. However, there may be an effect on individual line items in both the consolidated statement of changes in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ and the consolidated statement of financial position, for example when internal derivatives that hedge assets (or

liabilities) in a fair value hedge are offset by internal derivatives that are used as a fair value hedge of other assets (or liabilities) that are recognized in a different line item in the statement of financial position or statement of ~~changes in net assets/equity-comprehensive income~~. In addition, to the extent that one of the internal contracts is used as a cash flow hedge and the other is used in a fair value hedge, gains and losses recognized would not offset since the gain (or loss) on the internal derivative used as a fair value hedge would be recognized in ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ and the corresponding loss (or gain) on the internal derivative used as a cash flow hedge would be recognized in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~.

Question F.1.4 describes the application of ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 to internal hedging transactions.

F.1.6 Offsetting Internal Derivative Contracts Used to Manage Foreign Currency Risk

If a central treasury function enters into internal derivative contracts with controlled entities subsidiaries and various divisions within the economic entity consolidated group to manage foreign currency risk on a centralized basis, can those contracts be used as a basis for identifying external transactions that qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements if, before laying off the risk, the internal contracts are first netted against each other and only the net exposure is offset by entering into a derivative contract with an external party?

It depends. ~~IAS 27~~ IPSAS 6, “Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements” requires all internal transactions to be eliminated in consolidated financial statements. As stated in ED38.82 ~~IAS 39.73~~, internal hedging transactions do not qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements of the economic entity group. Therefore, if an entity wishes to achieve hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements, it must designate a hedging relationship between a qualifying external hedging instrument and a qualifying hedged item.

As discussed in Question F.1.5, the accounting effect of two or more internal derivatives that are used to manage interest rate risk at the controlled entity subsidiary or division level and are offset at the treasury level is that the hedged non-derivative exposures at those levels would be used to offset each other on consolidation. There is no effect on ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ or ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ if (a) the internal derivatives are used in the same type of hedge relationship (i.e. fair value or cash flow hedges) and (b), in the case of cash flow hedges, any derivative gains and losses that are initially recognized in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ are recognized in ~~reclassified from equity to~~ profit or loss ~~surplus or deficit~~ in the same period(s). When these two conditions are met, the gains and losses on the internal derivatives that are recognized in ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ or in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ will offset on consolidation resulting in the same ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ and ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ as if the derivatives had been eliminated. However, there may be an effect on individual line items, in both the consolidated statement of ~~changes in net assets/equity comprehensive income~~ and the consolidated statement of financial position, that would need to be eliminated. In addition, there is an effect on ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ and ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ if some of the offsetting internal derivatives are used in cash flow hedges, while others are used in fair value hedges. There is also an effect on ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ and ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ for offsetting internal derivatives that are used in cash flow hedges if the derivative gains and losses that are initially recognized in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ are recognized in ~~reclassified from equity to~~ surplus or deficit profit or loss in different periods (because the hedged items affect ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ in different periods).

As regards foreign currency risk, provided that the internal derivatives represent the transfer of foreign currency risk on underlying non-derivative financial assets or liabilities, hedge accounting can be applied because ~~IAS 39.72~~ ED38.81 permits a non-derivative financial asset or liability to be designated as a hedging instrument for hedge accounting purposes for a hedge of a foreign currency risk. Accordingly, in this case the internal derivative contracts can be used as a basis for identifying external transactions that qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements even if they are offset against each other. However, for consolidated financial statements, it is necessary to designate the hedging relationship so that it involves only external transactions.

Furthermore, the entity cannot apply hedge accounting to the extent that two or more offsetting internal derivatives represent the transfer of foreign currency risk on underlying forecast transactions or unrecognized firm commitments. This is because an unrecognized firm commitment or forecast transaction

does not qualify as a hedging instrument under ED 38 IAS 39. Accordingly, in this case the internal derivatives cannot be used as a basis for identifying external transactions that qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements. As a result, any cumulative net gain or loss on an internal derivative that has been included in the initial carrying amount of an asset or liability (basis adjustment) or recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ would have to be reversed on consolidation if it cannot be demonstrated that the offsetting internal derivative represented the transfer of a foreign currency risk on a financial asset or liability to an external hedging instrument.

F.1.7 Internal Derivatives: Examples of Applying Question F.1.6

In each case, FC = foreign currency, LC = local currency (which is the entity's functional currency), and TC = treasury centre.

Case 1 Offset of Fair Value Hedges

~~Subsidiary~~ Controlled entity A has trade receivables of FC100, due in 60 days, which it hedges using a forward contract with TC. ~~Controlled entity~~ Subsidiary B has payables of FC50, also due in 60 days, which it hedges using a forward contract with TC.

TC nets the two internal derivatives and enters into a net external forward contract to pay FC50 and receive LC in 60 days.

At the end of month 1, FC weakens against LC. A incurs a foreign exchange loss of LC10 on its receivables, offset by a gain of LC10 on its forward contract with TC. B makes a foreign exchange gain of LC5 on its payables offset by a loss of LC5 on its forward contract with TC. TC makes a loss of LC10 on its internal forward contract with A, a gain of LC5 on its internal forward contract with B, and a gain of LC5 on its external forward contract.

At the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the individual or separate financial statements of A, B and TC. Entries reflecting ~~intragroup~~ transactions or events within the economic entity are shown in italics.

A's entries

Dr	Foreign exchange loss	LC10	
	Cr	Receivables	LC10
Dr	<i>Internal contract TC</i>	<i>LC10</i>	
	Cr	<i>Internal gain TC</i>	<i>LC10</i>

B's entries

Dr	Payables	LC5	
	Cr	Foreign exchange gain	LC5
Dr	<i>Internal loss TC</i>	<i>LC5</i>	
	Cr	<i>Internal contract TC</i>	<i>LC5</i>

TC's entries

Dr	<i>Internal loss A</i>	<i>LC10</i>	
	Cr	<i>Internal contract A</i>	<i>LC10</i>
Dr	<i>Internal contract B</i>	<i>LC5</i>	
	Cr	<i>Internal gain B</i>	<i>LC5</i>

Dr External forward contract

LC5

Cr Foreign exchange gain

LC5

Both A and B could apply hedge accounting in their individual financial statements provided all conditions in ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 are met. However, in this case, no hedge accounting is required because gains and losses on the internal derivatives and the offsetting losses and gains on the hedged receivables and payables are recognized immediately in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ of A and B without hedge accounting.

In the consolidated financial statements, the internal derivative transactions are eliminated. In economic terms, the payable in B hedges FC50 of the receivables in A. The external forward contract in TC hedges the remaining FC50 of the receivable in A. Hedge accounting is not necessary in the consolidated financial statements because monetary items are measured at spot foreign exchange rates under IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ irrespective of whether hedge accounting is applied.

The net balances before and after elimination of the accounting entries relating to the internal derivatives are the same, as set out below. Accordingly, there is no need to make any further accounting entries to meet the requirements of ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~.

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Receivables	–	LC10
Payables	LC5	–
External forward contract	LC5	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

Case 2 Offset of Cash Flow Hedges

To extend the example, A also has highly probable future revenues of FC200 on which it expects to receive cash in 90 days. B has highly probable future expenses of FC500 (rental for offices ~~advertising cost~~), also to be paid for in 90 days. A and B enter into separate forward contracts with TC to hedge these exposures and TC enters into an external forward contract to receive FC300 in 90 days.

As before, FC weakens at the end of month 1. A incurs a ‘loss’ of LC20 on its anticipated revenues because the LC value of these revenues decreases. This is offset by a ‘gain’ of LC20 on its forward contract with TC.

B incurs a ‘gain’ of LC50 on its anticipated advertising cost because the LC value of the expense decreases. This is offset by a ‘loss’ of LC50 on its transaction with TC.

TC incurs a ‘gain’ of LC50 on its internal transaction with B, a ‘loss’ of LC20 on its internal transaction with A and a loss of LC30 on its external forward contract.

A and B complete the necessary documentation, the hedges are effective, and both A and B qualify for hedge accounting in their individual financial statements. A recognizes the gain of LC20 on its internal derivative transaction in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ and B recognizes the loss of LC50 in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. TC does not claim hedge accounting, but measures both its internal and external derivative positions at fair value, which net to zero.

At the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the individual or separate financial statements of A, B and TC. Entries reflecting ~~intragroup~~ transactions or events within the economic entity are shown in italics.

A’s entries

Dr Internal contract TC

LC20

Cr ~~Other comprehensive income~~ Net assets/equity *LC20*

B's entries

Dr ~~Other comprehensive income~~ Net assets/equity *LC50*

Cr Internal contract TC *LC50*

TC's entries

Dr Internal loss A *LC20*

Cr Internal contract Cr A *LC20*

Dr Internal contract B *LC50*

Cr Internal gain B *LC50*

Dr Foreign exchange loss *LC30*

Cr External forward contract *LC30*

For the consolidated financial statements, TC's external forward contract on FC300 is designated, at the beginning of month 1, as a hedging instrument of the first FC300 of B's highly probable future expenses. ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 requires that in the consolidated financial statements at the end of month 1, the accounting effects of the internal derivative transactions must be eliminated.

However, the net balances before and after elimination of the accounting entries relating to the internal derivatives are the same, as set out below. Accordingly, there is no need to make any further accounting entries in order for the requirements of ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 to be met.

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
External forward contract	–	LC30
Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>	LC30	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

Case 3 Offset of Fair Value and Cash Flow Hedges

Assume that the exposures and the internal derivative transactions are the same as in cases 1 and 2. However, instead of entering into two external derivatives to hedge separately the fair value and cash flow exposures, TC enters into a single net external derivative to receive FC250 in exchange for LC in 90 days.

TC has four internal derivatives, two maturing in 60 days and two maturing in 90 days. These are offset by a net external derivative maturing in 90 days. The interest rate differential between FC and LC is minimal, and therefore the ineffectiveness resulting from the mismatch in maturities is expected to have a minimal effect on surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in TC.

As in cases 1 and 2, A and B apply hedge accounting for their cash flow hedges and TC measures its derivatives at fair value. A recognizes a gain of LC20 on its internal derivative transaction in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ and B recognizes a loss of LC50 on its internal derivative transaction in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

At the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the individual or separate financial statements of A, B and TC. Entries reflecting ~~intragroup~~ transactions or events within the economic entity are shown in italics.

A's entries

Dr Foreign exchange loss	LC10	
Cr Receivables		LC10
<i>Dr Internal contract TC</i>	<i>LC10</i>	
Cr Internal gain TC		LC10
<i>Dr Internal contract TC</i>	<i>LC20</i>	
Cr Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>		LC20

B's entries

Dr Payables	LC5	
Cr Foreign exchange gain		LC5
<i>Dr Internal loss TC</i>	<i>LC5</i>	
Cr Internal contract TC		LC5
<i>Dr Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u></i>	<i>LC50</i>	
Cr Internal contract TC		LC50

TC's entries

<i>Dr Internal loss A</i>	<i>LC10</i>	
Cr Internal contract A		LC10
<i>Dr Internal loss A</i>	<i>LC20</i>	
Cr Internal contract A		LC20
<i>Dr Internal contract B</i>	<i>LC5</i>	
Cr Internal gain B		LC5
<i>Dr Internal contract B</i>	<i>LC50</i>	
Cr Internal gain B		LC50
Dr Foreign exchange loss	LC25	
Cr External forward contract		LC25

<i>TOTAL (for the internal derivatives)</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>Total</i>
	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>	<i>TC</i>
<u>Surplus or deficit</u> Profit or loss (fair value hedges)	10	(5)	5
<u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income (cash flow hedges)	20	(50)	(30)
Total	30	(55)	(25)

Combining these amounts with the external transactions (i.e. those not marked in italics above) produces the total net balances before elimination of the internal derivatives as follows:

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Receivables	–	LC10
Payables	LC5	–
Forward contract	–	LC25
<u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income	LC30	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

For the consolidated financial statements, the following designations are made at the beginning of month 1:

- the payable of FC50 in B is designated as a hedge of the first FC50 of the highly probable future revenues in A. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the consolidated financial statements: Dr Payable LC5; Cr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC5;
- the receivable of FC100 in A is designated as a hedge of the first FC100 of the highly probable future expenses in B. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the consolidated financial statements: Dr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC10; Cr Receivable LC10; and
- the external forward contract on FC250 in TC is designated as a hedge of the next FC250 of highly probable future expenses in B. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the consolidated financial statements: Dr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC25; Cr External forward contract LC25.

In the consolidated financial statements at the end of month 1, ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ requires the accounting effects of the internal derivative transactions to be eliminated.

However, the total net balances before and after elimination of the accounting entries relating to the internal derivatives are the same, as set out below. Accordingly, there is no need to make any further accounting entries to meet the requirements of ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~.

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Receivables	–	LC10
Payables	LC5	–
Forward contract	–	LC25
Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>	LC30	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

Case 4 Offset of Fair Value and Cash Flow Hedges with Adjustment to Carrying Amount of Inventory

Assume similar transactions as in case 3, except that the anticipated cash outflow of FC500 in B relates to the purchase of inventory that is delivered after 60 days. Assume also that the entity has a policy of basis-adjusting hedged forecast non-financial items. At the end of month 2, there are no further changes in exchange rates or fair values. At that date, the inventory is delivered and the loss of LC50 on B's internal derivative, recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in month 1, is adjusted against the carrying amount of inventory in B. The gain of LC20 on A's internal derivative is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ as before.

In the consolidated financial statements, there is now a mismatch compared with the result that would have been achieved by unwinding and redesignating the hedges. The external derivative (FC250) and a

proportion of the receivable (FC50) offset FC300 of the anticipated inventory purchase. There is a natural hedge between the remaining FC200 of anticipated cash outflow in B and the anticipated cash inflow of FC200 in A. This relationship does not qualify for hedge accounting under [ED38 IAS 39](#) and this time there is only a partial offset between gains and losses on the internal derivatives that hedge these amounts.

At the end of months 1 and 2, the following entries are made in the individual or separate financial statements of A, B and TC. Entries reflecting ~~intragroup~~ transactions or events within the economic entity are shown in italics.

A's entries (all at the end of month 1)

Dr Foreign exchange loss	LC10	
Cr Receivables		LC10
<i>Dr Internal contract TC</i>	<i>LC10</i>	
<i>Cr Internal gain TC</i>		<i>LC10</i>
<i>Dr Internal contract TC</i>	<i>LC20</i>	
<i>Cr Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u></i>		<i>LC20</i>

B's entries

At the end of month 1:

Dr Payables	LC5	
Cr Foreign exchange gain		LC5
<i>Dr Internal loss TC</i>	<i>LC5</i>	
<i>Cr Internal contract TC</i>		<i>LC5</i>
<i>Dr Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u></i>	<i>LC50</i>	
<i>Cr Internal contract TC</i>		<i>LC50</i>

At the end of month 2:

Dr Inventory	LC50	
Cr Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>		LC50

TC's entries (all at the end of month 1)

<i>Dr Internal loss A</i>	<i>LC10</i>	
<i>Cr Internal contract A</i>		<i>LC10</i>
<i>Dr Internal loss A</i>	<i>LC20</i>	
<i>Cr Internal contract A</i>		<i>LC20</i>
<i>Dr Internal contract B</i>	<i>LC5</i>	
<i>Cr Internal gain B</i>		<i>LC5</i>
<i>Dr Internal contract B</i>	<i>LC50</i>	
<i>Cr Internal gain B</i>		<i>LC50</i>
Dr Foreign exchange loss	LC25	
Cr Forward		LC25

<i>TOTAL (for the internal derivatives)</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>Total</i>
	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>	<i>TC</i>
<u>Surplus or deficit</u> Profit or loss (fair value hedges)	10	(5)	5
<u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income (cash flow hedges)	20	–	20
Basis adjustment (inventory)	–	(50)	(50)
Total	30	(55)	(25)

Combining these amounts with the external transactions (i.e. those not marked in italics above) produces the total net balances before elimination of the internal derivatives as follows:

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Receivables	–	LC10
Payables	LC5	–
Forward contract	–	LC25
<u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income	–	LC20
Basis adjustment (inventory)	LC50	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

For the consolidated financial statements, the following designations are made at the beginning of month 1:

- the payable of FC50 in B is designated as a hedge of the first FC50 of the highly probable future revenues in A. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entry is made in the consolidated financial statements: Dr Payables LC5; Cr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC5.
- the receivable of FC100 in A is designated as a hedge of the first FC100 of the highly probable future expenses in B. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the consolidated financial statements: Dr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC10; Cr Receivable LC10; and at the end of month 2, Dr Inventory LC10; Cr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC10.
- the external forward contract on FC250 in TC is designated as a hedge of the next FC250 of highly probable future expenses in B. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entry is made in the consolidated financial statements: Dr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC25; Cr External forward contract LC25; and at the end of month 2, Dr Inventory LC25; Cr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC25.

The total net balances after elimination of the accounting entries relating to the internal derivatives are as follows:

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Receivables	–	LC10
Payables	LC5	–
Forward contract	–	LC25
<u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income	–	LC5

Basis adjustment (inventory)	LC35	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

These total net balances are different from those that would be recognized if the internal derivatives were not eliminated, and it is these net balances that ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ requires to be included in the consolidated financial statements. The accounting entries required to adjust the total net balances before elimination of the internal derivatives are as follows:

- (a) to reclassify LC15 of the loss on B's internal derivative that is included in inventory to reflect that FC150 of the forecast purchase of inventory is not hedged by an external instrument (neither the external forward contract of FC250 in TC nor the external payable of FC100 in A); and
- (b) to reclassify the gain of LC15 on A's internal derivative to reflect that the forecast revenues of FC150 to which it relates is not hedged by an external instrument.

The net effect of these two adjustments is as follows:

Dr <u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income	LC15
Cr Inventory	LC15

F.1.8 Combination of Written and Purchased Options

In most cases, ~~IAS 39~~ ~~AG94~~ ED38 AG131 prohibits the use of written options as hedging instruments. If a combination of a written option and purchased option (such as an interest rate collar) is transacted as a single instrument with one counterparty, can an entity split the derivative instrument into its written option component and purchased option component and designate the purchased option component as a hedging instrument?

No. ~~IAS 39~~ ~~74~~ ED38 83 specifies that a hedging relationship is designated by an entity for a hedging instrument in its entirety. The only exceptions permitted are splitting the time value and intrinsic value of an option and splitting the interest element and spot price on a forward. Question F.1.3 addresses the issue of whether and when a combination of options is considered as a written option.

F.1.9 Delta-Neutral Hedging Strategy

Does ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 permit an entity to apply hedge accounting for a 'delta-neutral' hedging strategy and other dynamic hedging strategies under which the quantity of the hedging instrument is constantly adjusted in order to maintain a desired hedge ratio, for example, to achieve a delta-neutral position insensitive to changes in the fair value of the hedged item?

Yes. ~~IAS 39~~ ~~74~~ ED38 83 states that 'a dynamic hedging strategy that assesses both the intrinsic value and time value of an option contract can qualify for hedge accounting'. For example, a portfolio insurance strategy that seeks to ensure that the fair value of the hedged item does not drop below a certain level, while allowing the fair value to increase, may qualify for hedge accounting.

To qualify for hedge accounting, the entity must document how it will monitor and update the hedge and measure hedge effectiveness, be able to track properly all terminations and redesignations of the hedging instrument, and demonstrate that all other criteria for hedge accounting in ~~IAS 39~~ ~~88~~ ED38 98 are met. Also, it must be able to demonstrate an expectation that the hedge will be highly effective for a specified short period of time during which the hedge is not expected to be adjusted.

F.1.10 Hedging Instrument: Out of the Money Put Option

Entity A has an investment in one share of Entity B, which it has classified as available for sale. To give itself partial protection against decreases in the share price of Entity B, Entity A acquires a put option on one share of Entity B and designates the change in the intrinsic value of the put as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge of changes in the fair value of its share in Entity B. The put gives Entity A the right to sell one share of Entity B at a strike price of CU90. At the inception of the

hedging relationship, the share has a quoted price of CU100. Since the put option gives Entity A the right to dispose of the share at a price of CU90, the put should normally be fully effective in offsetting price declines below CU90 on an intrinsic value basis. Price changes above CU90 are not hedged. In this case, are changes in the fair value of the share of Entity B for prices above CU90 regarded as hedge ineffectiveness under ~~IAS 39.88~~ ED38.98 and recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ under ED38.99 ~~IAS 39.89~~?

No. ~~IAS 39.74~~ ED38.83 permits Entity A to designate changes in the intrinsic value of the option as the hedging instrument. The changes in the intrinsic value of the option provide protection against the risk of variability in the fair value of one share of Entity B below or equal to the strike price of the put of CU90. For prices above CU90, the option is out of the money and has no intrinsic value. Accordingly, gains and losses on one share of Entity B for prices above CU90 are not attributable to the hedged risk for the purposes of assessing hedge effectiveness and recognizing gains and losses on the hedged item.

Therefore, Entity A recognizes changes in the fair value of the share in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ if it is associated with variation in its price above CU90 (~~IAS 39.55 and IAS 39.90~~ ED38.64 and ED38.101). Changes in the fair value of the share associated with price declines below CU90 form part of the designated fair value hedge and are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ under ED38.99(b) ~~IAS 39.89(b)~~. Assuming the hedge is effective, those changes are offset by changes in the intrinsic value of the put, which are also recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (~~IAS 39.89(a)~~ ED38.99(a)). Changes in the time value of the put are excluded from the designated hedging relationship and recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ under ED38.65(a) ~~IAS 39.55(a)~~.

F.1.11 Hedging Instrument: Proportion of the Cash Flows of a Cash Instrument

In the case of foreign exchange risk, a non-derivative financial asset or non-derivative financial liability can potentially qualify as a hedging instrument. Can an entity treat the cash flows for specified periods during which a financial asset or financial liability that is designated as a hedging instrument remains outstanding as a proportion of the hedging instrument under ED38.84 ~~IAS 39.75~~, and exclude the other cash flows from the designated hedging relationship?

No. ~~IAS 39.75~~ ED38.84 indicates that a hedging relationship may not be designated for only a portion of the time period in which the hedging instrument is outstanding. For example, the cash flows during the first three years of a ten-year borrowing denominated in a foreign currency cannot qualify as a hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge of the first three years of revenue in the same foreign currency. On the other hand, a non-derivative financial asset or financial liability denominated in a foreign currency may potentially qualify as a hedging instrument in a hedge of the foreign currency risk associated with a hedged item that has a remaining time period until maturity that is equal to or longer than the remaining maturity of the hedging instrument (see Question F.2.167).

F.1.12 Hedges of More Than One Type of Risk

Issue (a) – Normally a hedging relationship is designated between an entire hedging instrument and a hedged item so that there is a single measure of fair value for the hedging instrument. Does this preclude designating a single financial instrument simultaneously as a hedging instrument in both a cash flow hedge and a fair value hedge?

No. For example, entities commonly use a combined interest rate and currency swap to convert a variable rate position in a foreign currency to a fixed rate position in the functional currency. ~~IAS 39.76~~ ED38.85 allows the swap to be designated separately as a fair value hedge of the currency risk and a cash flow hedge of the interest rate risk provided the conditions in ~~IAS 39.76~~ ED38.85 are met.

Issue (b) – If a single financial instrument is a hedging instrument in two different hedges, is special disclosure required?

IFRS 7.22 requires disclosures separately for designated fair value hedges, cash flow hedges and hedges of a net investment in a foreign operation. The instrument in question would be reported in the IFRS 7.22 disclosures separately for each type of hedge.

F.1.13 Hedging Instrument: Dual Foreign Currency Forward Exchange Contract

Entity A's functional currency is the Japanese yen. Entity A has a five-year floating rate US dollar liability and a ten-year fixed rate pound sterling-denominated note receivable. The principal amounts of the asset and liability when converted into the Japanese yen are the same. Entity A enters into a single foreign currency forward contract to hedge its foreign currency exposure on both instruments under which it receives US dollars and pays pounds sterling at the end of five years. If Entity A designates the forward exchange contract as a hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge against the foreign currency exposure on the principal repayments of both instruments, can it qualify for hedge accounting?

Yes. ED38.85 IAS 39.76 permits designating a single hedging instrument as a hedge of multiple types of risk if three conditions are met. In this example, the derivative hedging instrument satisfies all of these conditions, as follows.

- (a) The risks hedged can be identified clearly. The risks are the exposures to changes in the exchange rates between US dollars and yen, and yen and pounds, respectively.
- (b) The effectiveness of the hedge can be demonstrated. For the pound sterling loan, the effectiveness is measured as the degree of offset between the fair value of the principal repayment in pounds sterling and the fair value of the pound sterling payment on the forward exchange contract. For the US dollar liability, the effectiveness is measured as the degree of offset between the fair value of the principal repayment in US dollars and the US dollar receipt on the forward exchange contract. Even though the receivable has a ten-year life and the forward protects it for only the first five years, hedge accounting is permitted for only a portion of the exposure as described in Question F.2.1 67.
- (c) It is possible to ensure that there is specific designation of the hedging instrument and different risk positions. The hedged exposures are identified as the principal amounts of the liability and the note receivable in their respective currency of denomination.

F.1.14 Concurrent Offsetting Swaps and Use of One as a Hedging Instrument

Entity A enters into an interest rate swap and designates it as a hedge of the fair value exposure associated with fixed rate debt. The fair value hedge meets the hedge accounting criteria of ED 38 IAS 39. Entity A simultaneously enters into a second interest rate swap with the same swap counterparty that has terms that fully offset the first interest rate swap. Is Entity A required to view the two swaps as one unit and therefore precluded from applying fair value hedge accounting to the first swap?

It depends. ED 38 IAS 39 is transaction-based. If the second swap was not entered into in contemplation of the first swap or there is a substantive business purpose for structuring the transactions separately, then the swaps are not viewed as one unit.

For example, some entities have a policy that requires a centralized ~~dealer or~~ treasury (which is a controlled entity in an economic entity) ~~subsidiary to~~ enter into third-party derivative contracts on behalf of other ~~subsidiaries controlled entities~~ within the organization to hedge the ~~controlled entities' subsidiaries'~~ interest rate risk exposures. The ~~dealer or~~ treasury ~~subsidiary~~ also enters into internal derivative transactions with those ~~subsidiaries controlled entities~~ in order to track those hedges operationally within the organization. Because the ~~dealer or~~ treasury ~~subsidiary~~ also enters into derivative contracts as part of its trading operations, or because it may wish to rebalance the risk of its overall portfolio, it may enter into a derivative contract with the same third party during the same business day that has substantially the same terms as a contract entered into as a hedging instrument on behalf of another ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~. In this case, there is a valid business purpose for entering into each contract.

Judgment is applied to determine whether there is a substantive business purpose for structuring the transactions separately. For example, if the sole purpose is to obtain fair value accounting treatment for the debt, there is no substantive business purpose.

Hedged items F.2

F.2.1 Whether a Derivative can be Designated as a Hedged Item

Does IAS 39 ED 38 permit designating a derivative instrument (whether a stand-alone or separately recognized embedded derivative) as a hedged item either individually or as part of a hedged group in a fair value or cash flow hedge, for example, by designating a pay-variable, receive-fixed Forward Rate Agreement (FRA) as a cash flow hedge of a pay-fixed, receive-variable FRA?

No. Derivative instruments are always deemed held for trading and measured at fair value with gains and losses recognized in profit or loss surplus or deficit unless they are designated and effective hedging instruments (IAS 39.9ED38.10). As an exception, ED38.131IAS 39.88AG94 permits the designation of a purchased option as the hedged item in a fair value hedge.

F.2.2 Cash Flow Hedge: Anticipated Issue of Fixed Rate Debt

Is hedge accounting allowed for a hedge of an anticipated issue of fixed rate debt?

Yes. This would be a cash flow hedge of a highly probable forecast transaction that will affect surplus or deficit profit or loss (IAS 39.86ED38.96) provided that the conditions in IAS 39.88ED38.98 are met.

To illustrate: Entity R periodically issues new bonds to refinance maturing bonds, provide working capital and for various other purposes. When Entity R decides it will be issuing bonds, it may hedge the risk of changes in the long-term interest rate from the date it decides to issue the bonds to the date the bonds are issued. If long-term interest rates go up, the bond will be issued either at a higher rate or with a higher discount or smaller premium than was originally expected. The higher rate being paid or decrease in proceeds is normally offset by the gain on the hedge. If long-term interest rates go down, the bond will be issued either at a lower rate or with a higher premium or a smaller discount than was originally expected. The lower rate being paid or increase in proceeds is normally offset by the loss on the hedge.

For example, in August 2000 Entity R decided it would issue CU200 million seven-year bonds in January 2001. Entity R performed historical correlation studies and determined that a seven-year treasury bond adequately correlates to the bonds Entity R expected to issue, assuming a hedge ratio of 0.93 futures contracts to one debt unit. Therefore, Entity R hedged the anticipated issue of the bonds by selling (shorting) CU186 million worth of futures on seven-year treasury bonds. From August 2000 to January 2001 interest rates increased. The short futures positions were closed in January 2001, the date the bonds were issued, and resulted in a CU1.2 million gain that will offset the increased interest payments on the bonds and, therefore, will affect surplus or deficit profit or loss over the life of the bonds. The hedge qualifies as a cash flow hedge of the interest rate risk on the forecast issue of debt.

F.2.3 Hedge Accounting: Core Deposit Intangibles

Is hedge accounting treatment permitted for a hedge of the fair value exposure of core deposit intangibles?

It depends on whether the core deposit intangible is generated internally or acquired (e.g. as part of an entity a business combination).

Internally generated core deposit intangibles are not recognized as intangible assets under IPSAS XX, “Intangible Assets”IAS 38. Because they are not recognized, they cannot be designated as a hedged item.

If a core deposit intangible is acquired together with a related portfolio of deposits, the core deposit intangible is required to be recognized separately as an intangible asset (or as part of the related acquired portfolio of deposits) if it meets the recognition criteria in [paragraph 21] of IPSAS XXIAS 38 Intangible Assets. A recognized core deposit intangible asset could be designated as a hedged item, but only if it meets the conditions in paragraph 9888, including the requirement in paragraph 98 88(d) that the effectiveness of the hedge can be measured reliably. Because it is often difficult to measure reliably the fair value of a core deposit intangible asset other than on initial recognition, it is unlikely that the requirement in paragraph 9888(d) will be met.

F.2.43 Hedge Accounting: Hedging of Future Foreign Currency Revenue Streams

Is hedge accounting permitted for a currency borrowing that hedges an expected but not contractual revenue stream in foreign currency?

Yes, if the revenues are highly probable. Under ED38.96(b) IAS 39.86(b) a hedge of an anticipated sale may qualify as a cash flow hedge. For example, an airline entity an entity which owns and operates a cross-

border toll road may use sophisticated models based on experience and economic data to project its revenues in various currencies. If it can demonstrate that forecast revenues for a period of time into the future in a particular currency are ‘highly probable’, as required by ED38.98 IAS 39.88, it may designate a currency borrowing as a cash flow hedge of the future revenue stream. The portion of the gain or loss on the borrowing that is determined to be an effective hedge is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ until the revenues occur.

It is unlikely that an entity can reliably predict 100 per cent of revenues for a future year. On the other hand, it is possible that a portion of predicted revenues, normally those expected in the short term, will meet the ‘highly probable’ criterion.

F.2.54 Cash Flow Hedges: ‘All in One’ Hedge

If a derivative instrument is expected to be settled gross by delivery of the underlying asset in exchange for the payment of a fixed price, can the derivative instrument be designated as the hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge of that gross settlement assuming the other cash flow hedge accounting criteria are met?

Yes. A derivative instrument that will be settled gross can be designated as the hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge of the variability of the consideration to be paid or received in the future transaction that will occur on gross settlement of the derivative contract itself because there would be an exposure to variability in the purchase or sale price without the derivative. This applies to all fixed price contracts that are accounted for as derivatives under ED 38 IAS 39.

For example, if an entity enters into a fixed price contract to sell a commodity and that contract is accounted for as a derivative under ED 38 IAS 39 (for example, because the entity has a practice of settling such contracts net in cash or of taking delivery of the underlying and selling it within a short period after delivery for the purpose of generating a profit from short-term fluctuations in price or dealer’s margin), the entity may designate the fixed price contract as a cash flow hedge of the variability of the consideration to be received on the sale of the asset (a future transaction) even though the fixed price contract is the contract under which the asset will be sold. Also, if an entity enters into a forward contract to purchase a debt instrument that will be settled by delivery, but the forward contract is a derivative because its term exceeds the regular way delivery period in the marketplace, the entity may designate the forward as a cash flow hedge of the variability of the consideration to be paid to acquire the debt instrument (a future transaction), even though the derivative is the contract under which the debt instrument will be acquired.

F.2.65 Hedge Relationships: Entity-Wide Risk

An entity has a fixed rate asset and a fixed rate liability, each having the same principal amount. Under the terms of the instruments, interest payments on the asset and liability occur in the same period and the net cash flow is always positive because the interest rate on the asset exceeds the interest rate on the liability. The entity enters into an interest rate swap to receive a floating interest rate and pay a fixed interest rate on a notional amount equal to the principal of the asset and designates the interest rate swap as a fair value hedge of the fixed rate asset. Does the hedging relationship qualify for hedge accounting even though the effect of the interest rate swap on an entity-wide basis is to create an exposure to interest rate changes that did not previously exist?

Yes. ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 does not require risk reduction on an entity-wide basis as a condition for hedge accounting. Exposure is assessed on a transaction basis and, in this instance, the asset being hedged has a fair value exposure to interest rate increases that is offset by the interest rate swap.

F.2.76 Cash Flow Hedge: Forecast Transaction Related to an Entity’s Net Assets/Equity

Can a forecast transaction in the entity’s own equity instruments or forecast dividend or similar payments to owners ~~shareholders~~ be designated as a hedged item in a cash flow hedge?

No. To qualify as a hedged item, the forecast transaction must expose the entity to a particular risk that can affect ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ (IAS 39.86). The classification of financial instruments as liabilities or net assets/equity generally provides the basis for determining whether transactions or other payments relating to such instruments are recognized in ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ ED37 (IAS 32). For example, distributions to holders of an equity instrument are debited by the issuer directly to net assets/equity

(~~ED37.40~~~~IAS 32.35~~). Therefore, such distributions cannot be designated as a hedged item. However, a declared dividend or similar distribution that has not yet been paid and is recognized as a financial liability may qualify as a hedged item, for example, for foreign currency risk if it is denominated in a foreign currency.

F.2.87 Hedge Accounting: Risk of a Transaction Not Occurring

Does ~~ED 38~~ ~~IAS 39~~ permit an entity to apply hedge accounting to a hedge of the risk that a transaction will not occur, for example, if that would result in less revenue to the entity than expected?

No. The risk that a transaction will not occur is an overall operational business risk that is not eligible as a hedged item. Hedge accounting is permitted only for risks associated with recognized assets and liabilities, firm commitments, highly probable forecast transactions and net investments in foreign operations (~~ED38.96~~~~IAS 39.86~~).

F.2.98 Held-to-Maturity Investments: Hedging Variable Interest Rate Payments

Can an entity designate a pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap as a cash flow hedge of a variable rate, held-to-maturity investment?

No. It is inconsistent with the designation of a debt investment as being held to maturity to designate a swap as a cash flow hedge of the debt investment's variable interest rate payments. ~~IAS 39.79~~ ~~ED38.88~~ states that a held-to-maturity investment cannot be a hedged item with respect to interest rate risk or prepayment risk 'because designation of an investment as held to maturity requires an intention to hold the investment until maturity without regard to changes in the fair value or cash flows of such an investment attributable to changes in interest rates'.

F.2.109 Hedged Items: Purchase of Held-to-Maturity Investment

An entity forecasts the purchase of a financial asset that it intends to classify as held to maturity when the forecast transaction occurs. It enters into a derivative contract with the intent to lock in the current interest rate and designates the derivative as a hedge of the forecast purchase of the financial asset. Can the hedging relationship qualify for cash flow hedge accounting even though the asset will be classified as a held-to-maturity investment?

Yes. With respect to interest rate risk, ~~ED 38~~ ~~IAS 39~~ prohibits hedge accounting for financial assets that are classified as held-to-maturity (~~IAS 39.79~~ ~~ED38.88~~). However, even though the entity intends to classify the asset as held to maturity, the instrument is not classified as such until the transaction occurs.

F.2.110 Cash Flow Hedges: Reinvestment of Funds Obtained from Held-to-Maturity Investments

An entity owns a variable rate asset that it has classified as held to maturity. It enters into a derivative contract with the intention to lock in the current interest rate on the reinvestment of variable rate cash flows, and designates the derivative as a cash flow hedge of the forecast future interest receipts on debt instruments resulting from the reinvestment of interest receipts on the held-to-maturity asset. Assuming that the other hedge accounting criteria are met, can the hedging relationship qualify for cash flow hedge accounting even though the interest payments that are being reinvested come from an asset that is classified as held to maturity?

Yes. ~~IAS 39.79~~ ~~ED38.88~~ states that a held-to-maturity investment cannot be a hedged item with respect to interest rate risk. Question F.2.8 specifies that this applies not only to fair value hedges, i.e. hedges of the exposure to fair value interest rate risk associated with held-to-maturity investments that pay fixed interest, but also to cash flow hedges, i.e. hedges of the exposure to cash flow interest rate risk associated with held-to-maturity investments that pay variable interest at current market rates. However, in this instance, the derivative is designated as an offset of the exposure to cash flow risk associated with forecast future interest receipts on debt instruments resulting from the forecast reinvestment of variable rate cash flows on the held-to-maturity investment. The source of the funds forecast to be reinvested is not relevant in determining whether the reinvestment risk can be hedged. Accordingly, designation of the derivative as a cash flow hedge is permitted. This answer applies also to a hedge of the exposure to cash flow risk associated with the forecast future interest receipts on debt instruments resulting from the reinvestment of interest receipts on a fixed rate asset classified as held to maturity.

F.2.124 Hedge Accounting: Prepayable Financial Asset

If the issuer has the right to prepay a financial asset, can the investor designate the cash flows after the prepayment date as part of the hedged item?

Cash flows after the prepayment date may be designated as the hedged item to the extent it can be demonstrated that they are 'highly probable' (ED38.98 IAS 39.88). For example, cash flows after the prepayment date may qualify as highly probable if they result from a group or pool of similar assets (for example, mortgage loans) for which prepayments can be estimated with a high degree of accuracy or if the prepayment option is significantly out of the money. In addition, the cash flows after the prepayment date may be designated as the hedged item if a comparable option exists in the hedging instrument.

F.2.132 Fair Value Hedge: Risk That Could Affect Profit or Loss Surplus or Deficit

Is fair value hedge accounting permitted for exposure to interest rate risk in fixed rate loans that are classified as loans and receivables?

Yes. Under ED 38 IAS 39, loans and receivables are carried at amortized cost. Banking institutions in many entities countries hold the bulk of their loans and receivables until maturity. Thus, changes in the fair value of such loans and receivables that are due to changes in market interest rates will not affect surplus or deficit profit or loss. IAS 39.86 ED38.96 specifies that a fair value hedge is a hedge of the exposure to changes in fair value that is attributable to a particular risk and that can affect surplus or deficit profit or loss. Therefore, IAS 39.86 ED38.96 may appear to preclude fair value hedge accounting for loans and receivables. However, it follows from IAS 39.79 ED38.88 that loans and receivables can be hedged items with respect to interest rate risk since they are not designated as held-to-maturity investments. The entity could sell them and the change in fair values would affect surplus or deficit profit or loss. Thus, fair value hedge accounting is permitted for loans and receivables.

F.2.13 Intragroup and intra-entity Hedging transactions

~~An Australian entity, whose functional currency is the Australian dollar, has forecast purchases in Japanese yen that are highly probable. The Australian entity is wholly owned by a Swiss entity, which prepares consolidated financial statements (which include the Australian subsidiary) in Swiss francs. The Swiss parent entity enters into a forward contract to hedge the change in yen relative to the Australian dollar. Can that hedge qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements, or must the Australian subsidiary that has the foreign currency exposure be a party to the hedging transaction?~~

~~The hedge can qualify for hedge accounting provided the other hedge accounting criteria in IAS 39 are met. Since the Australian entity did not hedge the foreign currency exchange risk associated with the forecast purchases in yen, the effects of exchange rate changes between the Australian dollar and the yen will affect the Australian entity's profit or loss and, therefore, would also affect consolidated profit or loss. IAS 39 does not require that the operating unit that is exposed to the risk being hedged be a party to the hedging instrument.~~

F.2.143 Internal Contracts: Single Offsetting External Derivative

An entity uses what it describes as internal derivative contracts to document the transfer of responsibility for interest rate risk exposures from individual divisions to a central treasury function. The central treasury function aggregates the internal derivative contracts and enters into a single external derivative contract that offsets the internal derivative contracts on a net basis. For example, if the central treasury function has entered into three internal receive-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swaps that lay off the exposure to variable interest cash flows on variable rate liabilities in other divisions and one internal receive-variable, pay-fixed interest rate swap that lays off the exposure to variable interest cash flows on variable rate assets in another division, it would enter into an interest rate swap with an external counterparty that exactly offsets the four internal swaps. Assuming that the hedge accounting criteria are met, in the entity's financial statements would the single offsetting external derivative qualify as a hedging instrument in a hedge of a part of the underlying items on a gross basis?

Yes, but only to the extent the external derivative is designated as an offset of cash inflows or cash outflows on a gross basis. ~~IAS 39.84~~ [ED38.94](#) indicates that a hedge of an overall net position does not qualify for hedge accounting. However, it does permit designating a part of the underlying items as the hedged position on a gross basis. Therefore, even though the purpose of entering into the external derivative was to offset internal derivative contracts on a net basis, hedge accounting is permitted if the hedging relationship is defined and documented as a hedge of a part of the underlying cash inflows or cash outflows on a gross basis. An entity follows the approach outlined in ~~IAS 39.84~~ [ED38.94](#) and ~~IAS 39.AG104~~ [ED38.145](#) to designate part of the underlying cash flows as the hedged position.

F.2.154 Internal Contracts: External Derivative Contracts that are Settled Net

Issue (a) – An entity uses internal derivative contracts to transfer interest rate risk exposures from individual divisions to a central treasury function. For each internal derivative contract, the central treasury function enters into a derivative contract with a single external counterparty that offsets the internal derivative contract. For example, if the central treasury function has entered into a receive-5 per cent-fixed, pay-LIBOR interest rate swap with another division that has entered into the internal contract with central treasury to hedge the exposure to variability in interest cash flows on a pay-LIBOR borrowing, central treasury would enter into a pay-5 per cent-fixed, receive-LIBOR interest rate swap on the same principal terms with the external counterparty. Although each of the external derivative contracts is formally documented as a separate contract, only the net of the payments on all of the external derivative contracts is settled since there is a netting agreement with the external counterparty. Assuming that the other hedge accounting criteria are met, can the individual external derivative contracts, such as the pay-5 per cent-fixed, receive-LIBOR interest rate swap above, be designated as hedging instruments of underlying gross exposures, such as the exposure to changes in variable interest payments on the pay-LIBOR borrowing above, even though the external derivatives are settled on a net basis?

Generally, yes. External derivative contracts that are legally separate contracts and serve a valid business purpose, such as laying off risk exposures on a gross basis, qualify as hedging instruments even if those external contracts are settled on a net basis with the same external counterparty, provided the hedge accounting criteria in ~~IAS 39~~ [ED38](#) are met. See also Question F.1.13.

Issue (b) – Treasury observes that by entering into the external offsetting contracts and including them in the centralized portfolio, it is no longer able to evaluate the exposures on a net basis. Treasury wishes to manage the portfolio of offsetting external derivatives separately from other exposures of the entity. Therefore, it enters into an additional, single derivative to offset the risk of the portfolio. Can the individual external derivative contracts in the portfolio still be designated as hedging instruments of underlying gross exposures even though a single external derivative is used to offset fully the market exposure created by entering into the external contracts?

Generally, yes. The purpose of structuring the external derivative contracts in this manner is consistent with the entity's risk management objectives and strategies. As indicated above, external derivative contracts that are legally separate contracts and serve a valid business purpose qualify as hedging instruments. Moreover, the answer to Question F.1.13 specifies that hedge accounting is not precluded simply because the entity has entered into a swap that mirrors exactly the terms of another swap with the same counterparty if there is a substantive business purpose for structuring the transactions separately.

F.2.165 Partial Term Hedging

~~IAS 39.75~~ [ED38.84](#) indicates that a hedging relationship may not be designated for only a portion of the time period during which a hedging instrument remains outstanding. Is it permitted to designate a derivative as hedging only a portion of the time period to maturity of a hedged item?

Yes. A financial instrument may be a hedged item for only a portion of its cash flows or fair value, if effectiveness can be measured and the other hedge accounting criteria are met.

To illustrate: Entity A acquires a 10 per cent fixed rate government bond with a remaining term to maturity of ten years. Entity A classifies the bond as available for sale. To hedge itself against fair value exposure on the bond associated with the present value of the interest rate payments until year 5, Entity A acquires a five-year pay-fixed, receive-floating swap. The swap may be designated as hedging the fair value exposure

of the interest rate payments on the government bond until year 5 and the change in value of the principal payment due at maturity to the extent affected by changes in the yield curve relating to the five years of the swap.

F.2.176 Hedging Instrument: Cross-Currency Interest Rate Swap

Entity A's functional currency is the Japanese yen. Entity A has a five-year floating rate US dollar liability and a 10-year fixed rate pound sterling-denominated note receivable. Entity A wishes to hedge the foreign currency exposure on its asset and liability and the fair value interest rate exposure on the receivable and enters into a matching cross-currency interest rate swap to receive floating rate US dollars and pay fixed rate pounds sterling and to exchange the dollars for the pounds at the end of five years. Can Entity A designate the swap as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge against both foreign currency risk and interest rate risk, although both the pound sterling and US dollar are foreign currencies to Entity A?

Yes. ~~IAS 39.81~~ **ED38.90** permits hedge accounting for components of risk, if effectiveness can be measured. Also, ~~IAS 39.76~~ **ED38.84** permits designating a single hedging instrument as a hedge of more than one type of risk if the risks can be identified clearly, effectiveness can be demonstrated, and specific designation of the hedging instrument and different risk positions can be ensured. Therefore, the swap may be designated as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge of the pound sterling receivable against exposure to changes in its fair value associated with changes in UK interest rates for the initial partial term of five years and the exchange rate between pounds and US dollars. The swap is measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. The carrying amount of the receivable is adjusted for changes in its fair value caused by changes in UK interest rates for the first five-year portion of the yield curve. The receivable and payable are remeasured using spot exchange rates under IPSAS 4 IAS 21 and the changes to their carrying amounts recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

F.2.187 Hedged Items: Hedge of Foreign Currency Risk of Publicly Traded Shares

Entity A acquires shares in Entity B on a foreign stock exchange for their fair value of 1,000 in foreign currency (FC). It classifies the shares as available for sale. To protect itself from the exposure to changes in the foreign exchange rate associated with the shares, it enters into a forward contract to sell FC750. Entity A intends to roll over the forward exchange contract for as long as it retains the shares. Assuming that the other hedge accounting criteria are met, could the forward exchange contract qualify as a hedge of the foreign exchange risk associated with the shares?

Yes, but only if there is a clear and identifiable exposure to changes in foreign exchange rates. Therefore, hedge accounting is permitted if (a) the equity instrument is not traded on an exchange (or in another established marketplace) where trades are denominated in the same currency as the functional currency of Entity A and (b) dividends to Entity A are not denominated in that currency. Thus, if a share is traded in multiple currencies and one of those currencies is the functional currency of the reporting entity, hedge accounting for the foreign currency component of the share price is not permitted.

If so, could the forward exchange contract be designated as a hedging instrument in a hedge of the foreign exchange risk associated with the portion of the fair value of the shares up to FC750 in foreign currency?

Yes. ~~IAS 39~~ **ED38** permits designating a portion of the cash flow or fair value of a financial asset as the hedged item if effectiveness can be measured (~~IAS 39.81~~ **ED38.90**). Therefore, Entity A may designate the forward exchange contract as a hedge of the foreign exchange risk associated with only a portion of the fair value of the shares in foreign currency. It could either be designated as a fair value hedge of the foreign exchange exposure of FC750 associated with the shares or as a cash flow hedge of a forecast sale of the shares, provided the timing of the sale is identified. Any variability in the fair value of the shares in foreign currency would not affect the assessment of hedge effectiveness unless the fair value of the shares in foreign currency was to fall below FC750.

F.2.198 Hedge accounting: stock index

An entity may acquire a portfolio of shares to replicate a stock index and a put option on the index to protect itself from fair value losses. Does ED 38 IAS 39 permit designating the put on the stock index as a hedging instrument in a hedge of the portfolio of shares?

No. If similar financial instruments are aggregated and hedged as a group, ~~IAS 39.83~~ [ED38.93](#) states that the change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk for each individual item in the group is expected to be approximately proportional to the overall change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk of the group. In the scenario above, the change in the fair value attributable to the hedged risk for each individual item in the group (individual share prices) is not expected to be approximately proportional to the overall change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk of the group.

F.2.2019 Hedge Accounting: Netting of Assets and Liabilities

May an entity group financial assets together with financial liabilities for the purpose of determining the net cash flow exposure to be hedged for hedge accounting purposes?

An entity's hedging strategy and risk management practices may assess cash flow risk on a net basis but ~~IAS 39.84~~ [ED38.94](#) does not permit designating a net cash flow exposure as a hedged item for hedge accounting purposes. ~~IAS 39.AG101~~ [ED38.145](#) provides an example of how ~~an entity a bank~~ might assess its risk on a net basis (with similar assets and liabilities grouped together) and then qualify for hedge accounting by hedging on a gross basis.

F.3 Hedge Accounting

F.3.1 Cash Flow Hedge: Fixed Interest Rate Cash Flows

An entity issues a fixed rate debt instrument and enters into a receive-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swap to offset the exposure to interest rate risk associated with the debt instrument. Can the entity designate the swap as a cash flow hedge of the future interest cash outflows associated with the debt instrument?

No. ~~IAS 39.86(b)~~ [ED38.96\(b\)](#) states that a cash flow hedge is 'a hedge of the exposure to variability in cash flows'. In this case, the issued debt instrument does not give rise to any exposure to variability in cash flows since the interest payments are fixed. The entity may designate the swap as a fair value hedge of the debt instrument, but it cannot designate the swap as a cash flow hedge of the future cash outflows of the debt instrument.

F.3.2 Cash Flow Hedge: Reinvestment of Fixed Interest Rate Cash Flows

An entity manages interest rate risk on a net basis. On 1-January, 1 2001, it forecasts aggregate cash inflows of CU100 on fixed rate assets and aggregate cash outflows of CU90 on fixed rate liabilities in the first quarter of 2002. For risk management purposes it uses a receive-variable, pay-fixed Forward Rate Agreement (FRA) to hedge the forecast net cash inflow of CU10. The entity designates as the hedged item the first CU10 of cash inflows on fixed rate assets in the first quarter of 2002. Can it designate the receive-variable, pay-fixed FRA as a cash flow hedge of the exposure to variability to cash flows in the first quarter of 2002 associated with the fixed rate assets?

No. The FRA does not qualify as a cash flow hedge of the cash flow relating to the fixed rate assets because they do not have a cash flow exposure. The entity could, however, designate the FRA as a hedge of the fair value exposure that exists before the cash flows are remitted.

In some cases, the entity could also hedge the interest rate exposure associated with the forecast reinvestment of the interest and principal it receives on fixed rate assets (see Question F.6.2). However, in this example, the FRA does not qualify for cash flow hedge accounting because it increases rather than reduces the variability of interest cash flows resulting from the reinvestment of interest cash flows (for example, if market rates increase, there will be a cash inflow on the FRA and an increase in the expected interest cash inflows resulting from the reinvestment of interest cash inflows on fixed rate assets). However, potentially it could qualify as a cash flow hedge of a portion of the refinancing of cash outflows on a gross basis.

F.3.3 Foreign Currency Hedge

Entity A has a foreign currency liability payable in six months' time and it wishes to hedge the amount payable on settlement against foreign currency fluctuations. To that end, it takes out a forward contract to buy the foreign currency in six months' time. Should the hedge be treated as:

- (a) a fair value hedge of the foreign currency liability with gains and losses on revaluing the liability and the forward contract at the year-end both recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~; or
- (b) a cash flow hedge of the amount to be settled in the future with gains and losses on revaluing the forward contract recognized net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~?

IAS 39 ED38 does not preclude either of these two methods. If the hedge is treated as a fair value hedge, the gain or loss on the fair value remeasurement of the hedging instrument and the gain or loss on the fair value remeasurement of the hedged item for the hedged risk are recognized immediately in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. If the hedge is treated as a cash flow hedge with the gain or loss on remeasuring the forward contract recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~, that amount is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in the same period or periods during which the hedged item (the liability) affects surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, i.e. when the liability is remeasured for changes in foreign exchange rates. Therefore, if the hedge is effective, the gain or loss on the derivative is released to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in the same periods during which the liability is remeasured, not when the payment occurs. See Question F.3.4.

F.3.4 Foreign Currency Cash Flow Hedge

An entity exports a product at a price denominated in a foreign currency. At the date of the sale, the entity obtains a receivable for the sale price payable in 90 days and takes out a 90-day forward exchange contract in the same currency as the receivable to hedge its foreign currency exposure.

Under IAS 21, the sale is recorded at the spot rate at the date of sale, and the receivable is restated during the 90-day period for changes in exchange rates with the difference being taken to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (IAS 21.23 and IAS 21.28- IPSAS 4.27 and IPSAS 4.32).

If the foreign exchange contract is designated as a hedging instrument, does the entity have a choice whether to designate the foreign exchange contract as a fair value hedge of the foreign currency exposure of the receivable or as a cash flow hedge of the collection of the receivable?

Yes. If the entity designates the foreign exchange contract as a fair value hedge, the gain or loss from remeasuring the forward exchange contract at fair value is recognized immediately in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and the gain or loss on remeasuring the receivable is also recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

If the entity designates the foreign exchange contract as a cash flow hedge of the foreign currency risk associated with the collection of the receivable, the portion of the gain or loss that is determined to be an effective hedge is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~, and the ineffective portion in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (IAS 39.95 ED38.106). The amount recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ is reclassified from equity to profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment is recognized in surplus or deficit in the same period or periods during which changes in the measurement of the receivable affect surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (IAS 39.100-ED38.111).

F.3.5 Fair Value Hedge: Variable Rate Debt Instrument

Does ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ permit an entity to designate a portion of the risk exposure of a variable rate debt instrument as a hedged item in a fair value hedge?

Yes. A variable rate debt instrument may have an exposure to changes in its fair value due to credit risk. It may also have an exposure to changes in its fair value relating to movements in the market interest rate in the periods between which the variable interest rate on the debt instrument is reset. For example, if the debt instrument provides for annual interest payments reset to the market rate each year, a portion of the debt instrument has an exposure to changes in fair value during the year.

F.3.6 Fair Value Hedge: Inventory

ED38.96(a) ~~IAS 39.86(a)~~ states that a fair value hedge is ‘a hedge of the exposure to changes in fair value of a recognized asset or liability ... that is attributable to a particular risk and could affect surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~’. Can an entity designate inventories, such as oil silver ~~copper~~ inventory, as the hedged item in a fair value hedge of the exposure to changes in the price of the

inventories, such as the ~~oil silver-copper~~ price, although inventories are measured at the lower of cost and net realizable value or cost and current replacement cost under IPSAS 12, “Inventories” ~~IAS-2 Inventories~~?

Yes. The inventories may be hedged for changes in fair value due to changes in the copper price because the change in fair value of inventories will affect surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ when the inventories are sold or their carrying amount is written down. The adjusted carrying amount becomes the cost basis for the purpose of applying the lower of cost and net realizable value test under IPSAS 12 ~~IAS-2~~. The hedging instrument used in a fair value hedge of inventories may alternatively qualify as a cash flow hedge of the future sale of the inventory.

F.3.7 Hedge Accounting: Forecast Transaction

For cash flow hedges, a forecast transaction that is subject to a hedge must be ‘highly probable’. How should the term ‘highly probable’ be interpreted?

The term ‘highly probable’ indicates a much greater likelihood of happening than the term ‘more likely than not’. An assessment of the likelihood that a forecast transaction will take place is not based solely on management’s intentions because intentions are not verifiable. A transaction’s probability should be supported by observable facts and the attendant circumstances.

In assessing the likelihood that a transaction will occur, an entity should consider the following circumstances:

- (a) the frequency of similar past transactions;
- (b) the financial and operational ability of the entity to carry out the transaction;
- (c) substantial commitments of resources to a particular activity (for example, the undertaking of specific infrastructure projects ~~a manufacturing facility that can be used in the short run only to process a particular type of commodity~~);
- (d) the extent of loss or disruption of operations that could result if the transaction does not occur;
- (e) the likelihood that transactions with substantially different characteristics might be used to achieve the same ~~business~~ purpose (for example, an entity that intends to raise cash may have several ways of doing so, ranging from a short-term bank loan to an offering of debt instruments ~~ordinary shares~~); and
- (f) the entity’s ~~business~~ strategic plan.

The length of time until a forecast transaction is projected to occur is also a factor in determining probability. Other factors being equal, the more distant a forecast transaction is, the less likely it is that the transaction would be regarded as highly probable and the stronger the evidence that would be needed to support an assertion that it is highly probable.

For example, a transaction forecast to occur in five years may be less likely to occur than a transaction forecast to occur in one year. However, forecast interest payments for the next 20 years on variable rate debt would typically be highly probable if supported by an existing contractual obligation.

In addition, other factors being equal, the greater the physical quantity or future value of a forecast transaction in proportion to the entity’s transactions of the same nature, the less likely it is that the transaction would be regarded as highly probable and the stronger the evidence that would be required to support an assertion that it is highly probable. For example, less evidence generally would be needed to support forecast sales of 100,000 units in the next month than 950,000 units in that month when recent sales have averaged 950,000 units per month for the past three months.

A history of having designated hedges of forecast transactions and then determining that the forecast transactions are no longer expected to occur would call into question both an entity’s ability to predict forecast transactions accurately and the propriety of using hedge accounting in the future for similar forecast transactions.

F.3.8 Retrospective Designation of Hedges

Does ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ permit an entity to designate hedge relationships retrospectively?

No. Designation of hedge relationships takes effect prospectively from the date all hedge accounting criteria in ~~IAS 39.88~~ [ED38.98](#) are met. In particular, hedge accounting can be applied only from the date the entity has completed the necessary documentation of the hedge relationship, including identification of the hedging instrument, the related hedged item or transaction, the nature of the risk being hedged, and how the entity will assess hedge effectiveness.

F.3.9 Hedge Accounting: Designation at the Inception of the Hedge

Does ~~IAS 39~~ ~~ED 38~~ permit an entity to designate and formally document a derivative contract as a hedging instrument after entering into the derivative contract?

Yes, prospectively. For hedge accounting purposes, ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ requires a hedging instrument to be designated and formally documented as such from the inception of the hedge relationship (IAS 39.88); in other words, a hedge relationship cannot be designated retrospectively. Also, it precludes designating a hedging relationship for only a portion of the time period during which the hedging instrument remains outstanding (~~IAS 39.75~~ [ED38.84](#)). However, it does not require the hedging instrument to be acquired at the inception of the hedge relationship.

F.3.10 Hedge Accounting: Identification of Hedged Forecast Transaction

Can a forecast transaction be identified as the purchase or sale of the last 15,000 units of a product in a specified period or as a percentage of purchases or sales during a specified period?

No. The hedged forecast transaction must be identified and documented with sufficient specificity so that when the transaction occurs, it is clear whether the transaction is or is not the hedged transaction. Therefore, a forecast transaction may be identified as the sale of the first 15,000 units of a specific product during a specified three-month period, but it could not be identified as the last 15,000 units of that product sold during a three-month period because the last 15,000 units cannot be identified when they are sold. For the same reason, a forecast transaction cannot be specified solely as a percentage of sales or purchases during a period.

F.3.11 Cash Flow Hedge: Documentation of Timing of Forecast Transaction

For a hedge of a forecast transaction, should the documentation of the hedge relationship that is established at inception of the hedge identify the date on, or time period in which, the forecast transaction is expected to occur?

Yes. To qualify for hedge accounting, the hedge must relate to a specific identified and designated risk (~~IAS 39.AG110~~ [ED38.AG155](#)) and it must be possible to measure its effectiveness reliably ([ED38.98\(d\)](#) ~~IAS 39.88(d)~~). Also, the hedged forecast transaction must be highly probable ([ED38.98\(c\)](#) ~~IAS 39.88(e)~~). To meet these criteria, an entity is not required to predict and document the exact date a forecast transaction is expected to occur. However, it is required to identify and document the time period during which the forecast transaction is expected to occur within a reasonably specific and generally narrow range of time from a most probable date, as a basis for assessing hedge effectiveness. To determine that the hedge will be highly effective in accordance with [ED38.98\(d\)](#) ~~IAS 39.88(d)~~, it is necessary to ensure that changes in the fair value of the expected cash flows are offset by changes in the fair value of the hedging instrument and this test may be met only if the timing of the cash flows occur within close proximity to each other. If the forecast transaction is no longer expected to occur, hedge accounting is discontinued in accordance with [ED38.112\(c\)](#) ~~IAS 39.101(e)~~.

F.4 Hedge Effectiveness

F.4.1 Hedging on an After-Tax Basis

Hedging is often done on an after-tax basis. Is hedge effectiveness assessed after taxes?

~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 permits, but does not require, assessment of hedge effectiveness on an after-tax basis. If the hedge is undertaken on an after-tax basis, it is so designated at inception as part of the formal documentation of the hedging relationship and strategy.

F.4.2 Hedge Effectiveness: Assessment on Cumulative Basis

~~IAS 39.88(b)~~ ED38.98(b) requires that the hedge is expected to be highly effective. Should expected hedge effectiveness be assessed separately for each period or cumulatively over the life of the hedging relationship?

Expected hedge effectiveness may be assessed on a cumulative basis if the hedge is so designated, and that condition is incorporated into the appropriate hedging documentation. Therefore, even if a hedge is not expected to be highly effective in a particular period, hedge accounting is not precluded if effectiveness is expected to remain sufficiently high over the life of the hedging relationship. However, any ineffectiveness is required to be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ as it occurs.

To illustrate: an entity designates a LIBOR-based interest rate swap as a hedge of a borrowing whose interest rate is a UK base rate plus a margin. The UK base rate changes, perhaps, once each quarter or less, in increments of 25–50 basis points, while LIBOR changes daily. Over a period of 1–2 years, the hedge is expected to be almost perfect. However, there will be quarters when the UK base rate does not change at all, while LIBOR has changed significantly. This would not necessarily preclude hedge accounting.

F.4.3 Hedge Effectiveness: Counterparty Credit Risk

Must an entity consider the likelihood of default by the counterparty to the hedging instrument in assessing hedge effectiveness?

Yes. An entity cannot ignore whether it will be able to collect all amounts due under the contractual provisions of the hedging instrument. When assessing hedge effectiveness, both at the inception of the hedge and on an ongoing basis, the entity considers the risk that the counterparty to the hedging instrument will default by failing to make any contractual payments to the entity. For a cash flow hedge, if it becomes probable that a counterparty will default, an entity would be unable to conclude that the hedging relationship is expected to be highly effective in achieving offsetting cash flows. As a result, hedge accounting would be discontinued. For a fair value hedge, if there is a change in the counterparty's creditworthiness, the fair value of the hedging instrument will change, which affects the assessment of whether the hedge relationship is effective and whether it qualifies for continued hedge accounting.

F.4.4 Hedge Effectiveness: Effectiveness Tests

How should hedge effectiveness be measured for the purposes of initially qualifying for hedge accounting and for continued qualification?

~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 does not provide specific guidance about how effectiveness tests are performed. ED38.AG149 ~~IAS 39.AG105~~ specifies that a hedge is normally regarded as highly effective only if (a) at inception and in subsequent periods, the hedge is expected to be highly effective in achieving offsetting changes in fair value or cash flows attributable to the hedged risk during the period for which the hedge is designated, and (b) the actual results are within a range of 80–125 per cent. ED38.AG149 ~~IAS 39.AG105~~ also states that the expectation in (a) can be demonstrated in various ways.

The appropriateness of a given method of assessing hedge effectiveness will depend on the nature of the risk being hedged and the type of hedging instrument used. The method of assessing effectiveness must be reasonable and consistent with other similar hedges unless different methods are explicitly justified. An entity is required to document at the inception of the hedge how effectiveness will be assessed and then to apply that effectiveness test on a consistent basis for the duration of the hedge.

Several mathematical techniques can be used to measure hedge effectiveness, including ratio analysis, i.e. a comparison of hedging gains and losses with the corresponding gains and losses on the hedged item at a

point in time, and statistical measurement techniques such as regression analysis. If regression analysis is used, the entity's documented policies for assessing effectiveness must specify how the results of the regression will be assessed.

F.4.5 Hedge Effectiveness: Less than 100 Per Cent Offset

If a cash flow hedge is regarded as highly effective because the actual risk offset is within the allowed 80–125 per cent range of deviation from full offset, is the gain or loss on the ineffective portion of the hedge recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~?

No. [ED38.106\(a\)](#) ~~IAS 39.95(a)~~ indicates that only the effective portion is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. [ED38.106\(b\)](#) ~~IAS 39.95(b)~~ requires the ineffective portion to be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

F.4.6 Assuming Perfect Hedge Effectiveness

If the principal terms of the hedging instrument and of the entire hedged asset or liability or hedged forecast transaction are the same, can an entity assume perfect hedge effectiveness without further effectiveness testing?

No. ~~IAS 39.88(e)~~ [ED38.98\(e\)](#) requires an entity to assess hedges on an ongoing basis for hedge effectiveness. It cannot assume hedge effectiveness even if the principal terms of the hedging instrument and the hedged item are the same, since hedge ineffectiveness may arise because of other attributes such as the liquidity of the instruments or their credit risk ([ED38.AG154](#) ~~IAS 39.AG109~~). It may, however, designate only certain risks in an overall exposure as being hedged and thereby improve the effectiveness of the hedging relationship. For example, for a fair value hedge of a debt instrument, if the derivative hedging instrument has a credit risk that is equivalent to the AA-rate, it may designate only the risk related to AA-rated interest rate movements as being hedged, in which case changes in credit spreads generally will not affect the effectiveness of the hedge.

F.5 Cash Flow Hedges

F.5.1 Hedge Accounting: Non-Derivative Monetary Asset or Non-Derivative Monetary Liability Used as a Hedging Instrument

If an entity designates a non-derivative monetary asset as a foreign currency cash flow hedge of the repayment of the principal of a non-derivative monetary liability, would the exchange differences on the hedged item be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (~~IAS 21.28 IPSAS 4.32~~) and the exchange differences on the hedging instrument be recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ until the repayment of the liability ([ED38.106](#) ~~IAS 39.95~~)?

No. Exchange differences on the monetary asset and the monetary liability are both recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in the period in which they arise (~~IAS 21.28 IPSAS 4.32~~). ~~IAS 39.AG83~~ [ED38.120](#) specifies that if there is a hedge relationship between a non-derivative monetary asset and a non-derivative monetary liability, changes in fair values of those financial instruments are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

F.5.2 Cash Flow Hedges: Performance of Hedging Instrument (1)

Entity A has a floating rate liability of CU1,000 with five years remaining to maturity. It enters into a five-year pay-fixed, receive-floating interest rate swap in the same currency and with the same principal terms as the liability to hedge the exposure to variable cash flow payments on the floating rate liability attributable to interest rate risk. At inception, the fair value of the swap is zero. Subsequently, there is an increase of CU49 in the fair value of the swap. This increase consists of a change of CU50 resulting from an increase in market interest rates and a change of minus CU1 resulting from an increase in the credit risk of the swap counterparty. There is no change in the fair value of the floating rate liability, but the fair value (present value) of the future cash flows needed to offset the exposure to variable interest cash flows on the liability increases by CU50. Assuming that Entity A determines that the hedge is still highly effective, is there ineffectiveness that should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~?

No. A hedge of interest rate risk is not fully effective if part of the change in the fair value of the derivative is attributable to the counterparty's credit risk (~~ED38.AG154 IAS 39.AG109~~). However, because Entity A determines that the hedge relationship is still highly effective, it recognizes the effective portion of the change in fair value of the swap, i.e. the net change in fair value of CU49, in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. There is no debit to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ for the change in fair value of the swap attributable to the deterioration in the credit quality of the swap counterparty, because the cumulative change in the present value of the future cash flows needed to offset the exposure to variable interest cash flows on the hedged item, i.e. CU50, exceeds the cumulative change in value of the hedging instrument, i.e. CU49.

Dr Swap

CU49

Cr ~~Other comprehensive income~~ Net assets/equity

CU49

If Entity A concludes that the hedge is no longer highly effective, it discontinues hedge accounting prospectively as from the date the hedge ceased to be highly effective in accordance with ~~ED38.112 IAS 39.101~~.

Would the answer change if the fair value of the swap instead increases to CU51 of which CU50 results from the increase in market interest rates and CU1 from a decrease in the credit risk of the swap counterparty?

Yes. In this case, there is a credit to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ of CU1 for the change in fair value of the swap attributable to the improvement in the credit quality of the swap counterparty. This is because the cumulative change in the value of the hedging instrument, i.e. CU51, exceeds the cumulative change in the present value of the future cash flows needed to offset the exposure to variable interest cash flows on the hedged item, i.e. CU50. The difference of CU1 represents the excess ineffectiveness attributable to the derivative hedging instrument, the swap, and is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Dr Swap

CU51

Cr ~~Other comprehensive income~~ Net assets/equity

CU50

Cr ~~Profit or loss~~ Surplus or deficit

CU1

F.5.3 Cash Flow Hedges: Performance of Hedging Instrument (2)

On 30-September, 30 20X1, Entity A hedges the anticipated sale of 24 barrels of oil tonnes of pulp on 1-March, 1 20X2 by entering into a short forward contract on 24 barrels of oil tonnes of pulp. The contract requires net settlement in cash determined as the difference between the future spot price of pulp oil on a specified commodity exchange and CU1,000. Entity A expects to sell the pulp in a different, local market. Entity A determines that the forward contract is an effective hedge of the anticipated sale and that the other conditions for hedge accounting are met. It assesses hedge effectiveness by comparing the entire change in the fair value of the forward contract with the change in the fair value of the expected cash inflows. On 31-December, 31, the spot price of pulp oil has increased both in the local market and on the exchange. The increase in the local market exceeds the increase on the exchange. As a result, the present value of the expected cash inflow from the sale on the local market is CU1,100. The fair value of Entity A's forward contract is negative CU80. Assuming that Entity A determines that the hedge is still highly effective, is there ineffectiveness that should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~?

No. In a cash flow hedge, ineffectiveness is not recognized in the financial statements when the cumulative change in the fair value of the hedged cash flows exceeds the cumulative change in the value of the hedging instrument. In this case, the cumulative change in the fair value of the forward contract is CU80, while the fair value of the cumulative change in expected future cash flows on the hedged item is CU100. Since the fair value of the cumulative change in expected future cash flows on the hedged item from the inception of the hedge exceeds the cumulative change in fair value of the hedging instrument (in absolute amounts), no portion of the gain or loss on the hedging instrument is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

(~~ED38.106(b)~~ ~~IAS 39.95(b)~~). Because Entity A determines that the hedge relationship is still highly effective, it recognizes the entire change in fair value of the forward contract (CU80) in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

Dr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~

CU80

Cr Forward

CU80

If Entity A concludes that the hedge is no longer highly effective, it discontinues hedge accounting prospectively as from the date the hedge ceases to be highly effective in accordance with ED38.112 ~~IAS 39.104~~.

F.5.4 Cash Flow Hedges: Forecast Transaction Occurs Before the Specified Period

An entity designates a derivative as a hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge of a forecast transaction, such as a forecast sale of a commodity. The hedging relationship meets all the hedge accounting conditions, including the requirement to identify and document the period in which the transaction is expected to occur within a reasonably specific and narrow range of time (see Question F.2.167). If, in a subsequent period, the forecast transaction is expected to occur in an earlier period than originally anticipated, can the entity conclude that this transaction is the same as the one that was designated as being hedged?

Yes. The change in timing of the forecast transaction does not affect the validity of the designation. However, it may affect the assessment of the effectiveness of the hedging relationship. Also, the hedging instrument would need to be designated as a hedging instrument for the whole remaining period of its existence in order for it to continue to qualify as a hedging instrument (see ED38.84 ~~IAS 39.75~~ and Question F.2.167).

F.5.5 Cash Flow Hedges: Measuring Effectiveness for a Hedge of a Forecast Transaction in a Debt Instrument

A forecast investment in an interest-earning asset or forecast issue of an interest-bearing liability creates a cash flow exposure to interest rate changes because the related interest payments will be based on the market rate that exists when the forecast transaction occurs. The objective of a cash flow hedge of the exposure to interest rate changes is to offset the effects of future changes in interest rates so as to obtain a single fixed rate, usually the rate that existed at the inception of the hedge that corresponds with the term and timing of the forecast transaction. During the period of the hedge, it is not possible to determine what the market interest rate for the forecast transaction will be at the time the hedge is terminated or when the forecast transaction occurs. In this case, how is the effectiveness of the hedge assessed and measured?

During this period, effectiveness can be measured on the basis of changes in interest rates between the designation date and the interim effectiveness measurement date. The interest rates used to make this measurement are the interest rates that correspond with the term and occurrence of the forecast transaction that existed at the inception of the hedge and that exist at the measurement date as evidenced by the term structure of interest rates.

Generally it will not be sufficient simply to compare cash flows of the hedged item with cash flows generated by the derivative hedging instrument as they are paid or received, since such an approach ignores the entity's expectations of whether the cash flows will offset in subsequent periods and whether there will be any resulting ineffectiveness.

The discussion that follows illustrates the mechanics of establishing a cash flow hedge and measuring its effectiveness. For the purpose of the illustrations, assume that an entity expects to issue a CU100,000 one-year debt instrument in three months. The instrument will pay interest quarterly with principal due at maturity. The entity is exposed to interest rate increases and establishes a hedge of the interest cash flows of the debt by entering into a forward starting interest rate swap. The swap has a term of one year and will start in three months to correspond with the terms of the forecast debt issue. The entity will pay a fixed rate and receive a variable rate, and the entity designates the risk being hedged as the LIBOR-based interest component in the forecast issue of the debt.

Yield curve

The yield curve provides the foundation for computing future cash flows and the fair value of such cash flows both at the inception of, and during, the hedging relationship. It is based on current market yields on applicable reference bonds that are traded in the marketplace. Market yields are converted to spot interest rates ('spot rates' or 'zero coupon rates') by eliminating the effect of coupon payments on the market yield. Spot rates are used to discount future cash flows, such as principal and interest rate payments, to arrive at their fair value. Spot rates also are used to compute forward interest rates that are used to compute variable and estimated future cash flows. The relationship between spot rates and one-period forward rates is shown by the following formula:

Spot-forward relationship

$$F = \frac{(1 + SR_t)^t}{(1 + SR_{t-1})^{t-1}} - 1$$

where F = forward rate (%)

SR = spot rate (%)

t = period in time (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5)

Also, for the purpose of this illustration, assume that the following quarterly-period term structure of interest rates using quarterly compounding exists at the inception of the hedge.

Yield curve at inception – (beginning of period 1)					
<i>Forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
Spot rates	3.75%	4.50%	5.50%	6.00%	6.25%
Forward rates	3.75%	5.25%	7.51%	7.50%	7.25%

The one-period forward rates are computed on the basis of spot rates for the applicable maturities. For example, the current forward rate for Period 2 calculated using the formula above is equal to $[1.0450^2/1.0375] - 1 = 5.25$ per cent. The current one-period forward rate for Period 2 is different from the current spot rate for Period 2, since the spot rate is an interest rate from the beginning of Period 1 (spot) to the end of Period 2, while the forward rate is an interest rate from the beginning of Period 2 to the end of Period 2.

Hedged item

In this example, the entity expects to issue a CU100,000 one-year debt instrument in three months with quarterly interest payments. The entity is exposed to interest rate increases and would like to eliminate the effect on cash flows of interest rate changes that may happen before the forecast transaction takes place. If that risk is eliminated, the entity would obtain an interest rate on its debt issue that is equal to the one-year forward coupon rate currently available in the marketplace in three months. That forward coupon rate, which is different from the forward (spot) rate, is 6.86 per cent, computed from the term structure of interest rates shown above. It is the market rate of interest that exists at the inception of the hedge, given the terms of the forecast debt instrument. It results in the fair value of the debt being equal to par at its issue.

At the inception of the hedging relationship, the expected cash flows of the debt instrument can be calculated on the basis of the existing term structure of interest rates. For this purpose, it is assumed that interest rates do not change and that the debt would be issued at 6.86 per cent at the beginning of Period 2. In this case, the cash flows and fair value of the debt instrument would be as follows at the beginning of Period 2.

Issue of fixed rate debt					
Beginning of period 2 - No rate changes (spot based on forward rates)					
<i>Total</i>					
<i>Original forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Remaining periods</i>		<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>
Spot rates		5.25%	6.38%	6.75%	6.88%
Forward rates		5.25%	7.51%	7.50%	7.25%
	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
<i>Cash flows:</i>					
Fixed interest @6.86%		1,716	1,716	1,716	1,716
Principal					100,000
<i>Fair value:</i>					
Interest	6,592	1,694	1,663	1,632	1,603
Principal	93,408				93,408 ^(a)
Total	100,000				
(a) $CU100,000/(1 + [0.0688/4])^4$					

Since it is assumed that interest rates do not change, the fair value of the interest and principal amounts equals the par amount of the forecast transaction. The fair value amounts are computed on the basis of the spot rates that exist at the inception of the hedge for the applicable periods in which the cash flows would occur had the debt been issued at the date of the forecast transaction. They reflect the effect of discounting those cash flows on the basis of the periods that will remain after the debt instrument is issued. For example, the spot rate of 6.38 per cent is used to discount the interest cash flow that is expected to be paid in Period 3, but it is discounted for only two periods because it will occur two periods after the forecast transaction.

The forward interest rates are the same as shown previously, since it is assumed that interest rates do not change. The spot rates are different but they have not actually changed. They represent the spot rates one period forward and are based on the applicable forward rates.

Hedging instrument

The objective of the hedge is to obtain an overall interest rate on the forecast transaction and the hedging instrument that is equal to 6.86 per cent, which is the market rate at the inception of the hedge for the period from Period 2 to Period 5. This objective is accomplished by entering into a forward starting interest rate swap that has a fixed rate of 6.86 per cent. Based on the term structure of interest rates that exist at the inception of the hedge, the interest rate swap will have such a rate. At the inception of the hedge, the fair value of the fixed rate payments on the interest rate swap will equal the fair value of the variable rate payments, resulting in the interest rate swap having a fair value of zero. The expected cash flows of the interest rate swap and the related fair value amounts are shown as follows.

Interest rate swap					
<i>Total</i>					
<i>Original forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Remaining periods</i>		<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>
	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
<i>Cash flows:</i>					
Fixed interest @6.86%		1,716	1,716	1,716	1,716
Forecast variable interest		1,313	1,877	1,876	1,813
<i>Forecast based on forward rate</i>		<i>5.25%</i>	<i>7.51%</i>	<i>7.50%</i>	<i>7.25%</i>
Net interest		(403)	161	160	97
<i>Fair value:</i>					
<i>Discount rate (spot)</i>		<i>5.25%</i>	<i>6.38%</i>	<i>6.75%</i>	<i>6.88%</i>
Fixed interest	6,592	1,694	1,663	1,632	1,603
Forecast variable interest	6,592	1,296	1,819	1,784	1,693
Fair value of interest rate swap	0	(398)	156	152	90

At the inception of the hedge, the fixed rate on the forward swap is equal to the fixed rate the entity would receive if it could issue the debt in three months under terms that exist today.

Measuring hedge effectiveness

If interest rates change during the period the hedge is outstanding, the effectiveness of the hedge can be measured in various ways.

Assume that interest rates change as follows immediately before the debt is issued at the beginning of Period 2.

Yield curve - Rates increase 200 basis points					
<i>Forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Remaining periods</i>		<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>
Spot rates	5.75%	6.50%	7.50%	8.00%	
Forward rates	5.75%	7.25%	9.51%	9.50%	

Under the new interest rate environment, the fair value of the pay-fixed at 6.86 per cent, receive-variable interest rate swap that was designated as the hedging instrument would be as follows.

Fair value of interest rate swap					
<i>Total</i>					
<i>Original forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Remaining periods</i>		<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>

	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
<i>Cash flows:</i>						
Fixed interest @6.86%			1,716	1,716	1,716	1,716
Forecast variable interest			1,438	1,813	2,377	2,376
<i>Forecast based on new forward rate</i>			5.25%	7.25%	9.51%	9.50%
Net interest			(279)	97	661	660
<i>Fair value:</i>						
<i>New discount rate (spot)</i>			5.75%	6.50%	7.50%	8.00%
Fixed interest	6,562		1,692	1,662	1,623	1,585
Forecast variable interest	7,615		1,417	1,755	2,248	2,195
Fair value of net interest	1,053		(275)	93	625	610

In order to compute the effectiveness of the hedge, it is necessary to measure the change in the present value of the cash flows or the value of the hedged forecast transaction. There are at least two methods of accomplishing this measurement.

Method A Compute change in fair value of debt					
<i>Total</i>					
<i>Original forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Remaining periods</i>		<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>
	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
<i>Cash flows:</i>					
Fixed interest @6.86%		1,716	1,716	1,716	1,716
Principal					100,000
<i>Fair value:</i>					
<i>New discount rate (spot)</i>		5.75%	6.50%	7.50%	8.00%
Interest	6,562	1,692	1,662	1,623	1,585
Principal	92,385				92,385 ^(a)
Total	98,947				
Fair value at inception	100,000				
Fair value difference	(1,053)				
(a) $CU100,000/(1 + [0.08/4])^4$					

Under Method A, a computation is made of the fair value in the new interest rate environment of debt that carries interest that is equal to the coupon interest rate that existed at the inception of the hedging relationship (6.86 per cent). This fair value is compared with the expected fair value as of the beginning of Period 2 that was calculated on the basis of the term structure of interest rates that existed at the inception of the hedging relationship, as illustrated above, to determine the change in the fair value. Note that the difference between the change in the fair value of the swap and the change in the expected fair value of the

debt exactly offset in this example, since the terms of the swap and the forecast transaction match each other.

Method B Compute change in fair value of cash flows					
<i>Total</i>					
<i>Original forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Remaining periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	
Market rate at inception		6.86%	6.86%	6.86%	6.86%
Current forward rate		5.75%	7.25%	9.51%	9.50%
Rate difference		1.11%	(0.39%)	(2.64%)	(2.64%)
Cash flow difference (principal × rate)		CU279	(CU97)	(CU661)	(CU660)
Discount rate (<i>spot</i>)		5.75%	6.50%	7.50%	8.00%
Fair value of difference	(CU1,053)	CU275	(CU93)	(CU625)	(CU610)

Under Method B, the present value of the change in cash flows is computed on the basis of the difference between the forward interest rates for the applicable periods at the effectiveness measurement date and the interest rate that would have been obtained if the debt had been issued at the market rate that existed at the inception of the hedge. The market rate that existed at the inception of the hedge is the one-year forward coupon rate in three months. The present value of the change in cash flows is computed on the basis of the current spot rates that exist at the effectiveness measurement date for the applicable periods in which the cash flows are expected to occur. This method also could be referred to as the ‘theoretical swap’ method (or ‘hypothetical derivative’ method) because the comparison is between the hedged fixed rate on the debt and the current variable rate, which is the same as comparing cash flows on the fixed and variable rate legs of an interest rate swap.

As before, the difference between the change in the fair value of the swap and the change in the present value of the cash flows exactly offset in this example, since the terms match.

Other considerations

There is an additional computation that should be performed to compute ineffectiveness before the expected date of the forecast transaction that has not been considered for the purpose of this illustration. The fair value difference has been determined in each of the illustrations as of the expected date of the forecast transaction immediately before the forecast transaction, i.e. at the beginning of Period 2. If the assessment of hedge effectiveness is done before the forecast transaction occurs, the difference should be discounted to the current date to arrive at the actual amount of ineffectiveness. For example, if the measurement date were one month after the hedging relationship was established and the forecast transaction is now expected to occur in two months, the amount would have to be discounted for the remaining two months before the forecast transaction is expected to occur to arrive at the actual fair value. This step would not be necessary in the examples provided above because there was no ineffectiveness. Therefore, additional discounting of the amounts, which net to zero, would not have changed the result.

Under Method B, ineffectiveness is computed on the basis of the difference between the forward coupon interest rates for the applicable periods at the effectiveness measurement date and the interest rate that would have been obtained if the debt had been issued at the market rate that existed at the inception of the hedge. Computing the change in cash flows based on the difference between the forward interest rates that existed at the inception of the hedge and the forward rates that exist at the effectiveness measurement date is inappropriate if the objective of the hedge is to establish a single fixed rate for a series of forecast interest payments. This objective is met by hedging the exposures with an interest rate swap as illustrated in the above example. The fixed interest rate on the swap is a blended interest rate composed of the forward rates over the life of the swap. Unless the yield curve is flat, the comparison between the forward interest rate

exposures over the life of the swap and the fixed rate on the swap will produce different cash flows whose fair values are equal only at the inception of the hedging relationship. This difference is shown in the table below.

<i>Total</i>					
<i>Original forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Remaining periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	
Forward rate at inception		5.25%	7.51%	7.50%	7.25%
Current forward rate		5.75%	7.25%	9.51%	9.50%
Rate difference		(0.50%)	0.26%	(2.00%)	(2.25%)
Cash flow difference (principal × rate)		(CU125)	CU64	(CU501)	(CU563)
Discount rate (spot)		5.75%	6.50%	7.50%	8.00%
Fair value of difference	(CU1,055)	(CU123)	CU62	(CU474)	(CU520)
Fair value of interest rate swap	CU1,053				
Ineffectiveness	(CU2)				

If the objective of the hedge is to obtain the forward rates that existed at the inception of the hedge, the interest rate swap is ineffective because the swap has a single blended fixed coupon rate that does not offset a series of different forward interest rates. However, if the objective of the hedge is to obtain the forward coupon rate that existed at the inception of the hedge, the swap is effective, and the comparison based on differences in forward interest rates suggests ineffectiveness when none may exist. Computing ineffectiveness based on the difference between the forward interest rates that existed at the inception of the hedge and the forward rates that exist at the effectiveness measurement date would be an appropriate measurement of ineffectiveness if the hedging objective is to lock in those forward interest rates. In that case, the appropriate hedging instrument would be a series of forward contracts each of which matures on a repricing date that corresponds with the date of the forecast transactions.

It also should be noted that it would be inappropriate to compare only the variable cash flows on the interest rate swap with the interest cash flows in the debt that would be generated by the forward interest rates. That methodology has the effect of measuring ineffectiveness only on a portion of the derivative, and IAS 39 ED 38 does not permit the bifurcation of a derivative for the purposes of assessing effectiveness in this situation (ED38.83 IAS 39.74). It is recognized, however, that if the fixed interest rate on the interest rate swap is equal to the fixed rate that would have been obtained on the debt at inception, there will be no ineffectiveness assuming that there are no differences in terms and no change in credit risk or it is not designated in the hedging relationship.

F.5.6 Cash Flow Hedges: Firm Commitment to Purchase Inventory in a Foreign Currency

Entity A has the Local Currency (LC) as its functional currency and presentation currency. On 30 June, 30 20X1, it enters into a forward exchange contract to receive Foreign Currency (FC) 100,000 and deliver LC109,600 on 30-June, 30 20X2 at an initial cost and fair value of zero. It designates the forward exchange contract as a hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge of a firm commitment to purchase spare parts for its electricity distribution network a certain quantity of paper on 31-March, 31 20X2 and the resulting payable of FC100,000, which is to be paid on 30-June, 30 20X2. All hedge accounting conditions in IAS 39 ED 38 are met.

As indicated in the table below, on 30-June, 30 20X1, the spot exchange rate is LC1.072 to FC1, while the twelve-month forward exchange rate is LC1.096 to FC1. On 31 December, 31 20X1, the spot exchange rate is LC1.080 to FC1, while the six-month forward exchange rate is LC1.092 to FC1. On 31-March, 31 20X2, the spot exchange rate is LC1.074 to FC1, while the three-month forward rate is LC1.076 to FC1. On 30

June, 30 20X2, the spot exchange rate is LC1.072 to FC1. The applicable yield curve in the local currency is flat at 6 per cent per year throughout the period. The fair value of the forward exchange contract is negative LC388 on ~~31~~ December, 31 20X1 $\{([1.092 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(6/12)}\}$, negative LC1,971 on ~~31~~ March, 31 20X2 $\{([1.076 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(3/12)}\}$, and negative LC2,400 on ~~30~~ June, 30 20X2 $\{1.072 \times 100,000 - 109,600\}$.

Date	Spot rate	Forward rate to 30 June, 30 20X2	Fair value of forward contract
30 June, 30 20X1	1.072	1.096	–
31 December, 31 20X1	1.080	1.092	(388)
31 March, 31 20X2	1.074	1.076	(1,971)
30 June, 30 20X2	1.072	–	(2,400)

Issue (a) – What is the accounting for these transactions if the hedging relationship is designated as being for changes in the fair value of the forward exchange contract and the entity's accounting policy is to apply basis adjustment to non-financial assets that result from hedged forecast transactions?

The accounting entries are as follows.

~~30~~ June, 30 20X1

Dr Forward	LC0
Cr Cash	LC0

To record the forward exchange contract at its initial amount of zero ([ED38.45 IAS 39.43](#)). The hedge is expected to be fully effective because the critical terms of the forward exchange contract and the purchase contract and the assessment of hedge effectiveness are based on the forward price ([ED38.AG153 IAS 39.AG108](#)).

~~31~~ December, 31 20X1

Dr <u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income	LC388
Cr Forward liability	LC388

To record the change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract between ~~30~~ June, 30 20X1 and ~~31~~ December, 31 20X1, i.e. LC388 – 0 = LC388, in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ ([ED38.106 IAS 39.95](#)). The hedge is fully effective because the loss on the forward exchange contract (LC388) exactly offsets the change in cash flows associated with the purchase contract based on the forward price $[(LC388) = \{([1.092 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(6/12)}\} - \{([1.096 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06\}]$.

~~31~~ March, 31 20X2

Dr <u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income	LC1,583
Cr Forward liability	LC1,583

To record the change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract between ~~1~~ January, 1 20X2 and ~~31~~ March, 31 20X2 (i.e. LC1,971 – LC388 = LC1,583) in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ ([ED38.106 IAS 39.95](#)). The hedge is fully effective because the loss on the forward exchange contract (LC1,583) exactly offsets the change in cash flows associated with the purchase contract based on the

forward price $[(LC1,583) = \{([1.076 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(3/12)}\} - \{([1.092 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(6/12)}\}]$.

Dr	Paper <u>Property, plant and equipment</u> (purchase price)	LC107,400
Dr	Paper <u>Property, plant and equipment</u> (hedging loss)	LC1,971
	Cr <u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income	LC1,971
	Cr Payable	LC107,400

To recognize the purchase of the spare parts ~~paper~~ at the spot rate ($1.074 \times FC100,000$) and remove the cumulative loss on the forward exchange contract that has been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (LC1,971) and include it in the initial measurement of the spare parts purchased ~~purchased paper~~. Accordingly, the initial measurement of the ~~purchased paper~~ is LC109,371 consisting of a purchase consideration of LC107,400 and a hedging loss of LC1,971.

30 June, 30 20X2

Dr	Payable	LC107,400
	Cr Cash	LC107,200
	Cr Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u>	LC200

To record the settlement of the payable at the spot rate ($FC100,000 \times 1.072 = 107,200$) and the associated exchange gain of LC200 ($LC107,400 - LC107,200$).

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u>	LC429
	Cr Forward liability	LC429

To record the loss on the forward exchange contract between 1 April, 1 20X2 and ~~30 June, 30~~ 20X2 (i.e. $LC2,400 - LC1,971 = LC429$) in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. The hedge is regarded as fully effective because the loss on the forward exchange contract (LC429) exactly offsets the change in the fair value of the payable based on the forward price ($LC429 = ([1.072 \times 100,000] - 109,600 - \{([1.076 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(3/12)}\})$).

Dr	Forward liability	LC2,400
	Cr Cash	LC2,400

To record the net settlement of the forward exchange contract.

Issue (b) – What is the accounting for these transactions if the hedging relationship instead is designated as being for changes in the spot element of the forward exchange contract and the interest element is excluded from the designated hedging relationship (ED38.83 IAS 39.74)?

The accounting entries are as follows.

30 June, 30 20X1

Dr	Forward	LC0
	Cr Cash	LC0

To record the forward exchange contract at its initial amount of zero (ED38.45 IAS 39.43). The hedge is expected to be fully effective because the critical terms of the forward exchange contract and the purchase

contract are the same and the change in the premium or discount on the forward contract is excluded from the assessment of effectiveness ([ED38.AG153](#) ~~IAS 39.AG108~~).

~~31~~ December, 31 20X1

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest element)	LC1,165
	Cr <u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income (spot element)	LC777
	Cr Forward liability	LC388

To record the change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract between ~~30 June, 30~~ 20X1 and ~~31~~ December, 31 20X1, i.e. LC388 – 0 = LC388. The change in the present value of spot settlement of the forward exchange contract is a gain of LC777 ($\{([1.080 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(6/12)}\} - \{([1.072 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06\}$), which is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ ([ED38.106](#) ~~IAS 39.95(a)~~). The change in the interest element of the forward exchange contract (the residual change in fair value) is a loss of LC1,165 (388 + 777), which is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ ([ED38.83](#) and [ED38.64\(a\)](#) ~~IAS 39.74 and IAS 39.55(a)~~). The hedge is fully effective because the gain in the spot element of the forward contract (LC777) exactly offsets the change in the purchase price at spot rates ($LC777 = \{([1.080 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(6/12)}\} - \{([1.072 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06\}$).

~~31~~ March, 31 20X2

Dr	Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u> (spot element)	LC580
Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest element)	LC1,003
	Cr Forward liability	LC1,583

To record the change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract between ~~1~~ January, 1 20X2 and ~~31~~ March, 31 20X2, i.e. LC1,971 – LC388 = LC1,583. The change in the present value of the spot settlement of the forward exchange contract is a loss of LC580 ($\{([1.074 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(3/12)}\} - \{([1.080 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(6/12)}\}$), which is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ ([ED38.106\(a\)](#) ~~IAS 39.95(a)~~). The change in the interest element of the forward exchange contract (the residual change in fair value) is a loss of LC1,003 (LC1,583 – LC580), which is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ ([ED38.83](#) and [ED38.64\(a\)](#) ~~IAS 39.74 and IAS 39.55(a)~~). The hedge is fully effective because the loss in the spot element of the forward contract (LC580) exactly offsets the change in the purchase price at spot rates $[(580) = \{([1.074 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(3/12)}\} - \{([1.080 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(6/12)}\}]$.

Dr	Paper <u>Property, plant and equipment</u> (purchase price)	LC107,400
Dr	Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>	LC197
	Cr Paper <u>Property, plant and equipment</u> (hedging gain)	LC197
	Cr Payable	LC107,400

To recognize the purchase of the paper at the spot rate (= $1.074 \times FC100,000$) and remove the cumulative gain on the spot element of the forward exchange contract that has been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (LC777 – LC580 = LC197) and include it in the initial measurement of the purchased paper. Accordingly, the initial measurement of the purchased paper is LC107,203, consisting of a purchase consideration of LC107,400 and a hedging gain of LC197.

~~30 June, 30~~ 20X2

Dr	Payable	LC107,400
----	---------	-----------

Cr	Cash	LC107,200
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u>	LC200

To record the settlement of the payable at the spot rate ($FC100,000 \times 1.072 = LC107,200$) and the associated exchange gain of LC200 ($- [1.072 - 1.074] \times FC100,000$).

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (spot element)	LC197
Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest element)	LC232
Cr	Forward liability	LC429

To record the change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract between 1 April, 20X2 and 30 June, 20X2 (i.e. $LC2,400 - LC1,971 = LC429$). The change in the present value of the spot settlement of the forward exchange contract is a loss of LC197 ($[(1.072 \times 100,000) - 107,200 - \{[(1.074 \times 100,000) - 107,200]/1.06^{(3/12)}\}]$), which is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. The change in the interest element of the forward exchange contract (the residual change in fair value) is a loss of LC232 ($LC429 - LC197$), which is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. The hedge is fully effective because the loss in the spot element of the forward contract (LC197) exactly offsets the change in the present value of the spot settlement of the payable $[(LC197) = \{[(1.072 \times 100,000) - 107,200 - \{[(1.074 \times 100,000) - 107,200]/1.06^{(3/12)}\}]]$.

Dr	Forward liability	LC2,400
Cr	Cash	LC2,400

To record the net settlement of the forward exchange contract.

The following table provides an overview of the components of the change in fair value of the hedging instrument over the term of the hedging relationship. It illustrates that the way in which a hedging relationship is designated affects the subsequent accounting for that hedging relationship, including the assessment of hedge effectiveness and the recognition of gains and losses.

<i>Period ending</i>	<i>Change in spot settlement</i>	<i>Fair value of change in spot settlement</i>	<i>Change in forward settlement</i>	<i>Fair value of change in forward settlement</i>	<i>Fair value of change in interest element</i>
	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>
June 20X1	–	–	–	–	–
December 20X1	800	777	(400)	(388)	(1,165)
March 20X2	(600)	(580)	(1,600)	(1,583)	(1,003)
June 20X2	(200)	(197)	(400)	(429)	(232)
Total	–	–	(2,400)	(2,400)	(2,400)

F.6 Hedges: Other Issues

F.6.1 Hedge Accounting: Management of Interest Rate Risk in Entities Such as Departments of Finance~~Financial Institutions~~

~~Banks and other financial institutions~~ Entities, such as departments of finance, often manage their exposure to interest rate risk on a net basis for all or parts of their activities. They have systems to accumulate critical information throughout the entity about their financial assets, financial liabilities and forward commitments, including loan commitments. This information is used to estimate and

aggregate cash flows and to schedule such estimated cash flows into the applicable future periods in which they are expected to be paid or received. The systems generate estimates of cash flows based on the contractual terms of the instruments and other factors, including estimates of prepayments and defaults. For risk management purposes, many entities ~~financial institutions~~ use derivative contracts to offset some or all exposure to interest rate risk on a net basis.

If an entity ~~financial institution~~ manages interest rate risk on a net basis, can its activities potentially qualify for hedge accounting under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~?

Yes. However, to qualify for hedge accounting the derivative hedging instrument that hedges the net position for risk management purposes must be designated for accounting purposes as a hedge of a gross position related to assets, liabilities, forecast cash inflows or forecast cash outflows giving rise to the net exposure (ED38.94, ED38.AG145 and ED38.AG158 ~~IAS 39.84, IAS 39.AG101 and IAS 39.AG114~~). It is not possible to designate a net position as a hedged item under ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 because of the inability to associate hedging gains and losses with a specific item being hedged and, correspondingly, to determine objectively the period in which such gains and losses should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Hedging a net exposure to interest rate risk can often be defined and documented to meet the qualifying criteria for hedge accounting in ED38.98 ~~IAS 39.88~~ if the objective of the activity is to offset a specific, identified and designated risk exposure that ultimately affects the entity's surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (ED38.AG155 ~~IAS 39.AG110~~) and the entity designates and documents its interest rate risk exposure on a gross basis. Also, to qualify for hedge accounting the information systems must capture sufficient information about the amount and timing of cash flows and the effectiveness of the risk management activities in accomplishing their objective.

The factors an entity must consider for hedge accounting purposes if it manages interest rate risk on a net basis are discussed in Question F.6.2.

F.6.2 Hedge Accounting Considerations when Interest Rate Risk is Managed on a Net Basis

If an entity manages its exposure to interest rate risk on a net basis, what are the issues the entity should consider in defining and documenting its interest rate risk management activities to qualify for hedge accounting and in establishing and accounting for the hedge relationship?

Issues (a)–(l) below deal with the main issues. First, Issues (a) and (b) discuss the designation of derivatives used in interest rate risk management activities as fair value hedges or cash flow hedges. As noted there, hedge accounting criteria and accounting consequences differ between fair value hedges and cash flow hedges. Since it may be easier to achieve hedge accounting treatment if derivatives used in interest rate risk management activities are designated as cash flow hedging instruments, Issues (c)–(l) expand on various aspects of the accounting for cash flow hedges. Issues (c)–(f) consider the application of the hedge accounting criteria for cash flow hedges in ED38 ~~IAS 39~~, and Issues (g) and (h) discuss the required accounting treatment. Finally, Issues (i)–(l) elaborate on other specific issues relating to the accounting for cash flow hedges.

Issue (a) – Can a derivative that is used to manage interest rate risk on a net basis be designated under ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge or a cash flow hedge of a gross exposure?

Both types of designation are possible under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~. An entity may designate the derivative used in interest rate risk management activities either as a fair value hedge of assets, liabilities and firm commitments or as a cash flow hedge of forecast transactions, such as the anticipated reinvestment of cash inflows, the anticipated refinancing or rollover of a financial liability, and the cash flow consequences of the resetting of interest rates for an asset or a liability.

In economic terms, it does not matter whether the derivative instrument is regarded as a fair value hedge or as a cash flow hedge. Under either perspective of the exposure, the derivative has the same economic effect of reducing the net exposure. For example, a receive-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swap can be considered to be a cash flow hedge of a variable rate asset or a fair value hedge of a fixed rate liability. Under either perspective, the fair value or cash flows of the interest rate swap offset the exposure to interest

rate changes. However, accounting consequences differ depending on whether the derivative is designated as a fair value hedge or a cash flow hedge, as discussed in Issue (b).

To illustrate: a ~~bank~~ department of finance has the following assets and liabilities with a maturity of two years.

	Variable interest	Fixed interest
	CU	CU
Assets	60	100
Liabilities	(100)	(60)
Net	(40)	40

The ~~bank~~ entity takes out a two-year swap with a notional principal of CU40 to receive a variable interest rate and pay a fixed interest rate to hedge the net exposure. As discussed above, this may be regarded and designated either as a fair value hedge of CU40 of the fixed rate assets or as a cash flow hedge of CU40 of the variable rate liabilities.

Issue (b) – What are the critical considerations in deciding whether a derivative that is used to manage interest rate risk on a net basis should be designated as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge or a cash flow hedge of a gross exposure?

Critical considerations include the assessment of hedge effectiveness in the presence of prepayment risk and the ability of the information systems to attribute fair value or cash flow changes of hedging instruments to fair value or cash flow changes, respectively, of hedged items, as discussed below.

For accounting purposes, the designation of a derivative as hedging a fair value exposure or a cash flow exposure is important because both the qualification requirements for hedge accounting and the recognition of hedging gains and losses for these categories are different. It is often easier to demonstrate high effectiveness for a cash flow hedge than for a fair value hedge.

Effects of prepayments

Prepayment risk inherent in many financial instruments affects the fair value of an instrument and the timing of its cash flows and impacts on the effectiveness test for fair value hedges and the highly probable test for cash flow hedges, respectively.

Effectiveness is often more difficult to achieve for fair value hedges than for cash flow hedges when the instrument being hedged is subject to prepayment risk. For a fair value hedge to qualify for hedge accounting, the changes in the fair value of the derivative hedging instrument must be expected to be highly effective in offsetting the changes in the fair value of the hedged item (ED38.98(b) ~~IAS 39.88(b)~~). This test may be difficult to meet if, for example, the derivative hedging instrument is a forward contract having a fixed term and the financial assets being hedged are subject to prepayment by the borrower. Also, it may be difficult to conclude that, for a portfolio of fixed rate assets that are subject to prepayment, the changes in the fair value for each individual item in the group will be expected to be approximately proportional to the overall changes in fair value attributable to the hedged risk of the group. Even if the risk being hedged is a benchmark interest rate, to be able to conclude that fair value changes will be proportional for each item in the portfolio, it may be necessary to disaggregate the asset portfolio into categories based on term, coupon, credit, type of loan and other characteristics.

In economic terms, a forward derivative instrument could be used to hedge assets that are subject to prepayment but it would be effective only for small movements in interest rates. A reasonable estimate of prepayments can be made for a given interest rate environment and the derivative position can be adjusted as the interest rate environment changes. If an entity's risk management strategy is to adjust the amount of the hedging instrument periodically to reflect changes in the hedged position, the entity needs to demonstrate that the hedge is expected to be highly effective only for the period until the amount of the hedging instrument is next adjusted. However, for that period, the expectation of effectiveness has to be

based on existing fair value exposures and the potential for interest rate movements without consideration of future adjustments to those positions. Furthermore, the fair value exposure attributable to prepayment risk can generally be hedged with options.

For a cash flow hedge to qualify for hedge accounting, the forecast cash flows, including the reinvestment of cash inflows or the refinancing of cash outflows, must be highly probable (~~ED38.98(c)~~IAS 39.88(e)) and the hedge expected to be highly effective in achieving offsetting changes in the cash flows of the hedged item and hedging instrument (~~ED38.98(b)~~IAS 39.88(b)). Prepayments affect the timing of cash flows and, therefore, the probability of occurrence of the forecast transaction. If the hedge is established for risk management purposes on a net basis, an entity may have sufficient levels of highly probable cash flows on a gross basis to support the designation for accounting purposes of forecast transactions associated with a portion of the gross cash flows as the hedged item. In this case, the portion of the gross cash flows designated as being hedged may be chosen to be equal to the amount of net cash flows being hedged for risk management purposes.

Systems considerations

The accounting for fair value hedges differs from that for cash flow hedges. It is usually easier to use existing information systems to manage and track cash flow hedges than it is for fair value hedges.

Under fair value hedge accounting, the assets or liabilities that are designated as being hedged are remeasured for those changes in fair values during the hedge period that are attributable to the risk being hedged. Such changes adjust the carrying amount of the hedged items and, for interest sensitive assets and liabilities, may result in an adjustment of the effective interest rate of the hedged item (~~ED38.99~~IAS 39.89). As a consequence of fair value hedging activities, the changes in fair value have to be allocated to the assets or liabilities being hedged in order for the entity to be able to recompute their effective interest rate, determine the subsequent amortization of the fair value adjustment to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, and determine the amount that should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ when assets are sold or liabilities extinguished (~~ED38.99 and ED38.103~~IAS 39.89 and IAS 39.92). To comply with the requirements for fair value hedge accounting, it will generally be necessary to establish a system to track the changes in the fair value attributable to the hedged risk, associate those changes with individual hedged items, recompute the effective interest rate of the hedged items, and amortize the changes to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ over the life of the respective hedged item.

Under cash flow hedge accounting, the cash flows relating to the forecast transactions that are designated as being hedged reflect changes in interest rates. The adjustment for changes in the fair value of a hedging derivative instrument is initially recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (~~ED38.105~~IAS 39.95). To comply with the requirements for cash flow hedge accounting, it is necessary to determine when the cumulative gains and losses recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ from changes in the fair value of a hedging instrument should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified to profit or loss~~ (~~ED38.111 and ED38.112~~IAS 39.100 and IAS 39.101). For cash flow hedges, it is not necessary to create a separate system to make this determination. The system used to determine the extent of the net exposure provides the basis for scheduling the changes in the cash flows of the derivative and the recognition of such changes in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

The timing of the recognition in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ can be predetermined when the hedge is associated with the exposure to changes in cash flows. The forecast transactions that are being hedged can be associated with a specific principal amount in specific future periods composed of variable rate assets and cash inflows being reinvested or variable rate liabilities and cash outflows being refinanced, each of which creates a cash flow exposure to changes in interest rates. The specific principal amounts in specific future periods are equal to the notional amount of the derivative hedging instruments and are hedged only for the period that corresponds to the repricing or maturity of the derivative hedging instruments so that the cash flow changes resulting from changes in interest rates are matched with the derivative hedging instrument. ~~IAS 39.100~~ ED38.111 specifies that the amounts recognized in net assets/equity ~~should be recognized in surplus or deficit~~ ~~other comprehensive income should be reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ in the same period or periods during which the hedged item affects surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Issue (c) – If a hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge relating to changes in cash flows resulting from interest rate changes, what would be included in the documentation required by ED38.98(a) ~~IAS 39.88(a)~~?

The following would be included in the documentation.

The hedging relationship - The maturity schedule of cash flows used for risk management purposes to determine exposures to cash flow mismatches on a net basis would provide part of the documentation of the hedging relationship.

The entity's risk management objective and strategy for undertaking the hedge - The entity's overall risk management objective and strategy for hedging exposures to interest rate risk would provide part of the documentation of the hedging objective and strategy.

The type of hedge - The hedge is documented as a cash flow hedge.

The hedged item - The hedged item is documented as a group of forecast transactions (interest cash flows) that are expected to occur with a high degree of probability in specified future periods, for example, scheduled on a monthly basis. The hedged item may include interest cash flows resulting from the reinvestment of cash inflows, including the resetting of interest rates on assets, or from the refinancing of cash outflows, including the resetting of interest rates on liabilities and rollovers of financial liabilities. As discussed in Issue (e), the forecast transactions meet the probability test if there are sufficient levels of highly probable cash flows in the specified future periods to encompass the amounts designated as being hedged on a gross basis.

The hedged risk - The risk designated as being hedged is documented as a portion of the overall exposure to changes in a specified market interest rate, often the risk-free interest rate or an interbank offered rate, common to all items in the group. To help ensure that the hedge effectiveness test is met at inception of the hedge and subsequently, the designated hedged portion of the interest rate risk could be documented as being based on the same yield curve as the derivative hedging instrument.

The hedging instrument - Each derivative hedging instrument is documented as a hedge of specified amounts in specified future time periods corresponding with the forecast transactions occurring in the specified future time periods designated as being hedged.

The method of assessing effectiveness - The effectiveness test is documented as being measured by comparing the changes in the cash flows of the derivatives allocated to the applicable periods in which they are designated as a hedge to the changes in the cash flows of the forecast transactions being hedged. Measurement of the cash flow changes is based on the applicable yield curves of the derivatives and hedged items.

Issue (d) – If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, how does an entity satisfy the requirement for an expectation of high effectiveness in achieving offsetting changes in ED38.98(b) ~~IAS 39.88(b)~~?

An entity may demonstrate an expectation of high effectiveness by preparing an analysis demonstrating high historical and expected future correlation between the interest rate risk designated as being hedged and the interest rate risk of the hedging instrument. Existing documentation of the hedge ratio used in establishing the derivative contracts may also serve to demonstrate an expectation of effectiveness.

Issue (e) – If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, how does an entity demonstrate a high probability of the forecast transactions occurring as required by ED38.98(c) ~~IAS 39.88(c)~~?

An entity may do this by preparing a cash flow maturity schedule showing that there exist sufficient aggregate gross levels of expected cash flows, including the effects of the resetting of interest rates for assets or liabilities, to establish that the forecast transactions that are designated as being hedged are highly probable to occur. Such a schedule should be supported by management's stated intentions and past practice of reinvesting cash inflows and refinancing cash outflows.

For example, an entity may forecast aggregate gross cash inflows of CU100 and aggregate gross cash outflows of CU90 in a particular time period in the near future. In this case, it may wish to designate the

forecast reinvestment of gross cash inflows of CU10 as the hedged item in the future time period. If more than CU10 of the forecast cash inflows are contractually specified and have low credit risk, the entity has strong evidence to support an assertion that gross cash inflows of CU10 are highly probable to occur and to support the designation of the forecast reinvestment of those cash flows as being hedged for a particular portion of the reinvestment period. A high probability of the forecast transactions occurring may also be demonstrated under other circumstances.

Issue (f) – If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, how does an entity assess and measure effectiveness under ED38.98(d) and ED38.98(e) ~~IAS 39.88(d) and IAS 39.88(e)~~?

Effectiveness is required to be measured at a minimum at the time an entity prepares its annual or interim financial reports. However, an entity may wish to measure it more frequently on a specified periodic basis, at the end of each month or other applicable reporting period. It is also measured whenever derivative positions designated as hedging instruments are changed or hedges are terminated to ensure that the recognition in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ of the changes in the fair value amounts on assets and liabilities and the recognition of changes in the fair value of derivative instruments designated as cash flow hedges are appropriate.

Changes in the cash flows of the derivative are computed and allocated to the applicable periods in which the derivative is designated as a hedge and are compared with computations of changes in the cash flows of the forecast transactions. Computations are based on yield curves applicable to the hedged items and the derivative hedging instruments and applicable interest rates for the specified periods being hedged.

The schedule used to determine effectiveness could be maintained and used as the basis for determining the period in which the hedging gains and losses recognized initially in net assets/equity ~~are recognized in surplus or deficit~~ ~~other comprehensive income~~ ~~are reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~.

Issue (g) – If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, how does an entity account for the hedge?

The hedge is accounted for as a cash flow hedge in accordance with the provisions in ED38.106-ED38.111 ~~IAS 39.95- IAS 39.100~~, as follows:

- (i) the portion of gains and losses on hedging derivatives determined to result from effective hedges is recognized in ~~other comprehensive income~~ net assets/equity whenever effectiveness is measured; and
- (ii) the ineffective portion of gains and losses resulting from hedging derivatives is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

ED38.111 ~~IAS 39.100~~ specifies that the amounts recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ ~~should be reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ recognized in surplus or deficit in the same period or periods during which the hedged item affects surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. Accordingly, when the forecast transactions occur, the amounts previously recognized in net assets/equity ~~are recognized in surplus or deficit~~ ~~other comprehensive income~~ ~~are reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~. For example, if an interest rate swap is designated as a hedging instrument of a series of forecast cash flows, the changes in the cash flows of the swap are removed from net assets/equity and recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ in the periods when the forecast cash flows and the cash flows of the swap offset each other.

Issue (h) – If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, what is the treatment of any net cumulative gains and losses recognized in ~~other comprehensive income~~ net assets/equity if the hedging instrument is terminated prematurely, the hedge accounting criteria are no longer met, or the hedged forecast transactions are no longer expected to take place?

If the hedging instrument is terminated prematurely or the hedge no longer meets the criteria for qualification for hedge accounting, for example, the forecast transactions are no longer highly probable, the net cumulative gain or loss recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ ~~remains in net assets/equity~~ until the forecast transaction occurs (ED38.112(a) and ED38.112(b) ~~IAS 39.101(a) and IAS 39.101(b)~~). If the hedged forecast transactions are no longer expected to occur, the net cumulative gain or

loss is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ (ED38.112(c) IAS 39.101(e)).

Issue (i) – IAS 39.75 ED38.74 states that a hedging relationship may not be designated for only a portion of the time period in which a hedging instrument is outstanding. If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, and the hedge subsequently fails the test for being highly effective, does IAS 39.75 ED38.74 preclude redesignating the hedging instrument?

No. IAS 39.75 ED38.74 indicates that a derivative instrument may not be designated as a hedging instrument for only a portion of its remaining period to maturity. IAS 39.75 ED38.74 does not refer to the derivative instrument's original period to maturity. If there is a hedge effectiveness failure, the ineffective portion of the gain or loss on the derivative instrument is recognized immediately in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (ED38.106 IAS 39.95(b)) and hedge accounting based on the previous designation of the hedge relationship cannot be continued (ED38.112 IAS 39.101). In this case, the derivative instrument may be redesignated prospectively as a hedging instrument in a new hedging relationship provided this hedging relationship satisfies the necessary conditions. The derivative instrument must be redesignated as a hedge for the entire time period it remains outstanding.

Issue (j) – For cash flow hedges, if a derivative is used to manage a net exposure to interest rate risk and the derivative is designated as a cash flow hedge of forecast interest cash flows or portions of them on a gross basis, does the occurrence of the hedged forecast transaction give rise to an asset or liability that will result in a portion of the hedging gains and losses that were recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ remaining in net assets/equity?

No. In the hedging relationship described in Issue (c) above, the hedged item is a group of forecast transactions consisting of interest cash flows in specified future periods. The hedged forecast transactions do not result in the recognition of assets or liabilities and the effect of interest rate changes that are designated as being hedged is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in the period in which the forecast transactions occur. Although this is not relevant for the types of hedges described here, if instead the derivative is designated as a hedge of a forecast purchase of a financial asset or issue of a financial liability, the associated gains or losses that were recognized in net assets/equity ~~are recognized in other comprehensive income~~ are reclassified from equity to profit or loss surplus or deficit in the same period or periods during which the ~~asset acquired or liability incurred~~ hedged forecast transaction affects surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (such as in the periods that interest expenses are recognized). However, if an entity expects at any time that all or a portion of a net loss recognized net assets/equity ~~in other comprehensive income~~ will not be recovered in one or more future periods, it shall ~~reclassify immediately from equity to profit or loss~~ in surplus or deficit the amount that is not expected to be recovered.

Issue (k) – In the answer to Issue (c) above it was indicated that the designated hedged item is a portion of a cash flow exposure. Does IAS 39 ED38 permit a portion of a cash flow exposure to be designated as a hedged item?

Yes. IAS 39 ED 38 does not specifically address a hedge of a portion of a cash flow exposure for a forecast transaction. However, IAS 39.81 ED38.90 specifies that a financial asset or liability may be a hedged item with respect to the risks associated with only a portion of its cash flows or fair value, if effectiveness can be measured. The ability to hedge a portion of a cash flow exposure resulting from the resetting of interest rates for assets and liabilities suggests that a portion of a cash flow exposure resulting from the forecast reinvestment of cash inflows or the refinancing or rollover of financial liabilities can also be hedged. The basis for qualification as a hedged item of a portion of an exposure is the ability to measure effectiveness. This is further supported by ED38.92 IAS 39.82, which specifies that a non-financial asset or liability can be hedged only in its entirety or for foreign currency risk but not for a portion of other risks because of the difficulty of isolating and measuring the appropriate portion of the cash flows or fair value changes attributable to a specific risk. Accordingly, assuming effectiveness can be measured, a portion of a cash flow exposure of forecast transactions associated with, for example, the resetting of interest rates for a variable rate asset or liability can be designated as a hedged item.

Issue (l) – In the answer to Issue (c) above it was indicated that the hedged item is documented as a group of forecast transactions. Since these transactions will have different terms when they occur, including credit exposures, maturities and option features, how can an entity satisfy the tests in IAS

~~39.78 and IAS 39.83~~ ED38.87 and ED38.93 requiring the hedged group to have similar risk characteristics?

~~IAS 39.78~~ ED38.87 provides for hedging a group of assets, liabilities, firm commitments or forecast transactions with similar risk characteristics. ~~IAS 39.83~~ ED38.93 provides additional guidance and specifies that portfolio hedging is permitted if two conditions are met, namely: the individual items in the portfolio share the same risk for which they are designated, and the change in the fair value attributable to the hedged risk for each individual item in the group will be expected to be approximately proportional to the overall change in fair value.

When an entity associates a derivative hedging instrument with a gross exposure, the hedged item typically is a group of forecast transactions. For hedges of cash flow exposures relating to a group of forecast transactions, the overall exposure of the forecast transactions and the assets or liabilities that are repriced may have very different risks. The exposure from forecast transactions may differ depending on the terms that are expected as they relate to credit exposures, maturities, options and other features. Although the overall risk exposures may be different for the individual items in the group, a specific risk inherent in each of the items in the group can be designated as being hedged.

The items in the portfolio do not necessarily have to have the same overall exposure to risk, provided they share the same risk for which they are designated as being hedged. A common risk typically shared by a portfolio of financial instruments is exposure to changes in the risk-free or benchmark interest rate or to changes in a specified rate that has a credit exposure equal to the highest credit-rated instrument in the portfolio (i.e. the instrument with the lowest credit risk). If the instruments that are grouped into a portfolio have different credit exposures, they may be hedged as a group for a portion of the exposure. The risk they have in common that is designated as being hedged is the exposure to interest rate changes from the highest credit rated instrument in the portfolio. This ensures that the change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk for each individual item in the group is expected to be approximately proportional to the overall change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk of the group. It is likely there will be some ineffectiveness if the hedging instrument has a credit quality that is inferior to the credit quality of the highest credit-rated instrument being hedged, since a hedging relationship is designated for a hedging instrument in its entirety (ED38.83 ~~IAS 39.74~~). For example, if a portfolio of assets consists of assets rated A, BB and B, and the current market interest rates for these assets are LIBOR+20 basis points, LIBOR+40 basis points and LIBOR+60 basis points, respectively, an entity may use a swap that pays fixed interest rate and for which variable interest payments based on LIBOR are made to hedge the exposure to variable interest rates. If LIBOR is designated as the risk being hedged, credit spreads above LIBOR on the hedged items are excluded from the designated hedge relationship and the assessment of hedge effectiveness.

F.6.3 Illustrative Example of Applying the Approach in Question F.6.2

The purpose of this example is to illustrate the process of establishing, monitoring and adjusting hedge positions and of qualifying for cash flow hedge accounting in applying the approach to hedge accounting described in Question F.6.2 when an entity ~~financial institution~~ manages its interest rate risk on an entity-wide basis. To this end, this example identifies a methodology that allows for the use of hedge accounting and takes advantage of existing risk management systems so as to avoid unnecessary changes to it and to avoid unnecessary bookkeeping and tracking.

The approach illustrated here reflects only one of a number of risk management processes that could be employed and could qualify for hedge accounting. Its use is not intended to suggest that other alternatives could not or should not be used. The approach being illustrated could also be applied in other circumstances (such as for cash flow hedges ~~of commercial entities~~), for example, hedging the rollover of commercial paper financing.

Identifying, assessing and reducing cash flow exposures

The discussion and illustrations that follow focus on the risk management activities of an entity, such as a department of finance, ~~financial institution~~ that manages its interest rate risk by analysing expected cash flows in a particular currency on an entity-wide basis. The cash flow analysis forms the basis for identifying the interest rate risk of the entity, entering into hedging transactions to manage the risk, assessing the effectiveness of risk management activities, and qualifying for and applying cash flow hedge accounting.

The illustrations that follow assume that an entity, ~~a financial institution~~, had the following expected future net cash flows and hedging positions outstanding in a specific currency, consisting of interest rate swaps, at the beginning of Period X0. The cash flows shown are expected to occur at the end of the period and, therefore, create a cash flow interest exposure in the following period as a result of the reinvestment or repricing of the cash inflows or the refinancing or repricing of the cash outflows.

The illustrations assume that the entity has an ongoing interest rate risk management programme. Schedule I shows the expected cash flows and hedging positions that existed at the beginning of Period X0. It is included here to provide a starting point in the analysis. It provides a basis for considering existing hedges in connection with the evaluation that occurs at the beginning of Period X1.

Schedule I End of period: expected cash flows and hedging positions

<i>Quarterly period</i>	<i>X0</i>	<i>X1</i>	<i>X2</i>	<i>X3</i>	<i>X4</i>	<i>X5</i>	<i>...n</i>
<i>(units)</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
Expected net cash flows		1,100	1,500	1,200	1,400	1,500	x,xxx
<i>Outstanding interest rate swaps:</i>							
Receive-fixed, pay-variable (notional amounts)	2,000	2,000	2,000	1,200	1,200	1,200	x,xxx
Pay-fixed, receive-variable (notional amounts)	(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)	(500)	(500)	(500)	x,xxx
Net exposure after outstanding swaps		100	500	500	700	800	x,xxx

The schedule depicts five quarterly periods. The actual analysis would extend over a period of many years, represented by the notation '...n'. ~~A financial institution~~ An entity that manages its interest rate risk on an entity-wide basis re-evaluates its cash flow exposures periodically. The frequency of the evaluation depends on the entity's risk management policy.

For the purposes of this illustration, the entity is re-evaluating its cash flow exposures at the end of Period X0. The first step in the process is the generation of forecast net cash flow exposures from existing interest-earning assets and interest-bearing liabilities, including the rollover of short-term assets and short-term liabilities. Schedule II below illustrates the forecast of net cash flow exposures. A common technique for assessing exposure to interest rates for risk management purposes is an interest rate sensitivity gap analysis showing the gap between interest rate-sensitive assets and interest rate-sensitive liabilities over different time intervals. Such an analysis could be used as a starting point for identifying cash flow exposures to interest rate risk for hedge accounting purposes.

Schedule II Forecast net cash flow and repricing exposures

<i>Quarterly period</i>	<i>Notes</i>	<i>X1</i>	<i>X2</i>	<i>X3</i>	<i>X4</i>	<i>X5</i>	<i>...n</i>
<i>(units)</i>		<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
CASH INFLOW AND REPRICING EXPOSURES - from assets							
<i>Principal and interest payments:</i>							
Long-term fixed rate	(1)	2,400	3,000	3,000	1,000	1,200	x,xxx
Short-term (roll over)	(1)(2)	1,575	1,579	1,582	1,586	1,591	x,xxx
Variable rate –	(1)	2,000	1,000	–	500	500	x,xxx

principal payments							
Variable rate – estimated interest	(2)	125	110	105	114	118	x,xxx
<i>Total expected cash inflows</i>		<i>6,100</i>	<i>5,689</i>	<i>4,687</i>	<i>3,200</i>	<i>3,409</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>
Variable rate asset balances	(3)	8,000	7,000	7,000	6,500	6,000	x,xxx
<i>Cash inflows and repricings</i>	(4)	<i>14,100</i>	<i>12,689</i>	<i>11,687</i>	<i>9,700</i>	<i>9,409</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>
CASH OUTFLOW AND REPRICING EXPOSURES - from liabilities							
<i>Principal and interest payments:</i>							
Long-term fixed rate	(1)	2,100	400	500	500	301	x,xxx
Short-term (roll over)	(1)(2)	735	737	738	740	742	x,xxx
Variable rate – principal payments	(1)	–	–	2,000	–	1,000	x,xxx
Variable rate – estimated interest	(2)	100	110	120	98	109	x,xxx
<i>Total expected cash outflows</i>		<i>2,935</i>	<i>1,247</i>	<i>3,358</i>	<i>1,338</i>	<i>2,152</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>
Variable rate liability balances	(3)	8,000	8,000	6,000	6,000	5,000	x,xxx
<i>Cash outflows and repricings</i>	(4)	<i>10,935</i>	<i>9,247</i>	<i>9,358</i>	<i>7,338</i>	<i>7,152</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>
<i>NET EXPOSURES</i>	(5)	<i>3,165</i>	<i>3,442</i>	<i>2,329</i>	<i>2,362</i>	<i>2,257</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>

- (1) The cash flows are estimated using contractual terms and assumptions based on management's intentions and market factors. It is assumed that short-term assets and liabilities will continue to be rolled over in succeeding periods. Assumptions about prepayments and defaults and the withdrawal of deposits are based on market and historical data. It is assumed that principal and interest inflows and outflows will be reinvested and refinanced, respectively, at the end of each period at the then current market interest rates and share the benchmark interest rate risk to which they are exposed.
- (2) Forward interest rates obtained from Schedule VI are used to forecast interest payments on variable rate financial instruments and expected rollovers of short-term assets and liabilities. All forecast cash flows are associated with the specific time periods (3 months, 6 months, 9 months and 12 months) in which they are expected to occur. For completeness, the interest cash flows resulting from reinvestments, refinancings and repricings are included in the schedule and shown gross even though only the net margin may actually be reinvested. Some entities may choose to disregard the forecast interest cash flows for risk management purposes because they may be used to absorb operating costs and any remaining amounts would not be significant enough to affect risk management decisions.
- (3) The cash flow forecast is adjusted to include the variable rate asset and liability balances in each period in which such variable rate asset and liability balances are repriced. The principal amounts of these assets and liabilities are not actually being paid and, therefore, do not generate a cash flow. However, since interest is computed on the principal amounts for each period based on the then current market interest rate, such principal amounts expose the entity to the same interest rate risk as if they were cash flows being reinvested or refinanced.

- (4) The forecast cash flow and repricing exposures that are identified in each period represent the principal amounts of cash inflows that will be reinvested or repriced and cash outflows that will be refinanced or repriced at the market interest rates that are in effect when those forecast transactions occur.
- (5) The net cash flow and repricing exposure is the difference between the cash inflow and repricing exposures from assets and the cash outflow and repricing exposures from liabilities. In the illustration, the entity is exposed to interest rate declines because the exposure from assets exceeds the exposure from liabilities and the excess (i.e. the net amount) will be reinvested or repriced at the current market rate and there is no offsetting refinancing or repricing of outflows.

Note that some entities may banks regard some portion of their non-interest bearing demand deposits as economically equivalent to long-term debt. However, these deposits do not create a cash flow exposure to interest rates and would therefore be excluded from this analysis for accounting purposes.

Schedule II *Forecast net cash flow and repricing exposures* provides no more than a starting point for assessing cash flow exposure to interest rates and for adjusting hedging positions. The complete analysis includes outstanding hedging positions and is shown in Schedule III *Analysis of expected net exposures and hedging positions*. It compares the forecast net cash flow exposures for each period (developed in Schedule II) with existing hedging positions (obtained from Schedule I), and provides a basis for considering whether adjustment of the hedging relationship should be made.

Schedule III Analysis of expected net exposures and hedging positions						
<i>Quarterly period</i>	<i>X1</i>	<i>X2</i>	<i>X3</i>	<i>X4</i>	<i>X5</i>	<i>...n</i>
<i>(units)</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
Net cash flow and repricing exposures (Schedule II)	3,165	3,442	2,329	2,362	2,257	x,xxx
<i>Pre-existing swaps outstanding:</i>						
Receive-fixed, pay-variable (notional amounts)	2,000	2,000	1,200	1,200	1,200	x,xxx
Pay-fixed, receive-variable (notional amounts)	(1,000)	(1,000)	(500)	(500)	(500)	x,xxx
<i>Net exposure after pre-existing swaps</i>	<i>2,165</i>	<i>2,442</i>	<i>1,629</i>	<i>1,662</i>	<i>1,557</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>
<i>Transactions to adjust outstanding hedging positions:</i>						
Receive-fixed, pay variable swap 1 (notional amount, 10-years)	2,000	2,000	2,000	2,000	2,000	x,xxx
Pay-fixed, receive-variable swap 2 (notional amount, 3-years)			(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)	x,xxx
Swaps ...X						x,xxx
<i>Unhedged cash flow and repricing exposure</i>	<i>165</i>	<i>442</i>	<i>629</i>	<i>662</i>	<i>557</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>

The notional amounts of the interest rate swaps that are outstanding at the analysis date are included in each of the periods in which the interest rate swaps are outstanding to illustrate the impact of the outstanding interest rate swaps on the identified cash flow exposures. The notional amounts of the outstanding interest rate swaps are included in each period because interest is computed on the notional amounts each period, and the variable rate components of the outstanding swaps are repriced to the current market rate quarterly.

The notional amounts create an exposure to interest rates that in part is similar to the principal balances of variable rate assets and variable rate liabilities.

The exposure that remains after considering the existing positions is then evaluated to determine the extent to which adjustments of existing hedging positions are necessary. The bottom portion of Schedule III shows the beginning of Period X1 using interest rate swap transactions to reduce the net exposures further to within the tolerance levels established under the entity's risk management policy.

Note that in the illustration, the cash flow exposure is not entirely eliminated. Many entities ~~financial institutions~~ do not fully eliminate risk but rather reduce it to within some tolerable limit.

Various types of derivative instruments could be used to manage the cash flow exposure to interest rate risk identified in the schedule of forecast net cash flows (Schedule II). However, for the purpose of the illustration, it is assumed that interest rate swaps are used for all hedging activities. It is also assumed that in periods in which interest rate swaps should be reduced, rather than terminating some of the outstanding interest rate swap positions, a new swap with the opposite return characteristics is added to the portfolio.

In the illustration in Schedule III above, swap 1, a receive-fixed, pay-variable swap, is used to reduce the net exposure in Periods X1 and X2. Since it is a 10-year swap, it also reduces exposures identified in other future periods not shown. However, it has the effect of creating an over-hedged position in Periods X3–X5. Swap 2, a forward starting pay-fixed, receive-variable interest rate swap, is used to reduce the notional amount of the outstanding receive-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swaps in Periods X3–X5 and thereby reduce the over-hedged positions.

It also is noted that in many situations, no adjustment or only a single adjustment of the outstanding hedging position is necessary to bring the exposure to within an acceptable limit. However, when the entity's risk management policy specifies a very low tolerance of risk a greater number of adjustments to the hedging positions over the forecast period would be needed to further reduce any remaining risk.

To the extent that some of the interest rate swaps fully offset other interest rate swaps that have been entered into for hedging purposes, it is not necessary to include them in a designated hedging relationship for hedge accounting purposes. These offsetting positions can be combined, de-designated as hedging instruments, if necessary, and reclassified for accounting purposes from the hedging portfolio to the trading portfolio. This procedure limits the extent to which the gross swaps must continue to be designated and tracked in a hedging relationship for accounting purposes. For the purposes of this illustration it is assumed that CU500 of the pay-fixed, receive-variable interest rate swaps fully offset CU500 of the receive-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swaps at the beginning of Period X1 and for Periods X1–X5, and are de-designated as hedging instruments and reclassified to the trading account.

After reflecting these offsetting positions, the remaining gross interest rate swap positions from Schedule III are shown in Schedule IV as follows.

Schedule IV Interest rate swaps designated as hedges						
<i>Quarterly period</i>	<i>X1</i>	<i>X2</i>	<i>X3</i>	<i>X4</i>	<i>X5</i>	<i>...n</i>
<i>(units)</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
Receive-fixed, pay-variable (notional amounts)	3,500	3,500	2,700	2,700	2,700	x,xxx
Pay-fixed, receive-variable (notional amounts)	(500)	(500)	(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)	x,xxx
<i>Net outstanding swaps positions</i>	<i>3,000</i>	<i>3,000</i>	<i>1,700</i>	<i>1,700</i>	<i>1,700</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>

For the purposes of the illustrations, it is assumed that swap 2, entered into at the beginning of Period X1, only partially offsets another swap being accounted for as a hedge and therefore continues to be designated as a hedging instrument.

Hedge accounting considerations

Illustrating the designation of the hedging relationship

The discussion and illustrations thus far have focused primarily on economic and risk management considerations relating to the identification of risk in future periods and the adjustment of that risk using interest rate swaps. These activities form the basis for designating a hedging relationship for accounting purposes.

The examples in ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 focus primarily on hedging relationships involving a single hedged item and a single hedging instrument, but there is little discussion and guidance on portfolio hedging relationships for cash flow hedges when risk is being managed centrally. In this illustration, the general principles are applied to hedging relationships involving a component of risk in a portfolio having multiple risks from multiple transactions or positions.

Although designation is necessary to achieve hedge accounting, the way in which the designation is described also affects the extent to which the hedging relationship is judged to be effective for accounting purposes and the extent to which the entity's existing system for managing risk will be required to be modified to track hedging activities for accounting purposes. Accordingly, an entity may wish to designate the hedging relationship in a manner that avoids unnecessary systems changes by taking advantage of the information already generated by the risk management system and avoids unnecessary bookkeeping and tracking. In designating hedging relationships, the entity may also consider the extent to which ineffectiveness is expected to be recognized for accounting purposes under alternative designations.

The designation of the hedging relationship needs to specify various matters. These are illustrated and discussed here from the perspective of the hedge of the interest rate risk associated with the cash inflows, but the guidance can also be applied to the hedge of the risk associated with the cash outflows. It is fairly obvious that only a portion of the gross exposures relating to the cash inflows is being hedged by the interest rate swaps. Schedule V *The general hedging relationship* illustrates the designation of the portion of the gross reinvestment risk exposures identified in Schedule II as being hedged by the interest rate swaps.

Schedule V The general hedging relationship						
<i>Quarterly period</i>	<i>X1</i>	<i>X2</i>	<i>X3</i>	<i>X4</i>	<i>X5</i>	<i>...n</i>
<i>(units)</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
Cash inflow repricing exposure (Schedule II)	14,100	12,689	11,687	9,700	9,409	x,xxx
Receive-fixed, pay-variable swaps (Schedule IV)	3,500	3,500	2,700	2,700	2,700	x,xxx
<i>Hedged exposure percentage</i>	<i>24.8%</i>	<i>27.6%</i>	<i>23.1%</i>	<i>27.8%</i>	<i>28.7%</i>	<i>xx.x%</i>

The hedged exposure percentage is computed as the ratio of the notional amount of the receive-fixed, pay-variable swaps that are outstanding divided by the gross exposure. Note that in Schedule V there are sufficient levels of forecast reinvestments in each period to offset more than the notional amount of the receive-fixed, pay-variable swaps and satisfy the accounting requirement that the forecast transaction is highly probable.

It is not as obvious, however, how the interest rate swaps are specifically related to the cash flow interest risks designated as being hedged and how the interest rate swaps are effective in reducing that risk. The more specific designation is illustrated in Schedule VI *The specific hedging relationship* below. It provides a meaningful way of depicting the more complicated narrative designation of the hedge by focusing on the hedging objective to eliminate the cash flow variability associated with future changes in interest rates and to obtain an interest rate equal to the fixed rate inherent in the term structure of interest rates that exists at the commencement of the hedge.

The expected interest from the reinvestment of the cash inflows and repricings of the assets is computed by multiplying the gross amounts exposed by the forward rate for the period. For example, the gross exposure

for Period X2 of CU14,100 is multiplied by the forward rate for Periods X2–X5 of 5.50 per cent, 6.00 per cent, 6.50 per cent and 7.25 per cent, respectively, to compute the expected interest for those quarterly periods based on the current term structure of interest rates. The hedged expected interest is computed by multiplying the expected interest for the applicable three-month period by the hedged exposure percentage.

Schedule VI The specific hedging relationship							
<i>Term structure of interest rates</i>							
<i>Quarterly period</i>		<i>X1</i>	<i>X2</i>	<i>X3</i>	<i>X4</i>	<i>X5</i>	<i>...n</i>
Spot rates		5.00%	5.25%	5.50%	5.75%	6.05%	x.xx%
Forward rates ^(a)		5.00%	5.50%	6.00%	6.50%	7.25%	x.xx%
<i>Cash flow exposures and expected interest amounts</i>							
Repricing period	Time to forecast transaction	Gross amounts exposed	Expected interest				
			CU	CU	CU	CU	CU
2	3 months	14,100	°	194	212	229	256
3	6 months	12,689			190	206	230 xxx
4	9 months	11,687				190	212 xxx
5	12 months	9,700					176 xxx
6	15 months	9,409					xxx
Hedged percentage (Schedule V) in the previous period				24.8%	27.6%	23.1%	27.8% xx.x%
Hedged expected interest				48	52	44	49 xx
(a) The forward interest rates are computed from the spot interest rates and rounded for the purposes of the presentation. Computations that are based on the forward interest rates are made based on the actual computed forward rate and then rounded for the purposes of the presentation.							

It does not matter whether the gross amount exposed is reinvested in long-term fixed rate debt or variable rate debt, or in short-term debt that is rolled over in each subsequent period. The exposure to changes in the forward interest rate is the same. For example, if the CU14,100 is reinvested at a fixed rate at the beginning of Period X2 for six months, it will be reinvested at 5.75 per cent. The expected interest is based on the forward interest rates for Period X2 of 5.50 per cent and for Period X3 of 6.00 per cent, equal to a blended rate of 5.75 per cent $(1.055 \times 1.060)^{0.5}$, which is the Period X2 spot rate for the next six months.

However, only the expected interest from the reinvestment of the cash inflows or repricing of the gross amount for the first three-month period after the forecast transaction occurs is designated as being hedged. The expected interest being hedged is represented by the shaded cells. The exposure for the subsequent periods is not hedged. In the example, the portion of the interest rate exposure being hedged is the forward rate of 5.50 per cent for Period X2. In order to assess hedge effectiveness and compute actual hedge ineffectiveness on an ongoing basis, the entity may use the information on hedged interest cash inflows in Schedule VI and compare it with updated estimates of expected interest cash inflows (for example, in a table that looks like Schedule II). As long as expected interest cash inflows exceed hedged interest cash inflows, the entity may compare the cumulative change in the fair value of the hedged cash inflows with the cumulative change in the fair value of the hedging instrument to compute actual hedge effectiveness. If there are insufficient expected interest cash inflows, there will be ineffectiveness. It is measured by

comparing the cumulative change in the fair value of the expected interest cash flows to the extent they are less than the hedged cash flows with the cumulative change in the fair value of the hedging instrument.

Describing the designation of the hedging relationship

As mentioned previously, there are various matters that should be specified in the designation of the hedging relationship that complicate the description of the designation but are necessary to limit ineffectiveness to be recognized for accounting purposes and to avoid unnecessary systems changes and bookkeeping. The example that follows describes the designation more fully and identifies additional aspects of the designation not apparent from the previous illustrations.

Example designation
<p><i>Hedging objective</i></p> <p>The hedging objective is to eliminate the risk of interest rate fluctuations over the hedging period, which is the life of the interest rate swap, and in effect obtain a fixed interest rate during this period that is equal to the fixed interest rate on the interest rate swap.</p> <p><i>Type of hedge</i></p> <p>Cash flow hedge.</p> <p><i>Hedging instrument</i></p> <p>The receive-fixed, pay-variable swaps are designated as the hedging instrument. They hedge the cash flow exposure to interest rate risk.</p> <p>Each repricing of the swap hedges a three-month portion of the interest cash inflows that results from:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the forecast reinvestment or repricing of the principal amounts shown in Schedule V.• unrelated investments or repricings that occur after the repricing dates on the swap over its life and involve different borrowers or lenders. <p><i>The hedged item—General</i></p> <p>The hedged item is a portion of the gross interest cash inflows that will result from the reinvestment or repricing of the cash flows identified in Schedule V and are expected to occur within the periods shown on such schedule. The portion of the interest cash inflow that is being hedged has three components:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the principal component giving rise to the interest cash inflow and the period in which it occurs,• the interest rate component, and• the time component or period covered by the hedge. <p><i>The hedged item—The principal component</i></p> <p>The portion of the interest cash inflows being hedged is the amount that results from the first portion of the principal amounts being invested or repriced in each period:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• that is equal to the sum of the notional amounts of the received-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swaps that are designated as hedging instruments and outstanding in the period of the reinvestment or repricing, and• that corresponds to the first principal amounts of cash flow exposures that are invested or repriced at or after the repricing dates of the interest rate swaps. <p><i>The hedged item—The interest rate component</i></p> <p>The portion of the interest rate change that is being hedged is the change in both of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the credit component of the interest rate being paid on the principal amount invested or repriced that is equal to the credit risk inherent in the interest rate swap. It is that portion of the interest rate on the investment that is equal to the interest index of the interest rate

- swap, such as LIBOR, and
- the yield curve component of the interest rate that is equal to the repricing period on the interest rate swap designated as the hedging instrument.

The hedged item—The hedged period

The period of the exposure to interest rate changes on the portion of the cash flow exposures being hedged is:

- the period from the designation date to the repricing date of the interest rate swap that occurs within the quarterly period in which, but not before, the forecast transactions occur, and
- its effects for the period after the forecast transactions occur equal to the repricing interval of the interest rate swap.

It is important to recognize that the swaps are not hedging the cash flow risk for a single investment over its entire life. The swaps are designated as hedging the cash flow risk from different principal investments and repricings that are made in each repricing period of the swaps over their entire term. The swaps hedge only the interest accruals that occur in the first period following the reinvestment. They are hedging the cash flow impact resulting from a change in interest rates that occurs up to the repricing of the swap. The exposure to changes in rates for the period from the repricing of the swap to the date of the hedged reinvestment of cash inflows or repricing of variable rate assets is not hedged. When the swap is repriced, the interest rate on the swap is fixed until the next repricing date and the accrual of the net swap settlements is determined. Any changes in interest rates after that date that affect the amount of the interest cash inflow are no longer hedged for accounting purposes.

Designation objectives

Systems considerations

Many of the tracking and bookkeeping requirements are eliminated by designating each repricing of an interest rate swap as hedging the cash flow risk from forecast reinvestments of cash inflows and repricings of variable rate assets for only a portion of the lives of the related assets. Much tracking and bookkeeping would be necessary if the swaps were instead designated as hedging the cash flow risk from forecast principal investments and repricings of variable rate assets over the entire lives of these assets.

This type of designation avoids keeping track of gains and losses recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ after the forecast transactions occur ([ED38.108](#) and [ED38.109](#) [IAS 39.97](#) and [IAS 39.98](#)) because the portion of the cash flow risk being hedged is that portion that will be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ in the period immediately following the forecast transactions that corresponds with the periodic net cash settlements on the swap. If the hedge were to cover the entire life of the assets being acquired, it would be necessary to associate a specific interest rate swap with the asset being acquired. If a forecast transaction is the acquisition of a fixed rate instrument, the fair value of the swap that hedged that transaction would be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ to adjust the interest revenue ~~income~~ on the asset when the interest revenue ~~income~~ is recognized. The swap would then have to be terminated or redesignated in another hedging relationship. If a forecast transaction is the acquisition of a variable rate asset, the swap would continue in the hedging relationship but it would have to be tracked back to the asset acquired so that any fair value amounts on the swap recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ could be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ upon the subsequent sale of the asset.

It also avoids the necessity of associating with variable rate assets any portion of the fair value of the swaps that is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. Accordingly, there is no portion of the fair value of the swap that is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ that should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ when a forecast transaction occurs or upon the sale of a variable rate asset.

This type of designation also permits flexibility in deciding how to reinvest cash flows when they occur. Since the hedged risk relates only to a single period that corresponds with the repricing period of the interest rate swap designated as the hedging instrument, it is not necessary to determine at the designation

date whether the cash flows will be reinvested in fixed rate or variable rate assets or to specify at the date of designation the life of the asset to be acquired.

Effectiveness considerations

Ineffectiveness is greatly reduced by designating a specific portion of the cash flow exposure as being hedged.

- Ineffectiveness due to credit differences between the interest rate swap and hedged forecast cash flow is eliminated by designating the cash flow risk being hedged as the risk attributable to changes in the interest rates that correspond with the rates inherent in the swap, such as the AA rate curve. This type of designation prevents changes resulting from changes in credit spreads from being considered as ineffectiveness.
- Ineffectiveness due to duration differences between the interest rate swap and hedged forecast cash flow is eliminated by designating the interest rate risk being hedged as the risk relating to changes in the portion of the yield curve that corresponds with the period in which the variable rate leg of the interest rate swap is repriced.
- Ineffectiveness due to interest rate changes that occur between the repricing date of the interest rate swap and the date of the forecast transactions is eliminated by simply not hedging that period of time. The period from the repricing of the swap and the occurrence of the forecast transactions in the period immediately following the repricing of the swap is left unhedged. Therefore, the difference in dates does not result in ineffectiveness.

Accounting considerations

The ability to qualify for hedge accounting using the methodology described here is founded on provisions in ~~IAS 39~~ **ED 38** and on interpretations of its requirements. Some of those are described in the answer to Question F.6.2 *Hedge Accounting Considerations when Interest Rate Risk is Managed on a Net Basis*. Some additional and supporting provisions and interpretations are identified below.

Hedging a portion of the risk exposure

The ability to identify and hedge only a portion of the cash flow risk exposure resulting from the reinvestment of cash flows or repricing of variable rate instruments is found in **ED38.90** ~~IAS 39.84~~ as interpreted in the answers to Questions F.6.2 Issue (k) and F.2.17 *Partial Term Hedging*.

Hedging multiple risks with a single instrument

The ability to designate a single interest rate swap as a hedge of the cash flow exposure to interest rates resulting from various reinvestments of cash inflows or repricings of variable rate assets that occur over the life of the swap is founded on **ED38.85** ~~IAS 39.76~~ as interpreted in the answer to Question F.1.12 *Hedges of More Than One Type of Risk*.

Hedging similar risks in a portfolio

The ability to specify the forecast transaction being hedged as a portion of the cash flow exposure to interest rates for a portion of the duration of the investment that gives rise to the interest payment without specifying at the designation date the expected life of the instrument and whether it pays a fixed or variable rate is founded on the answer to Question F.6.2 Issue (l), which specifies that the items in the portfolio do not necessarily have to have the same overall exposure to risk, providing they share the same risk for which they are designated as being hedged.

Hedge terminations

The ability to de-designate the forecast transaction (the cash flow exposure on an investment or repricing that will occur after the repricing date of the swap) as being hedged is provided for in **ED38.112** ~~IAS 39.104~~ dealing with hedge terminations. While a portion of the forecast transaction is no longer being hedged, the interest rate swap is not de-designated, and it continues to be a hedging instrument for the remaining transactions in the series that have not occurred. For example, assume that an interest rate swap having a remaining life of one year has been designated as hedging a series of three quarterly reinvestments of cash flows. The next forecast cash flow reinvestment occurs in three months. When the interest rate

swap is repriced in three months at the then current variable rate, the fixed rate and the variable rate on the interest rate swap become known and no longer provide hedge protection for the next three months. If the next forecast transaction does not occur until three months and ten days, the ten-day period that remains after the repricing of the interest rate swap is not hedged.

F.6.4 Hedge Accounting: Premium or Discount on Forward Exchange Contract

A forward exchange contract is designated as a hedging instrument, for example, in a hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation. Is it permitted to amortize the discount or premium on the forward exchange contract to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ over the term of the contract?

No. The premium or discount on a forward exchange contract may not be amortized to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~. Derivatives are always measured at fair value in the statement of financial position. The gain or loss resulting from a change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract is always recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ unless the forward exchange contract is designated and effective as a hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge or in a hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation, in which case the effective portion of the gain or loss is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. In that case, the amounts recognized in net assets/equity are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~other comprehensive income~~ are reclassified from equity to profit or loss when the hedged future cash flows occur or on the disposal of the net investment, as appropriate. Under ED38.112 ~~IAS 39.74(b)~~, the interest element (time value) of the fair value of a forward may be excluded from the designated hedge relationship. In that case, changes in the interest element portion of the fair value of the forward exchange contract are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

F.6.5 ED 38 and IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 39 and IAS 21~~ Fair Value Hedge of Asset Measured at Cost

If the future sale of a ship carried at historical cost is hedged against the exposure to currency risk by foreign currency borrowing, does ~~IAS 39~~ ED38 require the ship to be remeasured for changes in the exchange rate even though the basis of measurement for the asset is historical cost?

No. In a fair value hedge, the hedged item is remeasured. However, a foreign currency borrowing cannot be classified as a fair value hedge of a ship since a ship does not contain any separately measurable foreign currency risk. If the hedge accounting conditions in ED38.98 ~~IAS 39.88~~ are met, the foreign currency borrowing may be classified as a cash flow hedge of an anticipated sale in that foreign currency. In a cash flow hedge, the hedged item is not remeasured.

To illustrate: a shipping entity in Denmark has a US subsidiary that has the same functional currency (the Danish krone). The shipping entity measures its ships at historical cost less depreciation in the consolidated financial statements. In accordance with IAS 21.23(b), the ships are recognized in Danish krone using the historical exchange rate. To hedge, fully or partly, the potential currency risk on the ships at disposal in US dollars, the shipping entity normally finances its purchases of ships with loans denominated in US dollars.

In this case, a US dollar borrowing (or a portion of it) may be designated as a cash flow hedge of the anticipated sale of the ship financed by the borrowing provided the sale is highly probable, for example, because it is expected to occur in the immediate future, and the amount of the sales proceeds designated as being hedged is equal to the amount of the foreign currency borrowing designated as the hedging instrument. The gains and losses on the currency borrowing that are determined to constitute an effective hedge of the anticipated sale are recognized in other comprehensive income in accordance with IAS 39.95(a).

Section G Other

G.1 Disclosure of Changes in Fair Value

~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 requires financial assets classified as available for sale (AFS) and financial assets and financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ to be remeasured to fair value. Unless a financial asset or a financial liability is designated as a cash flow hedging instrument, fair value changes for financial assets and financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, and fair value changes for AFS assets are recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. What disclosures are required regarding the amounts of the fair value changes during a reporting period?

IFRS 7.20 requires items of revenue income, expense and gains and losses to be disclosed. This disclosure requirement encompasses items of revenue income, expense and gains and losses that arise on remeasurement to fair value. Therefore, an entity provides disclosures of fair value changes, distinguishing between changes that are recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss and changes that are recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income. Further breakdown is provided of changes that relate to:

- (a) AFS assets, showing separately the amount of gain or loss recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income during the period and the amount that was recognized in surplus for deficit reclassified from equity to profit or loss for the period as a reclassification adjustment;
- (b) financial assets or financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss, showing separately those fair value changes on financial assets or financial liabilities (i) designated as such upon initial recognition and (ii) classified as held for trading in accordance with ED 38 IAS 39; and
- (c) hedging instruments.

~~IFRS 7~~ ED 39 neither requires nor prohibits disclosure of components of the change in fair value by the way items are classified for internal purposes. For example, an entity may choose to disclose separately the change in fair value of those derivatives that in accordance with ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 it categorizes as held for trading, but the entity classifies as part of risk management activities outside the trading portfolio.

In addition, IFRS 7.8 requires disclosure of the carrying amounts of financial assets or financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss, showing separately: (i) those designated as such upon initial recognition and (ii) those held for trading in accordance with ED 38 IAS 39.

G.2 ~~IAS 39 and IAS 7~~ ED 38 and IPSAS 2 Hedge Accounting: Statements of Cash Flows

How should cash flows arising from hedging instruments be classified in statements of cash flows?

Cash flows arising from hedging instruments are classified as operating, investing or financing activities, on the basis of the classification of the cash flows arising from the hedged item. While the terminology in IPSAS 2 IAS 7 has not been updated to reflect ED 38 IAS 39, the classification of cash flows arising from hedging instruments in the statement of cash flows should be consistent with the classification of these instruments as hedging instruments under ED 38 IAS 39.

Basis for Conclusions

This Basis for Conclusions accompanies, but is not part of, ED 38.

Introduction

BC1. This Basis for Conclusions summarizes the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board's (IPSASB) considerations in reaching the conclusions in ED 38, "Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement". As this IPSAS is based on IAS 39, "Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement" issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB), the Basis for Conclusions outlines only those areas where ED 38 deviates from the main requirements of IAS 32.

BC2. This project on financial instruments is a part of the IPSASB's convergence program which aims to converge IPSASs with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs). The IPSASB acknowledges that there are other aspects of financial instruments, insofar as they relate to the public sector, which are not addressed in IAS 39. These may be addressed by future projects of the IPSASB. In particular, the IPSASB acknowledges that future projects may be required to address:

- Certain transactions undertaken by central banks; and
- Receivables and payables that arise from arrangements that are, in substance, similar to, and have the same economic effect as, financial instruments, but are not contractual in nature.

BC3. In developing this IPSAS, the IPSASB agreed to retain the existing text of IAS 39 wherever consistent with existing IPSASs, and deal with any public sector specific issues through additional application guidance.

BC4. In September 2007 the IASB issued amendments to IAS 1, "Presentation of Financial Statements" which introduced a new concept into the presentation of financial statements called "comprehensive income". As the IPSASB has not yet considered this, along with some of the other amendments proposed in IAS 1, those amendments have not been included in ED 38.

BC5. Certain amendments to IAS 39 published by the IASB during 2008 have been included in the text of ED38 even though they have not been approved as final amendments by the IASB. These include:

- Amendments to the scope of IAS 39 along with the requirements for identifying embedded derivatives included in the 2009 annual improvements project.
- Amendments to IAS 39 and IFRIC 9 relating to the classification of embedded derivatives published in December 2008.

Scope

BC6. Assets and liabilities may arise out of contractual non-exchange revenue transactions. The initial recognition and measurement of assets and liabilities arising out of non-exchange revenue transactions is addressed in IPSAS 23, "Revenue from Non-Exchange Transactions (Taxes and Transfers)". IPSAS 23 requires assets and liabilities to be measured initially at fair value. It does not provide guidance for the subsequent measurement or derecognition of these assets and liabilities.

BC7. Where the assets and liabilities arise out of contractual arrangements and otherwise meet the definition of a financial instrument, ED 38 should be used to subsequently measure and derecognize those assets and liabilities.

BC8. The IPSASB considered whether the initial measurement requirements in IPSAS 23 are appropriate for assets and liabilities that arise from non-exchange transactions, but are in effect financial instruments. While ED 38 requires that financial assets and financial liabilities are measured initially at fair value, it does however require specific treatment for any transaction costs incurred. ED 38 requires that transaction costs be included in the initial measurement of financial

assets and financial liabilities, except those that an entity subsequently measures at fair value with the changes in fair value measured in surplus or deficit.

BC9. As a result, the IPSASB concluded that an entity should initially measure any financial assets acquired as part of a contractual non-exchange revenue transaction using ED 38 rather than IPSAS 23. The subsequent measurement and derecognition of these financial assets is also done using ED 38.

Initial Measurement

Concessionary Loans

BC10. Concessionary loans can either be granted or received by an entity. Concessionary loans are granted to achieve specific public policy objectives and usually result in the loan being granted on favorable terms e.g. flexible repayment terms and the payment of either no interest or interest at a below-market interest rate. The issue or receipt of concessionary loans poses particular accounting issues because their terms are not market related.

BC11. As concessionary loans are issued to achieve particular public policy objectives, the IPSASB determined that the off-market portion of a concessionary loan should be accounted for as follows:

- The issuer of a concessionary loan accounts for the off-market portion of the loan as an expense in the year the loan is issued.
- The recipient of a concessionary loan considers whether the off-market portion of the loan is non-exchange revenue and should be accounted for in accordance with IPSAS 23.

Financial Guarantees Issued at No or Nominal Consideration

BC12. The IPSASB acknowledged that in the public sector financial guarantee contracts are frequently entered into by issuers with nil consideration or nominal consideration often in order to further the issuer's social policy objectives. The IPSASB considered the approach to measurement at initial recognition for such financial guarantee contracts.

BC13. Where the financial guarantee contract is entered into for consideration, the IPSAB considered whether the amount of such consideration should be deemed to be a fair value. The IPSAB concluded that such an assumption would be false and that recognition at such an amount would not be an accurate reflection of the financial risk of the guarantee for the issuing entity unless the entity determined that it was as the result of an exchange transaction. The IPSAB concluded that where consideration is for a nominal amount an entity should be required to determine the carrying value at initial recognition in the same way as if no consideration had been paid.

BC14. The IPSAB therefore considered the approach to the determination of measurement at initial recognition for such financial guarantee contracts. Where an active market exists for financial guarantee contracts equivalent to or similar to that issued a fair value should be estimated through observation. Where no active market exists, an entity should consider the feasibility of using a valuation technique, although the IPSAB acknowledged that such models are often highly complex and their viability questionable on cost-benefit grounds. Where an entity cannot determine fair value through either observation of an active market or through a valuation technique it should determine initial measurement through IPSAS 19, "Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets"

BCXX (Alternative wording) The IPSAB therefore considered the approach to the determination of measurement at initial recognition for such financial guarantee contracts. Where an active market exists for financial guarantee contracts equivalent to or similar to that issued a fair value should be estimated through observation. Where no active market exists the IPSAB considered whether an

entity should consider the feasibility of using a valuation technique. The e IPSAB acknowledged that such models are often highly complex and their viability questionable on cost-benefit grounds. From the perspective of the qualitative characteristics of financial information the information generated by such models may therefore be unreliable and difficult to understand. Where an entity cannot determine fair value through observation of an active market the IPSAB concluded that it is more appropriate determine initial measurement through IPSAS 19, “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets”, because such a measure is a better indication of an entity’s exposure to financial risk as result to entering into a financial guarantee contract at nil or nominal consideration.

Comparison with IAS 39

Proposed International Public Sector Accounting Standard, ED 38 “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” is drawn primarily from International Accounting Standard 39, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” (including final and proposed amendments to December, 31 2008). At the time of issuing this Standard, the IPSASB has not yet considered the revision made by the IASB to IAS 1, “Presentation of Financial Statements” which introduces the concept of comprehensive income. As the IPSASB has not considered the concept of comprehensive income in the public sector, ED 38 does not reflect amendments made to IAS 39 as a consequence of the revisions made to IAS 1. The main differences between ED 38 and IAS 39 are as follows:

- The scope of ED 38 is different from IAS 39. This Standard prescribes that financial guarantee contracts are treated as financial instruments and not as insurance contracts, while under IAS 39 entities are permitted to treat some financial guarantee contracts as insurance contracts.
- In certain instances, ED 38 uses different terminology from IAS 39. The most significant examples are the use of the terms “statement of financial performance” and “net assets/equity”. The equivalent terms in IAS 39 are “statement of comprehensive income or separate income statement (if presented)” and “equity”.
- ED 38 does not distinguish between “revenue” and “income”. IAS 39 distinguishes between “revenue and “income”, with “income having a broader meaning than the term “revenue”.
- Additional application guidance has been developed to explain the application of the principles in the Standard to financial instruments encountered in the public sector.
- Examples included in the text, application guidance and illustrative examples have either been amended or deleted based on their applicability to the public sector.
- Principles from IFRIC 9, “Reassessment of Embedded Derivatives” and IFRIC 16 “Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation” have been included as an appendix to ED 38.
- Examples in the application guidance and illustrative examples have been amended to describe transactions and scenarios that are likely to occur in the public sector, as well as to accommodate concepts and terminology used in other IPSASs.

*Proposed International Public Sector Accounting
Standard*

Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement

International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board
International Federation of Accountants
545 Fifth Avenue, 14th Floor
New York, New York 10017 USA

This International Public Sector Accounting Standard was prepared by the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board (IPSASB), an independent standard-setting body within the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC). The objective of the IPSASB is to serve the public interest by developing high quality accounting standards for use by public sector entities around the world in the preparation of general purpose financial statements. This will enhance the quality and transparency of public sector financial reporting and strengthen public confidence in public sector financial management. This publication may be downloaded free-of-charge from the IFAC website: <http://www.ifac.org>. The approved text is published in the English language. The mission of IFAC is to serve the public interest, strengthen the worldwide accountancy profession and contribute to the development of strong international economies by establishing and promoting adherence to high-quality professional standards, furthering the international convergence of such standards and speaking out on public interest issues where the profession's expertise is most relevant.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

This International Public Sector Accounting Standard is drawn primarily from International Accounting Standard (IAS) 39, "Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement", IFRIC 9 "Reassessment of Embedded Derivatives" and IFRIC 16 "Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation" published by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB). Extracts from IAS 39, IFRIC 9 and IFRIC 11 are reproduced in this publication of the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board of the International Federation of Accountants with the permission of the International Accounting Standards Committee Foundation (IASCF).

The approved text of International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) is that published by the IASB in the English language, and copies may be obtained directly from IASB Publications Department, 30 Cannon Street, London EC4M 6XH, United Kingdom.

E-mail: publications@iasb.org

Internet: <http://www.iasb.org>

IFRSs, IASs, Exposure Drafts and other publications of the IASB are copyright of the IASCF.

"IFRS," "IAS," "IASB," "IASCF," "International Accounting Standards" and "International Financial Reporting Standards", are trademarks of the IASCF and should not be used without the approval of the IASCF.

Copyright © March 2009 by the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC). All rights reserved. Permission is granted to make copies of this work provided that such copies are for use in academic classrooms or for personal use and are not sold or disseminated and provided that each copy bears the following credit line: "Copyright © March 2009 by the International Federation of Accountants (IFAC). All rights reserved. Used with permission of IFAC. Contact permissions@ifac.org for permission to reproduce, store or transmit this document." Otherwise, written permission from IFAC is required to reproduce, store or transmit, or to make other similar uses of, this document, except as permitted by law. Contact permissions@ifac.org.

OBJECTIVE

Governments around the world have been extensively involved in providing financial support to financial institutions and other entities affected by the current global economic crisis. The IPSASB identified the need to provide appropriate accounting guidance to governments and their entities for these specific transactions. Consequently, it agreed to issue a suite of standards providing principles for the recognition, measurement, presentation and disclosure of financial instruments which would be drawn primarily from IAS 32, “Financial Instruments: Presentation”, IAS 39 “Financial Instruments: recognition and Measurement” and IFRS 7, “Financial Instruments: Disclosure”.

This Exposure Draft is based on IAS 39, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” and addresses the recognition and measurement of financial instruments; ED 37 addresses the presentation of financial instruments and ED 39 the disclosure of financial instruments.

The IPSASB has not deviated from the principles in IAS 39, but has amended the text to align it with other IPSASs and has addressed public sector specific issues through Application Guidance. This approach is in line with the IPSASB’s strategy of converging IPSASs with IFRSs where appropriate. Differences between this Standard and IAS 39 are highlighted in the Comparison with IAS 39. This Exposure Draft also include relevant Interpretations issued by the International Financial Reporting Interpretations Committee (IFRIC) as Appendices to the Standard.

REQUEST FOR COMMENTS

The IPSASB invites comments on all the changes proposed in the Exposure Draft, and would particularly welcome comments to the question set out in the “Specific Matter for Comment” section. Comments are most helpful if they indicate the specific paragraph or group of paragraphs to which they relate, contain a clear rationale and, where applicable, provide a suggestion for alternative wording.

Specific Matter for Comment

The IPSASB would particularly value comments on the following:

[Question]

Do you agree with this proposal?

Please provide your rationale for agreeing or disagreeing with this proposal.

**PROPOSED INTERNATIONAL PUBLIC SECTOR ACCOUNTING
STANDARD ED 38
FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT**

CONTENTS

	Paragraph
Introduction	IN1– IN14
Objective.....	1
Scope	2 - 8
Definitions	9 - 10
Embedded Derivatives	11 - 15
Recognition and Derecognition	16 - 44
Initial Recognition	16
Derecognition of a Financial Asset	17-37
Transfers that Qualify for Derecognition	26 - 30
Transfers that do not Qualify for Derecognition	31
Continuing Involvement in Transferred Assets	32 - 37
All Transfers	38 - 39
Regular Way Purchases and Sales of a Financial Asset	40
Derecognition of a Financial Liability	41 - 44
Measurement	45 - 79
Initial Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities	45 - 46
Subsequent Measurement of Financial Assets	47 - 48
Subsequent Measurement of Financial Liabilities	49
Fair Value Considerations	50 - 52
Reclassifications	53 - 63
Gains and Losses	64 - 66
Impairment and Uncollectibility of Financial Assets	67
Financial Assets Carried at Amortized Cost	72 - 74
Financial Assets Carried at Cost	75
Available-For-Sale Financial Assets	76 - 78
Hedging	80 - 113
Hedging Instruments	81 - 86
Qualifying Hedging Instruments	81 - 82
Designation of Hedging Instruments	83 - 86
Hedged Items	87 - 94
Qualifying Items	87 - 89

Designation of Financial Items as Hedged Items	90 - 91
Designation of Non-Financial Items as Hedged Items	92
Designation of Groups of Hedged Items	93 - 94
Hedge Accounting	95 - 113
Fair Value Hedges	99 - 105
Cash Flow Hedges	106 - 112
Hedges of a Net Investment	113
Transitional Provisions	114 - 124
Effective Date	125 – 127
Amendments to other IPSASs	
Appendix A – Application Guidance	
Appendix B – Reassessment of Embedded Derivatives	
Appendix C – Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation	
Illustrative Examples	
Implementation Guidance	
Basis for Conclusions	
Comparison with IAS 39	

International Public Sector Accounting Standard XX, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” is set out in paragraphs 1–127. All the paragraphs have equal authority except as noted otherwise. IPSAS XX should be read in the context of its objective, the Basis for Conclusions, and the “Preface to International Public Sector Accounting Standards.” IPSAS 3, “Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors” provides a basis for selecting and applying accounting policies in the absence of explicit guidance.

Introduction (not marked-up)

- IN1. The Standard prescribes recognition and measurement principles for financial instruments and is based on IAS 39, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” (including final and proposed amendments published up to December, 31 2008).

Scope

- IN2. Financial instruments are contractual arrangements that result in a financial asset for one entity and a financial liability or equity instrument in another. Rights and obligation arising out of non-contractual arrangements, such as through the exercise of legislation or through constructive obligations, are not financial instruments. The recognition and measurement of rights and obligations arising out of these transactions are addressed in other IPSASs.
- IN2. Many contracts meet the definition of a financial asset or a financial liability. Some of these are accounted for either by using other IPSASs, or accounted for partly using other IPSASs and partly using this Standard. Some examples include rights and obligations arising from employee benefits, lease receivables and finance lease payables.
- IN3. This Standard does not apply to insurance contracts, except financial guarantee contracts and embedded derivatives included in insurance contracts. An entity is however encouraged to apply this Standard to insurance contracts that involve the transfer of financial risk.
- IN4. Commitments to provide credit under specified conditions (loan commitments) are excluded from the scope of this Standard, with three exceptions. Notably, commitments to provide a loan at a below market interest rate are within the scope of this Standard. Most other loan commitments are accounted for using IPSAS 19, “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets”.
- IN5. This Standard applies to contracts for the purchase or sale of a non-financial item if the contract can be settled net in cash or another financial instrument, or by exchanging financial instruments. If the contracts were entered into and continue to be held for the purpose of the receipt or delivery of a non-financial item in accordance with an entity’s expected purchase, sale or usage requirements, this Standard does not apply.

Initial Recognition and Derecognition

- IN6. An entity recognizes financial assets and financial liabilities when it becomes a party to the contractual provisions of the instrument. Regular way purchases of financial assets can either be recognized using trade or settlement date accounting, while derivatives are always recognized using trade date accounting. Regular way purchases of financial assets are contracts that involve the exchange of the underlying instrument within a time frame established in the marketplace concerned.
- IN7. An entity derecognizes regular way purchases and sales of financial assets either using trade or settlement date accounting. Financial assets are derecognized using the following steps:
- Consolidate all controlled entities and special purpose entities;
 - Determine whether the derecognition principles are applied to an asset as a whole, or to a part of an asset;
 - Assess whether the rights to the cash flows have expired;
 - Assess whether the rights to receive the cash flows have been transferred to another party;
 - Assess whether an obligation has been assumed to pay the cash flows from the asset to another party;
 - Assess whether the entity has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership to another party;
 - If substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership have not been transferred to another party, assess whether control has been retained.
- IN8. A financial liability is derecognized when the liability has been extinguished. An existing liability is derecognized and a new liability recognized when:

- An entity exchanges debt instruments with another entity, and the terms of the instruments are substantially different; and
- The terms of an existing debt instrument are substantially modified.

When an entity has its debt waived, an entity considers the requirements in this Standard along with IPSAS 23, “Revenue from Non-Exchange Transactions (Taxes and Transfers)” dealing with debt forgiveness.

Initial and Subsequent Measurement

IN9. Financial assets and financial liabilities are initially measured at fair value. Where an entity subsequently measures financial assets and financial liabilities at fair value, transaction costs are not included in the amount initially recognized.

IN10. An entity subsequently measures financial assets using four categories:

- Financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit – assets are subsequently measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit.
- Held-to-maturity investments – assets are measured at amortized cost less impairment losses. Impairment losses are recognized in surplus or deficit.
- Loans and receivables – assets are measured at amortized cost less impairment losses. Impairment losses are recognized in surplus or deficit.
- Available-for-sale financial assets – assets are measured at fair value, with changes in fair value recognized directly in net assets/equity. Impairment losses incurred on available-for-sale instruments are recognized in surplus or deficit and not in net assets/equity.

IN11. Investments in equity instruments that cannot be measured at fair value because fair value cannot be determined reliably, are measured at cost less impairment losses.

IN12. Financial liabilities are measured at amortized cost, except for financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit, financial guarantees, loan commitments and liabilities arising from transfers of financial assets.

IN13. An entity may only reclassify financial instruments between the various categories under certain circumstances.

Hedge Accounting

IN14. This Standard prescribes principles for hedge accounting. Hedge accounting aims to reduce the volatility of an entity’s financial performance by offsetting gains and losses on certain instruments. An entity may elect to apply hedge accounting, but only if prescribed conditions are met.

**INTERNATIONAL PUBLIC SECTOR ACCOUNTING
STANDARD IPSAS ED 38
FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT**

Objective

1. The objective of this Standard is to establish principles for recognizing and measuring financial assets, financial liabilities and some contracts to buy or sell non-financial items. Requirements for presenting information about financial instruments are in ED 37, ~~IAS 32~~ “Financial Instruments: Presentation”. Requirements for disclosing information about financial instruments are in ED 39, ~~IFRS 7~~ “Financial Instruments: Disclosures”. IAS 39.1; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.

Scope

2. This Standard shall be applied by all entities to all types of financial instruments, except:
 - (a) Those interests in controlled entities ~~subsidiaries~~, associates and joint ventures that are accounted for under IPSAS 6, ~~IAS 27~~ “Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements”, IPSAS 7, ~~IAS 28~~ “Investments in Associates” or IPSAS 8, ~~IAS 31~~ “Interests in Joint Ventures”. However, entities shall apply this Standard to an interest in a controlled entity ~~subsidiary~~, associate or joint venture that according to IPSAS 6, IPSAS 7 or IPSAS 8 ~~IAS 27~~, ~~IAS 28~~ or ~~IAS 31~~ is accounted for under this Standard. Entities shall also apply this Standard to derivatives on an interest in a controlled entity ~~subsidiary~~, associate or joint venture unless the derivative meets the definition of an equity instrument of the entity in ED 37 ~~IAS 32~~.
 - (b) Rights and obligations under leases to which IPSAS 13 ~~IAS 17~~ “Leases” applies. However:
 - (i) Lease receivables recognized by a lessor are subject to the derecognition and impairment provisions of this Standard (see paragraphs 17–39, 67, 68, 72–74 and Appendix A paragraphs AG50–AG72 and AG121–AG130);
 - (ii) Finance lease payables recognized by a lessee are subject to the derecognition provisions of this Standard (see paragraphs 41–44 and Appendix A paragraphs AG77–AG85); and
 - (iii) Derivatives that are embedded in leases are subject to the embedded derivatives provisions of this Standard (see

IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.

paragraphs 11–15 and Appendix A paragraphs AG39–AG45).

- (c) Employers’ rights and obligations under employee benefit plans, to which IPSAS 25, IAS 19 “Employee Benefits” applies. IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.
- (d) Financial instruments issued by the entity that meet the definition of an equity instrument in ED 37 IAS 32 (including options and warrants) or that are required to be classified as an equity instrument in accordance with paragraphs 15 and 16 or 17 and 18 of ED 37. However, the holder of such equity instruments shall apply this Standard to those instruments, unless they meet the exception in (a) above. IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.
Added amendment from IAS 32, puttable instruments.
- (e) Rights and obligations arising under:
- (i) An insurance contract as ~~defined in the international or national accounting standard dealing with insurance contracts IFRS 4 Insurance Contracts~~, other than an issuer’s rights and obligations arising under an insurance contract that meets the definition of a financial guarantee contract in paragraph 10; or IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS, made a list out of (i) and (ii) and amended wording slightly to make understanding clearer. In line with amendments to IAS 32, deleted allowed alternative treatment using IFRS 4 and required financial guarantees to be treated as financial instruments, and added the encouraged application for insurance contracts that involve the transfer of financial risk from IPSAS 15.
- (ii) A contract that is within the scope of the international or national accounting standard dealing with insurance contracts IFRS 4 because it contains a discretionary participation feature.
- ~~However, this Standard applies to a derivative that is embedded in an insurance contract within the scope of the IFRS 4 if the derivative is not itself an insurance contract within the scope of IFRS 4 (see paragraphs 11–15 and Appendix A paragraphs AG39–AG45 of this Standard). Moreover, if an issuer of financial guarantee contracts has previously asserted explicitly that it regards such contracts as insurance contracts and has used accounting applicable to insurance contracts, the issuer may elect to apply either this Standard or IFRS 4 to such financial guarantee contracts (see paragraphs AG4 and AG4A). The issuer may make that election contract by contract, but the election for each contract is irrevocable. Notwithstanding (i) above, an entity may apply this Standard to other financial instruments that take the form of insurance contracts which involve the transfer of financial risk.~~
- ~~[deleted]~~ Paragraph 2(f) deleted.
- (f) Any forward contracts that results from an agreement entered before the acquisition date (i.e. before the date on which the acquirer IAS 39.2; amended for public sector terminology. Included IASB’s 08/09 improvements even though not yet approved.

obtains control over the acquiree) between an acquirer and a vendor in an entity business combination to buy or sell an acquiree at a future date and at a specified price (or on a specified basis).

This amendment is as follows: “any forward contracts that result from an agreement entered into before the acquisition date (i.e. before the date on which the acquirer obtains control of the acquiree) between an acquirer and a vendor, in a business combination, to buy or sell an acquiree at a future date and at a specified price (or on a specified price basis)”

(g) Loan commitments other than those loan commitments described in paragraph 4. An issuer of loan commitments shall apply IPSAS 19, IAS 37 “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets” to loan commitments that are not within the scope of this Standard. However, all loan commitments are subject to the derecognition provisions of this Standard (see paragraphs 17–44 and Appendix A paragraphs AG50–AG85).

IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.

(h) Financial instruments, contracts and obligations under share-based payment transactions to which the relevant international or national accounting standard dealing with share based payment ~~IFRS 2 Share-based Payment~~ applies, except for contracts within the scope of paragraphs 5–8 of this Standard, to which this Standard applies.

IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.

(i) Rights to payments to reimburse the entity for expenditure it is required to make to settle a liability that it recognizes as a provision in accordance with IPSAS 19 ~~IAS 37~~, or for which, in an earlier period, it recognized a provision in accordance with IPSAS 19 ~~IAS 37~~.

IAS 39.2; amended referencing to IPSAS and not IAS/IFRS.

(j) The initial recognition of rights and obligations arising from non-exchange revenue transactions, to which IPSAS 23, “Revenue from Non-Exchange Transactions (Taxes and Transfers)” applies.

Added paragraph to clarify the interaction between IPSAS 23 and this Standard for contractual non-exchange revenue transactions. See consequential amendments to IPSAS 23; proposal to measure financial assets acquired as part of a non-exchange revenue transaction using ED38 rather than IPSAS 23 (consistent with the direction taken for biological assets).

~~Deleted~~

Paragraph 3 deleted.

3. The following loan commitments are within the scope of this Standard:

IAS 39.4; made changes for other public sector terminology.

(a) Loan commitments that the entity designates as financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. An entity that has a past practice of selling the assets resulting from its loan commitments shortly after origination shall apply this Standard to all its loan commitments in the same class.

(b) Loan commitments that can be settled net in

cash or by delivering or issuing another financial instrument. These loan commitments are derivatives. A loan commitment is not regarded as settled net merely because the loan is paid out in installments (for example, a mortgage construction loan that is paid out in installments in line with the progress of construction).

(c) Commitments to provide a loan at a below-market interest rate. Paragraph 49(d) specifies the subsequent measurement of liabilities arising from these loan commitments.

4. **This Standard shall be applied to those contracts to buy or sell a non-financial item that can be settled net in cash or another financial instrument, or by exchanging financial instruments, as if the contracts were financial instruments, with the exception of contracts that were entered into and continue to be held for the purpose of the receipt or delivery of a non-financial item in accordance with the entity's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements.** IAS 39.5; no amendment.
5. There are various ways in which a contract to buy or sell a non-financial item can be settled net in cash or another financial instrument or by exchanging financial instruments. These include:
- (a) When the terms of the contract permit either party to settle it net in cash or another financial instrument or by exchanging financial instruments;
 - (b) When the ability to settle net in cash or another financial instrument, or by exchanging financial instruments, is not explicit in the terms of the contract, but the entity has a practice of settling similar contracts net in cash or another financial instrument or by exchanging financial instruments (whether with the counterparty, by entering into offsetting contracts or by selling the contract before its exercise or lapse);
 - (c) When, for similar contracts, the entity has a practice of taking delivery of the underlying and selling it within a short period after delivery for the purpose of generating a profit from short-term fluctuations in price or dealer's margin; and
 - (d) When the non-financial item that is the subject of the contract is readily convertible to cash.

A contract to which (b) or (c) applies is not entered into for the purpose of the receipt or delivery of the non-financial item in accordance with the entity's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements and, accordingly, is within the scope of this Standard. Other contracts to which paragraph 4 applies are evaluated to determine whether they were entered into and continue to be held for the purpose of the receipt or delivery of the non-financial item in accordance with the entity's expected

purchase, sale or usage requirements and, accordingly, whether they are within the scope of this Standard.

6. A written option to buy or sell a non-financial item that can be settled net in cash or another financial instrument, or by exchanging financial instruments, in accordance with paragraph 5(a) or (d) is within the scope of this Standard. Such a contract cannot be entered into for the purpose of the receipt or delivery of the non-financial item in accordance with the entity's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements. IAS 39.7: no amendment.
7. **This Standard applies to all public sector entities other than Government Business Enterprises.** Added Standard wording.
8. **The Preface to International Public Sector Accounting Standards issued by the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board (IPSASB) explains that GBEs apply International Financial Reporting Standards, which are issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB).** Added Standard wording.

Definitions

9. The terms defined in ED 37 IAS 32 are used in this Standard with the meanings specified in paragraph 9 of ED 37 IAS 32. ED 37 IAS 32 defines the following terms:
 - Financial instrument
 - Financial asset
 - Financial liability
 - Equity instrument
 and provides guidance on applying those definitions. IAS 39.8: amended referencing to IPSASs.
10. **The following terms are used in this Standard with the meanings specified:** IAS 39.9; Retained ordering and segregation of definitions from IAS 39.

Definition of a derivative

A derivative is a financial instrument or other contract within the scope of this Standard (see paragraphs 2–8) with all three of the following characteristics:

 - (a) Its value changes in response to the change in a specified interest rate, financial instrument price, commodity price, foreign exchange rate, index of prices or rates, credit rating or credit index, or other variable, provided in the case of a non-financial variable that the variable is not specific to a party to the contract (sometimes called the 'underlying');
 - (b) It requires no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar

response to changes in market factors; and

- (c) It is settled at a future date.

Definitions of four categories of financial instruments

A **financial asset or financial liability at fair value through surplus or deficit** ~~profit or loss~~ is a financial asset or financial liability that meets either of the following conditions.

Amended for public sector terminology.

- (a) It is classified as held for trading. A financial asset or financial liability is classified as held for trading if it is:

IASB 2008 Improvements Project – (a)(i) – (iii).

- (i) It is acquired or incurred principally for the purpose of selling or repurchasing it in the near term;
- (ii) On initial recognition it is part of a portfolio of identified financial instruments that are managed together and for which there is evidence of a recent actual pattern of short-term profit-taking; or
- (iii) It is a derivative (except for a derivative that is a financial guarantee contract or a designated and effective hedging instrument).

- (b) Upon initial recognition it is designated by the entity as at fair value through **surplus or deficit** ~~profit or loss~~. An entity may use this designation only when permitted by paragraph 13 or when doing so results in more relevant information, because either

Amended for public sector terminology.

- (i) It eliminates or significantly reduces a measurement or recognition inconsistency (sometimes referred to as ‘an accounting mismatch’) that would otherwise arise from measuring assets or liabilities or recognizing the gains and losses on them on different bases; or
- (ii) A group of financial assets, financial liabilities or both is managed and its performance is evaluated on a fair value basis, in accordance with a documented risk management or investment strategy, and information about the group is provided internally on that basis to the entity’s key management personnel (as defined in **IPSAS 20**, ~~IAS 24~~ “Related Party Disclosures” ~~(as revised in 2003)~~), for example the entity’s ~~board of directors~~ **governing body** and chief executive officer.

Aligned references to other IPSASs.

In **ED 39** ~~IFRS 7~~, paragraphs 9–11 and B4 require the entity to provide disclosures about financial assets and financial liabilities it has designated as at fair value through **surplus or deficit** ~~profit or loss~~, including how it has satisfied these conditions. For instruments qualifying in accordance with (ii)

Aligned wording with other IPSASs.

above, that disclosure includes a narrative description of how designation as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is consistent with the entity's documented risk management or investment strategy.

Investments in equity instruments that do not have a quoted market price in an active market, and whose fair value cannot be reliably measured (see paragraph 48(c) and Appendix A paragraphs AG117 and AG118), shall not be designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Aligned wording with other IPSASs.

It should be noted that paragraphs 50, 51, 52 and Appendix A paragraphs AG105–AG119, which set out requirements for determining a reliable measure of the fair value of a financial asset or financial liability, apply equally to all items that are measured at fair value, whether by designation or otherwise, or whose fair value is disclosed.

Held-to-maturity investments are non-derivative financial assets with fixed or determinable payments and fixed maturity that an entity has the positive intention and ability to hold to maturity (see Appendix A paragraphs AG28–AG37) other than:

- (a) Those that the entity upon initial recognition designates as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~;
- (b) Those that the entity designates as available for sale; and
- (c) Those that meet the definition of loans and receivables.

Aligned wording with other IPSASs.

An entity shall not classify any financial assets as held to maturity if the entity has, during the current financial year or during the two preceding financial years, sold or reclassified more than an insignificant amount of held-to-maturity investments before maturity (more than insignificant in relation to the total amount of held-to-maturity investments) other than sales or reclassifications that:

- (i) Are so close to maturity or the financial asset's call date (for example, less than three months before maturity) that changes in the market rate of interest would not have a significant effect on the financial asset's fair value;
- (ii) Occur after the entity has collected substantially all of the financial asset's original principal through scheduled payments or prepayments; or
- (iii) Are attributable to an isolated event that is beyond the entity's control, is non-recurring and could not have been reasonably anticipated by the entity.

Loans and receivables are non-derivative financial assets with fixed or determinable payments that are

not quoted in an active market other than:

- (a) Those that the entity intends to sell immediately or in the near term, which shall be classified as held for trading, and those that the entity upon initial recognition designates as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~;
- (b) Those that the entity upon initial recognition designates as available for sale; or
- (c) Those for which the holder may not recover substantially all of its initial investment, other than because of credit deterioration, which shall be classified as available for sale.

Aligned wording with other IPSASs.

An interest acquired in a pool of assets that are not loans or receivables (for example, an interest in a mutual fund or a similar fund) is not a loan or receivable.

Aligned wording with other IPSASs.

Available-for-sale financial assets are those non-derivative financial assets that are designated as available for sale or are not classified as (a) loans and receivables, (b) held-to-maturity investments or (c) financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Definition of a financial guarantee contract

A financial guarantee contract is a contract that requires the issuer to make specified payments to reimburse the holder for a loss it incurs because a specified debtor fails to make payment when due in accordance with the original or modified terms of a debt instrument.

Definitions relating to recognition and measurement

The amortized cost of a financial asset or financial liability is the amount at which the financial asset or financial liability is measured at initial recognition minus principal repayments, plus or minus the cumulative amortization using the effective interest method of any difference between that initial amount and the maturity amount, and minus any reduction (directly or through the use of an allowance account) for impairment or uncollectibility.

The effective interest method is a method of calculating the amortized cost of a financial asset or a financial liability (or group of financial assets or financial liabilities) and of allocating the interest revenue ~~income~~—or interest expense over the relevant period. The effective interest rate is the rate that exactly discounts estimated future cash payments or receipts through the expected life of the financial instrument or, when appropriate, a shorter period to the net carrying amount of the financial asset or financial liability. When calculating the effective interest rate, an entity shall estimate cash flows considering all contractual

Amended term “income” to “revenue”. This is consistent with IPSAS 9.35 that refers to “interest revenue”. Should this change be made, seeing as income can still exist in the public sector, except that the overall term for all gains, profits etc. is “revenue”.

terms of the financial instrument (for example, prepayment, call and similar options) but shall not consider future credit losses. The calculation includes all fees and points paid or received between parties to the contract that are an integral part of the effective interest rate (see IPSAS 9, “Revenue from Exchange Transactions” ~~IAS 18–Revenue~~), transaction costs, and all other premiums or discounts. There is a presumption that the cash flows and the expected life of a group of similar financial instruments can be estimated reliably. However, in those rare cases when it is not possible to estimate reliably the cash flows or the expected life of a financial instrument (or group of financial instruments), the entity shall use the contractual cash flows over the full contractual term of the financial instrument (or group of financial instruments).

Amended references to IPSASs.

Derecognition is the removal of a previously recognized financial asset or financial liability from an entity’s statement of financial position.

Fair value is the amount for which an asset could be exchanged, or a liability settled, between knowledgeable, willing parties in an arm’s length transaction¹.

A regular way purchase or sale is a purchase or sale of a financial asset under a contract whose terms require delivery of the asset within the time frame established generally by regulation or convention in the marketplace concerned.

Transaction costs are incremental costs that are directly attributable to the acquisition, issue or disposal of a financial asset or financial liability (see Appendix A paragraph AG25). An incremental cost is one that would not have been incurred if the entity had not acquired, issued or disposed of the financial instrument.

Definitions relating to hedge accounting

A firm commitment is a binding agreement for the exchange of a specified quantity of resources at a specified price on a specified future date or dates.

A forecast transaction is an uncommitted but anticipated future transaction.

A hedging instrument is a designated derivative or (for a hedge of the risk of changes in foreign currency exchange rates only) a designated non-derivative financial asset or non-derivative financial liability whose fair value or cash flows are expected to offset changes in the fair value or cash flows of a designated hedged item (paragraphs 81–86 and Appendix A paragraphs AG131–AG134 elaborate

¹ Paragraphs ~~48–49~~ 50–52 and ~~AG69~~ AG105 and ~~AG119–AG82~~ of Appendix A contain requirements for determining the fair value of a financial asset or financial liability.

on the definition of a hedging instrument).

A **hedged item** is an asset, liability, firm commitment, highly probable forecast transaction or net investment in a foreign operation that (a) exposes the entity to risk of changes in fair value or future cash flows and (b) is designated as being hedged (paragraphs 87–94 and Appendix A paragraphs AG135–AG145 elaborate on the definition of hedged items).

Hedge effectiveness is the degree to which changes in the fair value or cash flows of the hedged item that are attributable to a hedged risk are offset by changes in the fair value or cash flows of the hedging instrument (see Appendix A paragraphs AG149–AG160).

Terms defined in other International Public Sector Accounting Standards are used in this Standard with the same meaning as in those Standards, and are reproduced in the Glossary of Defined Terms published separately.

Added standard wording.

Embedded Derivatives

11. An embedded derivative is a component of a hybrid (combined) instrument that also includes a non-derivative host contract—with the effect that some of the cash flows of the combined instrument vary in a way similar to a stand-alone derivative. An embedded derivative causes some or all of the cash flows that otherwise would be required by the contract to be modified according to a specified interest rate, financial instrument price, commodity price, foreign exchange rate, index of prices or rates, credit rating or credit index, or other variable, provided in the case of a non-financial variable that the variable is not specific to a party to the contract. A derivative that is attached to a financial instrument but is contractually transferable independently of that instrument, or has a different counterparty from that instrument, is not an embedded derivative, but a separate financial instrument. IAS 39.10; no amendment.
12. **An embedded derivative shall be separated from the host contract and accounted for as a derivative under this Standard if, and only if:** IAS 39.11; amended terminology.
 - (a) The economic characteristics and risks of the embedded derivative are not closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of the host contract (see Appendix A paragraphs AG42 and AG45);
 - (b) A separate instrument with the same terms as the embedded derivative would meet the definition of a derivative; and
 - (c) The hybrid (combined) instrument is not measured at fair value with changes in fair

value recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~—(i.e. a derivative that is embedded in a financial asset or financial liability at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is not separated).

If an embedded derivative is separated, the host contract shall be accounted for under this Standard if it is a financial instrument, and in accordance with other appropriate Standards if it is not a financial instrument. This Standard does not address whether an embedded derivative shall be presented separately in the statement of financial position.

13. Notwithstanding paragraph 12, if a financial instrument within the scope of this Standard contains one or more embedded derivatives, an entity may designate the entire hybrid (combined) financial instrument as a financial asset or financial liability at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ unless:

- (a) The embedded derivative(s) does not significantly modify the cash flows that otherwise would be required by the contract; or
- (b) It is clear with little or no analysis when a similar hybrid (combined) instrument is first considered that separation of the embedded derivative(s) is prohibited, such as a prepayment option embedded in a loan that permits the holder to prepay the loan for approximately its amortized cost.

IAS 39.11A; amendment for public sector terminology.

Included amendment from 08/09 Improvements Project even though not approved by the IASB. Proposed paragraph is as follows: Notwithstanding paragraph 11, if a financial instrument contract—within the scope of this Standard contains one or more embedded derivatives, an entity may designate the entire hybrid (combined) financial instrument contract—as a financial asset or a financial liability at fair value through profit and loss...

Note: In the January IASB meeting, deliberations on the application of the fair value option were deferred. It is unclear whether these amendments will be approved by the IASB.

14. If an entity is required by this Standard to separate an embedded derivative from its host contract, but is unable to measure the embedded derivative separately either at acquisition or at the end of a subsequent financial reporting period, it shall designate the entire hybrid (combined) contract as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. Similarly, if an entity is unable to measure separately the embedded derivative that would have to be separated on reclassification of a hybrid (combined) contract out of fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category, that reclassification is prohibited. In such circumstances the hybrid (combined) contract remains classified as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in its entirety.

IAS 39.12; amendment for public sector terminology.

Added proposed amendments published in December 2008 (not yet approved) relating to embedded derivatives.

15. If an entity is unable to determine reliably the fair value of an embedded derivative on the basis of its terms and conditions (for example, because the embedded derivative is based on an unquoted equity instrument), the fair value of the embedded derivative is the difference between the fair value of the hybrid (combined) instrument and the fair value of the host contract, if those can be determined under this

IAS 39.13; amendment for public sector terminology.

Standard. If the entity is unable to determine the fair value of the embedded derivative using this method, paragraph 14 applies and the hybrid (combined) instrument is designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Recognition and Derecognition

Initial Recognition

16. **An entity shall recognize a financial asset or a financial liability in its statement of financial position when, and only when, the entity becomes a party to the contractual provisions of the instrument. (See paragraph 40 with respect to regular way purchases of financial assets.)** IAS 39.14; no amendment.

Derecognition of a Financial Asset

17. In consolidated financial statements, paragraphs 18–25 and Appendix A paragraphs AG50–AG72 are applied at a consolidated level. Hence, an entity first consolidates all controlled entities ~~subsidiaries~~ in accordance with IPSAS 6 ~~IAS 27 and SIC 12 Consolidation – Special Purpose Entities~~ and then applies paragraphs 18–25 and Appendix A paragraphs AG50–AG72 to the resulting economic entity group. IAS 39.15; amended referencing to IPSAS.
Issue: IPSAS 6 does not provide guidance on the consolidation of special purpose entities, and the IPSASB has not issued guidance equivalent to SIC 12.
The guidance from SIC 12 has been added to the application guidance of this Standard as an interim measure. Once the IPSASB issues Interpretations, it should be withdrawn and issued as a separate Interpretation.
As an alternative, the text could refer to the international or national interpretation on Consolidation – Special Purpose Entities.
18. **Before evaluating whether, and to what extent, derecognition is appropriate under paragraphs 19–25, an entity determines whether those paragraphs should be applied to a part of a financial asset (or a part of a group of similar financial assets) or a financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets) in its entirety, as follows.** IAS 39.16; no amendment.
- (a) Paragraphs 19–25 are applied to a part of a financial asset (or a part of a group of similar financial assets) if, and only if, the part being considered for derecognition meets one of the following three conditions.
- (i) **The part comprises only specifically identified cash flows from a financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets). For example, when an entity enters into an interest rate strip whereby the counterparty obtains the right to the interest cash flows, but not the principal cash flows from a debt instrument, paragraphs 19–25 are applied to the interest cash flows.**

- (ii) The part comprises only a fully proportionate (pro rata) share of the cash flows from a financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets). For example, when an entity enters into an arrangement whereby the counterparty obtains the rights to a 90 per cent share of all cash flows of a debt instrument, paragraphs 19–25 are applied to 90 per cent of those cash flows. If there is more than one counterparty, each counterparty is not required to have a proportionate share of the cash flows provided that the transferring entity has a fully proportionate share.
- (iii) The part comprises only a fully proportionate (pro rata) share of specifically identified cash flows from a financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets). For example, when an entity enters into an arrangement whereby the counterparty obtains the rights to a 90 per cent share of interest cash flows from a financial asset, paragraphs 19–25 are applied to 90 per cent of those interest cash flows. If there is more than one counterparty, each counterparty is not required to have a proportionate share of the specifically identified cash flows provided that the transferring entity has a fully proportionate share.
- (b) In all other cases, paragraphs 19–25 are applied to the financial asset in its entirety (or to the group of similar financial assets in their entirety). For example, when an entity transfers (i) the rights to the first or the last 90 per cent of cash collections from a financial asset (or a group of financial assets), or (ii) the rights to 90 per cent of the cash flows from a group of receivables, but provides a guarantee to compensate the buyer for any credit losses up to 8 per cent of the principal amount of the receivables, paragraphs 19–25 are applied to the financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets) in its entirety.

In paragraphs 19–28, the term ‘financial asset’ refers to either a part of a financial asset (or a part of a group of similar financial assets) as identified in (a) above or, otherwise, a financial asset (or a group of similar financial assets) in its entirety.

19. An entity shall derecognize a financial asset when, and only when:
- (a) The contractual rights to the cash flows from the financial asset expire or are waived; or
 - (b) It transfers the financial asset as set out in

IAS 39.17; added the notion of “waiving” debts owing to an entity. For example, a local authority may waive consumer accounts in terms of its indigent policies i.e. to meet specific social policy objectives. Debt write-offs due to uncollectability should be

paragraphs 20 and 21 and the transfer qualifies for derecognition in accordance with paragraph 22.

distinguished from the waiver of debt for social policy purposes, however as the IPSASB does not have a standard dealing with social benefits, this distinction should be made once that standard has been issued.

(See paragraph 40 for regular way sales of financial assets.)

20. An entity transfers a financial asset if, and only if, it either: IAS 39.18; no amendment.

- (a) Transfers the contractual rights to receive the cash flows of the financial asset; or
- (b) Retains the contractual rights to receive the cash flows of the financial asset, but assumes a contractual obligation to pay the cash flows to one or more recipients in an arrangement that meets the conditions in paragraph 21.

21. When an entity retains the contractual rights to receive the cash flows of a financial asset (the 'original asset'), but assumes a contractual obligation to pay those cash flows to one or more entities (the 'eventual recipients'), the entity treats the transaction as a transfer of a financial asset if, and only if, all of the following three conditions are met. IAS 39.19; amended references to IPSASs.

- (a) The entity has no obligation to pay amounts to the eventual recipients unless it collects equivalent amounts from the original asset. Short-term advances by the entity with the right of full recovery of the amount lent plus accrued interest at market rates do not violate this condition.
- (b) The entity is prohibited by the terms of the transfer contract from selling or pledging the original asset other than as security to the eventual recipients for the obligation to pay them cash flows.
- (c) The entity has an obligation to remit any cash flows it collects on behalf of the eventual recipients without material delay. In addition, the entity is not entitled to reinvest such cash flows, except for investments in cash or cash equivalents (as defined in IPSAS 2, "Cash Flow Statements"~~IAS 7 Statement of Cash Flows~~) during the short settlement period from the collection date to the date of required remittance to the eventual recipients, and interest earned on such investments is passed to the eventual recipients.

22. When an entity transfers a financial asset (see paragraph 20), it shall evaluate the extent to which it retains the risks and rewards of ownership of the financial asset. In this case: IAS 39.20; no amendment.

- (a) If the entity transfers substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the financial

asset, the entity shall derecognize the financial asset and recognize separately as assets or liabilities any rights and obligations created or retained in the transfer.

- (b) If the entity retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the financial asset, the entity shall continue to recognize the financial asset.**
- (c) If the entity neither transfers nor retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the financial asset, the entity shall determine whether it has retained control of the financial asset. In this case:**
 - (i) If the entity has not retained control, it shall derecognize the financial asset and recognize separately as assets or liabilities any rights and obligations created or retained in the transfer.**
 - (ii) If the entity has retained control, it shall continue to recognize the financial asset to the extent of its continuing involvement in the financial asset (see paragraph 32).**

23. The transfer of risks and rewards (see paragraph 22) is evaluated by comparing the entity's exposure, before and after the transfer, with the variability in the amounts and timing of the net cash flows of the transferred asset. An entity has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of a financial asset if its exposure to the variability in the present value of the future net cash flows from the financial asset does not change significantly as a result of the transfer (for example, because the entity has sold a financial asset subject to an agreement to buy it back at a fixed price or the sale price plus a lender's return). An entity has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of a financial asset if its exposure to such variability is no longer significant in relation to the total variability in the present value of the future net cash flows associated with the financial asset (for example, because the entity has sold a financial asset subject only to an option to buy it back at its fair value at the time of repurchase or has transferred a fully proportionate share of the cash flows from a larger financial asset in an arrangement, such as a loan sub-participation, that meets the conditions in paragraph 21). IAS 39.21; no amendment.
24. Often it will be obvious whether the entity has transferred or retained substantially all risks and rewards of ownership and there will be no need to perform any computations. In other cases, it will be necessary to compute and compare the entity's exposure to the variability in the present value of the future net cash flows before and after the transfer. The computation and comparison is made using as the discount rate an appropriate current market interest IAS 39.22; no amendment.

rate. All reasonably possible variability in net cash flows is considered, with greater weight being given to those outcomes that are more likely to occur.

25. Whether the entity has retained control (see paragraph 22(c)) of the transferred asset depends on the transferee's ability to sell the asset. If the transferee has the practical ability to sell the asset in its entirety to an unrelated third party and is able to exercise that ability unilaterally and without needing to impose additional restrictions on the transfer, the entity has not retained control. In all other cases, the entity has retained control. IAS 39.23; no amendment.

Transfers that Qualify for Derecognition (see paragraph 22(a) and (c)(i))

26. **If an entity transfers a financial asset in a transfer that qualifies for derecognition in its entirety and retains the right to service the financial asset for a fee, it shall recognize either a servicing asset or a servicing liability for that servicing contract. If the fee to be received is not expected to compensate the entity adequately for performing the servicing, a servicing liability for the servicing obligation shall be recognized at its fair value. If the fee to be received is expected to be more than adequate compensation for the servicing, a servicing asset shall be recognized for the servicing right at an amount determined on the basis of an allocation of the carrying amount of the larger financial asset in accordance with paragraph 29.** IAS 39.24; no amendment.
27. **If, as a result of a transfer, a financial asset is derecognized in its entirety but the transfer results in the entity obtaining a new financial asset or assuming a new financial liability, or a servicing liability, the entity shall recognize the new financial asset, financial liability or servicing liability at fair value.** IAS 39.25; no amendment.
28. **On derecognition of a financial asset in its entirety, the difference between:** IAS 39.26; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.
- (a) **The carrying amount; and**
- (b) **The sum of (i) the consideration received (including any new asset obtained less any new liability assumed) and (ii) any cumulative gain or loss that had been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (see paragraph 64(b))**
- shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.**
29. **If the transferred asset is part of a larger financial asset (for example, when an entity transfers interest cash flows that are part of a debt instrument, see paragraph 18(a)) and the part transferred qualifies for derecognition in its entirety, the previous carrying amount of the larger financial asset shall** IAS 39.27; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

be allocated between the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is derecognized, based on the relative fair values of those parts on the date of the transfer. For this purpose, a retained servicing asset shall be treated as a part that continues to be recognized. The difference between:

- (a) The carrying amount allocated to the part derecognized and
- (b) The sum of (i) the consideration received for the part derecognized (including any new asset obtained less any new liability assumed) and (ii) any cumulative gain or loss allocated to it that had been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (see paragraph 64(b))

shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. A cumulative gain or loss that had been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ is allocated between the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is derecognized, based on the relative fair values of those parts.

- 30. When an entity allocates the previous carrying amount of a larger financial asset between the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is derecognized, the fair value of the part that continues to be recognized needs to be determined. When the entity has a history of selling parts similar to the part that continues to be recognized or other market transactions exist for such parts, recent prices of actual transactions provide the best estimate of its fair value. When there are no price quotes or recent market transactions to support the fair value of the part that continues to be recognized, the best estimate of the fair value is the difference between the fair value of the larger financial asset as a whole and the consideration received from the transferee for the part that is derecognized. IAS 39.28; no amendment.

Transfers that do not Qualify for Derecognition (see paragraph 22(b))

- 31. If a transfer does not result in derecognition because the entity has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the transferred asset, the entity shall continue to recognize the transferred asset in its entirety and shall recognize a financial liability for the consideration received. In subsequent periods, the entity shall recognize any ~~income~~ revenue on the transferred asset and any expense incurred on the financial liability. IAS 39.29; amended reference from “income” to “revenue”.

Continuing Involvement in Transferred Assets (see paragraph 22(c)(ii))

- 32. If an entity neither transfers nor retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of a transferred asset, and retains control of the transferred asset, the entity continues to recognize the transferred asset to the extent of its continuing IAS 39.30; no amendment.

involvement. The extent of the entity's continuing involvement in the transferred asset is the extent to which it is exposed to changes in the value of the transferred asset. For example:

- (a) When the entity's continuing involvement takes the form of guaranteeing the transferred asset, the extent of the entity's continuing involvement is the lower of (i) the amount of the asset and (ii) the maximum amount of the consideration received that the entity could be required to repay ('the guarantee amount').
- (b) When the entity's continuing involvement takes the form of a written or purchased option (or both) on the transferred asset, the extent of the entity's continuing involvement is the amount of the transferred asset that the entity may repurchase. However, in case of a written put option on an asset that is measured at fair value, the extent of the entity's continuing involvement is limited to the lower of the fair value of the transferred asset and the option exercise price (see paragraph AG68).
- (c) When the entity's continuing involvement takes the form of a cash-settled option or similar provision on the transferred asset, the extent of the entity's continuing involvement is measured in the same way as that which results from non-cash settled options as set out in (b) above.

33. When an entity continues to recognize an asset to the extent of its continuing involvement, the entity also recognizes an associated liability. Despite the other measurement requirements in this Standard, the transferred asset and the associated liability are measured on a basis that reflects the rights and obligations that the entity has retained. The associated liability is measured in such a way that the net carrying amount of the transferred asset and the associated liability is:

IAS 39.31; no amendment.

- (a) The amortized cost of the rights and obligations retained by the entity, if the transferred asset is measured at amortized cost; or
- (b) Equal to the fair value of the rights and obligations retained by the entity when measured on a stand-alone basis, if the transferred asset is measured at fair value.

34. The entity shall continue to recognize any revenue ~~income~~ arising on the transferred asset to the extent of its continuing involvement and shall recognize any expense incurred on the associated liability.

IAS 39.32; amended the term "income" to revenue.

35. For the purpose of subsequent measurement, recognized changes in the fair value of the transferred asset and the associated liability are

IAS 39.33; no amendment.

accounted for consistently with each other in accordance with paragraph 64, and shall not be offset.

36. If an entity's continuing involvement is in only a part of a financial asset (for example, when an entity retains an option to repurchase part of a transferred asset, or retains a residual interest that does not result in the retention of substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership and the entity retains control), the entity allocates the previous carrying amount of the financial asset between the part it continues to recognize under continuing involvement, and the part it no longer recognizes on the basis of the relative fair values of those parts on the date of the transfer. For this purpose, the requirements of paragraph 30 apply. The difference between:
- (a) The carrying amount allocated to the part that is no longer recognized; and
 - (b) The sum of (i) the consideration received for the part no longer recognized and (ii) any cumulative gain or loss allocated to it that had been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (see paragraph 64(b))
- shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. A cumulative gain or loss that had been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ is allocated between the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is no longer recognized on the basis of the relative fair values of those parts.
37. If the transferred asset is measured at amortized cost, the option in this Standard to designate a financial liability as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is not applicable to the associated liability.

IAS 39.34; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

IAS 39.35; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

All Transfers

38. If a transferred asset continues to be recognized, the asset and the associated liability shall not be offset. Similarly, the entity shall not offset any income arising from the transferred asset with any expense incurred on the associated liability (see ED 37 IAS 32 paragraph 47).
39. If a transferor provides non-cash collateral (such as debt or equity instruments) to the transferee, the accounting for the collateral by the transferor and the transferee depends on whether the transferee has the right to sell or repledge the collateral and on whether the transferor has defaulted. The transferor and transferee shall account for the collateral as follows:
- (a) If the transferee has the right by contract or

IAS 39.36; amended term "income" to "revenue" and references to other IPSASs.

IAS 39.37; no amendment.

custom to sell or repledge the collateral, then the transferor shall reclassify that asset in its statement of financial position (for example, as a loaned asset, pledged equity instruments or repurchase receivable) separately from other assets.

- (b) If the transferee sells collateral pledged to it, it shall recognize the proceeds from the sale and a liability measured at fair value for its obligation to return the collateral.
- (c) If the transferor defaults under the terms of the contract and is no longer entitled to redeem the collateral, it shall derecognize the collateral, and the transferee shall recognize the collateral as its asset initially measured at fair value or, if it has already sold the collateral, derecognize its obligation to return the collateral.
- (d) Except as provided in (c), the transferor shall continue to carry the collateral as its asset, and the transferee shall not recognize the collateral as an asset.

Regular Way Purchase or Sale of a Financial Asset

- 40. A regular way purchase or sale of financial assets shall be recognized and derecognized, as applicable, using trade date accounting or settlement date accounting (see Appendix A paragraphs AG73–AG76). IAS 39.38; no amendment.

Derecognition of a Financial Liability

- 41. An entity shall remove a financial liability (or a part of a financial liability) from its statement of financial position when, and only when, it is extinguished—i.e. when the obligation specified in the contract is discharged, ~~or waived~~, cancelled or expires. IAS 39.39; added in the concept of debt owing by an entity being “waived”. This links to IPSAS 23 which discusses the treatment of debt forgiveness as the “waiver” of debt. In drafting the ED, cancelled was deemed to be in the context of existing debt being cancelled and a new arrangement negotiated i.e. the notion of a non-exchange transaction.
- 42. An exchange between an existing borrower and lender of debt instruments with substantially different terms shall be accounted for as an extinguishment of the original financial liability and the recognition of a new financial liability. Similarly, a substantial modification of the terms of an existing financial liability or a part of it (whether or not attributable to the financial difficulty of the debtor) shall be accounted for as an extinguishment of the original financial liability and the recognition of a new financial liability. IAS 39.40; no amendment.
- 43. The difference between the carrying amount of a financial liability (or part of a financial liability) extinguished or transferred to another party and the consideration paid, including any non-cash assets transferred or liabilities assumed, shall be IAS 39.41; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology. Added wording that entities should also consider IPSAS 23 if their debt is waived by the lender or if debts are assumed by a third

recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. Where an obligation is waived by the lender or assumed by a third party as part of a non-exchange transaction, an entity applies IPSAS 23.

party as part of a non-exchange revenue transaction.

44. If an entity repurchases a part of a financial liability, the entity shall allocate the previous carrying amount of the financial liability between the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is derecognized based on the relative fair values of those parts on the date of the repurchase. The difference between (a) the carrying amount allocated to the part derecognized and (b) the consideration paid, including any non-cash assets transferred or liabilities assumed, for the part derecognized shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

IAS 39.42; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

Measurement

Initial Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities

45. **When a financial asset or financial liability is recognized initially, an entity shall measure it at its fair value plus, in the case of a financial asset or financial liability not at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, transaction costs that are directly attributable to the acquisition or issue of the financial asset or financial liability.**
46. When an entity uses settlement date accounting for an asset that is subsequently measured at cost or amortized cost, the asset is recognized initially at its fair value on the trade date (see Appendix A paragraphs AG73–AG76).

IAS 39.43; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

IAS 39.44; no amendment.

Subsequent Measurement of Financial Assets

47. For the purpose of measuring a financial asset after initial recognition, this Standard classifies financial assets into the following four categories defined in paragraph 10:
- (a) Financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~;
 - (b) Held-to-maturity investments;
 - (c) Loans and receivables; and
 - (d) Available-for-sale financial assets.

IAS 39.45; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.

These categories apply to measurement and surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ recognition under this Standard. The entity may use other descriptors for these categories or other categorizations when presenting information in the financial statements. The entity shall disclose in the notes the information required by ED 39 (IFRS 7).

48. **After initial recognition, an entity shall measure**

IAS 39.46; aligned text with other IPSASs by

financial assets, including derivatives that are assets, at their fair values, without any deduction for transaction costs it may incur on sale or other disposal, except for the following financial assets: amending for public sector terminology.

- (a) Loans and receivables as defined in paragraph 10, which shall be measured at amortized cost using the effective interest method;
- (b) Held-to-maturity investments as defined in paragraph 10, which shall be measured at amortized cost using the effective interest method; and
- (c) Investments in equity instruments that do not have a quoted market price in an active market and whose fair value cannot be reliably measured and derivatives that are linked to and must be settled by delivery of such unquoted equity instruments, which shall be measured at cost (see Appendix A paragraphs AG117 and AG118).

Financial assets that are designated as hedged items are subject to measurement under the hedge accounting requirements in paragraphs 99–113. All financial assets except those measured at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ are subject to review for impairment in accordance with paragraphs 67–79 and Appendix A paragraphs AG121–AG130.

Subsequent Measurement of Financial Liabilities

49. After initial recognition, an entity shall measure all financial liabilities at amortized cost using the effective interest method, except for: IAS 39.47; aligned text with other IPSASs by amending for public sector terminology.
- (a) Financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. Such liabilities, including derivatives that are liabilities, shall be measured at fair value except for a derivative liability that is linked to and must be settled by delivery of an unquoted equity instrument whose fair value cannot be reliably measured, which shall be measured at cost.
 - (b) Financial liabilities that arise when a transfer of a financial asset does not qualify for derecognition or when the continuing involvement approach applies. Paragraphs 31 and 33 apply to the measurement of such financial liabilities.
 - (c) Financial guarantee contracts as defined in paragraph 10. After initial recognition, an issuer of such a contract shall (unless paragraph 49(a) or (b) applies) measure it at the higher of:
 - (i) The amount determined in accordance with IPSAS 19 ~~IAS 37~~; and

- (ii) The amount initially recognized (see paragraph 45) less, when appropriate, cumulative amortization recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9 ~~IAS 18~~.
- (d) Commitments to provide a loan at a below-market interest rate. After initial recognition, an issuer of such a commitment shall (unless paragraph 49(a) applies) measure it at the higher of:
 - (i) The amount determined in accordance with IPSAS 19 ~~IAS 37~~; and
 - (ii) The amount initially recognized (see paragraph 45) less, when appropriate, cumulative amortization recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9 ~~IAS 18~~.

Financial liabilities that are designated as hedged items are subject to the hedge accounting requirements in paragraphs 99–113.

Fair Value Measurement Considerations

- 50. In determining the fair value of a financial asset or a financial liability for the purpose of applying this Standard, ED 37 IAS 32 or ED 39 IFRS 7, an entity shall apply paragraphs AG105–AG119 of Appendix A. IAS 39.48; amended referencing to IPSAS.
- 51. The best evidence of fair value is quoted prices in an active market. If the market for a financial instrument is not active, an entity establishes fair value by using a valuation technique. The objective of using a valuation technique is to establish what the transaction price would have been on the measurement date in an arm's length exchange motivated by normal operating business considerations. Valuation techniques include using recent arm's length market transactions between knowledgeable, willing parties, if available, reference to the current fair value of another instrument that is substantially the same, discounted cash flow analysis and option pricing models. If there is a valuation technique commonly used by market participants to price the instrument and that technique has been demonstrated to provide reliable estimates of prices obtained in actual market transactions, the entity uses that technique. The chosen valuation technique makes maximum use of market inputs and relies as little as possible on entity-specific inputs. It incorporates all factors that market participants would consider in setting a price and is consistent with accepted economic methodologies for pricing financial instruments. Periodically, an entity calibrates the valuation technique and tests it for validity using prices from any observable current market transactions in the same instrument (i.e. without modification or repackaging) or based on any available observable market data. IAS 39.48A; amended 'business' to 'operating' as more appropriate for the public sector.

52. The fair value of a financial liability with a demand feature (e.g. a demand deposit) is not less than the amount payable on demand, discounted from the first date that the amount could be required to be paid. IAS 39.49; no amendment.

Reclassifications

53. **An entity:** IAS 39.50
- (a) **Shall not reclassify a derivative out of the fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category while it is held or issued;** IASB amendment – Reclassification of Financial Assets.
Amended for public sector terminology.
 - (b) **Shall not reclassify any financial instrument out of the fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category if upon initial recognition it was designated by the entity as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~; and**
 - (c) **May, if a financial asset is no longer held for the purpose of selling or repurchasing it in the near term (notwithstanding that the financial asset may have been acquired or incurred principally for the purpose of selling or repurchasing it in the near term), reclassify that financial asset out of the fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category if the requirements in paragraph 55 or 57 are met.**
- An entity shall not reclassify any financial instrument into the fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category after initial recognition.**
54. The following changes in circumstances are not reclassifications for the purposes of paragraph 53: IAS 39.50A - IAS Improvements Project – May 2008.
- (a) A derivative that was previously a designated and effective hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge or net investment hedge no longer qualifies as such; and Deleted (c) as the IPSASB has not issued an equivalent of IFRS 4, therefore requirement unnecessary.
 - (b) A derivative becomes a designated and effective hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge or net investment hedges.
 - (c) ~~financial assets are reclassified when an entity engaged in insurance activities insurance company changes its accounting policies in accordance with paragraph 45 of the international or national accounting standard dealing with insurance contracts IFRS 4.~~
55. A financial asset to which paragraph 53(c) applies (except a financial asset of the type described in paragraph 57) may be reclassified out of the fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category only in rare circumstances. IAS 39.50B - Amendments issued by the IASB - Reclassification of financial assets (October 2008). Amended for public sector terminology.
56. If an entity reclassifies a financial asset out of the fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category IAS 39.50C - Amendments issued by the IASB - Reclassification of financial assets

- in accordance with paragraph 55, the financial asset shall be reclassified at its fair value on the date of reclassification. Any gain or loss already recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ shall not be reversed. The fair value of the financial asset on the date of reclassification becomes its new cost or amortized cost, as applicable.
- (October 2008). Amended for public sector terminology.
57. A financial asset to which paragraph 53(c) applies that would have met the definition of loans and receivables (if the financial asset had not been required to be classified as held for trading at initial recognition) may be reclassified out of the fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category if the entity has the intention and ability to hold the financial asset for the foreseeable future or until maturity.
- IAS 39.50D - Amendments issued by the IASB - Reclassification of financial assets (October 2008). Amended for public sector terminology.
8. A financial asset classified as available for sale that would have met the definition of loans and receivables (if it had not been designated as available for sale) may be reclassified out of the available-for-sale category to the loans and receivables category if the entity has the intention and ability to hold the financial asset for the foreseeable future or until maturity.
- IAS 39.50E - Amendments issued by the IASB - Reclassification of financial assets (October 2008)
59. If an entity reclassifies a financial asset out of the fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category in accordance with paragraph 57 or out of the available-for-sale category in accordance with paragraph 58, it shall reclassify the financial asset at its fair value on the date of reclassification. For a financial asset reclassified in accordance with paragraph 57, any gain or loss already recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ shall not be reversed. The fair value of the financial asset on the date of reclassification becomes its new cost or amortized cost, as applicable. For a financial asset reclassified out of the available-for-sale category in accordance with paragraph 58, any previous gain or loss on that asset that has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with paragraph 64(b) shall be accounted for in accordance with paragraph 63.
- IAS 39.50F - Amendments issued by the IASB - Reclassification of financial assets (October 2008). Amended for public sector terminology.
60. **If, as a result of a change in intention or ability, it is no longer appropriate to classify an investment as held to maturity, it shall be reclassified as available for sale and remeasured at fair value, and the difference between its carrying amount and fair value shall be accounted for in accordance with paragraph 64(b).**
- IAS 39.51; no amendment.
61. **Whenever sales or reclassification of more than an insignificant amount of held-to-maturity investments do not meet any of the conditions in paragraph 10, any remaining held-to-maturity investments shall be reclassified as available for sale. On such reclassification, the difference between their carrying amount and fair value shall be accounted for in accordance with paragraph**
- IAS 39.52; no amendment.

64(b).

62. If a reliable measure becomes available for a financial asset or financial liability for which such a measure was previously not available, and the asset or liability is required to be measured at fair value if a reliable measure is available (see paragraphs 48(c) and 49), the asset or liability shall be remeasured at fair value, and the difference between its carrying amount and fair value shall be accounted for in accordance with paragraph 64. IAS 39.53; no amendment.
63. If, as a result of a change in intention or ability or in the rare circumstance that a reliable measure of fair value is no longer available (see paragraphs 48(c) and 49) or because the ‘two preceding financial years’ referred to in paragraph 10 have passed, it becomes appropriate to carry a financial asset or financial liability at cost or amortized cost rather than at fair value, the fair value carrying amount of the financial asset or the financial liability on that date becomes its new cost or amortized cost, as applicable. Any previous gain or loss on that asset that has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with paragraph 64(b) shall be accounted for as follows: IAS 39.54; amended for public sector terminology.
- (a) In the case of a financial asset with a fixed maturity, the gain or loss shall be amortized to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ over the remaining life of the held-to-maturity investment using the effective interest method. Any difference between the new amortized cost and maturity amount shall also be amortized over the remaining life of the financial asset using the effective interest method, similar to the amortization of a premium and a discount. If the financial asset is subsequently impaired, any gain or loss that has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ ~~is reclassified from recognized in surplus or deficit~~ ~~profit or loss~~ in accordance with paragraph 76. IAS 1 as amended in 2007 has not yet been considered by the IPSASB; therefore re-instated the use of the word “directly”; deleted reference to comprehensive income; and replaced “reclassified” with “recognized in” (which is the original wording).
- (b) In the case of a financial asset that does not have a fixed maturity, the gain or loss shall remain in net assets/equity until the financial asset is sold or otherwise disposed of, when it shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss when the financial asset is sold or otherwise disposed of~~. If the financial asset is subsequently impaired any previous gain or loss that has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ ~~is recognized in~~ ~~is reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit~~ ~~profit or loss~~ in accordance with paragraph 76. IAS 1 as amended in 2007 has not yet been considered by the IPSASB; therefore retained original wording.

Gains and Losses

64. A gain or loss arising from a change in the fair value of a financial asset or financial liability that is not part of a hedging relationship (see paragraphs 99–113), shall be recognized, as follows.
- IAS 39.55; amended for public sector terminology and referenced to IPSASs.
- (a) A gain or loss on a financial asset or financial liability classified as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.
 - (b) A gain or loss on an available-for-sale financial asset shall be recognized directly in net assets/equity through the statement of changes in net assets/equity (see IPSAS 1, “Presentation of Financial Statements” ~~other comprehensive income~~, except for impairment losses (see paragraphs 76–79) and foreign exchange gains and losses (see Appendix A paragraph AG120), until the financial asset is derecognized, ~~at which that time the cumulative gain or loss previously recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income shall be reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment (see IAS 1 Presentation of Financial Statements).~~ However, interest calculated using the effective interest method (see paragraph 10) is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (see ~~IPSAS 9~~IAS 18). Dividends or similar distributions on an available-for-sale equity instrument are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ when the entity’s right to receive payment is established (see ~~IPSAS 9~~IAS 18).
- Reclassification adjustments introduced into IAS 1 in 2007. These changes have not been made to IPSAS 1, therefore deleted these references.
65. For financial assets and financial liabilities carried at amortized cost (see paragraphs 48 and 49), a gain or loss is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ when the financial asset or financial liability is derecognized or impaired, and through the amortization process. However, for financial assets or financial liabilities that are hedged items (see paragraphs 87–94 and Appendix A paragraphs AG135–AG135) the accounting for the gain or loss shall follow paragraphs 99–113.
- IAS 39.56; amended for public sector terminology.
66. If an entity recognizes financial assets using settlement date accounting (see paragraph 40 and Appendix A paragraphs AG73 and AG76), any change in the fair value of the asset to be received during the period between the trade date and the settlement date is not recognized for assets carried at cost or amortized cost (other than impairment losses). For assets carried at fair value, however, the change in fair value shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ or in net assets/equity, as appropriate under paragraph 64.
- IAS 39.57; amended for public sector terminology.

Impairment and Uncollectibility of Financial Assets

67. **An entity shall assess at the end of each reporting period whether there is any objective evidence that a financial asset or group of financial assets is impaired. If any such evidence exists, the entity shall apply paragraph 72 (for financial assets carried at amortized cost), paragraph 75 (for financial assets carried at cost) or paragraph 76 (for available-for-sale financial assets) to determine the amount of any impairment loss.** IAS 39.58; no amendment.
68. A financial asset or a group of financial assets is impaired and impairment losses are incurred if, and only if, there is objective evidence of impairment as a result of one or more events that occurred after the initial recognition of the asset (a 'loss event') and that loss event (or events) has an impact on the estimated future cash flows of the financial asset or group of financial assets that can be reliably estimated. It may not be possible to identify a single, discrete event that caused the impairment. Rather the combined effect of several events may have caused the impairment. Losses expected as a result of future events, no matter how likely, are not recognized. Objective evidence that a financial asset or group of assets is impaired includes observable data that comes to the attention of the holder of the asset about the following loss events:
- (a) Significant financial difficulty of the issuer or obligor;
 - (b) A breach of contract, such as a default or delinquency in interest or principal payments;
 - (c) The lender, for economic or legal reasons relating to the borrower's financial difficulty, granting to the borrower a concession that the lender would not otherwise consider;
 - (d) It becoming probable that the borrower will enter bankruptcy or other financial reorganization;
 - (e) The disappearance of an active market for that financial asset because of financial difficulties; or
 - (f) Observable data indicating that there is a measurable decrease in the estimated future cash flows from a group of financial assets since the initial recognition of those assets, although the decrease cannot yet be identified with the individual financial assets in the group, including:
 - (i) Adverse changes in the payment status of borrowers in the group (for example, an increased number of delayed payments ~~or an increased number of credit card borrowers who have reached their credit limit and are paying the minimum monthly amount~~); or

- (ii) National or local economic conditions that correlate with defaults on the assets in the group (for example, an increase in the unemployment rate in the geographical area of the borrowers, ~~a decrease in property prices for mortgages in the relevant area~~, a decrease in oil prices for loan assets to oil producers, or adverse changes in industry conditions that affect the borrowers in the group).
69. The disappearance of an active market because an entity's financial instruments are no longer publicly traded is not evidence of impairment. A downgrade of an entity's credit rating is not, of itself, evidence of impairment, although it may be evidence of impairment when considered with other available information. A decline in the fair value of a financial asset below its cost or amortized cost is not necessarily evidence of impairment (for example, a decline in the fair value of an investment in a debt instrument that results from an increase in the risk-free interest rate). IAS 39.60; no amendment.
70. In addition to the types of events in paragraph 68, objective evidence of impairment for an investment in an equity instrument includes information about significant changes with an adverse effect that have taken place in the technological, market, economic or legal environment in which the issuer operates, and indicates that the cost of the investment in the equity instrument may not be recovered. A significant or prolonged decline in the fair value of an investment in an equity instrument below its cost is also objective evidence of impairment. IAS 39.61; no amendment.
71. In some cases the observable data required to estimate the amount of an impairment loss on a financial asset may be limited or no longer fully relevant to current circumstances. For example, this may be the case when a borrower is in financial difficulties and there are few available historical data relating to similar borrowers. In such cases, an entity uses its experienced judgment to estimate the amount of any impairment loss. Similarly an entity uses its experienced judgment to adjust observable data for a group of financial assets to reflect current circumstances (see paragraph AG126). The use of reasonable estimates is an essential part of the preparation of financial statements and does not undermine their reliability. IAS 39.62; no amendment.

Financial Assets Carried at Amortized Cost

72. **If there is objective evidence that an impairment loss on loans and receivables or held-to-maturity investments carried at amortized cost has been incurred, the amount of the loss is measured as the difference between the asset's carrying amount and the present value of estimated future cash flows (excluding future credit losses that have not been incurred) discounted at the financial asset's original** IAS 39.63; amended for public sector terminology.

effective interest rate (i.e. the effective interest rate computed at initial recognition). The carrying amount of the asset shall be reduced either directly or through use of an allowance account. The amount of the loss shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

73. An entity first assesses whether objective evidence of impairment exists individually for financial assets that are individually significant, and individually or collectively for financial assets that are not individually significant (see paragraph 68). If an entity determines that no objective evidence of impairment exists for an individually assessed financial asset, whether significant or not, it includes the asset in a group of financial assets with similar credit risk characteristics and collectively assesses them for impairment. Assets that are individually assessed for impairment and for which an impairment loss is or continues to be recognized are not included in a collective assessment of impairment. IAS 39.64; no amendment.
74. **If, in a subsequent period, the amount of the impairment loss decreases and the decrease can be related objectively to an event occurring after the impairment was recognized (such as an improvement in the debtor's credit rating), the previously recognized impairment loss shall be reversed either directly or by adjusting an allowance account. The reversal shall not result in a carrying amount of the financial asset that exceeds what the amortized cost would have been had the impairment not been recognized at the date the impairment is reversed. The amount of the reversal shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.** IAS 39.65; amended for public sector terminology.

Financial Assets Carried at Cost

75. **If there is objective evidence that an impairment loss has been incurred on an unquoted equity instrument that is not carried at fair value because its fair value cannot be reliably measured, or on a derivative asset that is linked to and must be settled by delivery of such an unquoted equity instrument, the amount of the impairment loss is measured as the difference between the carrying amount of the financial asset and the present value of estimated future cash flows discounted at the current market rate of return for a similar financial asset (see paragraph 48(c) and Appendix A paragraphs AG117 and AG118). Such impairment losses shall not be reversed.** IAS 39.66; no amendment.

Available-For-Sale Financial Assets

76. **When a decline in the fair value of an available-for-sale financial asset has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ and there is objective evidence that the asset is impaired** IAS 39.67; amended for public sector terminology.

(see paragraph 68), the cumulative loss that had been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ shall be removed ~~reclassified from net assets/equity and recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment~~ even though the financial asset has not been derecognized.

Retained wording from IAS 39.67 prior to the amendments to IAS 1 in 2007 as these amendments have not been made to IPSAS 1. IAS 1 and amended IAS refer to “reclassifications”.

77. The amount of the cumulative loss that is removed ~~reclassified from net assets/equity and recognized in to surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ under paragraph 76 shall be the difference between the acquisition cost (net of any principal repayment and amortization) and current fair value, less any impairment loss on that financial asset previously recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss.

IAS 39.68; amended for public sector terminology.

Retained wording from IAS 39.67 prior to the amendments to IAS 1 in 2007 as these amendments have not been made to IPSAS 1. IAS 1 and amended IAS refer to “reclassifications”.

78. Impairment losses recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss ~~for an investment in an equity instrument classified as available for sale shall not be reversed through surplus or deficit profit or loss~~.

IAS 39.69; amended for public sector terminology.

79. If, in a subsequent period, the fair value of a debt instrument classified as available for sale increases and the increase can be objectively related to an event occurring after the impairment loss was recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss, the impairment loss shall be reversed, with the amount of the reversal recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss.

IAS 39.70; amended for public sector terminology.

Hedging

80. If there is a designated hedging relationship between a hedging instrument and a hedged item as described in paragraphs 95–98 and Appendix A paragraphs AG146–AG148, accounting for the gain or loss on the hedging instrument and the hedged item shall follow paragraphs 99–113.

IAS 39.71; no amendment.

Hedging Instruments

Qualifying Instruments

81. This Standard does not restrict the circumstances in which a derivative may be designated as a hedging instrument provided the conditions in paragraph 98 are met, except for some written options (see Appendix A paragraph AG131). However, a non-derivative financial asset or non-derivative financial liability may be designated as a hedging instrument only for a hedge of a foreign currency risk.

IAS 39.72; no amendment.

82. For hedge accounting purposes, only instruments that involve a party external to the reporting entity (i.e. external to the economic entity-group or individual entity that is being reported on) can be designated as hedging instruments. Although individual entities

IAS 39.73; amended for public sector terminology.

IASB Improvements Project – May 2008 (delete references to segment).

within an economic entity ~~consolidated group~~ or divisions within an entity may enter into hedging transactions with other entities within the economic entity group ~~or divisions within the entity~~, any such ~~intragroup~~ transactions within the economic entity are eliminated on consolidation. Therefore, such hedging transactions do not qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements of the economic entity group. However, they may qualify for hedge accounting in the individual or separate financial statements of individual entities within the economic entity group provided that they are external to the individual entity that is being reported on.

Designation of Hedging Instruments

83. There is normally a single fair value measure for a hedging instrument in its entirety, and the factors that cause changes in fair value are co-dependent. Thus, a hedging relationship is designated by an entity for a hedging instrument in its entirety. The only exceptions permitted are:

- (a) Separating the intrinsic value and time value of an option contract and designating as the hedging instrument only the change in intrinsic value of an option and excluding change in its time value; and
- (b) Separating the interest element and the spot price of a forward contract.

These exceptions are permitted because the intrinsic value of the option and the premium on the forward can generally be measured separately. A dynamic hedging strategy that assesses both the intrinsic value and time value of an option contract can qualify for hedge accounting.

84. A proportion of the entire hedging instrument, such as 50 per cent of the notional amount, may be designated as the hedging instrument in a hedging relationship. However, a hedging relationship may not be designated for only a portion of the time period during which a hedging instrument remains outstanding. IAS 39.75; no amendment.
85. A single hedging instrument may be designated as a hedge of more than one type of risk provided that (a) the risks hedged can be identified clearly; (b) the effectiveness of the hedge can be demonstrated; and (c) it is possible to ensure that there is specific designation of the hedging instrument and different risk positions. IAS 39.76; no amendment.
86. Two or more derivatives, or proportions of them (or, in the case of a hedge of currency risk, two or more non-derivatives or proportions of them, or a combination of derivatives and non-derivatives or proportions of them), may be viewed in combination and jointly designated as the hedging instrument, including when the risk(s) arising from some derivatives offset(s) those arising from others. However, an interest rate collar or IAS 39.77; no amendment.

other derivative instrument that combines a written option and a purchased option does not qualify as a hedging instrument if it is, in effect, a net written option (for which a net premium is received). Similarly, two or more instruments (or proportions of them) may be designated as the hedging instrument only if none of them is a written option or a net written option.

Hedged Items

Qualifying Items

87. A hedged item can be a recognized asset or liability, an unrecognized firm commitment, a highly probable forecast transaction or a net investment in a foreign operation. The hedged item can be (a) a single asset, liability, firm commitment, highly probable forecast transaction or net investment in a foreign operation, (b) a group of assets, liabilities, firm commitments, highly probable forecast transactions or net investments in foreign operations with similar risk characteristics or (c) in a portfolio hedge of interest rate risk only, a portion of the portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities that share the risk being hedged. IAS 39.78; no amendment.
88. Unlike loans and receivables, a held-to-maturity investment cannot be a hedged item with respect to interest-rate risk or prepayment risk because designation of an investment as held to maturity requires an intention to hold the investment until maturity without regard to changes in the fair value or cash flows of such an investment attributable to changes in interest rates. However, a held-to-maturity investment can be a hedged item with respect to risks from changes in foreign currency exchange rates and credit risk. IAS 39.79; no amendment.
89. For hedge accounting purposes, only assets, liabilities, firm commitments or highly probable forecast transactions that involve a party external to the entity can be designated as hedged items. It follows that hedge accounting can be applied to transactions between entities or segments in the same economic entity group only in the individual or separate financial statements of those entities or segments and not in the consolidated financial statements of the economic entity group. As an exception, the foreign currency risk of a intra-group monetary item within an economic entity (for example, a payable/receivable between two controlled entities subsidiaries) may qualify as a hedged item in the consolidated financial statements if it results in an exposure to foreign exchange rate gains or losses that are not fully eliminated on consolidation in accordance with IPSAS 4, IAS 21 “The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates”. In accordance with IPSAS 4 IAS 21, foreign exchange rate gains and losses on intra-group monetary items within an economic entity are not fully eliminated on consolidation when the intra-entity group monetary IAS 39.80; amended for public sector terminology and references to other IPSASs.

Note: IASB improvements issued in May 2008 deleted the reference “segment” in paragraph 80, but no similar amendment was published for this paragraph. This is being clarified with the IASB.

item is transacted between two ~~group~~-entities within the economic entity that have different functional currencies. In addition, the foreign currency risk of a highly probable forecast ~~intra-group~~-transaction within the economic entity may qualify as a hedged item in consolidated financial statements provided that the transaction is denominated in a currency other than the functional currency of the entity entering into that transaction and the foreign currency risk will affect consolidated surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Designation of Financial Items as Hedged Items

90. If the hedged item is a financial asset or financial liability, it may be a hedged item with respect to the risks associated with only a portion of its cash flows or fair value (such as one or more selected contractual cash flows or portions of them or a percentage of the fair value) provided that effectiveness can be measured. For example, an identifiable and separately measurable portion of the interest rate exposure of an interest-bearing asset or interest-bearing liability may be designated as the hedged risk (such as a risk-free interest rate or benchmark interest rate component of the total interest rate exposure of a hedged financial instrument). IAS 39.81; no amendment.
91. In a fair value hedge of the interest rate exposure of a portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities (and only in such a hedge), the portion hedged may be designated in terms of an amount of a currency (for example, an amount of dollars, euro, pounds or rand) rather than as individual assets (or liabilities). Although the portfolio may, for risk management purposes, include assets and liabilities, the amount designated is an amount of assets or an amount of liabilities. Designation of a net amount including assets and liabilities is not permitted. The entity may hedge a portion of the interest rate risk associated with this designated amount. For example, in the case of a hedge of a portfolio containing prepayable assets, the entity may hedge the change in fair value that is attributable to a change in the hedged interest rate on the basis of expected, rather than contractual, repricing dates. When the portion hedged is based on expected repricing dates, the effect that changes in the hedged interest rate have on those expected repricing dates shall be included when determining the change in the fair value of the hedged item. Consequently, if a portfolio that contains prepayable items is hedged with a non-prepayable derivative, ineffectiveness arises if the dates on which items in the hedged portfolio are expected to prepay are revised, or actual prepayment dates differ from those expected. IAS 39.81A; no amendment.

Designation of Non-Financial Items as Hedged Items

92. **If the hedged item is a non-financial asset or non-financial liability, it shall be designated as a hedged item (a) for foreign currency risks, or (b) in its** IAS 39.82; no amendment.

entirety for all risks, because of the difficulty of isolating and measuring the appropriate portion of the cash flows or fair value changes attributable to specific risks other than foreign currency risks.

Designation of Groups of Items as Hedged Items

93. Similar assets or similar liabilities shall be aggregated and hedged as a group only if the individual assets or individual liabilities in the group share the risk exposure that is designated as being hedged. Furthermore, the change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk for each individual item in the group shall be expected to be approximately proportional to the overall change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk of the group of items. IAS 39.83; no amendment.
94. Because an entity assesses hedge effectiveness by comparing the change in the fair value or cash flow of a hedging instrument (or group of similar hedging instruments) and a hedged item (or group of similar hedged items), comparing a hedging instrument with an overall net position (for example, the net of all fixed rate assets and fixed rate liabilities with similar maturities), rather than with a specific hedged item, does not qualify for hedge accounting. IAS 39.84; no amendment.

Hedge Accounting

95. Hedge accounting recognizes the offsetting effects on surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ of changes in the fair values of the hedging instrument and the hedged item. IAS 39.85; amended for public sector terminology.
96. **Hedging relationships are of three types:** IAS 39.86; amended for public sector terminology and references to IPSAS.
- (a) ***Fair value hedge:*** a hedge of the exposure to changes in fair value of a recognized asset or liability or an unrecognized firm commitment, or an identified portion of such an asset, liability or firm commitment, that is attributable to a particular risk and could affect surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.
 - (b) ***Cash flow hedge:*** a hedge of the exposure to variability in cash flows that (i) is attributable to a particular risk associated with a recognized asset or liability (such as all or some future interest payments on variable rate debt) or a highly probable forecast transaction and (ii) could affect surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.
 - (c) ***Hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation*** as defined in IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~.
97. A hedge of the foreign currency risk of a firm commitment may be accounted for as a fair value hedge or as a cash flow hedge. IAS 39.87; no amendment.
98. **A hedging relationship qualifies for hedge accounting under paragraphs 99–113 if, and only if,** IAS 39.88; amended for public sector terminology.

all of the following conditions are met.

- (a) At the inception of the hedge there is formal designation and documentation of the hedging relationship and the entity's risk management objective and strategy for undertaking the hedge. That documentation shall include identification of the hedging instrument, the hedged item or transaction, the nature of the risk being hedged and how the entity will assess the hedging instrument's effectiveness in offsetting the exposure to changes in the hedged item's fair value or cash flows attributable to the hedged risk.
- (b) The hedge is expected to be highly effective (see Appendix A paragraphs AG149–AG160) in achieving offsetting changes in fair value or cash flows attributable to the hedged risk, consistently with the originally documented risk management strategy for that particular hedging relationship.
- (c) For cash flow hedges, a forecast transaction that is the subject of the hedge must be highly probable and must present an exposure to variations in cash flows that could ultimately affect surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.
- (d) The effectiveness of the hedge can be reliably measured, i.e. the fair value or cash flows of the hedged item that are attributable to the hedged risk and the fair value of the hedging instrument can be reliably measured (see paragraphs 48 and 49 and Appendix A paragraphs AG117 and AG118 for guidance on determining fair value).
- (e) The hedge is assessed on an ongoing basis and determined actually to have been highly effective throughout the financial reporting periods for which the hedge was designated.

Fair Value Hedges

99. If a fair value hedge meets the conditions in paragraph 98 during the period, it shall be accounted for as follows:
- IAS 39.89; amended for public sector terminology and references to IPSASs.
- (a) The gain or loss from remeasuring the hedging instrument at fair value (for a derivative hedging instrument) or the foreign currency component of its carrying amount measured in accordance with IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ (for a non-derivative hedging instrument) shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~; and
 - (b) The gain or loss on the hedged item attributable to the hedged risk shall adjust the carrying amount of the hedged item and be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

This applies if the hedged item is otherwise measured at cost. Recognition of the gain or loss attributable to the hedged risk in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ applies if the hedged item is an available-for-sale financial asset.

100. For a fair value hedge of the interest rate exposure of a portion of a portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities (and only in such a hedge), the requirement in paragraph 99(b) may be met by presenting the gain or loss attributable to the hedged item either:
 - (a) In a single separate line item within assets, for those repricing time periods for which the hedged item is an asset; or
 - (b) In a single separate line item within liabilities, for those repricing time periods for which the hedged item is a liability.

The separate line items referred to in (a) and (b) above shall be presented next to financial assets or financial liabilities. Amounts included in these line items shall be removed from the statement of financial position when the assets or liabilities to which they relate are derecognized.

IAS 39.89A; no amendment.
101. If only particular risks attributable to a hedged item are hedged, recognized changes in the fair value of the hedged item unrelated to the hedged risk are recognized as set out in paragraph 64.

IAS 39.90; no amendment.
102. **An entity shall discontinue prospectively the hedge accounting specified in paragraph 99 if:**
 - (a) **The hedging instrument expires or is sold, terminated or exercised (for this purpose, the replacement or rollover of a hedging instrument into another hedging instrument is not an expiration or termination if such replacement or rollover is part of the entity's documented hedging strategy);**
 - (b) **the hedge no longer meets the criteria for hedge accounting in paragraph 98; or**
 - (c) **The entity revokes the designation.**

IAS 39.91; no amendment.
103. **Any adjustment arising from paragraph 99(b) to the carrying amount of a hedged financial instrument for which the effective interest method is used (or, in the case of a portfolio hedge of interest rate risk, to the separate line item in the statement of financial position described in paragraph 100) shall be amortized to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. Amortization may begin as soon as an adjustment exists and shall begin no later than when the hedged item ceases to be adjusted for changes in its fair value attributable to the risk being hedged. The adjustment is based on a recalculated effective interest rate at the date amortization begins. However, if, in the case of a**

IAS 39.92; amended for public sector terminology.

fair value hedge of the interest rate exposure of a portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities (and only in such a hedge), amortizing using a recalculated effective interest rate is not practicable, the adjustment shall be amortized using a straight-line method. The adjustment shall be amortized fully by maturity of the financial instrument or, in the case of a portfolio hedge of interest rate risk, by expiry of the relevant repricing time period.

104. When an unrecognized firm commitment is designated as a hedged item, the subsequent cumulative change in the fair value of the firm commitment attributable to the hedged risk is recognized as an asset or liability with a corresponding gain or loss recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (see paragraph 99(b)). The changes in the fair value of the hedging instrument are also recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. IAS 39.93; amended for public sector terminology.
105. When an entity enters into a firm commitment to acquire an asset or assume a liability that is a hedged item in a fair value hedge, the initial carrying amount of the asset or liability that results from the entity meeting the firm commitment is adjusted to include the cumulative change in the fair value of the firm commitment attributable to the hedged risk that was recognized in the statement of financial position. IAS 39.94; no amendment.

Cash Flow Hedges

106. **If a cash flow hedge meets the conditions in paragraph 98 during the period, it shall be accounted for as follows:** IAS 39.95; amended for public sector terminology.
- (a) **The portion of the gain or loss on the hedging instrument that is determined to be an effective hedge (see paragraph 98) shall be recognized directly in net assets/equity through the statement of changes in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~; and**
 - (b) **The ineffective portion of the gain or loss on the hedging instrument shall be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.**
107. More specifically, a cash flow hedge is accounted for as follows: IAS 39.96; amended for public sector terminology.
- (a) The separate component of net assets/equity associated with the hedged item is adjusted to the lesser of the following (in absolute amounts):
 - (i) The cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument from inception of the hedge; and
 - (ii) The cumulative change in fair value (present value) of the expected future cash flows on the hedged item from inception of the hedge;
 - (b) Any remaining gain or loss on the hedging instrument or designated component of it (that is

not an effective hedge) is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~; and

- (c) If an entity's documented risk management strategy for a particular hedging relationship excludes from the assessment of hedge effectiveness a specific component of the gain or loss or related cash flows on the hedging instrument (see paragraphs 83, 84 and 98(a)), that excluded component of gain or loss is recognized in accordance with paragraph 64.

108. **If a hedge of a forecast transaction subsequently results in the recognition of a financial asset or a financial liability, the associated gains or losses that were recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with paragraph 106 shall be reclassified ~~from equity into surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment (see IAS 1 (as revised in 2007)) in the same period or periods during which the hedged forecast transaction affects surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (such as in the periods that interest revenue ~~income~~ or interest expense is recognized). However, if an entity expects that all or a portion of a loss recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ will not be recovered in one or more future periods, it shall reclassify into surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ the amount that is not expected to be recovered.**

IAS 39.97; amended for public sector terminology.

Deleted reference to “a reclassification adjustment” as this change was made as a result of revisions made to IAS 1 in 2007. Previous version of IAS 39.97 refers to gains and losses recognized directly in net assets/equity; and refers to “reclassified”.

Amended term “income” to “revenue”.

Included amendment from IASB improvements project 08/09 even though not approved. Amendment is as follows: ...in the same period or periods during which the hedged forecast transaction ~~asset acquired or liability assumed~~ affects surplus or deficit. The amendment that proposes to add ‘as a reclassification adjustment’ to the last sentence has not been added as this changes relates to revisions made to IAS 1 which have not been considered by the IPSASB.

109. **If a hedge of a forecast transaction subsequently results in the recognition of a non-financial asset or a non-financial liability, or a forecast transaction for a non-financial asset or non-financial liability becomes a firm commitment for which fair value hedge accounting is applied, then the entity shall adopt (a) or (b) below:**

- (a) **It reclassifies the associated gains and losses that were recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with paragraph 106 into surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment~~ (see IAS 1 (revised 2007)) in the same period or periods during which the asset acquired or liability assumed affects surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (such as in the periods that depreciation or inventories are recognized as an expense ~~or cost of sales is recognized~~). However, if an entity expects that all or a portion of a loss recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ will not be recovered in one or more future periods, it shall reclassify from net assets/equity into surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment~~ the amount that is not expected to be recovered.**

IAS 39.98; amended for public sector terminology.

Deleted reference to “a reclassification adjustment” as this change was made as a result of revisions made to IAS 1 in 2007. Previous version of IAS 39.908 refers to “recognized directly in equity”

Deleted reference to “cost of sales” as this classification is not likely in the public sector. Instead redrafted to refer to inventories being recognized as an expense.

- (b) It removes the associated gains and losses that were recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with paragraph 106, and includes them in the initial cost or other carrying amount of the asset or liability.
110. An entity shall adopt either (a) or (b) in paragraph 109 as its accounting policy and shall apply it consistently to all hedges to which paragraph 109 relates. IAS 39.99; no amendment.
111. For cash flow hedges other than those covered by paragraphs 108 and 109, amounts that had been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ shall be recognized in ~~reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit-profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment (see IAS 1 (revised 2007))~~ in the same period or periods during which the hedged forecast cash flows affects surplus or deficit-profit or loss (for example, when a forecast sale occurs). IAS 39.100; amended for public sector terminology.
Deleted reference to “a reclassification adjustment” as this change was made as a result of revisions made to IAS 1 in 2007.
Included IASB 08/09 improvements which replaces the word ‘transaction’ with ‘cash flows’ in the last sentence.
112. In any of the following circumstances an entity shall discontinue prospectively the hedge accounting specified in paragraphs 106–111: IAS 39.101; amended for public sector terminology.
- (a) The hedging instrument expires or is sold, terminated or exercised (for this purpose, the replacement or rollover of a hedging instrument into another hedging instrument is not an expiration or termination if such replacement or rollover is part of the entity’s documented hedging strategy). In this case, the cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument that ~~has been~~ remains recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ from the period when the hedge was effective (see paragraph 106(a)) shall remain separately recognized in net assets/equity until the forecast transaction occurs. When the transaction occurs, paragraph 108, 109 or 111 applies. IAS 1 changes not yet effected to IPSAS 1, reverted to original text.
- (b) The hedge no longer meets the criteria for hedge accounting in paragraph 98. In this case, the cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument that remains ~~has been~~ recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ from the period when the hedge was effective (see paragraph 106(a)) shall remain separately recognized in net assets/equity until the forecast transaction occurs. When the transaction occurs, paragraph 108, 109 or 111 applies.
- (c) The forecast transaction is no longer expected to occur, in which case any related cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument that has been recognized directly in net assets/equity

~~other comprehensive income~~ from the period when the hedge was effective (see paragraph 106(a)) shall be recognized in reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment. A forecast transaction that is no longer highly probable (see paragraph 98(c)) may still be expected to occur.

IAS 1 changes not yet effected to IPSAS 1, reverted to original text.

- (d) The entity revokes the designation. For hedges of a forecast transaction, the cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument that remains has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ from the period when the hedge was effective (see paragraph 106(a)) shall remain separately recognized in net assets/equity until the forecast transaction occurs or is no longer expected to occur. When the transaction occurs, paragraph 108, 109 or 111 applies. If the transaction is no longer expected to occur, the cumulative gain or loss that had been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ shall be recognized in reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment.

Hedges of a Net Investment

113. Hedges of a net investment in a foreign operation, including a hedge of a monetary item that is accounted for as part of the net investment (see IPSAS 4 IAS 21), shall be accounted for similarly to cash flow hedges:

IAS 39.102; amended for public sector terminology.

Deleted reference to “a reclassification adjustment” as this change was made as a result of revisions made to IAS 1 in 2007; reverted to original text.

- (a) The portion of the gain or loss on the hedging instrument that is determined to be an effective hedge (see paragraph 98) shall be recognized directly in net assets/equity through the statement of changes in net assets/equity (see IPSAS 1) ~~other comprehensive income~~; and
- (b) The ineffective portion shall be recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss.

The gain or loss on the hedging instrument relating to the effective portion of the hedge that has been recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ shall be recognized in reclassified from net assets/equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment (see IAS 1 (revised 2007)) in accordance with paragraphs 56–57 of IPSAS 4 IAS 21 on the disposal ~~or period disposal~~ of the foreign operation.

Amendments to IAS 27 not considered yet in IPSAS, therefore references to “period disposal” omitted. ‘Period’ disposal agrees with June 08 electronic version of IAS39.

Effective Date and Transition-Transitional Provisions

~~An entity shall apply this Standard (including the amendments issued in March 2004) for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2005. Earlier~~

IAS 39.102 Not applicable for first time adoption of IPSAS.

~~application is permitted. An entity shall not apply this Standard (including the amendments issued in March 2004) for annual periods beginning before 1 January 2005 unless it also applies IAS 32 (issued December 2003). If an entity applies this Standard for a period beginning before 1 January 2005, it shall disclose that fact.~~

Effective date paragraph prescribes the early adoption of IAS 32 if IAS 39 early adopted.

~~An entity shall apply the amendment in paragraph 2(j) for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006. If an entity applies IFRIC 5 *Rights to Interests arising from Decommissioning, Restoration and Environmental Rehabilitation Funds* for an earlier period, this amendment shall be applied for that earlier period.~~

IAS 39.103A Not applicable to the first time adoption of IPSAS.

~~*Financial Guarantee Contracts* (Amendments to IAS 39 and IFRS 4), issued in August 2005, amended paragraphs 2(e) and (h), 4, 47 and AG4, added paragraph AG4A, added a new definition of financial guarantee contracts in paragraph 9, and deleted paragraph 3. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006. Earlier application is encouraged. If an entity applies these changes for an earlier period, it shall disclose that fact and apply the related amendments to IAS 32~~*~~ and IFRS 4 at the same time.~~

IAS 39.103B Not applicable to the first time adoption of IPSAS.

~~IAS 1 (as revised in 2007) amended the terminology used throughout IFRSs. In addition it amended paragraphs 26, 27, 34, 54, 55, 57, 67, 68, 95(a), 97, 98, 100, 102, 105, 108, AG4D, AG4E(d)(i), AG56, AG67, AG83 and AG99B. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. If an entity applies IAS 1 (revised 2007) for an earlier period, the amendments shall be applied for that earlier period.~~

IAS 39.103C - Not applicable as these amendments have not been incorporated into the IPSAS.

~~IFRS 3 (as revised in 2008) deleted paragraph 2(f). An entity shall apply that amendment for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2009. If an entity applies IFRS 3 (revised 2008) for an earlier period, the amendment shall also be applied for that earlier period.~~

IAS 39.103D; retained exclusion in scope.

~~IAS 27 (as amended in 2008) amended paragraph 102. An entity shall apply that amendment for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2009. If an entity applies IAS 27 (amended 2008) for an earlier period, the amendment shall be applied for that earlier period.~~

IAS 39.103E

Consider when updating IPSAS 6.

~~An entity shall apply the amendment in paragraph 2 for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. If an entity applies *Puttable Financial Instruments and Obligations Arising on Liquidation* (amendments to IAS 32 and IAS 1) issued in February 2008, for an earlier period, the amendment in paragraph 2 shall be applied for that earlier period.~~

IAS 39.103F; from amendments to IAS 32 on puttable instruments. Not applicable, as changes will be adopted once IPSAS effective & all financial instrument IPSASs to be adopted simultaneously.

~~*Reclassification of Financial Assets* (Amendments to IAS 39 and IFRS 7), issued in October 2008, amended~~

IAS 39.103G – Resulting from reclassification amendments to IAS 39 and IFRS 7

~~paragraphs 50 and AG8, and added paragraphs 50B–50F. An entity shall apply those amendments from 1 July 2008. An entity shall not reclassify a financial asset in accordance with paragraph 50B, 50D or 50E before 1 July 2008. Any reclassification of a financial asset made in periods beginning on or after 1 November 2008 shall take effect only from the date when the reclassification is made. Any reclassification of a financial asset in accordance with paragraph 50B, 50D or 50E shall not be applied retrospectively to reporting periods ended before the effective date set out in this paragraph.~~

~~An entity shall apply paragraphs AG99BA, AG99E, AG99F, AG110A and AG110B retrospectively for annual periods beginning on or after 1 July 2009, in accordance with IAS 8 *Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors*. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies *Eligible Hedged Items* (Amendment to IAS 39) for periods beginning before 1 July 2009, it shall disclose that fact.~~

~~Improvements to IFRSs issued in [date] amended paragraphs 2(g), 11A, 97–100 and AG33(d). An entity shall apply those amendments prospectively for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2010. Earlier application is permitted. If an entity applies the amendments for an earlier period it shall disclose that fact.~~

~~An entity shall apply the amended paragraph 12 for annual periods ending on or after [15 December 2008].~~

114. **This Standard shall be applied retrospectively except as specified in paragraphs 115–124. The opening balance of accumulated surplus or deficit retained earnings for the earliest prior period presented and all other comparative amounts shall be adjusted as if this Standard had always been in use unless restating the information would be impracticable. If restatement is impracticable, the entity shall disclose that fact and indicate the extent to which the information was restated.**

115. **When this Standard is first applied, an entity is permitted to designate a financial asset, including those that may have been recognized a previously, ~~recognized financial asset~~ as available for sale. For any such financial asset the entity shall recognize all cumulative changes in fair value in a separate component of net assets/equity until subsequent derecognition or impairment, when the entity shall transfer ~~reclassify~~ that cumulative gain or loss ~~from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment (see IAS 1 (revised 2007)).~~ **For financial assets that were previously recognized,** ~~the entity shall also:~~**

Not included as only applicable to those entities that have applied a version of IAS 39; these changes are effective immediately and would have been applied by the time the IPSAS is introduced.

IAS 39.103G – consequential amendments as a result of changes made to IAS 39 on eligible hedged items.

Not included as these changes would already have been applied once IPSAS becomes effective.

Note: both amendments numbered 103G in the IASs.

IAS 39.103H; transitional provisions relating to the IASB 08/09 improvements.

IAS 39.103J; transitional provisions relating to the IASB's amendments relating to embedded derivatives published in December 2008.

IAS 39.104; amended for public sector terminology.

IAS 39.105.; amended wording slightly to cater for entities that are adopting accrual accounting for the first time, as well as those that are applying this Standard for the first time but already apply an accrual basis of accounting.

Approach for designation on initial application of the Standard consistent with IFRS 1.

IAS 1 amendments not yet considered by IPSASB, therefore reverted to original text which refers to a transfer rather than a reclassification.

- (a) Restate the financial asset using the new designation in the comparative financial statements; and
- (b) Disclose the fair value of the financial assets at the date of designation and their classification and carrying amount in the previous financial statements.
116. ~~An entity shall apply paragraphs 11A, 48A, AG4B–AG4K, AG33A and AG33B and the 2005 amendments in paragraphs 9, 12 and 13 for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006. Earlier application is encouraged.~~
- IAS 39.105A
- 11A, AG33A and AG33B – Embedded derivatives
- 48A – Best evidence of fair value
- AG4B – AG4K – Designation of instruments at fair value.
117. When this Standard is first applied, an entity is permitted to designate a financial asset or a financial liability, including those that may have been recognized previously, at fair value through surplus or deficit that meet the criteria for designation in ~~An entity that first applies paragraphs 10, 13, 14, 15, 51 AG6–AG15, AG46 and AG48. Where an entity previously recognized financial assets and financial liabilities, the following apply:~~
- IAS 39.105B – Retained transitional provisions from IAS 39 as they will be relevant for entities adopting this Standard for the first time. Approach for designation on initial application of the Standard consistent with IFRS 1.
- However, have amended the paragraph so that it can cater for entities that are adopting accrual accounting for the first time, as well as those that are applying this Standard for the first time but already apply an accrual basis of accounting.
- Sub-paragraphs (a) to (d) have been included as some entities may have adopted IAS 39 or a version thereof.
- (a) ~~Is permitted, when those new and amended paragraphs are first applied, to designate as at fair value through profit or loss any previously recognized financial asset or financial liability that then qualifies for such designation. When the annual period begins before 1 September 2005, such designations need not be completed until 1 September 2005 and may also include financial assets and financial liabilities recognized between the beginning of that annual period and 1 September 2005. Notwithstanding paragraph 111, any financial assets and financial liabilities designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss in accordance with this subparagraph that were previously designated as the hedged item in fair value hedge accounting relationships shall be de-designated from those relationships at the same time they are designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss.~~
- (b) Shall disclose the fair value of any financial assets or financial liabilities designated in accordance with subparagraph (a) at the date of designation and their classification and carrying amount in the previous financial statements.
- (c) Shall de-designate any financial asset or financial liability previously designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ if it does not qualify for such designation in accordance with those ~~new and amended~~

paragraphs. When a financial asset or financial liability will be measured at amortized cost after de-designation, the date of de-designation is deemed to be its date of initial recognition.

- (d) Shall disclose the fair value of any financial assets or financial liabilities de-designated in accordance with subparagraph (c) at the date of de-designation and their new classifications.

~~An entity that first applies paragraphs 11A, 48A, AG4B AG4K, AG33A and AG33B and the 2005 amendments in paragraphs 9, 12 and 13 in its annual period beginning on or after 1 January 2006~~

IAS 39.105C; deleted as the approach in the preceding paragraph has been adopted.

~~(a) shall de designate any financial asset or financial liability previously designated as at fair value through profit or loss only if it does not qualify for such designation in accordance with those new and amended paragraphs. When a financial asset or financial liability will be measured at amortized cost after de designation, the date of de designation is deemed to be its date of initial recognition.~~

~~(b) shall not designate as at fair value through profit or loss any previously recognized financial assets or financial liabilities.~~

~~(c) shall disclose the fair value of any financial assets or financial liabilities de designated in accordance with subparagraph (a) at the date of de designation and their new classifications.~~

118. **An entity shall restate its comparative financial statements using the new designations in paragraph 117 or 105C provided that, in the case of a financial asset, financial liability, or group of financial assets, financial liabilities or both, designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss, those items or groups would have met the criteria in paragraph 10(b)(i), 10(b)(ii) or 11 at the beginning of the comparative period or, if acquired after the beginning of the comparative period, would have met the criteria in paragraph 10(b)(i), 10(b)(ii) or 13 at the date of initial recognition.**

IAS 39.105D; retained and amended terminology.

119. **Except as permitted by paragraph 120, an entity shall apply the derecognition requirements in paragraphs 17–39 and Appendix A paragraphs AG50–AG72 prospectively. If an entity derecognized financial assets under another basis of accounting as a result of a transaction that occurred before the adoption of this Standard and those assets would not have been derecognized under this Standard, it shall not recognize those assets. Accordingly, if an entity derecognized financial assets under IAS 39 (revised 2000) as a result of a transaction that occurred before 1 January 2004 and those assets would not have been derecognized under this Standard,**

IAS 39.106 (similar to IFRS 1.27 and 27A); amended to refer to “another basis of accounting” rather than IAS 39.

~~it shall not recognize those assets.~~

120. Notwithstanding paragraph 119, an entity may apply the derecognition requirements in paragraphs 17–39 and Appendix A paragraphs AG50–AG72 retrospectively from a date of the entity's choosing, provided that the information needed to apply this Standard IAS 39 to assets and liabilities derecognized as a result of past transactions was obtained at the time of initially accounting for those transactions. IAS 39.107 (similar to IFRS 1.27 and 27A)
121. Notwithstanding paragraph 114, an entity may apply the requirements in the last sentence of paragraph AG112, and paragraph AG113, in either of the following ways: IAS 39.107A (same as IFRS 1.25G)
Amended to allow entities to either apply the requirements prospectively, or retrospectively provided the relevant information is available.
- (a) Prospectively to transactions entered into after the adoption of this Standard ~~after 25 October 2002~~; or
- (b) Retrospectively from a date of the entity's choosing, provided that the information needed to apply this Standard IAS 39 to assets and liabilities as a result of past transactions was obtained at the time of initially accounting for those transactions. At prospectively to transactions entered into after 1 January 2004.
122. An entity shall not adjust the carrying amount of non-financial assets and non-financial liabilities to exclude gains and losses related to cash flow hedges that were included in the carrying amount before the beginning of the financial year in which this Standard is first applied. At the beginning of the financial period in which this Standard is first applied, any amount recognized ~~outside profit or loss (in other comprehensive income or directly in net assets/equity)~~ for a hedge of a firm commitment that under this Standard is accounted for as a fair value hedge shall be reclassified as an asset or liability, except for a hedge of foreign currency risk that continues to be treated as a cash flow hedge. IAS 39.108 – retained. Given that some entities have applied IAS 39 or a version thereof, propose to retain this transitional provision.
123. ~~An entity shall apply the last sentence of paragraph 80, and paragraphs AG99A and AG99B, for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006. Earlier application is encouraged. If an entity has designated as the hedged item an external forecast transaction that:~~ IAS 39.108A – retained. Given that some entities have applied IAS 39 or a version thereof, propose to retain this transitional provision.
- (a) Is denominated in the functional currency of the entity entering into the transaction;
- (b) Gives rise to an exposure that will have an effect on consolidated surplus or deficit profit or loss (i.e. is denominated in a currency other than the economic entity's group's presentation currency); and
- (c) Would have qualified for hedge accounting had it not been denominated in the functional

currency of the entity entering into it,

it may apply hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements in the period(s) before the date of first application of this Standard ~~the last sentence of paragraph 80, and paragraphs AG99A and AG99B.~~

124. An entity need not apply paragraph AG139 to comparative information relating to periods before the date of application of the last sentence of paragraph 97 and paragraph AG137.

IAS 39.108B; retained with no amendment. See rationale outlined above.

~~Paragraphs 9, 73 and AG8 were amended and paragraph 50A added by *Improvements to IFRSs* issued in May 2008. An entity shall apply those amendments for annual periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009. An entity shall apply the amendments in paragraphs 9 and 50A as of the date and in the manner it applied the 2005 amendments described in paragraph 105A. Earlier application of all the amendments is permitted. If an entity applies the amendments for an earlier period it shall disclose that fact.~~

IAS 39.108C; resulting from improvements project.

Not included as amendments will be adopted as part of the IPSASs when it becomes effective.

Effective Date

125. An entity shall apply this International Public Sector Accounting Standard for annual financial statements covering periods beginning on or after Month, Day, Year. Earlier application is encouraged. If an entity adopts this Standard for a period beginning before Month, Day, Year, it shall disclose that fact.
- Added standard wording included in IPSAS.
126. An entity shall not apply this International Public Sector Accounting Standard before Month, Day, Year, unless it also applies ED 37 and ED 39.
- Added paragraph to explain the early adoption of the financial instrument standards as a package of Standards.
127. When an entity adopts the accrual basis of accounting, as defined by International Public Sector Accounting Standards, for financial reporting purposes, subsequent to this effective date, this Standard applies to the entity's annual financial statements covering periods beginning on or after the date of adoption.
- Standard wording in IPSASs.

Withdrawal of Other Pronouncements

~~This Standard supersedes IAS 39, "Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement" revised in October 2000.~~

~~IAS 39.109; deleted as not relevant to the IPSAS.~~

~~This Standard and the accompanying Implementation Guidance supersede the Implementation Guidance issued by the IAS 39 Implementation Guidance Committee, established by the former IASC.~~

~~IAS 39.110; deleted as not relevant to the IPSAS.~~

Appendix A - Application Guidance

This appendix is an integral part of ED 38.

Scope (paragraphs 2–8)

- AG1 This Standard does not change the requirements relating to employee benefit plans that comply with the international or national accounting standard on ~~IAS 26~~ accounting and reporting by retirement benefit plans and royalty agreements based on the volume of sales or service revenues that are accounted for under IPSAS 9 ~~IAS 18~~.
- IAS 39.AG2; amended references from IFRSs to IPSASs.

Investments in Controlled Entities, Associates and Joint Ventures

- AG2 Sometimes, an entity makes what it views as a ‘strategic investment’ in equity instruments issued by another entity, with the intention of establishing or maintaining a long-term operating relationship with the entity in which the investment is made. The investor entity uses IPSAS 7 ~~IAS 28~~ to determine whether the equity method of accounting is appropriate for such an investment. Similarly, the investor entity uses IPSAS 8 ~~IAS 31~~ to determine whether proportionate consolidation or the equity method is appropriate for such an investment. If neither the equity method nor proportionate consolidation is appropriate, the entity applies this Standard to that strategic investment.
- IAS 39.AG2; amended references to IPSASs.

Insurance Contracts

- AG3 This Standard applies to the financial assets and financial liabilities of insurers, other than rights and obligations that paragraph 2(e) excludes because they arise from insurance contracts ~~under contracts within the scope of IFRS 4. An entity does however apply this Standard to financial guarantee contracts as well as embedded derivatives included in insurance contracts. An entity may, but is not required to, apply this Standard to other insurance contracts that involve the transfer of financial risks.~~
- IAS 39.AG3A; deleted references to contracts within the scope of IFRS 4 and referred to insurance contracts in general.
- AG4 Financial guarantee contracts may have various legal forms, such as a guarantee, some types of letter of credit, a credit default contract or an insurance contract. Their accounting treatment does not depend on their legal form. The following are examples of the appropriate treatment (see paragraph 2(e)):
- (a) ~~Although a financial guarantee contract meets the definition of an insurance contract in IFRS 4 if the risk transferred is significant, the issuer applies this Standard. Nevertheless, if the issuer~~
- IAS 39.AG4; amended based on the amended scope which does not allow entities to either apply IFRS 4 or ED38 to financial guarantee contracts.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

~~has previously asserted explicitly that it regards such contracts as insurance contracts and has used accounting applicable to insurance contracts, the issuer may elect to apply either this Standard or IFRS 4 to such financial guarantee contracts. If this Standard applies, paragraph 45 requires the issuer to recognize a financial guarantee contract initially at fair value. If the financial guarantee contract was issued to an unrelated party in a stand-alone arm's length transaction, its fair value at inception is likely to equal the premium received, unless there is evidence to the contrary. Subsequently, unless the financial guarantee contract was designated at inception as at fair value through surplus or deficit profit or loss or unless paragraphs 31–39 and AG67–AG72 apply (when a transfer of a financial asset does not qualify for derecognition or the continuing involvement approach applies), the issuer measures it at the higher of:~~

- ~~(i) The amount determined in accordance with IPSAS 19 ~~IAS 37~~; and~~
- ~~(ii) The amount initially recognized less, when appropriate, cumulative amortization recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9 ~~IAS 18~~ (see paragraph 49(c)).~~
- (b) Some credit-related guarantees do not, as a precondition for payment, require that the holder is exposed to, and has incurred a loss on, the failure of the debtor to make payments on the guaranteed asset when due. An example of such a guarantee is one that requires payments in response to changes in a specified credit rating or credit index. Such guarantees are not financial guarantee contracts, as defined in this Standard, and are not insurance contracts, ~~as defined in IFRS 4~~. Such guarantees are derivatives and the issuer applies this Standard to them.
- (c) If a financial guarantee contract was issued in connection with the sale of goods, the issuer applies IPSAS 9 ~~IAS 18~~ in determining when it recognizes the revenue from the guarantee and from the sale of goods.

~~Assertions that an issuer regards contracts as insurance contracts are typically found throughout the issuer's communications with customers and regulators, contracts, business documentation and financial statements. Furthermore, insurance contracts are often subject to accounting requirements that are distinct from the requirements for other types of transaction, such as contracts issued by banks or commercial companies. In such cases, an issuer's financial~~

IAS 39.AG4A; deleted as this requirement has been amended.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

~~statements typically include a statement that the issuer has used those accounting requirements.~~

- AG5 Some contracts require a payment based on climatic, geological or other physical variables. (Those based on climatic variables are sometimes referred to as ‘weather derivatives’.) If those contracts are not insurance contracts within the scope of IFRS 4, they are within the scope of this Standard.

IAS 39.AG1; amended as all insurance contracts are in principle outside the scope of this Standard and not just those included in IFRS 4.

Relocated to a section dealing with insurance contracts.

Definitions (paragraphs 9 and 10)

Designation as at Fair Value through Surplus or Deficit ~~profit or loss~~

- AG6 Paragraph 10 of this Standard allows an entity to designate a financial asset, a financial liability, or a group of financial instruments (financial assets, financial liabilities or both) as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ provided that doing so results in more relevant information.

IAS 39.AG4B; amended for public sector terminology.

- AG7 The decision of an entity to designate a financial asset or financial liability as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is similar to an accounting policy choice (although, unlike an accounting policy choice, it is not required to be applied consistently to all similar transactions). When an entity has such a choice, paragraph 17(b) of ~~IPSAS 3, 14(b)~~ IAS 8 “Accounting Policies, Changes in Accounting Estimates and Errors” requires the chosen policy to result in the financial statements providing reliable and more relevant information about the effects of transactions, other events and conditions on the entity’s financial position, financial performance or cash flows. In the case of designation as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, paragraph 10 sets out the two circumstances when the requirement for more relevant information will be met. Accordingly, to choose such designation in accordance with paragraph 10, the entity needs to demonstrate that it falls within one (or both) of these two circumstances.

IAS 39.AG4C; amended terminology to be public sector specific and amended references to IFRSs.

Paragraph 10(b)(i): Designation eliminates or significantly reduces a measurement or recognition inconsistency that would otherwise arise

- AG8 Under ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39, measurement of a financial asset or financial liability and classification of recognized changes in its value are determined by the item’s classification and whether the item is part of a designated hedging relationship. Those requirements can create a measurement or recognition inconsistency (sometimes referred to as an ‘accounting mismatch’) when, for example, in the absence of designation as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, a financial asset would be classified as available for sale

IAS 39.AG4D; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

(with most changes in fair value recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~) and a liability the entity considers related would be measured at amortized cost (with changes in fair value not recognized). In such circumstances, an entity may conclude that its financial statements would provide more relevant information if both the asset and the liability were classified as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

- AG9 The following examples show when this condition could be met. In all cases, an entity may use this condition to designate financial assets or financial liabilities as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ only if it meets the principle in paragraph 10(b)(i). IAS 39.AG4E; amended for public sector terminology.
- (a) An entity has liabilities whose cash flows are contractually based on the performance of assets that would otherwise be classified as available for sale. For example, an insurer may have liabilities containing a discretionary participation feature that pay benefits based on realized and/or unrealized investment returns of a specified pool of the insurer's assets. If the measurement of those liabilities reflects current market prices, classifying the assets as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ means that changes in the fair value of the financial assets are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in the same period as related changes in the value of the liabilities.
 - (b) An entity has liabilities under insurance contracts whose measurement incorporates current information (as permitted by IFRS 4, paragraph 24), and financial assets it considers related that would otherwise be classified as available for sale or measured at amortized cost.
 - (c) An entity has financial assets, financial liabilities or both that share a risk, such as interest rate risk, that gives rise to opposite changes in fair value that tend to offset each other. However, only some of the instruments would be measured at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (i.e. are derivatives, or are classified as held for trading). It may also be the case that the requirements for hedge accounting are not met, for example because the requirements for effectiveness in paragraph 98 are not met.
 - (d) An entity has financial assets, financial liabilities or both that share a risk, such as interest rate risk, that gives rise to opposite changes in fair value that tend to offset each other and the entity does not qualify for hedge accounting because none of

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

the instruments is a derivative. Furthermore, in the absence of hedge accounting there is a significant inconsistency in the recognition of gains and losses. For example:

- (i) The entity has financed a portfolio of fixed rate assets that would otherwise be classified as available for sale with fixed rate debentures whose changes in fair value tend to offset each other. Reporting both the assets and the debentures at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ corrects the inconsistency that would otherwise arise from measuring the assets at fair value with changes reported in net assets/equity ~~recognised in other comprehensive income~~ and the debentures at amortized cost.
- (ii) The entity has financed a specified group of loans by issuing traded bonds whose changes in fair value tend to offset each other. If, in addition, the entity regularly buys and sells the bonds but rarely, if ever, buys and sells the loans, reporting both the loans and the bonds at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ eliminates the inconsistency in the timing of recognition of gains and losses that would otherwise result from measuring them both at amortized cost and recognizing a gain or loss each time a bond is repurchased.

IAS 1 amendments not yet considered by the IPSASB, therefore omitted.

AG10 In cases such as those described in the preceding paragraph, to designate, at initial recognition, the financial assets and financial liabilities not otherwise so measured as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ may eliminate or significantly reduce the measurement or recognition inconsistency and produce more relevant information. For practical purposes, the entity need not enter into all of the assets and liabilities giving rise to the measurement or recognition inconsistency at exactly the same time. A reasonable delay is permitted provided that each transaction is designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ at its initial recognition and, at that time, any remaining transactions are expected to occur.

IAS 39.AG4F; amended for public sector terminology.

AG11 It would not be acceptable to designate only some of the financial assets and financial liabilities giving rise to the inconsistency as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ if to do so would not eliminate or significantly reduce the inconsistency and would therefore not result in more relevant information. However, it would be acceptable to designate only some of a number of similar financial assets or similar financial liabilities if doing so achieves a significant reduction (and possibly a greater reduction than other

IAS 39.AG4G; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

allowable designations) in the inconsistency. For example, assume an entity has a number of similar financial liabilities that sum to CU100¹ and a number of similar financial assets that sum to CU50 but are measured on a different basis. The entity may significantly reduce the measurement inconsistency by designating at initial recognition all of the assets but only some of the liabilities (for example, individual liabilities with a combined total of CU45) as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. However, because designation as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ can be applied only to the whole of a financial instrument, the entity in this example must designate one or more liabilities in their entirety. It could not designate either a component of a liability (e.g. changes in value attributable to only one risk, such as changes in a benchmark interest rate) or a proportion (i.e. percentage) of a liability.

Paragraph 10(b)(ii): A group of financial assets, financial liabilities or both is managed and its performance is evaluated on a fair value basis, in accordance with a documented risk management or investment strategy

- AG12 An entity may manage and evaluate the performance of a group of financial assets, financial liabilities or both in such a way that measuring that group at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ results in more relevant information. The focus in this instance is on the way the entity manages and evaluates performance, rather than on the nature of its financial instruments. IAS 39.AG4H; amended for public sector terminology.
- AG13 The following examples show when this condition could be met. In all cases, an entity may use this condition to designate financial assets or financial liabilities as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ only if it meets the principle in paragraph 10(b)(ii). IAS 39.AG4I; amended for public sector terminology and references to IFRSs.
- (a) The entity is a venture capital organization, mutual fund, unit trust or similar entity whose business is investing in financial assets with a view to profiting from their total return in the form of interest, ~~or dividends~~ or similar distributions and changes in fair value. IPSAS 7 ~~IAS 28~~ and IPSAS 8 ~~IAS 34~~ allow such investments to be excluded from their scope provided they are measured at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. An entity may apply the same accounting policy to other investments managed on a total return basis but over which its influence is insufficient for them to be within the scope of IPSAS 7 ~~IAS 28~~ or IPSAS 8 ~~IAS 34~~.

¹ In this Standard, monetary amounts are denominated in 'currency units' (CU).

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- (b) The entity has financial assets and financial liabilities that share one or more risks and those risks are managed and evaluated on a fair value basis in accordance with a documented policy of asset and liability management. An example could be an entity that has issued 'structured products' containing multiple embedded derivatives and manages the resulting risks on a fair value basis using a mix of derivative and non-derivative financial instruments. A similar example could be an entity that originates fixed interest rate loans and manages the resulting benchmark interest rate risk using a mix of derivative and non-derivative financial instruments.
- (c) The entity is an insurer that holds a portfolio of financial assets, manages that portfolio so as to maximize its total return (i.e. interest, ~~or~~ dividends or similar distributions and changes in fair value), and evaluates its performance on that basis. The portfolio may be held to back specific liabilities, net assets/equity or both. If the portfolio is held to back specific liabilities, the condition in paragraph 10(b)(ii) may be met for the assets regardless of whether the insurer also manages and evaluates the liabilities on a fair value basis. The condition in paragraph 10(b)(ii) may be met when the insurer's objective is to maximize total return on the assets over the longer term even if amounts paid to holders of participating contracts depend on other factors such as the amount of gains realized in a shorter period (e.g. a year) or are subject to the insurer's discretion.

AG14 As noted above, this condition relies on the way the entity manages and evaluates performance of the group of financial instruments under consideration. Accordingly, (subject to the requirement of designation at initial recognition) an entity that designates financial instruments as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ on the basis of this condition shall so designate all eligible financial instruments that are managed and evaluated together.

IAS 39.AG4J; amended for public sector terminology.

AG15 Documentation of the entity's strategy need not be extensive but should be sufficient to demonstrate compliance with paragraph 10(b)(ii). Such documentation is not required for each individual item, but may be on a portfolio basis. For example, if the performance management system within an entity ~~for a department~~—as approved by the entity's key management personnel—clearly demonstrates that its performance is evaluated on a total return basis, no

IAS 39.AG4K; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

further documentation is required to demonstrate compliance with paragraph 10(b)(ii).

Effective Interest Rate

- | | | |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG16 | In some cases, financial assets are acquired at a deep discount that reflects incurred credit losses. Entities include such incurred credit losses in the estimated cash flows when computing the effective interest rate. | IAS 39.AG5; no amendment. |
| AG17 | When applying the effective interest method, an entity generally amortizes any fees, points paid or received, transaction costs and other premiums or discounts included in the calculation of the effective interest rate over the expected life of the instrument. However, a shorter period is used if this is the period to which the fees, points paid or received, transaction costs, premiums or discounts relate. This will be the case when the variable to which the fees, points paid or received, transaction costs, premiums or discounts relate is repriced to market rates before the expected maturity of the instrument. In such a case, the appropriate amortization period is the period to the next such repricing date. For example, if a premium or discount on a floating rate instrument reflects interest that has accrued on the instrument since interest was last paid, or changes in market rates since the floating interest rate was reset to market rates, it will be amortized to the next date when the floating interest is reset to market rates. This is because the premium or discount relates to the period to the next interest reset date because, at that date, the variable to which the premium or discount relates (i.e. interest rates) is reset to market rates. If, however, the premium or discount results from a change in the credit spread over the floating rate specified in the instrument, or other variables that are not reset to market rates, it is amortized over the expected life of the instrument. | IAS 39.AG6; no amendment. |
| AG18 | For floating rate financial assets and floating rate financial liabilities, periodic re-estimation of cash flows to reflect movements in market rates of interest alters the effective interest rate. If a floating rate financial asset or floating rate financial liability is recognized initially at an amount equal to the principal receivable or payable on maturity, re-estimating the future interest payments normally has no significant effect on the carrying amount of the asset or liability. | IAS 39.AG7; no amendment. |
| AG19 | If an entity revises its estimates of payments or receipts, the entity shall adjust the carrying amount of the financial asset or financial liability (or group of financial instruments) to reflect actual and revised estimated cash flows. The entity recalculates the carrying amount by computing the present value of | IAS 39.AG8; amended for public sector terminology.

IASB Improvements Project – May 2008; reclassification amendments – October 2008. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

estimated future cash flows at the financial instrument's original effective interest rate or, when applicable, the revised effective interest rate calculated in accordance with paragraph 121. The adjustment is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ as revenue ~~income~~ or expense. ~~in profit or loss~~. If a financial asset is reclassified in accordance with paragraph 55, 57 or 58, and the entity subsequently increases its estimates of future cash receipts as a result of increased recoverability of those cash receipts, the effect of that increase shall be recognized as an adjustment to the effective interest rate from the date of the change in estimate rather than as an adjustment to the carrying amount of the asset at the date of the change in estimate.

Derivatives

- | | | |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG20 | Typical examples of derivatives are futures and forward, swap and option contracts. A derivative usually has a notional amount, which is an amount of currency, a number of shares, a number of units of weight or volume or other units specified in the contract. However, a derivative instrument does not require the holder or writer to invest or receive the notional amount at the inception of the contract. Alternatively, a derivative could require a fixed payment or payment of an amount that can change (but not proportionally with a change in the underlying) as a result of some future event that is unrelated to a notional amount. For example, a contract may require a fixed payment of CU1,000 ² if the six-month <u>interbank offererd rate</u> LIBOR increases by 100 basis points. Such a contract is a derivative even though a notional amount is not specified. | IAS 39.AG9; no amendment.

Amended references from LIBOR to an interbank rate. |
| AG21 | The definition of a derivative in this Standard includes contracts that are settled gross by delivery of the underlying item (e.g. a forward contract to purchase a fixed rate debt instrument). An entity may have a contract to buy or sell a non-financial item that can be settled net in cash or another financial instrument or by exchanging financial instruments (e.g. a contract to buy or sell a commodity at a fixed price at a future date). Such a contract is within the scope of this Standard unless it was entered into and continues to be held for the purpose of delivery of a non-financial item in accordance with the entity's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements (see paragraphs 4–6). | IAS 39.AG10; no amendment. |
| AG22 | One of the defining characteristics of a derivative is that it has an initial net investment that is smaller than | IAS 39.AG11; no amendment. |

² In this Standard, monetary amounts are denominated in 'currency units' (CU).

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors. An option contract meets that definition because the premium is less than the investment that would be required to obtain the underlying financial instrument to which the option is linked. A currency swap that requires an initial exchange of different currencies of equal fair values meets the definition because it has a zero initial net investment.

- AG23 A regular way purchase or sale gives rise to a fixed price commitment between trade date and settlement date that meets the definition of a derivative. However, because of the short duration of the commitment it is not recognized as a derivative financial instrument. Rather, this Standard provides for special accounting for such regular way contracts (see paragraphs 40 and AG73–AG76). IAS 39.AG12; no amendment.
- AG24 The definition of a derivative refers to non-financial variables that are not specific to a party to the contract. These include an index of earthquake losses in a particular region and an index of temperatures in a particular city. Non-financial variables specific to a party to the contract include the occurrence or non-occurrence of a fire that damages or destroys an asset of a party to the contract. A change in the fair value of a non-financial asset is specific to the owner if the fair value reflects not only changes in market prices for such assets (a financial variable) but also the condition of the specific non-financial asset held (a non-financial variable). For example, if a guarantee of the residual value of a specific car exposes the guarantor to the risk of changes in the car's physical condition, the change in that residual value is specific to the owner of the car. IAS 39.AG12A; no amendment.

Transaction Costs

- AG25 Transaction costs include fees and commissions paid to agents (including employees acting as selling agents), advisers, brokers and dealers, levies by regulatory agencies and securities exchanges, and transfer taxes and duties. Transaction costs do not include debt premiums or discounts, financing costs or internal administrative or holding costs. IAS 39.AG13; no amendment.

Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities Held for Trading

- AG26 Trading generally reflects active and frequent buying and selling, and financial instruments held for trading generally are used with the objective of generating a profit from short-term fluctuations in price or dealer's margin. IAS 39.AG14; no amendment.
Consistent with the text of ED37 and this Standard, retained reference to 'dealer's margin'

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

AG27 Financial liabilities held for trading include: IAS 39.AG15; no amendment.

- (a) Derivative liabilities that are not accounted for as hedging instruments;
- (b) Obligations to deliver financial assets borrowed by a short seller (i.e. an entity that sells financial assets it has borrowed and does not yet own);
- (c) Financial liabilities that are incurred with an intention to repurchase them in the near term (e.g. a quoted debt instrument that the issuer may buy back in the near term depending on changes in its fair value); and
- (d) Financial liabilities that are part of a portfolio of identified financial instruments that are managed together and for which there is evidence of a recent pattern of short-term profit-taking.

The fact that a liability is used to fund trading activities does not in itself make that liability one that is held for trading.

Held-to-Maturity Investments

AG28 An entity does not have a positive intention to hold to maturity an investment in a financial asset with a fixed maturity if: IAS 39.AG16; no amendment.

- (a) The entity intends to hold the financial asset for an undefined period;
- (b) The entity stands ready to sell the financial asset (other than if a situation arises that is non-recurring and could not have been reasonably anticipated by the entity) in response to changes in market interest rates or risks, liquidity needs, changes in the availability of and the yield on alternative investments, changes in financing sources and terms or changes in foreign currency risk; or
- (c) The issuer has a right to settle the financial asset at an amount significantly below its amortized cost.

AG29 A debt instrument with a variable interest rate can satisfy the criteria for a held-to-maturity investment. Equity instruments cannot be held-to-maturity investments either because they have an indefinite life (such as ordinary shares) or because the amounts the holder may receive can vary in a manner that is not predetermined (such as for share options, warrants and similar rights). With respect to the definition of held- IAS 39.AG17; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

to-maturity investments, fixed or determinable payments and fixed maturity mean that a contractual arrangement defines the amounts and dates of payments to the holder, such as interest and principal payments. A significant risk of non-payment does not preclude classification of a financial asset as held to maturity as long as its contractual payments are fixed or determinable and the other criteria for that classification are met. If the terms of a perpetual debt instrument provide for interest payments for an indefinite period, the instrument cannot be classified as held to maturity because there is no maturity date.

- | | | |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| AG30 | The criteria for classification as a held-to-maturity investment are met for a financial asset that is callable by the issuer if the holder intends and is able to hold it until it is called or until maturity and the holder would recover substantially all of its carrying amount. The call option of the issuer, if exercised, simply accelerates the asset's maturity. However, if the financial asset is callable on a basis that would result in the holder not recovering substantially all of its carrying amount, the financial asset cannot be classified as a held-to-maturity investment. The entity considers any premium paid and capitalized transaction costs in determining whether the carrying amount would be substantially recovered. | IAS 39.AG18; no amendment. |
| AG31 | A financial asset that is puttable (i.e. the holder has the right to require that the issuer repay or redeem the financial asset before maturity) cannot be classified as a held-to-maturity investment because paying for a put feature in a financial asset is inconsistent with expressing an intention to hold the financial asset until maturity. | IAS 39.AG19; no amendment. |
| AG32 | For most financial assets, fair value is a more appropriate measure than amortized cost. The held-to-maturity classification is an exception, but only if the entity has a positive intention and the ability to hold the investment to maturity. When an entity's actions cast doubt on its intention and ability to hold such investments to maturity, paragraph 10 precludes the use of the exception for a reasonable period of time. | IAS 39.AG20; no amendment. |
| AG33 | A disaster scenario that is only remotely possible, such as a run on a bank or a similar situation affecting an insurer, is not something that is assessed by an entity in deciding whether it has the positive intention and ability to hold an investment to maturity. | IAS 39.AG21; no amendment |
| AG34 | Sales before maturity could satisfy the condition in paragraph 10—and therefore not raise a question about the entity's intention to hold other investments to maturity—if they are attributable to any of the following: | IAS 39.AG22; amended for public sector terminology. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- (a) A significant deterioration in the issuer's creditworthiness. For example, a sale following a downgrade in a credit rating by an external rating agency would not necessarily raise a question about the entity's intention to hold other investments to maturity if the downgrade provides evidence of a significant deterioration in the issuer's creditworthiness judged by reference to the credit rating at initial recognition. Similarly, if an entity uses internal ratings for assessing exposures, changes in those internal ratings may help to identify issuers for which there has been a significant deterioration in creditworthiness, provided the entity's approach to assigning internal ratings and changes in those ratings give a consistent, reliable and objective measure of the credit quality of the issuers. If there is evidence that a financial asset is impaired (see paragraphs 67 and 68), the deterioration in creditworthiness is often regarded as significant.
- (b) A change in tax law that eliminates or significantly reduces the tax-exempt status of interest on the held-to-maturity investment (but not a change in tax law that revises the marginal tax rates applicable to interest ~~revenue~~income).
- (c) A major ~~entity business~~ combination or major disposition (such as a sale of a segment that necessitates the sale or transfer of held-to-maturity investments to maintain the entity's existing interest rate risk position or credit risk policy (although the ~~entity business~~ combination is an event within the entity's control, the changes to its investment portfolio to maintain an interest rate risk position or credit risk policy may be consequential rather than anticipated).
- (d) A change in statutory or regulatory requirements significantly modifying either what constitutes a permissible investment or the maximum level of particular types of investments, thereby causing an entity to dispose of a held-to-maturity investment.
- (e) A significant increase in the industry's regulatory capital requirements that causes the entity to downsize by selling held-to-maturity investments.
- (f) A significant increase in the risk weights of held-to-maturity investments used for regulatory risk-based capital purposes.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- AG35 An entity does not have a demonstrated ability to hold to maturity an investment in a financial asset with a fixed maturity if:
- (a) It does not have the financial resources available to continue to finance the investment until maturity; or
 - (b) It is subject to an existing legal or other constraint that could frustrate its intention to hold the financial asset to maturity. (However, an issuer's call option does not necessarily frustrate an entity's intention to hold a financial asset to maturity—see paragraph AG30.)
- AG36 Circumstances other than those described in paragraphs AG28–AG35 can indicate that an entity does not have a positive intention or the ability to hold an investment to maturity.
- AG37 An entity assesses its intention and ability to hold its held-to-maturity investments to maturity not only when those financial assets are initially recognized, but also at the end of each subsequent reporting period.

IAS 39.AG23; no amendment.

IAS 39.AG24; no amendment.

IAS 39.AG25; no amendment.

Loans and Receivables

- AG38 Any non-derivative financial asset with fixed or determinable payments (including loan assets, ~~trade~~ receivables, investments in debt instruments and deposits held in banks) could potentially meet the definition of loans and receivables. However, a financial asset that is quoted in an active market (such as a quoted debt instrument, see paragraph AG107) does not qualify for classification as a loan or receivable. Financial assets that do not meet the definition of loans and receivables may be classified as held-to-maturity investments if they meet the conditions for that classification (see paragraphs 10 and AG28–AG37). On initial recognition of a financial asset that would otherwise be classified as a loan or receivable, an entity may designate it as a financial asset at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, or available for sale.

IAS 39.AG26; amended for public sector terminology.

Embedded Derivatives (paragraphs 11–15)

- AG39 If a host contract has no stated or predetermined maturity and represents a residual interest in the net assets of an entity, then its economic characteristics and risks are those of an equity instrument, and an embedded derivative would need to possess ~~equity~~ characteristics of the net assets/equity related to the same entity to be regarded as closely related. If the host contract is not an equity instrument and meets the definition of a financial instrument, then its economic characteristics and risks are those of a debt instrument. IAS 39.AG27; amended to accommodate public sector terminology.
- AG40 An embedded non-option derivative (such as an embedded forward or swap) is separated from its host contract on the basis of its stated or implied substantive terms, so as to result in it having a fair value of zero at initial recognition. An embedded option-based derivative (such as an embedded put, call, cap, floor or swaption) is separated from its host contract on the basis of the stated terms of the option feature. The initial carrying amount of the host instrument is the residual amount after separating the embedded derivative. IAS 39.AG28; no amendment.
- AG41 Generally, multiple embedded derivatives in a single instrument are treated as a single compound embedded derivative. However, embedded derivatives that are classified as equity instruments (see ED 37 IAS 32) are accounted for separately from those classified as assets or liabilities. In addition, if an instrument has more than one embedded derivative and those derivatives relate to different risk exposures and are readily separable and independent of each other, they are accounted for separately from each other. IAS 39.AG29; amended “equity” to “equity instrument” and amended references to IFRSs.
- AG42 The economic characteristics and risks of an embedded derivative are not closely related to the host contract (paragraph 12(a)) in the following examples. In these examples, assuming the conditions in paragraph 12(b) and (c) are met, an entity accounts for the embedded derivative separately from the host contract. IAS 39.AG30; amended references to IFRSs and “equity” element and amended example of gold to oil (consistent with ED 37).
- (a) A put option embedded in an instrument that enables the holder to require the issuer to reacquire the instrument for an amount of cash or other assets that varies on the basis of the change in an equity or commodity price or index is not closely related to a host debt instrument.
 - (b) A call option embedded in an equity instrument that enables the issuer to reacquire that equity instrument at a specified price is not closely related to the host equity instrument from the perspective of the holder (from the issuer’s

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

perspective, the call option is an equity instrument provided it meets the conditions for that classification under ED 37 IAS 32, in which case it is excluded from the scope of this Standard).

- (c) An option or automatic provision to extend the remaining term to maturity of a debt instrument is not closely related to the host debt instrument unless there is a concurrent adjustment to the approximate current market rate of interest at the time of the extension. If an entity issues a debt instrument and the holder of that debt instrument writes a call option on the debt instrument to a third party, the issuer regards the call option as extending the term to maturity of the debt instrument provided the issuer can be required to participate in or facilitate the remarketing of the debt instrument as a result of the call option being exercised.
- (d) Equity-indexed interest or principal payments embedded in a host debt instrument or insurance contract—by which the amount of interest or principal is indexed to the value of equity instruments—are not closely related to the host instrument because the risks inherent in the host and the embedded derivative are dissimilar.
- (e) Commodity-indexed interest or principal payments embedded in a host debt instrument or insurance contract—by which the amount of interest or principal is indexed to the price of a commodity (such as oil ~~gold~~)—are not closely related to the host instrument because the risks inherent in the host and the embedded derivative are dissimilar.
- (f) An equity conversion feature embedded in a convertible debt instrument is not closely related to the host debt instrument from the perspective of the holder of the instrument (from the issuer's perspective, the equity conversion option is an equity instrument and excluded from the scope of this Standard provided it meets the conditions for that classification under ED 37 IAS 32).
- (g) A call, put, or prepayment option embedded in a host debt contract or host insurance contract is not closely related to the host contract unless the option's exercise price is approximately equal on each exercise date to the amortized cost of the host debt instrument or the carrying amount of the host insurance contract. From the perspective of the issuer of a convertible debt instrument with an embedded call or put option feature, the assessment of whether the call or put option is

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

closely related to the host debt contract is made before separating the ~~equity~~ element of net assets/equity under ED 37 IAS 32.

- (h) Credit derivatives that are embedded in a host debt instrument and allow one party (the ‘beneficiary’) to transfer the credit risk of a particular reference asset, which it may not own, to another party (the ‘guarantor’) are not closely related to the host debt instrument. Such credit derivatives allow the guarantor to assume the credit risk associated with the reference asset without directly owning it.

- | | | |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG43 | An example of a hybrid instrument is a financial instrument that gives the holder a right to put the financial instrument back to the issuer in exchange for an amount of cash or other financial assets that varies on the basis of the change in an equity or commodity index that may increase or decrease (a ‘puttable instrument’). Unless the issuer on initial recognition designates the puttable instrument as a financial liability at fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss , it is required to separate an embedded derivative (i.e. the indexed principal payment) under paragraph 12 because the host contract is a debt instrument under paragraph AG39 and the indexed principal payment is not closely related to a host debt instrument under paragraph AG42(a). Because the principal payment can increase and decrease, the embedded derivative is a non-option derivative whose value is indexed to the underlying variable. | IAS 39.AG31; amended for public sector terminology. |
| AG44 | In the case of a puttable instrument that can be put back at any time for cash equal to a proportionate share of the net asset value of an entity (such as units of an open-ended mutual fund or some unit-linked investment products), the effect of separating an embedded derivative and accounting for each component is to measure the combined instrument at the redemption amount that is payable at the end of the reporting period if the holder exercised its right to put the instrument back to the issuer. | IAS 39.AG32; no amendment. |
| AG45 | The economic characteristics and risks of an embedded derivative are closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of the host contract in the following examples. In these examples, an entity does not account for the embedded derivative separately from the host contract. | IAS 39.AG33; amended references to IFRSs and amended for public sector terminology. |
| | (a) An embedded derivative in which the underlying is an interest rate or interest rate index that can change the amount of interest that would otherwise be paid or received on an interest-bearing host debt contract or insurance contract is closely related to the host contract unless the | |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

combined instrument can be settled in such a way that the holder would not recover substantially all of its recognized investment or the embedded derivative could at least double the holder's initial rate of return on the host contract and could result in a rate of return that is at least twice what the market return would be for a contract with the same terms as the host contract.

- (b) An embedded floor or cap on the interest rate on a debt contract or insurance contract is closely related to the host contract, provided the cap is at or above the market rate of interest and the floor is at or below the market rate of interest when the contract is issued, and the cap or floor is not leveraged in relation to the host contract. Similarly, provisions included in a contract to purchase or sell an asset (e.g. a commodity) that establish a cap and a floor on the price to be paid or received for the asset are closely related to the host contract if both the cap and floor were out of the money at inception and are not leveraged.
- (c) An embedded foreign currency derivative that provides a stream of principal or interest payments that are denominated in a foreign currency and is embedded in a host debt instrument (e.g. a dual currency bond) is closely related to the host debt instrument. Such a derivative is not separated from the host instrument because IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ requires foreign currency gains and losses on monetary items to be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.
- (d) An embedded foreign currency derivative in a host contract that is an insurance contract or not a financial instrument is integral to the arrangement and hence closely related to the host contract provided it is not leveraged, does not contain an option feature, and requires payments denominated in one of the following currencies:
 - (i) The functional currency of any substantial party to that contract;
 - (ii) The currency in which the price of the related good or service that is acquired or delivered is routinely denominated in commercial transactions around the world (such as the US dollar for crude oil transactions); or
 - (iii) A currency that has one or more of the characteristics of a functional currency, as set out in paragraph 11 of IPSAS 4 ~~9 of IAS 21~~, of a substantial party to the contract.

Included amendments from 08/09 improvements project even though not approved. See below for proposed amendments.

Proposed amendment to (d) in 2008/09 Improvements Project, monitor developments: Part (d) is amended as follows: ... ~~(such as a contract for the purchase or sale of a non-financial item where the price is denominated in a foreign currency)~~ is integral to the arrangement and hence is closely.

Proposed amendment to (iii) in 2008/09 Improvements Project, monitor developments. Part (iii) amended as follows: a currency that has one or more characteristics of a functional currency, as set out in paragraph 9 of IAS 21, of a substantial party to the contract, is commonly used in contracts to purchase or sell non-financial items in the economic environment in which the transaction takes place ~~(eg a relatively stable and liquid~~

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- (e) An embedded prepayment option in an interest-only or principal-only strip is closely related to the host contract provided the host contract (i) initially resulted from separating the right to receive contractual cash flows of a financial instrument that, in and of itself, did not contain an embedded derivative, and (ii) does not contain any terms not present in the original host debt contract.
- (f) An embedded derivative in a host lease contract is closely related to the host contract if the embedded derivative is (i) an inflation-related index such as an index of lease payments to a consumer price index (provided that the lease is not leveraged and the index relates to inflation in the entity's own economic environment), (ii) contingent rentals based on related sales or (iii) contingent rentals based on variable interest rates.
- (g) A unit-linking feature embedded in a host financial instrument or host insurance contract is closely related to the host instrument or host contract if the unit-denominated payments are measured at current unit values that reflect the fair values of the assets of the fund. A unit-linking feature is a contractual term that requires payments denominated in units of an internal or external investment fund.
- (h) A derivative embedded in an insurance contract is closely related to the host insurance contract if the embedded derivative and host insurance contract are so interdependent that an entity cannot measure the embedded derivative separately (i.e. without considering the host contract).

~~currency that is commonly used in local business transactions or external trade)~~

Note: At the January IASB meeting, deliberations on this amendment were deferred. It is unclear whether this amendment will be approved by the IASB.

Instruments Containing Embedded Derivatives

AG46 When an entity becomes a party to a hybrid (combined) instrument that contains one or more embedded derivatives, paragraph 12 requires the entity to identify any such embedded derivative, assess whether it is required to be separated from the host contract and, for those that are required to be separated, measure the derivatives at fair value at initial recognition and subsequently. These requirements can be more complex, or result in less reliable measures, than measuring the entire instrument at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. For that reason this Standard permits the entire instrument to be designated as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

IAS 39.AG33A; amended for public sector terminology.

AG47 Such designation may be used whether paragraph 12 requires the embedded derivatives to be separated from the host contract or prohibits such separation.

IAS 39.AG33B; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

However, paragraph 13 would not justify designating the hybrid (combined) instrument as at fair value through ~~surplus or deficit-profit or loss~~ in the cases set out in paragraph 13(a) and (b) because doing so would not reduce complexity or increase reliability.

Recognition and Derecognition (paragraphs 16–44)

Initial Recognition (paragraph 16)

- AG48 As a consequence of the principle in paragraph 16, an entity recognizes all of its contractual rights and obligations under derivatives in its statement of financial position as assets and liabilities, respectively, except for derivatives that prevent a transfer of financial assets from being accounted for as a sale (see paragraph AG69). If a transfer of a financial asset does not qualify for derecognition, the transferee does not recognize the transferred asset as its asset (see paragraph AG70). IAS 39.AG34; no amendment.
- AG49 The following are examples of applying the principle in paragraph 16: IAS 39.AG35; no amendment.
- (a) Unconditional receivables and payables are recognized as assets or liabilities when the entity becomes a party to the contract and, as a consequence, has a legal right to receive or a legal obligation to pay cash.
 - (b) Assets to be acquired and liabilities to be incurred as a result of a firm commitment to purchase or sell goods or services are generally not recognized until at least one of the parties has performed under the agreement. For example, an entity that receives a firm order does not generally recognize an asset (and the entity that places the order does not recognize a liability) at the time of the commitment but, rather, delays recognition until the ordered goods or services have been shipped, delivered or rendered. If a firm commitment to buy or sell non-financial items is within the scope of this Standard under paragraphs 4–6, its net fair value is recognized as an asset or liability on the commitment date (see (c) below). In addition, if a previously unrecognized firm commitment is designated as a hedged item in a fair value hedge, any change in the net fair value attributable to the hedged risk is recognized as an asset or liability after the inception of the hedge (see paragraphs 104 and 105).
 - (c) A forward contract that is within the scope of this Standard (see paragraphs 2–6) is recognized as an asset or a liability on the commitment date, rather

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

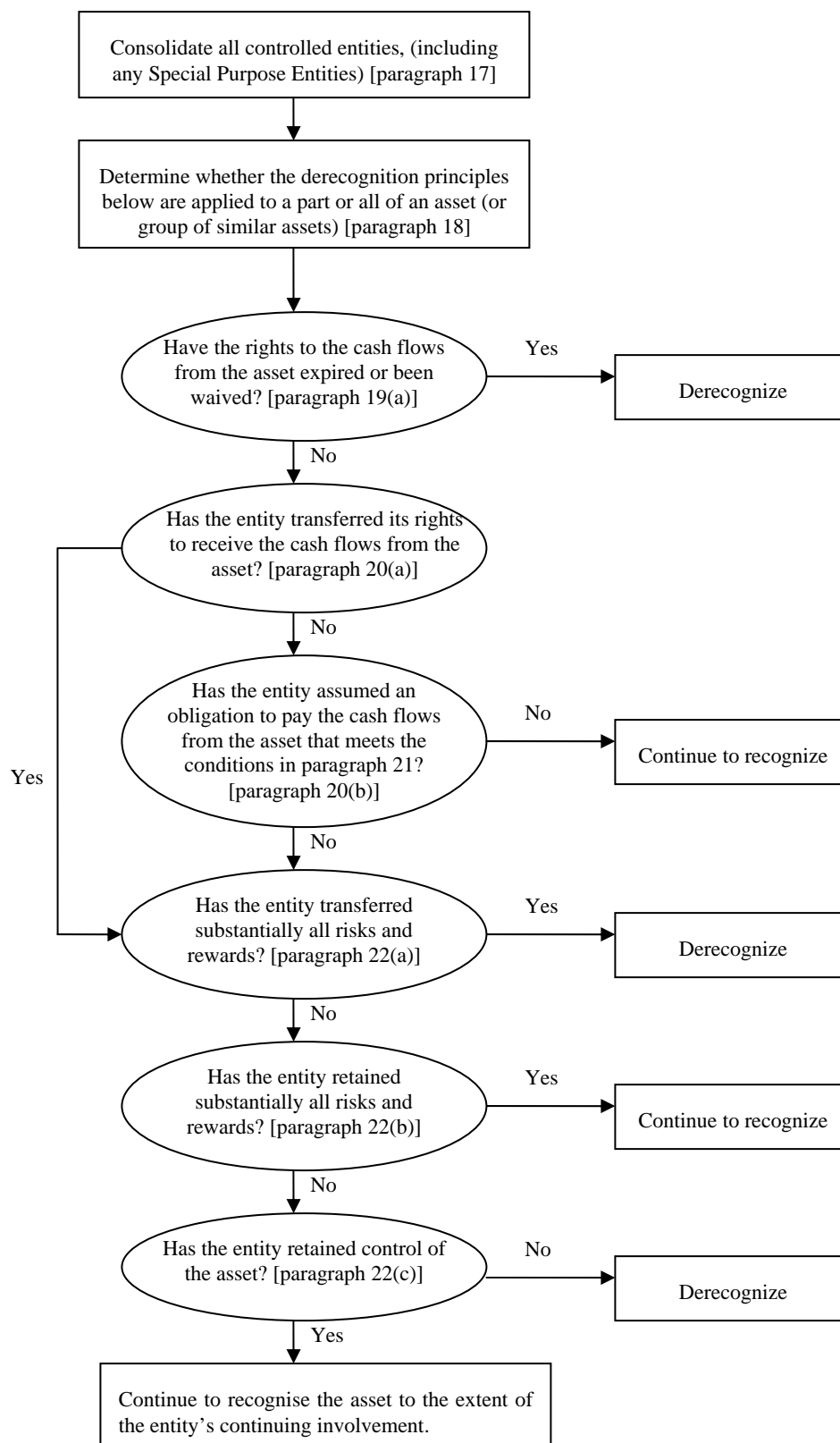
than on the date on which settlement takes place. When an entity becomes a party to a forward contract, the fair values of the right and obligation are often equal, so that the net fair value of the forward is zero. If the net fair value of the right and obligation is not zero, the contract is recognized as an asset or liability.

- (d) Option contracts that are within the scope of this Standard (see paragraphs 2–6) are recognized as assets or liabilities when the holder or writer becomes a party to the contract.
- (e) Planned future transactions, no matter how likely, are not assets and liabilities because the entity has not become a party to a contract.

Derecognition of a Financial Asset (paragraphs 17–39)

AG50 The following flow chart illustrates the evaluation of whether and to what extent a financial asset is derecognized. IAS 39.AG36; diagram refers to “controlled entities” and refers to the waiver of rights to cash flows

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT



FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Consolidating Special Purpose Entities (paragraph 17)

- | | | |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG51 | <u>An entity may be created to accomplish a narrow and well-defined objective (e.g. to effect a lease, research and development activities or a securitization of financial assets). Such a special purpose entity ('SPE') may take the form of a corporation, trust, partnership or unincorporated entity. SPEs often are created with legal arrangements that impose strict and sometimes permanent limits on the decision-making powers of their governing board, trustee or management over the operations of the SPE. Frequently, these provisions specify that the policy guiding the ongoing activities of the SPE cannot be modified, other than perhaps by its creator or sponsor (i.e. they operate on so-called 'autopilot').</u> | Added paragraphs from SIC 12 to explain what "special purpose entities" are and how they should be consolidated. Once the IFRICs and SICs are dealt with (either as part of the existing Standards or as separate documents, this guidance can be withdrawn).

SIC 12.1 |
| AG52 | <u>The sponsor (or entity on whose behalf the SPE was created) frequently transfers assets to the SPE, obtains the right to use assets held by the SPE or performs services for the SPE, while other parties ('capital providers') may provide the funding to the SPE. An entity that engages in transactions with an SPE (frequently the creator or sponsor) may in substance control the SPE.</u> | SIC 12.2 |
| AG53 | <u>A beneficial interest in an SPE may, for example, take the form of a debt instrument, an equity instrument, a participation right, a residual interest or a lease. Some beneficial interests may simply provide the holder with a fixed or stated rate of return, while others give the holder rights or access to other future economic benefits or service potential of the SPE's activities. In most cases, the creator or sponsor (or the entity on whose behalf the SPE was created) retains a significant beneficial interest in the SPE's activities, even though it may own little or none of the SPE's equity instruments.</u> | SIC 12.3; added the word "instruments" to the end of the paragraph as well as a reference to 'service potential'. |
| AG54 | <u>An SPE shall be is consolidated when the substance of the relationship between an entity and the SPE indicates that the SPE is controlled by that entity.</u> | SIC12.8; amended wording, "shall" generally only used in the bold letter paragraphs of the text of the standards. |
| AG55 | <u>In the context of an SPE, control may arise through the predetermination of the activities of the SPE (operating on 'autopilot') or otherwise. IAS 27.13 indicates several circumstances which result in control even in cases where an entity owns one half or less of the voting power of another entity. Similarly, control may exist even in cases where an entity owns little or none of the SPE's equity. An entity considers the power and benefit conditions and indicators in paragraphs 38-40 of IPSAS 6, "Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements" in determining whether control exists. The application of the control concept requires, in each case, judgment in the context of all relevant factors.</u> | SIC 12.9; amended wording to refer to the power and benefit indicators and conditions in IPSASs. |
| AG56 | <u>In addition to the situations described in IPSAS 6 IAS 27.13, the following circumstances, for example, may indicate a relationship in which an entity controls an SPE and consequently should consolidate the SPE (additional guidance is provided in the</u> | SIC12.10; amended references to IFRSs and deleted references to guidance in the appendix, as this guidance has not been included in |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Appendix to this Interpretation):

- (a) In substance, the activities of the SPE are being conducted on behalf of the entity according to its specific operational business needs so that the entity obtains benefits from the SPE's operation;
- (b) In substance, the entity has the decision-making powers to obtain the majority of the benefits of the activities of the SPE or, by setting up an 'autopilot' mechanism, the entity has delegated these decision-making powers;
- (c) In substance, the entity has rights to obtain the majority of the benefits of the SPE and therefore may be exposed to risks incident to the activities of the SPE; or
- (d) In substance, the entity retains the majority of the residual or ownership risks related to the SPE or its assets in order to obtain benefits from its activities.

the application guidance.

Deleted reference to “business” and replaced with “operational”, as “business” is more relevant for the private sector.

Arrangements under which an entity retains the contractual rights to receive the cash flows of a financial asset, but assumes a contractual obligation to pay the cash flows to one or more recipients (paragraph 20(b))

- | | | |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG57 | The situation described in paragraph 20(b) (when an entity retains the contractual rights to receive the cash flows of the financial asset, but assumes a contractual obligation to pay the cash flows to one or more recipients) occurs, for example, if the entity is a <u>SPE</u> special purpose entity or trust, and issues to investors beneficial interests in the underlying financial assets that it owns and provides servicing of those financial assets. In that case, the financial assets qualify for derecognition if the conditions in paragraphs 21 and 22 are met. | IAS 39.AG37; no amendment. |
| AG58 | In applying paragraph 21, the entity could be, for example, the originator of the financial asset, or it could be a group that includes a consolidated SPE special purpose entity that has acquired the financial asset and passes on cash flows to unrelated third party investors. | IAS 39.AG38; no amendment. |

Evaluation of the transfer of risks and rewards of ownership (paragraph 22)

- | | | |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG59 | Examples of when an entity has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership are: | IAS 39.AG39; no amendment. |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) An unconditional sale of a financial asset; (b) A sale of a financial asset together with an option to repurchase the financial asset at its fair value at the time of repurchase; and (c) A sale of a financial asset together with a put or call option that is deeply out of the money (i.e. an option that is so far out of the money it is highly unlikely to go into the money before expiry). | |
| AG60 | Examples of when an entity has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership are: | IAS 39.AG40; no amendment. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- (a) A sale and repurchase transaction where the repurchase price is a fixed price or the sale price plus a lender's return;
- (b) A securities lending agreement;
- (c) A sale of a financial asset together with a total return swap that transfers the market risk exposure back to the entity;
- (d) A sale of a financial asset together with a deep in-the-money put or call option (i.e. an option that is so far in the money that it is highly unlikely to go out of the money before expiry); and
- (e) A sale of short-term receivables in which the entity guarantees to compensate the transferee for credit losses that are likely to occur.

AG61 If an entity determines that as a result of the transfer, it has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the transferred asset, it does not recognize the transferred asset again in a future period, unless it reacquires the transferred asset in a new transaction. IAS 39.AG41; no amendment.

Evaluation of the Transfer of Control

AG62 An entity has not retained control of a transferred asset if the transferee has the practical ability to sell the transferred asset. An entity has retained control of a transferred asset if the transferee does not have the practical ability to sell the transferred asset. A transferee has the practical ability to sell the transferred asset if it is traded in an active market because the transferee could repurchase the transferred asset in the market if it needs to return the asset to the entity. For example, a transferee may have the practical ability to sell a transferred asset if the transferred asset is subject to an option that allows the entity to repurchase it, but the transferee can readily obtain the transferred asset in the market if the option is exercised. A transferee does not have the practical ability to sell the transferred asset if the entity retains such an option and the transferee cannot readily obtain the transferred asset in the market if the entity exercises its option. IAS 39.AG42; no amendment.

AG63 The transferee has the practical ability to sell the transferred asset only if the transferee can sell the transferred asset in its entirety to an unrelated third party and is able to exercise that ability unilaterally and without imposing additional restrictions on the transfer. The critical question is what the transferee is able to do in practice, not what contractual rights the transferee has concerning what it can do with the transferred asset or what contractual prohibitions exist. In particular: IAS 39.AG43; no amendment.

- (a) A contractual right to dispose of the transferred asset has little practical effect if there is no market for the transferred asset; and
- (b) An ability to dispose of the transferred asset has little practical effect if it cannot be exercised freely. For that reason:
 - (i) The transferee's ability to dispose of the transferred asset must be independent of the actions of others (i.e.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

it must be a unilateral ability); and

- (ii) The transferee must be able to dispose of the transferred asset without needing to attach restrictive conditions or ‘strings’ to the transfer (e.g. conditions about how a loan asset is serviced or an option giving the transferee the right to repurchase the asset).

- | | | |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| AG64 | That the transferee is unlikely to sell the transferred asset does not, of itself, mean that the transferor has retained control of the transferred asset. However, if a put option or guarantee constrains the transferee from selling the transferred asset, then the transferor has retained control of the transferred asset. For example, if a put option or guarantee is sufficiently valuable it constrains the transferee from selling the transferred asset because the transferee would, in practice, not sell the transferred asset to a third party without attaching a similar option or other restrictive conditions. Instead, the transferee would hold the transferred asset so as to obtain payments under the guarantee or put option. Under these circumstances the transferor has retained control of the transferred asset. | IAS 39.AG44; no amendment |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|

Transfers that Qualify for Derecognition

- | | | |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG65 | An entity may retain the right to a part of the interest payments on transferred assets as compensation for servicing those assets. The part of the interest payments that the entity would give up upon termination or transfer of the servicing contract is allocated to the servicing asset or servicing liability. The part of the interest payments that the entity would not give up is an interest-only strip receivable. For example, if the entity would not give up any interest upon termination or transfer of the servicing contract, the entire interest spread is an interest-only strip receivable. For the purposes of applying paragraph 29, the fair values of the servicing asset and interest-only strip receivable are used to allocate the carrying amount of the receivable between the part of the asset that is derecognized and the part that continues to be recognized. If there is no servicing fee specified or the fee to be received is not expected to compensate the entity adequately for performing the servicing, a liability for the servicing obligation is recognized at fair value. | IAS 39.AG45; no amendment. |
| AG66 | In estimating the fair values of the part that continues to be recognized and the part that is derecognized for the purposes of applying paragraph 29, an entity applies the fair value measurement requirements in paragraphs 50–52 and AG105–AG119 in addition to paragraph 30. | IAS 39.AG46; no amendment. |

Transfers that do not Qualify for Derecognition

- | | | |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG67 | The following is an application of the principle outlined in paragraph 31. If a guarantee provided by the entity for default losses on the transferred asset prevents a transferred asset from being derecognized because the entity has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the transferred asset, the transferred asset continues to be recognized in its entirety and the | IAS 39.AG47; no amendment. |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

consideration received is recognized as a liability.

Continuing Involvement in Transferred Assets

AG68 The following are examples of how an entity measures a transferred asset and the associated liability under paragraph 32.

IAS 39.AG48; amended for public sector terminology and references to IFRSs.

All assets

- (a) If a guarantee provided by an entity to pay for default losses on a transferred asset prevents the transferred asset from being derecognized to the extent of the continuing involvement, the transferred asset at the date of the transfer is measured at the lower of (i) the carrying amount of the asset and (ii) the maximum amount of the consideration received in the transfer that the entity could be required to repay ('the guarantee amount'). The associated liability is initially measured at the guarantee amount plus the fair value of the guarantee (which is normally the consideration received for the guarantee). Subsequently, the initial fair value of the guarantee is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ on a time proportion basis (see IPSAS 9-IAS 18) and the carrying value of the asset is reduced by any impairment losses.

Note: May need to amend (a) depending on the application guidance developed for financial guarantees.

Assets measured at amortized cost

- (b) If a put option obligation written by an entity or call option right held by an entity prevents a transferred asset from being derecognized and the entity measures the transferred asset at amortized cost, the associated liability is measured at its cost (i.e. the consideration received) adjusted for the amortization of any difference between that cost and the amortized cost of the transferred asset at the expiration date of the option. For example, assume that the amortized cost and carrying amount of the asset on the date of the transfer is CU98 and that the consideration received is CU95. The amortized cost of the asset on the option exercise date will be CU100. The initial carrying amount of the associated liability is CU95 and the difference between CU95 and CU100 is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ using the effective interest method. If the option is exercised, any difference between the carrying amount of the associated liability and the exercise price is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Assets measured at fair value

- (c) If a call option right retained by an entity prevents a transferred asset from being derecognized and the entity measures the transferred asset at fair value, the asset continues to be measured at its fair value. The associated liability is measured at (i) the option exercise price less the time value of the option if the option is in or at the money, or (ii) the fair value of the transferred asset less the time value of the option if the option is out of the money. The adjustment to the measurement of the associated liability ensures that the net carrying amount of the asset and the associated liability is the fair value of the call option right. For example, if the fair value of the underlying asset is CU80, the option exercise price is CU95 and the time value of the option is CU5, the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

carrying amount of the associated liability is CU75 (CU80 – CU5) and the carrying amount of the transferred asset is CU80 (i.e. its fair value).

- (d) If a put option written by an entity prevents a transferred asset from being derecognized and the entity measures the transferred asset at fair value, the associated liability is measured at the option exercise price plus the time value of the option. The measurement of the asset at fair value is limited to the lower of the fair value and the option exercise price because the entity has no right to increases in the fair value of the transferred asset above the exercise price of the option. This ensures that the net carrying amount of the asset and the associated liability is the fair value of the put option obligation. For example, if the fair value of the underlying asset is CU120, the option exercise price is CU100 and the time value of the option is CU5, the carrying amount of the associated liability is CU105 (CU100 + CU5) and the carrying amount of the asset is CU100 (in this case the option exercise price).
- (e) If a collar, in the form of a purchased call and written put, prevents a transferred asset from being derecognized and the entity measures the asset at fair value, it continues to measure the asset at fair value. The associated liability is measured at (i) the sum of the call exercise price and fair value of the put option less the time value of the call option, if the call option is in or at the money, or (ii) the sum of the fair value of the asset and the fair value of the put option less the time value of the call option if the call option is out of the money. The adjustment to the associated liability ensures that the net carrying amount of the asset and the associated liability is the fair value of the options held and written by the entity. For example, assume an entity transfers a financial asset that is measured at fair value while simultaneously purchasing a call with an exercise price of CU120 and writing a put with an exercise price of CU80. Assume also that the fair value of the asset is CU100 at the date of the transfer. The time value of the put and call are CU1 and CU5 respectively. In this case, the entity recognizes an asset of CU100 (the fair value of the asset) and a liability of CU96 [(CU100 + CU1) – CU5]. This gives a net asset value of CU4, which is the fair value of the options held and written by the entity.

All Transfers

- | | | |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG69 | To the extent that a transfer of a financial asset does not qualify for derecognition, the transferor's contractual rights or obligations related to the transfer are not accounted for separately as derivatives if recognizing both the derivative and either the transferred asset or the liability arising from the transfer would result in recognizing the same rights or obligations twice. For example, a call option retained by the transferor may prevent a transfer of financial assets from being accounted for as a sale. In that case, the call option is not separately recognized as a derivative asset. | IAS 39.AG49; no amendment. |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- AG70 To the extent that a transfer of a financial asset does not qualify for derecognition, the transferee does not recognize the transferred asset as its asset. The transferee derecognizes the cash or other consideration paid and recognizes a receivable from the transferor. If the transferor has both a right and an obligation to reacquire control of the entire transferred asset for a fixed amount (such as under a repurchase agreement), the transferee may account for its receivable as a loan or receivable. IAS 39.AG50; no amendment.

Examples

- AG71 The following examples illustrate the application of the derecognition principles of this Standard. IAS 39.AG51; no amendment.

- (a) *Repurchase agreements and securities lending.* If a financial asset is sold under an agreement to repurchase it at a fixed price or at the sale price plus a lender's return or if it is loaned under an agreement to return it to the transferor, it is not derecognized because the transferor retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership. If the transferee obtains the right to sell or pledge the asset, the transferor reclassifies the asset in its statement of financial position, for example, as a loaned asset or repurchase receivable.
- (b) *Repurchase agreements and securities lending—assets that are substantially the same.* If a financial asset is sold under an agreement to repurchase the same or substantially the same asset at a fixed price or at the sale price plus a lender's return or if a financial asset is borrowed or loaned under an agreement to return the same or substantially the same asset to the transferor, it is not derecognized because the transferor retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (c) *Repurchase agreements and securities lending—right of substitution.* If a repurchase agreement at a fixed repurchase price or a price equal to the sale price plus a lender's return, or a similar securities lending transaction, provides the transferee with a right to substitute assets that are similar and of equal fair value to the transferred asset at the repurchase date, the asset sold or lent under a repurchase or securities lending transaction is not derecognized because the transferor retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (d) *Repurchase right of first refusal at fair value.* If an entity sells a financial asset and retains only a right of first refusal to repurchase the transferred asset at fair value if the transferee subsequently sells it, the entity derecognizes the asset because it has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (e) *Wash sale transaction.* The repurchase of a financial asset shortly after it has been sold is sometimes referred to as a wash sale. Such a repurchase does not preclude derecognition provided that the original transaction met the derecognition requirements. However, if an agreement to sell a financial asset is entered into concurrently with an agreement to

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

repurchase the same asset at a fixed price or the sale price plus a lender's return, then the asset is not derecognized.

- (f) *Put options and call options that are deeply in the money.* If a transferred financial asset can be called back by the transferor and the call option is deeply in the money, the transfer does not qualify for derecognition because the transferor has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership. Similarly, if the financial asset can be put back by the transferee and the put option is deeply in the money, the transfer does not qualify for derecognition because the transferor has retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (g) *Put options and call options that are deeply out of the money.* A financial asset that is transferred subject only to a deep out-of-the-money put option held by the transferee or a deep out-of-the-money call option held by the transferor is derecognized. This is because the transferor has transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (h) *Readily obtainable assets subject to a call option that is neither deeply in the money nor deeply out of the money.* If an entity holds a call option on an asset that is readily obtainable in the market and the option is neither deeply in the money nor deeply out of the money, the asset is derecognized. This is because the entity (i) has neither retained nor transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership, and (ii) has not retained control. However, if the asset is not readily obtainable in the market, derecognition is precluded to the extent of the amount of the asset that is subject to the call option because the entity has retained control of the asset.
- (i) *A not readily obtainable asset subject to a put option written by an entity that is neither deeply in the money nor deeply out of the money.* If an entity transfers a financial asset that is not readily obtainable in the market, and writes a put option that is not deeply out of the money, the entity neither retains nor transfers substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership because of the written put option. The entity retains control of the asset if the put option is sufficiently valuable to prevent the transferee from selling the asset, in which case the asset continues to be recognized to the extent of the transferor's continuing involvement (see paragraph AG64). The entity transfers control of the asset if the put option is not sufficiently valuable to prevent the transferee from selling the asset, in which case the asset is derecognized.
- (j) *Assets subject to a fair value put or call option or a forward repurchase agreement.* A transfer of a financial asset that is subject only to a put or call option or a forward repurchase agreement that has an exercise or repurchase price equal to the fair value of the financial asset at the time of repurchase results in derecognition because of the transfer of substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership.
- (k) *Cash settled call or put options.* An entity evaluates the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

transfer of a financial asset that is subject to a put or call option or a forward repurchase agreement that will be settled net in cash to determine whether it has retained or transferred substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership. If the entity has not retained substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the transferred asset, it determines whether it has retained control of the transferred asset. That the put or the call or the forward repurchase agreement is settled net in cash does not automatically mean that the entity has transferred control (see paragraphs AG64 and (g), (h) and (i) above).

- (l) *Removal of accounts provision.* A removal of accounts provision is an unconditional repurchase (call) option that gives an entity the right to reclaim assets transferred subject to some restrictions. Provided that such an option results in the entity neither retaining nor transferring substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership, it precludes derecognition only to the extent of the amount subject to repurchase (assuming that the transferee cannot sell the assets). For example, if the carrying amount and proceeds from the transfer of loan assets are CU100,000 and any individual loan could be called back but the aggregate amount of loans that could be repurchased could not exceed CU10,000, CU90,000 of the loans would qualify for derecognition.
- (m) *Clean-up calls.* An entity, which may be a transferor, that services transferred assets may hold a clean-up call to purchase remaining transferred assets when the amount of outstanding assets falls to a specified level at which the cost of servicing those assets becomes burdensome in relation to the benefits of servicing. Provided that such a clean-up call results in the entity neither retaining nor transferring substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership and the transferee cannot sell the assets, it precludes derecognition only to the extent of the amount of the assets that is subject to the call option.
- (n) *Subordinated retained interests and credit guarantees.* An entity may provide the transferee with credit enhancement by subordinating some or all of its interest retained in the transferred asset. Alternatively, an entity may provide the transferee with credit enhancement in the form of a credit guarantee that could be unlimited or limited to a specified amount. If the entity retains substantially all the risks and rewards of ownership of the transferred asset, the asset continues to be recognized in its entirety. If the entity retains some, but not substantially all, of the risks and rewards of ownership and has retained control, derecognition is precluded to the extent of the amount of cash or other assets that the entity could be required to pay.
- (o) *Total return swaps.* An entity may sell a financial asset to a transferee and enter into a total return swap with the transferee, whereby all of the interest payment cash flows from the underlying asset are remitted to the entity in exchange for a fixed payment or variable rate payment and any increases or declines in the fair value of the underlying asset are absorbed by the entity. In such a case, derecognition

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

of all of the asset is prohibited.

- (p) *Interest rate swaps.* An entity may transfer to a transferee a fixed rate financial asset and enter into an interest rate swap with the transferee to receive a fixed interest rate and pay a variable interest rate based on a notional amount that is equal to the principal amount of the transferred financial asset. The interest rate swap does not preclude derecognition of the transferred asset provided the payments on the swap are not conditional on payments being made on the transferred asset.
- (q) *Amortizing interest rate swaps.* An entity may transfer to a transferee a fixed rate financial asset that is paid off over time, and enter into an amortizing interest rate swap with the transferee to receive a fixed interest rate and pay a variable interest rate based on a notional amount. If the notional amount of the swap amortizes so that it equals the principal amount of the transferred financial asset outstanding at any point in time, the swap would generally result in the entity retaining substantial prepayment risk, in which case the entity either continues to recognize all of the transferred asset or continues to recognize the transferred asset to the extent of its continuing involvement. Conversely, if the amortization of the notional amount of the swap is not linked to the principal amount outstanding of the transferred asset, such a swap would not result in the entity retaining prepayment risk on the asset. Hence, it would not preclude derecognition of the transferred asset provided the payments on the swap are not conditional on interest payments being made on the transferred asset and the swap does not result in the entity retaining any other significant risks and rewards of ownership on the transferred asset.

AG72 This paragraph illustrates the application of the continuing involvement approach when the entity's continuing involvement is in a part of a financial asset. IAS 39.AG52; amended for public sector terminology.

Assume an entity has a portfolio of prepayable loans whose coupon and effective interest rate is 10 per cent and whose principal amount and amortized cost is CU10,000. It enters into a transaction in which, in return for a payment of CU9,115, the transferee obtains the right to CU9,000 of any collections of principal plus interest thereon at 9.5 per cent. The entity retains rights to CU1,000 of any collections of principal plus interest thereon at 10 per cent, plus the excess spread of 0.5 per cent on the remaining CU9,000 of principal. Collections from prepayments are allocated between the entity and the transferee proportionately in the ratio of 1:9, but any defaults are deducted from the entity's interest of CU1,000 until that interest is exhausted. The fair value of the loans at the date of the transaction is CU10,100 and the estimated fair value of the excess spread of 0.5 per cent is CU40.

The entity determines that it has transferred some significant risks and rewards of ownership (for example, significant prepayment risk) but has also retained some significant risks and rewards of ownership (because of its subordinated retained interest) and has retained control. It therefore applies the continuing involvement approach.

To apply this Standard, the entity analyses the transaction as (a) a retention of a fully proportionate retained interest of CU1,000, plus (b) the subordination of that retained interest to provide credit enhancement to the transferee for credit losses.

The entity calculates that CU9,090 (90 per cent × CU10,100) of the consideration received of CU9,115 represents the consideration for a fully proportionate 90 per cent share. The remainder of the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

consideration received (CU25) represents consideration received for subordinating its retained interest to provide credit enhancement to the transferee for credit losses. In addition, the excess spread of 0.5 per cent represents consideration received for the credit enhancement. Accordingly, the total consideration received for the credit enhancement is CU65 (CU25 + CU40).

The entity calculates the gain or loss on the sale of the 90 per cent share of cash flows. Assuming that separate fair values of the 90 per cent part transferred and the 10 per cent part retained are not available at the date of the transfer, the entity allocates the carrying amount of the asset in accordance with paragraph 30 as follows:

	<i>Estimated fair value</i>	<i>Percentage</i>	<i>Allocated carrying amount</i>
Portion transferred	9,090	90%	9,000
Portion retained	1,010	10%	1,000
Total	10,100		10,000

The entity computes its gain or loss on the sale of the 90 per cent share of the cash flows by deducting the allocated carrying amount of the portion transferred from the consideration received, i.e. CU90 (CU9,090 – CU9,000). The carrying amount of the portion retained by the entity is CU1,000.

In addition, the entity recognizes the continuing involvement that results from the subordination of its retained interest for credit losses. Accordingly, it recognizes an asset of CU1,000 (the maximum amount of the cash flows it would not receive under the subordination), and an associated liability of CU1,065 (which is the maximum amount of the cash flows it would not receive under the subordination, i.e. CU1,000 plus the fair value of the subordination of CU65). The entity uses all of the above information to account for the transaction as follows:

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Original asset	–	9,000
Asset recognized for subordination or the residual interest	1,000	–
Asset for the consideration received in the form of excess spread	40	–
Surplus or deficit Profit or loss (gain on transfer)	–	90
Liability	–	1,065
Cash received	9,115	–
Total	10,155	10,155

Immediately following the transaction, the carrying amount of the asset is CU2,040 comprising CU1,000, representing the allocated cost of the portion retained, and CU1,040, representing the entity's additional continuing involvement from the subordination of its retained interest for credit losses (which includes the excess spread of CU40).

In subsequent periods, the entity recognizes the consideration received for the credit enhancement (CU65) on a time proportion basis, accrues interest on the recognized asset using the effective interest method and recognizes any credit impairment on the recognized assets. As an example of the latter, assume that in the following year there is a credit impairment loss on the underlying loans of CU300. The entity reduces its recognized asset by CU600 (CU300 relating to its retained interest and CU300 relating to the additional continuing involvement that arises from the subordination of its retained interest for credit losses), and reduces its recognized liability by CU300. The net result is a charge to

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ for credit impairment of CU300.

Regular Way Purchase or Sale of a Financial Asset (paragraph 40)

- AG73 A regular way purchase or sale of financial assets is recognized using either trade date accounting or settlement date accounting as described in paragraphs AG75 and AG76. The method used is applied consistently for all purchases and sales of financial assets that belong to the same category of financial assets defined in paragraph 10. For this purpose assets that are held for trading form a separate category from assets designated at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. IAS 39.AG53; amended for public sector terminology.
- AG74 A contract that requires or permits net settlement of the change in the value of the contract is not a regular way contract. Instead, such a contract is accounted for as a derivative in the period between the trade date and the settlement date. IAS 39.AG54; no amendment.
- AG75 The trade date is the date that an entity commits itself to purchase or sell an asset. Trade date accounting refers to (a) the recognition of an asset to be received and the liability to pay for it on the trade date, and (b) derecognition of an asset that is sold, recognition of any gain or loss on disposal and the recognition of a receivable from the buyer for payment on the trade date. Generally, interest does not start to accrue on the asset and corresponding liability until the settlement date when title passes. IAS 39.AG55; no amendment.
- AG76 The settlement date is the date that an asset is delivered to or by an entity. Settlement date accounting refers to (a) the recognition of an asset on the day it is received by the entity, and (b) the derecognition of an asset and recognition of any gain or loss on disposal on the day that it is delivered by the entity. When settlement date accounting is applied an entity accounts for any change in the fair value of the asset to be received during the period between the trade date and the settlement date in the same way as it accounts for the acquired asset. In other words, the change in value is not recognized for assets carried at cost or amortized cost; it is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ for assets classified as financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~; and it is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ for assets classified as available for sale. IAS 39.AG56; amended for public sector terminology.

Derecognition of a Financial Liability (paragraphs 41–44)

- AG77 A financial liability (or part of it) is extinguished when the debtor either: IAS 39.AG57; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- (a) Discharges the liability (or part of it) by paying the creditor, normally with cash, other financial assets, goods or services; or
 - (b) Is legally released from primary responsibility for the liability (or part of it) either by process of law or by the creditor. (If the debtor has given a guarantee this condition may still be met.)
- AG78 If an issuer of a debt instrument repurchases that instrument, the debt is extinguished even if the issuer is a market maker in that instrument or intends to resell it in the near term. IAS 39.AG58; no amendment.
- AG79 Payment to a third party, including a trust (sometimes called ‘in-substance defeasance’), does not, by itself, relieve the debtor of its primary obligation to the creditor, in the absence of legal release. IAS 39.AG59; no amendment.
- AG80 If a debtor pays a third party to assume an obligation and notifies its creditor that the third party has assumed its debt obligation, the debtor does not derecognize the debt obligation unless the condition in paragraph AG77(b) is met. If the debtor pays a third party to assume an obligation and obtains a legal release from its creditor, the debtor has extinguished the debt. However, if the debtor agrees to make payments on the debt to the third party or direct to its original creditor, the debtor recognizes a new debt obligation to the third party. IAS 39.AG60; no amendment.
- AG81 If a third party assumes an obligation of an entity, and the entity provides either no or only nominal consideration to that third party in return, an entity applies the derecognition requirements of this Standard as well as paragraphs 84 to 87 of IPSAS 23. Added paragraph to explain the assumption of liabilities by a third party.
- AG82 Lenders will sometimes waive their right to collect debt owed by a public sector entity, for example, a national government may cancel a loan owed by a local government. This waiver of debt would constitute a legal release of the debt owing by the borrower to the lender. Where an entity’s obligations have been waived as part of a non-exchange transaction it applies the derecognition requirements of this Standard as well as paragraphs 84 to 87 of IPSAS 23. Added paragraph to explain the waiver of debt as part of a non-exchange transaction.
- AG83 Although legal release, whether judicially or by the creditor, results in derecognition of a liability, the entity may recognize a new liability if the derecognition criteria in paragraphs 17–39 are not met for the financial assets transferred. If those criteria are not met, the transferred assets are not IAS 39.AG61; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

derecognized, and the entity recognizes a new liability relating to the transferred assets.

- AG84 For the purpose of paragraph 42, the terms are substantially different if the discounted present value of the cash flows under the new terms, including any fees paid net of any fees received and discounted using the original effective interest rate, is at least 10 per cent different from the discounted present value of the remaining cash flows of the original financial liability. If an exchange of debt instruments or modification of terms is accounted for as an extinguishment, any costs or fees incurred are recognized as part of the gain or loss on the extinguishment. If the exchange or modification is not accounted for as an extinguishment, any costs or fees incurred adjust the carrying amount of the liability and are amortized over the remaining term of the modified liability. IAS 39.AG62; no amendment.

- AG85 In some cases, a creditor releases a debtor from its present obligation to make payments, but the debtor assumes a guarantee obligation to pay if the party assuming primary responsibility defaults. In this circumstance the debtor:
- (a) Recognizes a new financial liability based on the fair value of its obligation for the guarantee; and
 - (b) Recognizes a gain or loss based on the difference between (i) any proceeds paid and (ii) the carrying amount of the original financial liability less the fair value of the new financial liability.
- IAS 39.AG63; no amendment.

Measurement (paragraphs 45–86)

Initial Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities (paragraph 45)

- AG86 The fair value of a financial instrument on initial recognition is normally the transaction price (i.e. the fair value of the consideration given or received, see also paragraph AG112). However, if part of the consideration given or received is for something other than the financial instrument, the fair value of the financial instrument is estimated, using a valuation technique (see paragraphs AG110–AG116). For example, the fair value of a long-term loan or receivable that carries no interest can be estimated as the present value of all future cash receipts discounted using the prevailing market rate(s) of interest for a similar instrument (similar as to currency, term, type of interest rate and other factors) with a similar credit rating. Any additional amount lent is an expense or a reduction of revenue. IAS 39.AG64; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

~~income~~ unless it qualifies for recognition as some other type of asset.

- | | | |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| AG87 | If an entity originates a loan that bears an off-market interest rate (e.g. 5 per cent when the market rate for similar loans is 8 per cent), and receives an up-front fee as compensation, the entity recognizes the loan at its fair value, i.e. net of the fee it receives. The entity accretes the discount to <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss using the effective interest rate method. | IAS 39.AG65; amended for public sector terminology. |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

Concessionary Loans

- | | | |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG88 | <u>Concessionary loans are loans granted to or received by an entity in terms of specific public policy objectives and, as a result, are usually granted or received with flexible repayment terms and bear either below market interest or no interest. “Public policy” for purposes of this Standard refers to the stated policies of governments, which entities execute in accordance with their stated mandate. Policies of government may include, for example, the promotion of economic growth, the reduction of unemployment and the provision of housing for no or low income individuals.</u> | Added additional guidance on concessionary loans; outline of the nature of concessionary loans.

Based on comment received, clarified that concessionary loans should relate to the achievement of public policy objectives, but also that the key feature of these loans is that they are granted on concessional terms. |
| AG89 | <u>Examples of concessionary loans granted by entities include loans to developing countries, small emerging farmers, student loans granted to qualifying students for tertiary education and housing loans granted to low income families. Entities may receive concessionary loans, for example, from development agencies and other government entities.</u> | Added additional guidance on concessionary loans; typical examples of concessionary. |
| AG90 | <u>As concessionary loans are granted or received to achieve particular policy objectives of governments, the transaction price on initial recognition of the loan may not be its fair value. At initial recognition, an entity therefore analyses the substance of the loan granted or received into its component parts, and accounts for those components using the principles in paragraphs AG93 and AG94 below.</u> | Added additional guidance on concessionary loans; explanation of why concessionary loans require specific accounting treatment. |
| AG91 | <u>An entity firstly assesses whether the substance of the concessionary loan is in fact a loan, rather than a grant or capital contribution, by applying the principles in ED37 and paragraphs 42 to 58 of IPSAS 23. If an entity has determined that the transaction is a loan, it assesses whether the transaction price represents the fair value of the loan on initial recognition. An entity determines the fair value of the loan by discounting the agreed contractual cash flows of the loan using a market related rate of interest for a similar loan (see AG86).</u> | Added additional guidance on concessionary loans; initial analysis of the loan into its component parts by assessing whether the fair value of the loan is equal to the transaction price on initial recognition. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- AG92 Any difference between the fair value of the loan and the transaction price (the loan proceeds) is treated as follows:
- (a) Where the loan is received by an entity, it considers whether the difference is non-exchange revenue and should be accounted for in accordance with IPSAS 23.
 - (b) Where the loan is granted by an entity, the difference is treated as an expense in surplus or deficit at initial recognition.
- Illustrative examples are provided in paragraph IG54 of IPSAS 23 as well as paragraphs IE37 to IE39 accompanying this Standard.
- AG93 After initial recognition, an entity subsequently measures concessionary loans using the categories defined in paragraph 10.

Added additional guidance on concessionary loans; accounting for the components of the transaction.

Note: Once an IPSAS on social benefits has been developed, part (b) may need to be amended. E.g. if loans are granted to individuals, the off-market portion may be considered a social benefit.

Alternatively, additional text could be added to (b) to state that an entity assesses whether the difference between the fair value of the loan and the transaction price constitutes a social benefit; social benefits are accounted for in accordance with an entity's accounting policies.

Based on comment received, part (a) has been drafted to reflect that the difference between the loan proceeds and the transaction price may be non-exchange revenue.

Added additional guidance on concessionary loans;

Non-Exchange Revenue Transactions

- AG94 The initial recognition and measurement of assets and liabilities resulting from non-exchange revenue transactions is dealt with in IPSAS 23. Assets and liabilities resulting from non-exchange revenue transactions can arise out of both contractual and non-contractual arrangements (see ED 37 paragraphs AG18 and AG19). Where these assets and liabilities arise out of contractual arrangements and otherwise meet the definition of a financial instrument, they are initially and subsequently measured as well as derecognized in accordance with this Standard. See illustrative example 5 in Appendix C.
- Added guidance on the treatment of contractual non-exchange revenue transactions that meet the definition of a financial instrument.
- See consequential amendments to IPSAS 23; proposal to measure financial assets acquired as part of a non-exchange revenue transaction using ED38 rather than IPSAS 23 (consistent with the direction taken for biological assets).

Valuing Financial Guarantees Issued at No or Nominal Consideration

- AG95 In paragraph 10 a “financial guarantee contract” is defined as “a contract that requires the issuer to make specified payments to reimburse the holder for a loss it incurs because a specified debtor fails to make payment when due in accordance with the original or modified terms of a debt instrument.” Under the requirements of this Standard, financial guarantee contracts, like other financial assets and financial liabilities, are required to be initially recognized at fair value plus, except for financial assets or financial liabilities through surplus or deficit, transaction costs directly linked to acquisition or issue. Paragraphs 50-52 of this Standard provide commentary and guidance on determining fair value and this is
- Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

complemented by Application Guidance in paragraphs AG105-AG120. Subsequent measurement for financial guarantee contracts is at the higher of the amount determined in accordance with IPSAS 19, “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Liabilities” and the amount initially recognized less, when appropriate, cumulative amortization.

- | | | |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG96 | <p><u>In the public sector, guarantees are frequently provided for no or nominal consideration generally to further the reporting entity’s economic and social objectives. Such purposes include supporting infrastructure projects, supporting corporate entities at times of economic distress, guaranteeing the bond issues of entities in other tiers of governments and the loans of employees to finance motor vehicles that are to be used for performance of their duties as employees. At initial recognition, where no fee is charged, a reporting entity firstly considers whether there are quoted prices available in an active market for guarantee contracts directly equivalent to that entered into. The fact that a financial guarantee contract has been entered into at no consideration by the debtor to the issuer is not, of itself, conclusive evidence of the absence of an active market. Guarantees may be available from commercial issuers, but the reporting entity has agreed to enter into a financial guarantee contract, because the debtor would be unable to afford a commercial fee, and initiation of a project in fulfillment of one of the reporting entity’s social or policy objectives would be imperiled unless a financial guarantee contract were to be entered into. In such instances a fair value may be determined by quotes provided in an active market.</u></p> | <p>Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.</p> |
| AG97 | <p><u>Where a fee is payable by the debtor to the reporting entity (issuer), the reporting entity must determine whether it reflects a price in an active market and therefore represents a fair value. If the fee payable does not represent a fair value, the reporting entity adopts the same approach as for a financial guarantee contract at nil consideration in paragraph AG98 below.</u></p> | <p>Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.</p> |
| AG98 | <p><u>Where there is no active market for a directly equivalent guarantee contract; the reporting entity considers whether a valuation technique is available. Such valuation techniques include those highlighted in paragraph AG 110 of this Standard, such as recent arm’s length market transactions between knowledgeable willing parties, reference to the current fair value of another financial guarantee contract that is substantially the same as that provided at nil consideration by the issuer or a</u></p> | <p>Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.</p> |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

mathematical model. For example, National Government W guarantees a bond issue of Municipality X. As Municipality X has a government guarantee backing its bond issue, its bonds have a lower coupon than if they were not secured by a government guarantee. This is because the guarantee lowers the risk profile of the bonds for investors. The guarantee fee could be determined by using the credit spread between what the coupon rate would have been had the issue not been backed by a government guarantee and the rate with the guarantee in place. Where a fair value is obtainable either by reference to an active market or through a valuation technique the entity recognizes the financial guarantee at that fair value in the statement of financial position and recognizes an expense of an equivalent amount in the statement of financial performance.

- | | | |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| G99 | <p><u>If no fair value can be determined, either by direct reference to an active market or through a valuation technique, an entity is required to measure the financial guarantee contract both at initial recognition and subsequently in accordance with IPSAS 19. The reporting entity assesses whether a present obligation has arisen as a result of a past event related to a financial guarantee contract, whether it is probable that such a present obligation will result in a cash outflow in accordance with the terms of the contract and a reliable estimate can be made of the outflow. It is possible, that a present obligation related to a financial guarantee contract will arise at initial recognition where, for example, a reporting entity enters into a financial guarantee contract to guarantee loans to a large number of small enterprises and, based on past experience, is aware that a high proportion of these enterprises will default.</u></p> | <p>Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.</p> |
| AG100 | <p><u>Where the fair value of a financial guarantee in a non-exchange transaction is determined in accordance with paragraphs AG97 to AG98 that amount is recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9.</u></p> | <p>Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.</p> |
| AG101 | <p><u>Only contractual financial guarantees (or guarantees that are in substance, contractual) are within the scope. Non-contractual guarantees are not within the scope of this Standard as they do not meet the definition of a financial guarantee contract. Financial guarantee contracts where the reporting entity is the holder of the contract, rather than the issuer of the contract, are outside the scope of this Standard.</u></p> | <p>Added guidance on the valuation of financial guarantees issued at no or nominal consideration in accordance with the direction given at Zurich.</p> |

Valuing Financial Guarantees Issued at No or Nominal Consideration (Alternative Approach Omitting the Valuation Model Stage)

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

AGXX.	<p><u>In paragraph 10 a “financial guarantee contract” is defined as “a contract that requires the issuer to make specified payments to reimburse the holder for a loss it incurs because a specified debtor fails to make payment when due in accordance with the original or modified terms of a debt instrument.” Under the requirements of this Standard, financial guarantee contracts, like other financial assets and financial liabilities, are required to be initially recognized at fair value plus, except for financial assets or financial liabilities through surplus or deficit, transaction costs directly linked to acquisition or issue. Paragraphs 50-52 of this Standard provide commentary and guidance on determining fair value and this is complemented by Application Guidance in paragraphs AG105-AG120. Subsequent measurement for financial guarantee contracts is at the higher of the amount determined in accordance with IPSAS 19, “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Liabilities” and the amount initially recognized less, when appropriate, cumulative amortization.</u></p>	<p>Alternative wording added which omits the valuation model stage.</p> <p>Note: the text has been referenced to the paragraphs outlined above and not the alternative approach.</p>
AGXX.	<p><u>In the public sector, guarantees are frequently provided for no or nominal consideration generally to further the reporting entity’s economic and social objectives. Such purposes include supporting infrastructure projects, supporting corporate entities at times of economic distress, guaranteeing the bond issues of entities in other tiers of governments and the loans of employees to finance motor vehicles that are to be used for performance of their duties as employees. At initial recognition, where no fee is charged, a reporting entity firstly considers whether there are quoted prices available in an active market for guarantee contracts directly equivalent to that entered into. The fact that a financial guarantee contract has been entered into at no consideration by the debtor to the issuer is not, of itself, conclusive evidence of the absence of an active market. Guarantees may be available from commercial issuers, but the reporting entity has agreed to enter into a financial guarantee contract, because the debtor would be unable to afford a commercial fee, and initiation of a project in fulfillment of one of the reporting entity’s social or policy objectives would be imperiled unless a financial guarantee contract were to be entered into. In such instances a fair value may be determined by quotes provided in an active market.</u></p>	<p>Alternative wording added which omits the valuation model stage.</p>
AGXX.	<p><u>Where a fee is payable by the debtor to the reporting entity (issuer), the reporting entity must determine whether it reflects a price in an active market and therefore represents a fair value. If the fee payable</u></p>	<p>Alternative wording added which omits the valuation model stage.</p>

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

	<u>does not represent a fair value, the reporting entity adopts the same approach as for a financial guarantee contract at nil consideration in paragraph AGXX below.</u>	
AGXX.	<u>Where there is no active market for a directly equivalent financial guarantee contract an entity is required to measure the financial guarantee contract both at initial recognition and subsequently in accordance with IPSAS 19. The reporting entity assesses whether a present obligation has arisen as a result of a past event related to a financial guarantee contract, whether it is probable that such a present obligation will result in a cash outflow in accordance with the terms of the contract and a reliable estimate can be made of the outflow. It is possible, that a present obligation related to a financial guarantee contract will arise at initial recognition where for example a reporting entity enters into a financial guarantee contract to guarantee loans to a large number of small enterprises and, based on past experience, is aware that a high proportion of these enterprises will default.</u>	Alternative wording added which omits the valuation model stage.
AGXX.	<u>Where the fair value of a financial guarantee in a non-exchange transaction is determined in accordance with paragraphs AG97 to AG98 that amount is recognized in accordance with IPSAS 9.</u>	Alternative wording added which omits the valuation model stage.
AGXX.	<u>Only contractual financial guarantees (or guarantees that are in substance, contractual) are within the scope. Non-contractual guarantees are not within the scope of this Standard as they do not meet the definition of a financial guarantee contract. Financial guarantee contracts where the reporting entity is the holder of the contract, rather than the issuer of the contract, are outside the scope of this Standard.</u>	Alternative wording added which omits the valuation model stage.

Subsequent Measurement of Financial Assets (paragraphs 47 and 48)

AG102	If a financial instrument that was previously recognized as a financial asset is measured at fair value and its fair value falls below zero, it is a financial liability measured in accordance with paragraph 49.	IAS 39.AG66; no amendment.
AG103	The following example illustrates the accounting for transaction costs on the initial and subsequent measurement of an available-for-sale financial asset. An asset is acquired for CU100 plus a purchase commission of CU2. Initially, the asset is recognized at CU102. The end of the reporting period occurs one day later, when the quoted market price of the asset is CU100. If the asset were sold, a commission of CU3 would be paid. On that date, the asset is	IAS 39.AG67; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

measured at CU100 (without regard to the possible commission on sale) and a loss of CU2 is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. If the available-for-sale financial asset has fixed or determinable payments, the transaction costs are amortized to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ using the effective interest method. If the available-for-sale financial asset does not have fixed or determinable payments, the transaction costs are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ when the asset is derecognized or becomes impaired.

- AG104 Instruments that are classified as loans and receivables are measured at amortized cost without regard to the entity's intention to hold them to maturity. IAS 39.AG68; no amendment.

Fair Value Measurement Considerations (paragraphs 50–52)

- AG105 Underlying the definition of fair value is a presumption that an entity is a going concern without any intention or need to liquidate, to curtail materially the scale of its operations or to undertake a transaction on adverse terms. Fair value is not, therefore, the amount that an entity would receive or pay in a forced transaction, involuntary liquidation or distress sale. However, fair value reflects the credit quality of the instrument. IAS 39.AG69; no amendment.
- AG106 This Standard uses the terms 'bid price' and 'asking price' (sometimes referred to as 'current offer price') in the context of quoted market prices, and the term 'the bid-ask spread' to include only transaction costs. Other adjustments to arrive at fair value (e.g. for counterparty credit risk) are not included in the term 'bid-ask spread'. IAS 39.AG70; no amendment.

Active Market: Quoted Price

- AG107 A financial instrument is regarded as quoted in an active market if quoted prices are readily and regularly available from an exchange, dealer, broker, industry group, pricing service or regulatory agency, and those prices represent actual and regularly occurring market transactions on an arm's length basis. Fair value is defined in terms of a price agreed by a willing buyer and a willing seller in an arm's length transaction. The objective of determining fair value for a financial instrument that is traded in an active market is to arrive at the price at which a transaction would occur at the end of the reporting period in that instrument (i.e. without modifying or repackaging the instrument) in the most advantageous active market to which the entity has immediate access. However, the entity adjusts the IAS 39.AG71; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

price in the more advantageous market to reflect any differences in counterparty credit risk between instruments traded in that market and the one being valued. The existence of published price quotations in an active market is the best evidence of fair value and when they exist they are used to measure the financial asset or financial liability.

- AG108 The appropriate quoted market price for an asset held or liability to be issued is usually the current bid price and, for an asset to be acquired or liability held, the asking price. When an entity has assets and liabilities with offsetting market risks, it may use mid-market prices as a basis for establishing fair values for the offsetting risk positions and apply the bid or asking price to the net open position as appropriate. When current bid and asking prices are unavailable, the price of the most recent transaction provides evidence of the current fair value as long as there has not been a significant change in economic circumstances since the time of the transaction. If conditions have changed since the time of the transaction (e.g. a change in the risk-free interest rate following the most recent price quote for a government ~~corporate~~ bond), the fair value reflects the change in conditions by reference to current prices or rates for similar financial instruments, as appropriate. Similarly, if the entity can demonstrate that the last transaction price is not fair value (e.g. because it reflected the amount that an entity would receive or pay in a forced transaction, involuntary liquidation or distress sale), that price is adjusted. The fair value of a portfolio of financial instruments is the product of the number of units of the instrument and its quoted market price. If a published price quotation in an active market does not exist for a financial instrument in its entirety, but active markets exist for its component parts, fair value is determined on the basis of the relevant market prices for the component parts.
- IAS 39.AG72; deleted reference to “corporate” bond and replaced with “government” bond.
- AG109 If a rate (rather than a price) is quoted in an active market, the entity uses that market-quoted rate as an input into a valuation technique to determine fair value. If the market-quoted rate does not include credit risk or other factors that market participants would include in valuing the instrument, the entity adjusts for those factors.
- IAS 39.AG73; no amendment.

No Active Market: Valuation Technique

- AG110 If the market for a financial instrument is not active, an entity establishes fair value by using a valuation technique. Valuation techniques include using recent arm’s length market transactions between knowledgeable, willing parties, if available,
- IAS 39.AG74; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

reference to the current fair value of another instrument that is substantially the same, discounted cash flow analysis and option pricing models. If there is a valuation technique commonly used by market participants to price the instrument and that technique has been demonstrated to provide reliable estimates of prices obtained in actual market transactions, the entity uses that technique.

- | | | |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG111 | <p>The objective of using a valuation technique is to establish what the transaction price would have been on the measurement date in an arm's length exchange motivated by normal <u>operating business</u> considerations. Fair value is estimated on the basis of the results of a valuation technique that makes maximum use of market inputs, and relies as little as possible on entity-specific inputs. A valuation technique would be expected to arrive at a realistic estimate of the fair value if (a) it reasonably reflects how the market could be expected to price the instrument and (b) the inputs to the valuation technique reasonably represent market expectations and measures of the risk-return factors inherent in the financial instrument.</p> | <p>IAS 39.AG75; amended reference from "business" to "operating" considerations as more appropriate for the public sector.</p> |
| AG112 | <p>Therefore, a valuation technique (a) incorporates all factors that market participants would consider in setting a price and (b) is consistent with accepted economic methodologies for pricing financial instruments. Periodically, an entity calibrates the valuation technique and tests it for validity using prices from any observable current market transactions in the same instrument (i.e. without modification or repackaging) or based on any available observable market data. An entity obtains market data consistently in the same market where the instrument was originated or purchased. The best evidence of the fair value of a financial instrument at initial recognition is the transaction price (i.e. the fair value of the consideration given or received) unless the fair value of that instrument is evidenced by comparison with other observable current market transactions in the same instrument (i.e. without modification or repackaging) or based on a valuation technique whose variables include only data from observable markets.</p> | <p>IAS 39.AG76; no amendment.</p> |
| AG113 | <p>The subsequent measurement of the financial asset or financial liability and the subsequent recognition of gains and losses shall be consistent with the requirements of this Standard. The application of paragraph AG112 may result in no gain or loss being recognized on the initial recognition of a financial asset or financial liability. In such a case, <u>ED 38</u>IAS 39 requires that a gain or loss shall be recognized after initial recognition only to the extent that it</p> | <p>IAS 39.AG76A; changed references to IFRSs.</p> |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

arises from a change in a factor (including time) that market participants would consider in setting a price.

- | | | |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG114 | <p>The initial acquisition or origination of a financial asset or incurrence of a financial liability is a market transaction that provides a foundation for estimating the fair value of the financial instrument. In particular, if the financial instrument is a debt instrument (such as a loan), its fair value can be determined by reference to the market conditions that existed at its acquisition or origination date and current market conditions or interest rates currently charged by the entity or by others for similar debt instruments (i.e. similar remaining maturity, cash flow pattern, currency, credit risk, collateral and interest basis). Alternatively, provided there is no change in the credit risk of the debtor and applicable credit spreads after the origination of the debt instrument, an estimate of the current market interest rate may be derived by using a benchmark interest rate reflecting a better credit quality than the underlying debt instrument, holding the credit spread constant, and adjusting for the change in the benchmark interest rate from the origination date. If conditions have changed since the most recent market transaction, the corresponding change in the fair value of the financial instrument being valued is determined by reference to current prices or rates for similar financial instruments, adjusted as appropriate, for any differences from the instrument being valued.</p> | IAS 39.AG77; no amendment. |
| AG115 | <p>The same information may not be available at each measurement date. For example, at the date that an entity makes a loan or acquires a debt instrument that is not actively traded, the entity has a transaction price that is also a market price. However, no new transaction information may be available at the next measurement date and, although the entity can determine the general level of market interest rates, it may not know what level of credit or other risk market participants would consider in pricing the instrument on that date. An entity may not have information from recent transactions to determine the appropriate credit spread over the basic interest rate to use in determining a discount rate for a present value computation. It would be reasonable to assume, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, that no changes have taken place in the spread that existed at the date the loan was made. However, the entity would be expected to make reasonable efforts to determine whether there is evidence that there has been a change in such factors. When evidence of a change exists, the entity would consider the effects of the change in determining the fair value of the financial instrument.</p> | IAS 39.AG78; no amendment. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- AG116 In applying discounted cash flow analysis, an entity uses one or more discount rates equal to the prevailing rates of return for financial instruments having substantially the same terms and characteristics, including the credit quality of the instrument, the remaining term over which the contractual interest rate is fixed, the remaining term to repayment of the principal and the currency in which payments are to be made. Short-term receivables and payables with no stated interest rate may be measured at the original invoice amount if the effect of discounting is immaterial. IAS 39.AG79; no amendment.

No Active Market: Equity Instruments

- AG117 The fair value of investments in equity instruments that do not have a quoted market price in an active market and derivatives that are linked to and must be settled by delivery of such an unquoted equity instrument (see paragraphs 48(c) and 49) is reliably measurable if (a) the variability in the range of reasonable fair value estimates is not significant for that instrument or (b) the probabilities of the various estimates within the range can be reasonably assessed and used in estimating fair value. IAS 39.AG80; no amendment.
- AG118 There are many situations in which the variability in the range of reasonable fair value estimates of investments in equity instruments that do not have a quoted market price and derivatives that are linked to and must be settled by delivery of such an unquoted equity instrument (see paragraphs 48(c) and 49) is likely not to be significant. Normally it is possible to estimate the fair value of a financial asset that an entity has acquired from an outside party. However, if the range of reasonable fair value estimates is significant and the probabilities of the various estimates cannot be reasonably assessed, an entity is precluded from measuring the instrument at fair value. IAS 39.AG81; no amendment.

Inputs to Valuation Techniques

- AG119 An appropriate technique for estimating the fair value of a particular financial instrument would incorporate observable market data about the market conditions and other factors that are likely to affect the instrument's fair value. The fair value of a financial instrument will be based on one or more of the following factors (and perhaps others). IAS 39.AG82; retained reference to government bonds as this has been used in other IPSASs to reflect a "risk free rate".
- (a) *The time value of money (i.e. interest at the basic or risk-free rate).* Basic interest rates can usually be derived from observable government bond prices and are often quoted in financial Should the explanation of "Some entities in these countries may have a better credit standing and a lower borrowing rate than the central government.." and related explanations be retained given that the government bond rate is advocated in IPSAS (except if there is no deep market in government bonds). Amended references from LIBOR to an

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

publications. These rates typically vary with the interbank rate. expected dates of the projected cash flows along a yield curve of interest rates for different time horizons. For practical reasons, an entity may use a well-accepted and readily observable general rate, such as an interbank offered rate e.g., LIBOR or a swap rate, as the benchmark rate. (Because a rate such as an interbank offered rate ~~LIBOR~~ is not the risk-free interest rate, the credit risk adjustment appropriate to the particular financial instrument is determined on the basis of its credit risk in relation to the credit risk in this benchmark rate.) In some countries, the central government's bonds may carry a significant credit risk and may not provide a stable benchmark basic interest rate for instruments denominated in that currency. Some entities in these countries may have a better credit standing and a lower borrowing rate than the central government. In such a case, basic interest rates may be more appropriately determined by reference to interest rates for the highest rated corporate bonds issued in the currency of that jurisdiction.

- (b) *Credit risk.* The effect on fair value of credit risk (i.e. the premium over the basic interest rate for credit risk) may be derived from observable market prices for traded instruments of different credit quality or from observable interest rates charged by lenders for loans of various credit ratings.
- (c) *Foreign currency exchange prices.* Active currency exchange markets exist for most major currencies, and prices are quoted daily in financial publications.
- (d) *Commodity prices.* There are observable market prices for many commodities.
- (e) *Equity prices.* Prices (and indexes of prices) of traded equity instruments are readily observable in some markets. Present value based techniques may be used to estimate the current market price of equity instruments for which there are no observable prices.
- (f) *Volatility (i.e. magnitude of future changes in price of the financial instrument or other item).* Measures of the volatility of actively traded items can normally be reasonably estimated on the basis of historical market data or by using volatilities implied in current market prices.
- (g) *Prepayment risk and surrender risk.* Expected

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

prepayment patterns for financial assets and expected surrender patterns for financial liabilities can be estimated on the basis of historical data. (The fair value of a financial liability that can be surrendered by the counterparty cannot be less than the present value of the surrender amount—see paragraph 52.)

- (h) *Servicing costs for a financial asset or a financial liability.* Costs of servicing can be estimated using comparisons with current fees charged by other market participants. If the costs of servicing a financial asset or financial liability are significant and other market participants would face comparable costs, the issuer would consider them in determining the fair value of that financial asset or financial liability. It is likely that the fair value at inception of a contractual right to future fees equals the origination costs paid for them, unless future fees and related costs are out of line with market comparables.

Gains and Losses (paragraphs 64–66)

- AG120 An entity applies IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ to financial assets and financial liabilities that are monetary items in accordance with IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ and denominated in a foreign currency. Under IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~, any foreign exchange gains and losses on monetary assets and monetary liabilities are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. An exception is a monetary item that is designated as a hedging instrument in either a cash flow hedge (see paragraphs 106–112) or a hedge of a net investment (see paragraph 113). For the purpose of recognizing foreign exchange gains and losses under IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~, a monetary available-for-sale financial asset is treated as if it were carried at amortized cost in the foreign currency. Accordingly, for such a financial asset, exchange differences resulting from changes in amortized cost are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and other changes in carrying amount are recognized in accordance with paragraph 64(b). For available-for-sale financial assets that are not monetary items under IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ (for example, equity instruments), the gain or loss that is recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ under paragraph 64(b) includes any related foreign exchange component. If there is a hedging relationship between a non-derivative monetary asset and a non-derivative monetary liability, changes in the foreign currency component of those financial instruments are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.
- IAS 39.AG83; amended for public sector terminology and references to IFRSs.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Impairment and Uncollectibility of Financial Assets (paragraphs 67–79)

Financial Assets Carried at Amortized Cost (paragraphs 72–74)

- | | | |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG121 | <p>Impairment of a financial asset carried at amortized cost is measured using the financial instrument's original effective interest rate because discounting at the current market rate of interest would, in effect, impose fair value measurement on financial assets that are otherwise measured at amortized cost. If the terms of a loan, receivable or held-to-maturity investment are renegotiated or otherwise modified because of financial difficulties of the borrower or issuer, impairment is measured using the original effective interest rate before the modification of terms. Cash flows relating to short-term receivables are not discounted if the effect of discounting is immaterial. If a loan, receivable or held-to-maturity investment has a variable interest rate, the discount rate for measuring any impairment loss under paragraph 72 is the current effective interest rate(s) determined under the contract. As a practical expedient, a creditor may measure impairment of a financial asset carried at amortized cost on the basis of an instrument's fair value using an observable market price. The calculation of the present value of the estimated future cash flows of a collateralized financial asset reflects the cash flows that may result from foreclosure less costs for obtaining and selling the collateral, whether or not foreclosure is probable.</p> | IAS 39.AG84; no amendment. |
| AG122 | <p>The process for estimating impairment considers all credit exposures, not only those of low credit quality. For example, if an entity uses an internal credit grading system it considers all credit grades, not only those reflecting a severe credit deterioration.</p> | IAS 39.AG85; no amendment. |
| AG123 | <p>The process for estimating the amount of an impairment loss may result either in a single amount or in a range of possible amounts. In the latter case, the entity recognizes an impairment loss equal to the best estimate within the range taking into account all relevant information available before the financial statements are issued about conditions existing at the end of the reporting period (<u>IPSAS 19, paragraph 47, contains guidance on how to determine the best estimate in a range of possible outcomes</u>).</p> | IAS 39.AG86.; added footnote into the text of the application guidance. |
| AG124 | <p>For the purpose of a collective evaluation of impairment, financial assets are grouped on the basis of similar credit risk characteristics that are indicative of the debtors' ability to pay all amounts due according to the contractual terms (for example, on the basis of a credit risk evaluation or grading process that considers asset type, industry,</p> | IAS 39.AG87; no amendment. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

geographical location, collateral type, past-due status and other relevant factors). The characteristics chosen are relevant to the estimation of future cash flows for groups of such assets by being indicative of the debtors' ability to pay all amounts due according to the contractual terms of the assets being evaluated. However, loss probabilities and other loss statistics differ at a group level between (a) assets that have been individually evaluated for impairment and found not to be impaired and (b) assets that have not been individually evaluated for impairment, with the result that a different amount of impairment may be required. If an entity does not have a group of assets with similar risk characteristics, it does not make the additional assessment.

- | | | |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| AG125 | Impairment losses recognized on a group basis represent an interim step pending the identification of impairment losses on individual assets in the group of financial assets that are collectively assessed for impairment. As soon as information is available that specifically identifies losses on individually impaired assets in a group, those assets are removed from the group. | IAS 39.AG88; no amendment. |
| AG126 | Future cash flows in a group of financial assets that are collectively evaluated for impairment are estimated on the basis of historical loss experience for assets with credit risk characteristics similar to those in the group. Entities that have no entity-specific loss experience or insufficient experience, use peer group experience for comparable groups of financial assets. Historical loss experience is adjusted on the basis of current observable data to reflect the effects of current conditions that did not affect the period on which the historical loss experience is based and to remove the effects of conditions in the historical period that do not exist currently. Estimates of changes in future cash flows reflect and are directionally consistent with changes in related observable data from period to period (such as changes in unemployment rates, property prices, commodity prices, payment status or other factors that are indicative of incurred losses in the group and their magnitude). The methodology and assumptions used for estimating future cash flows are reviewed regularly to reduce any differences between loss estimates and actual loss experience. | IAS 39.AG89; no amendment. |
| AG127 | As an example of applying paragraph AG126, an entity may determine, on the basis of historical experience, that one of the main causes of default on credit-card loans is the death of the borrower. The entity may observe that the death rate is unchanged from one year to the next. Nevertheless, some of the borrowers in the entity's group of credit-card loans | IAS 39.AG90; deleted reference to "credit card". |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

may have died in that year, indicating that an impairment loss has occurred on those loans, even if, at the year-end, the entity is not yet aware which specific borrowers have died. It would be appropriate for an impairment loss to be recognized for these ‘incurred but not reported’ losses. However, it would not be appropriate to recognize an impairment loss for deaths that are expected to occur in a future period, because the necessary loss event (the death of the borrower) has not yet occurred.

AG128 When using historical loss rates in estimating future cash flows, it is important that information about historical loss rates is applied to groups that are defined in a manner consistent with the groups for which the historical loss rates were observed. Therefore, the method used should enable each group to be associated with information about past loss experience in groups of assets with similar credit risk characteristics and relevant observable data that reflect current conditions. IAS 39.AG91; no amendment.

AG129 Formula-based approaches or statistical methods may be used to determine impairment losses in a group of financial assets (e.g. for smaller balance loans) as long as they are consistent with the requirements in paragraphs 72–74 and AG124–AG128. Any model used would incorporate the effect of the time value of money, consider the cash flows for all of the remaining life of an asset (not only the next year), consider the age of the loans within the portfolio and not give rise to an impairment loss on initial recognition of a financial asset. IAS 39.AG92; no amendment.

Interest Revenue ~~Income~~ After Impairment Recognition

AG130 Once a financial asset or a group of similar financial assets has been written down as a result of an impairment loss, interest revenue ~~income~~ is thereafter recognized using the rate of interest used to discount the future cash flows for the purpose of measuring the impairment loss. IAS 39.AG93; amended term ‘income’ to revenue.

Hedging (paragraphs 80–113)

Hedging Instruments (paragraphs 81–86)

Qualifying Instruments (paragraphs 81 and 82)

AG131 The potential loss on an option that an entity writes could be significantly greater than the potential gain in value of a related hedged item. In other words, a written option is not effective in reducing the surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ exposure of a hedged item. IAS 39.AG94; amended for public sector terminology.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Therefore, a written option does not qualify as a hedging instrument unless it is designated as an offset to a purchased option, including one that is embedded in another financial instrument (for example, a written call option used to hedge a callable liability). In contrast, a purchased option has potential gains equal to or greater than losses and therefore has the potential to reduce surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ exposure from changes in fair values or cash flows. Accordingly, it can qualify as a hedging instrument.

- | | | |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| AG132 | A held-to-maturity investment carried at amortized cost may be designated as a hedging instrument in a hedge of foreign currency risk. | IAS 39.AG95; no amendment. |
| AG133 | An investment in an unquoted equity instrument that is not carried at fair value because its fair value cannot be reliably measured or a derivative that is linked to and must be settled by delivery of such an unquoted equity instrument (see paragraphs 48(c) and 49) cannot be designated as a hedging instrument. | IAS 39.AG96; no amendment. |
| AG134 | An entity's own equity instruments are not financial assets or financial liabilities of the entity and therefore cannot be designated as hedging instruments. | IAS 39.AG97; no amendment. |

Hedged items (paragraphs 87–94)

Qualifying items (paragraphs 87–89)

- | | | |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG135 | A firm commitment to acquire <u>an entity or an integrated set of activities</u> a business in an entity business combination cannot be a hedged item, except for foreign exchange risk, because the other risks being hedged cannot be specifically identified and measured. These other risks are general <u>operational</u> business risks. | IAS 39.AG98; deleted references to a “business combination” and eluded to the fact that a ‘business’ as envisaged by IFRS could be an entity or an ‘integrated set of activities’ The wording should however correlate with the proposal in the project on entity combinations. |
| AG136 | An equity method investment cannot be a hedged item in a fair value hedge because the equity method recognizes in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss the investor's share of the associate's <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss , rather than changes in the investment's fair value. For a similar reason, an investment in a consolidated <u>controlled entity</u> subsidiary cannot be a hedged item in a fair value hedge because consolidation recognizes in <u>surplus of deficit</u> profit or loss the <u>controlled entity's surplus or deficit</u> subsidiary's profit or loss , rather than changes in the investment's fair value. A hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation is different because it is a hedge of the foreign currency exposure, not a fair | IAS 39.AG99; amended for public sector terminology. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

value hedge of the change in the value of the investment.

AG137 Paragraph 89 states that in consolidated financial statements the foreign currency risk of a highly probable forecast ~~intra group~~ transaction within the economic entity may qualify as a hedged item in a cash flow hedge, provided the transaction is denominated in a currency other than the functional currency of the entity entering into that transaction and the foreign currency risk will affect consolidated ~~surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss. For this purpose an entity can be a parent, ~~controlled entity~~ subsidiary, associate, joint venture or branch. If the foreign currency risk of a forecast ~~intra group~~ transaction within the economic entity does not affect consolidated ~~surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss, the ~~intragroup~~ transaction cannot qualify as a hedged item. This is usually the case for royalty payments, interest payments or management charges between members of the same ~~economic entity group~~ economic entity unless there is a related external transaction. However, when the foreign currency risk of a forecast ~~intragroup~~ transaction within the economic entity will affect consolidated ~~surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss, the ~~intragroup~~ transaction can qualify as a hedged item. An example is forecast sales or purchases of inventories between members of the same ~~economic entity group~~ economic entity if there is an onward sale of the inventory to a party external to the ~~economic entity group~~ economic entity. Similarly, a forecast ~~intragroup~~ sale of property, plant and equipment within the economic entity from the ~~group~~ entity that ~~constructed~~ manufactured it to ~~the a group~~ an entity that will use the property, plant and equipment in its operations may affect consolidated ~~surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss. This could occur, for example, because the plant and equipment will be depreciated by the purchasing entity and the amount initially recognized for the plant and equipment may change if the forecast ~~intragroup~~ transaction within the economic entity is denominated in a currency other than the functional currency of the purchasing entity.

IAS 39.AG99A; amended for public sector terminology. Referred to “transactions within the economic entity” instead of “intragroup” transactions.

Amended example of the sale of plant and equipment & the manufacture thereof to the construction of property, plant and equipment.

AG138 If a hedge of a forecast ~~intragroup~~ transaction within the economic entity qualifies for hedge accounting, any gain or loss that is recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~in other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with paragraph 106(a) shall be reclassified into from equity to profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment ~~surplus or deficit~~ in the same period or periods during which the foreign currency risk of the hedged transaction affects consolidated ~~surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss.

IAS 39.AG99B; amended for public sector terminology.

IAS 1 amendments not yet considered by the IPSASB, therefore omitted.

Note: repositioned paragraph in accordance with comment received.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- AG139 An entity can designate all changes in the cash flows or fair value of a hedged item in a hedging relationship. An entity can also designate only changes in the cash flows or fair value of a hedged item above or below a specified price or other variable (a one-sided risk). The intrinsic value of a purchased option hedging instrument (assuming that it has the same principal terms as the designated risk), but not its time value, reflects a one-sided risk in a hedged item. For example, an entity can designate the variability of future cash flow outcomes resulting from a price increase of a forecast commodity purchase. In such a situation, only cash flow losses that result from an increase in the price above the specified level are designated. The hedged risk does not include the time value of a purchased option because the time value is not a component of the forecast transaction that affects surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (paragraph 96(b)).
- IAS 39.AG99BA; amended for public sector terminology.
Included amendments to IAS 39 – Eligible Hedged Items

Designation of Financial Items as Hedged Items (paragraphs 90 and 91)

- AG140 If a portion of the cash flows of a financial asset or financial liability is designated as the hedged item, that designated portion must be less than the total cash flows of the asset or liability. For example, in the case of a liability whose effective interest rate is below the interbank offered rate LIBOR, an entity cannot designate (a) a portion of the liability equal to the principal amount plus interest at the interbank offered rate LIBOR and (b) a negative residual portion. However, the entity may designate all of the cash flows of the entire financial asset or financial liability as the hedged item and hedge them for only one particular risk (e.g. only for changes that are attributable to changes in the interbank offered rate LIBOR). For example, in the case of a financial liability whose effective interest rate is 100 basis points below the interbank offered rate LIBOR, an entity can designate as the hedged item the entire liability (i.e. principal plus interest at the interbank offered rate LIBOR minus 100 basis points) and hedge the change in the fair value or cash flows of that entire liability that is attributable to changes in the interbank offered rate LIBOR. The entity may also choose a hedge ratio of other than one to one in order to improve the effectiveness of the hedge as described in paragraph AG144.
- IAS 39.AG99C; Amended references from LIBOR to an interbank rate.
- AG141 In addition, if a fixed rate financial instrument is hedged some time after its origination and interest rates have changed in the meantime, the entity can designate a portion equal to a benchmark rate that is
- IAS 39.AG99D; Amended references from LIBOR to an interbank rate.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

higher than the contractual rate paid on the item. The entity can do so provided that the benchmark rate is less than the effective interest rate calculated on the assumption that the entity had purchased the instrument on the day it first designates the hedged item. For example, assume an entity originates a fixed rate financial asset of CU100 that has an effective interest rate of 6 per cent at a time when the interbank offered rate LIBOR is 4 per cent. It begins to hedge that asset some time later when the interbank offered rate LIBOR has increased to 8 per cent and the fair value of the asset has decreased to CU90. The entity calculates that if it had purchased the asset on the date it first designates it as the hedged item for its then fair value of CU90, the effective yield would have been 9.5 per cent. Because the interbank offered rate LIBOR is less than this effective yield, the entity can designate a LIBOR portion of the interbank offered rate of 8 per cent that consists partly of the contractual interest cash flows and partly of the difference between the current fair value (i.e. CU90) and the amount repayable on maturity (i.e. CU100).

- | | | |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG142 | Paragraph 96 permits an entity to designate something other than the entire fair value change or cash flow variability of a financial instrument. For example: | IAS 39.AG99E; no amendment.

Amendments to IAS 39 – Eligible Hedged Items |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) All of the cash flows of a financial instrument may be designated for cash flow or fair value changes attributable to some (but not all) risks; or (b) Some (but not all) of the cash flows of a financial instrument may be designated for cash flow or fair value changes attributable to all or only some risks (i.e. a 'portion' of the cash flows of the financial instrument may be designated for changes attributable to all or only some risks). | |
| AG143 | To be eligible for hedge accounting, the designated risks and portions must be separately identifiable components of the financial instrument, and changes in the cash flows or fair value of the entire financial instrument arising from changes in the designated risks and portions must be reliably measurable. For example: | IAS 39.AG99F; no amendment.

Included amendments to IAS 39 – Eligible Hedged Items |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) For a fixed rate financial instrument hedged for changes in fair value attributable to changes in a risk-free or benchmark interest rate, the risk-free or benchmark rate is normally regarded as both a separately identifiable component of the financial instrument and reliably measurable. (b) Inflation is not separately identifiable and | |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

reliably measurable and cannot be designated as a risk or a portion of a financial instrument unless the requirements in (c) are met.

- (c) A contractually specified inflation portion of the cash flows of a recognized inflation-linked bond (assuming there is no requirement to account for an embedded derivative separately) is separately identifiable and reliably measurable as long as other cash flows of the instrument are not affected by the inflation portion.

Designation of Non-Financial Items as Hedged Items (paragraph 92)

- | | | |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG144 | <p>Changes in the price of an ingredient or component of a non-financial asset or non-financial liability generally do not have a predictable, separately measurable effect on the price of the item that is comparable to the effect of, say, a change in market interest rates on the price of a bond. Thus, a non-financial asset or non-financial liability is a hedged item only in its entirety or for foreign exchange risk. If there is a difference between the terms of the hedging instrument and the hedged item (such as for a hedge of the forecast purchase of <u>Brent Crude oil</u> Brazilian coffee using a forward contract to purchase <u>Light Sweet Crude oil</u> Colombian coffee on otherwise similar terms), the hedging relationship nonetheless can qualify as a hedge relationship provided all the conditions in paragraph 98 are met, including that the hedge is expected to be highly effective. For this purpose, the amount of the hedging instrument may be greater or less than that of the hedged item if this improves the effectiveness of the hedging relationship. For example, a regression analysis could be performed to establish a statistical relationship between the hedged item (e.g. a transaction in <u>Brent Crude oil</u> Brazilian coffee) and the hedging instrument (e.g. a transaction in <u>Light Sweet Crude oil</u> Colombian coffee). If there is a valid statistical relationship between the two variables (i.e. between the unit prices of Brent Crude oil and Light Sweet Crude oil Brazilian coffee and Colombian coffee), the slope of the regression line can be used to establish the hedge ratio that will maximize expected effectiveness. For example, if the slope of the regression line is 1.02, a hedge ratio based on 0.98 quantities of hedged items to 1.00 quantities of the hedging instrument maximizes expected effectiveness. However, the hedging relationship may result in ineffectiveness that is recognized in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss during the term of the hedging relationship.</p> | <p>IAS 39.AG100; amended public sector terminology.</p> <p>Replaced the coffee bean example with oil as it was not public sector specific.</p> |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Designation of Groups of Items as Hedged Items (paragraphs 93 and 94)

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- AG145 A hedge of an overall net position (e.g. the net of all fixed rate assets and fixed rate liabilities with similar maturities), rather than of a specific hedged item, does not qualify for hedge accounting. However, almost the same effect on surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ of hedge accounting for this type of hedging relationship can be achieved by designating as the hedged item part of the underlying items. For example, if a bank has CU100 of assets and CU90 of liabilities with risks and terms of a similar nature and hedges the net CU10 exposure, it can designate as the hedged item CU10 of those assets. This designation can be used if such assets and liabilities are fixed rate instruments, in which case it is a fair value hedge, or if they are variable rate instruments, in which case it is a cash flow hedge. Similarly, if an entity has a firm commitment to make a purchase in a foreign currency of CU100 and a firm commitment to make a sale in the foreign currency of CU90, it can hedge the net amount of CU10 by acquiring a derivative and designating it as a hedging instrument associated with CU10 of the firm purchase commitment of CU100. IAS 39.AG101; amended for public sector terminology.

Hedge Accounting (paragraphs 95–113)

- AG146 An example of a fair value hedge is a hedge of exposure to changes in the fair value of a fixed rate debt instrument as a result of changes in interest rates. Such a hedge could be entered into by the issuer or by the holder. IAS 39.AG102; no amendment.
- AG147 An example of a cash flow hedge is the use of a swap to change floating rate debt to fixed rate debt (i.e. a hedge of a future transaction where the future cash flows being hedged are the future interest payments). IAS 39.AG103; no amendment.
- AG148 A hedge of a firm commitment (e.g. a hedge of the change in fuel price relating to an unrecognized contractual commitment by an electric utility to purchase fuel at a fixed price) is a hedge of an exposure to a change in fair value. Accordingly, such a hedge is a fair value hedge. However, under paragraph 97 a hedge of the foreign currency risk of a firm commitment could alternatively be accounted for as a cash flow hedge. IAS 39.AG104; no amendment.

Assessing Hedge Effectiveness

- AG149 A hedge is regarded as highly effective only if both of the following conditions are met: IAS 39.AG105; no amendment.
- (a) At the inception of the hedge and in subsequent periods, the hedge is expected to be highly

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

effective in achieving offsetting changes in fair value or cash flows attributable to the hedged risk during the period for which the hedge is designated. Such an expectation can be demonstrated in various ways, including a comparison of past changes in the fair value or cash flows of the hedged item that are attributable to the hedged risk with past changes in the fair value or cash flows of the hedging instrument, or by demonstrating a high statistical correlation between the fair value or cash flows of the hedged item and those of the hedging instrument. The entity may choose a hedge ratio of other than one to one in order to improve the effectiveness of the hedge as described in paragraph AG144.

- (b) The actual results of the hedge are within a range of 80–125 per cent. For example, if actual results are such that the loss on the hedging instrument is CU120 and the gain on the cash instrument is CU100, offset can be measured by 120/100, which is 120 per cent, or by 100/120, which is 83 per cent. In this example, assuming the hedge meets the condition in (a), the entity would conclude that the hedge has been highly effective.

AG150	Effectiveness is assessed, at a minimum, at the time an entity prepares its annual or interim financial statements.	IAS 39.AG106; deleted reference to interim financial statements as IPSASs do not deal with interim reporting nor do they mention interim reporting. In the out of session consultation it was noted that ‘annual’ should also be deleted.
AG151	This Standard does not specify a single method for assessing hedge effectiveness. The method an entity adopts for assessing hedge effectiveness depends on its risk management strategy. For example, if the entity’s risk management strategy is to adjust the amount of the hedging instrument periodically to reflect changes in the hedged position, the entity needs to demonstrate that the hedge is expected to be highly effective only for the period until the amount of the hedging instrument is next adjusted. In some cases, an entity adopts different methods for different types of hedges. An entity’s documentation of its hedging strategy includes its procedures for assessing effectiveness. Those procedures state whether the assessment includes all of the gain or loss on a hedging instrument or whether the instrument’s time value is excluded.	IAS 39.AG107; no amendment.
AG152	If an entity hedges less than 100 per cent of the exposure on an item, such as 85 per cent, it shall designate the hedged item as being 85 per cent of the exposure and shall measure ineffectiveness based on	IAS 39.AG107A; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

the change in that designated 85 per cent exposure. However, when hedging the designated 85 per cent exposure, the entity may use a hedge ratio of other than one to one if that improves the expected effectiveness of the hedge, as explained in paragraph AG144.

- AG153 If the principal terms of the hedging instrument and of the hedged asset, liability, firm commitment or highly probable forecast transaction are the same, the changes in fair value and cash flows attributable to the risk being hedged may be likely to offset each other fully, both when the hedge is entered into and afterwards. For example, an interest rate swap is likely to be an effective hedge if the notional and principal amounts, term, repricing dates, dates of interest and principal receipts and payments, and basis for measuring interest rates are the same for the hedging instrument and the hedged item. In addition, a hedge of a highly probable forecast purchase of a commodity with a forward contract is likely to be highly effective if:
- (a) The forward contract is for the purchase of the same quantity of the same commodity at the same time and location as the hedged forecast purchase;
 - (b) The fair value of the forward contract at inception is zero; and
 - (c) Either the change in the discount or premium on the forward contract is excluded from the assessment of effectiveness and recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ or the change in expected cash flows on the highly probable forecast transaction is based on the forward price for the commodity.
- AG154 Sometimes the hedging instrument offsets only part of the hedged risk. For example, a hedge would not be fully effective if the hedging instrument and hedged item are denominated in different currencies that do not move in tandem. Also, a hedge of interest rate risk using a derivative would not be fully effective if part of the change in the fair value of the derivative is attributable to the counterparty's credit risk.
- AG155 To qualify for hedge accounting, the hedge must relate to a specific identified and designated risk, and not merely to the entity's general operational business risks, and must ultimately affect the entity's surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. A hedge of the risk of obsolescence of a physical asset or the risk of legislative changes relating to the rehabilitation of damage to the environment ~~expropriation of property~~
- IAS 39.AG108; amended for public sector terminology.
- IAS 39.AG109; no amendment.
- IAS 39.AG110; amended for public sector terminology.
- Amended the example relating to expropriation of land, to legal changes resulting in the rehabilitation of environmental damage.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

~~by a government~~ is not eligible for hedge accounting; effectiveness cannot be measured because those risks are not measurable reliably.

- | | | |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG156 | Paragraph 83(a) permits an entity to separate the intrinsic value and time value of an option contract and designate as the hedging instrument only the change in the intrinsic value of the option contract. Such a designation may result in a hedging relationship that is perfectly effective in achieving offsetting changes in cash flows attributable to a hedged one-sided risk of a forecast transaction, if the principal terms of the forecast transaction and hedging instrument are the same. | IAS 39.AG110A; no amendment.

Included amendments to IAS 39 – Eligible Hedged Items |
| AG157 | If an entity designates a purchased option in its entirety as the hedging instrument of a one-sided risk arising from a forecast transaction, the hedging relationship will not be perfectly effective. This is because the premium paid for the option includes time value and, as stated in paragraph AG139, a designated one-sided risk does not include the time value of an option. Therefore, in this situation, there will be no offset between the cash flows relating to the time value of the option premium paid and the designated hedged risk. | IAS 39.AG110B; no amendment.

Included amendments to IAS 39 – Eligible Hedged Items |
| AG158 | In the case of interest rate risk, hedge effectiveness may be assessed by preparing a maturity schedule for financial assets and financial liabilities that shows the net interest rate exposure for each time period, provided that the net exposure is associated with a specific asset or liability (or a specific group of assets or liabilities or a specific portion of them) giving rise to the net exposure, and hedge effectiveness is assessed against that asset or liability. | IAS 39.AG111; no amendment. |
| AG159 | In assessing the effectiveness of a hedge, an entity generally considers the time value of money. The fixed interest rate on a hedged item need not exactly match the fixed interest rate on a swap designated as a fair value hedge. Nor does the variable interest rate on an interest-bearing asset or liability need to be the same as the variable interest rate on a swap designated as a cash flow hedge. A swap's fair value derives from its net settlements. The fixed and variable rates on a swap can be changed without affecting the net settlement if both are changed by the same amount. | IAS 39.AG112; no amendment. |
| AG160 | If an entity does not meet hedge effectiveness criteria, the entity discontinues hedge accounting from the last date on which compliance with hedge effectiveness was demonstrated. However, if the entity identifies the event or change in circumstances | IAS 39.AG113; no amendment. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

that caused the hedging relationship to fail the effectiveness criteria, and demonstrates that the hedge was effective before the event or change in circumstances occurred, the entity discontinues hedge accounting from the date of the event or change in circumstances.

Fair Value Hedge Accounting for a Portfolio Hedge of Interest Rate Risk

- AG161 For a fair value hedge of interest rate risk associated with a portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities, an entity would meet the requirements of this Standard if it complies with the procedures set out in (a)–(i) and paragraphs AG162–AG179 below.
- IAS 39.AG114; amended for public sector terminology.
- Added the footnote to (i) to the text of the Standard; with minor changes.
- (a) As part of its risk management process the entity identifies a portfolio of items whose interest rate risk it wishes to hedge. The portfolio may comprise only assets, only liabilities or both assets and liabilities. The entity may identify two or more portfolios (e.g. the entity may group its available-for-sale assets into a separate portfolio), in which case it applies the guidance below to each portfolio separately.
 - (b) The entity analyses the portfolio into repricing time periods based on expected, rather than contractual, repricing dates. The analysis into repricing time periods may be performed in various ways including scheduling cash flows into the periods in which they are expected to occur, or scheduling notional principal amounts into all periods until repricing is expected to occur.
 - (c) On the basis of this analysis, the entity decides the amount it wishes to hedge. The entity designates as the hedged item an amount of assets or liabilities (but not a net amount) from the identified portfolio equal to the amount it wishes to designate as being hedged. This amount also determines the percentage measure that is used for testing effectiveness in accordance with paragraph AG173(b).
 - (d) The entity designates the interest rate risk it is hedging. This risk could be a portion of the interest rate risk in each of the items in the hedged position, such as a benchmark interest rate (e.g. an interbank offered rate such as LIBOR).
 - (e) The entity designates one or more hedging instruments for each repricing time period.
 - (f) Using the designations made in (c)–(e) above,

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

the entity assesses at inception and in subsequent periods, whether the hedge is expected to be highly effective during the period for which the hedge is designated.

- (g) Periodically, the entity measures the change in the fair value of the hedged item (as designated in (c)) that is attributable to the hedged risk (as designated in (d)), on the basis of the expected repricing dates determined in (b). Provided that the hedge is determined actually to have been highly effective when assessed using the entity's documented method of assessing effectiveness, the entity recognizes the change in fair value of the hedged item as a gain or loss in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and in one of two line items in the statement of financial position as described in paragraph 100. The change in fair value need not be allocated to individual assets or liabilities.
- (h) The entity measures the change in fair value of the hedging instrument(s) (as designated in (e)) and recognizes it as a gain or loss in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. The fair value of the hedging instrument(s) is recognized as an asset or liability in the statement of financial position.
- (i) Any ineffectiveness will be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ as the difference between the change in fair value referred to in (g) and that referred to in (h) (effectiveness is measured using the same materiality considerations as in other IPSASs).

- | | | |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| AG162 | This approach is described in more detail below. The approach shall be applied only to a fair value hedge of the interest rate risk associated with a portfolio of financial assets or financial liabilities. | IAS 39.AG115; no amendment. |
| AG163 | The portfolio identified in paragraph AG161(a) could contain assets and liabilities. Alternatively, it could be a portfolio containing only assets, or only liabilities. The portfolio is used to determine the amount of the assets or liabilities the entity wishes to hedge. However, the portfolio is not itself designated as the hedged item. | IAS 39.AG116; no amendment. |
| AG164 | In applying paragraph AG161(b), the entity determines the expected repricing date of an item as the earlier of the dates when that item is expected to mature or to reprice to market rates. The expected repricing dates are estimated at the inception of the hedge and throughout the term of the hedge, based on historical experience and other available information, including information and expectations | IAS 39.AG117; no amendment. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

regarding prepayment rates, interest rates and the interaction between them. Entities that have no entity-specific experience or insufficient experience use peer group experience for comparable financial instruments. These estimates are reviewed periodically and updated in the light of experience. In the case of a fixed rate item that is prepayable, the expected repricing date is the date on which the item is expected to prepay unless it reprices to market rates on an earlier date. For a group of similar items, the analysis into time periods based on expected repricing dates may take the form of allocating a percentage of the group, rather than individual items, to each time period. An entity may apply other methodologies for such allocation purposes. For example, it may use a prepayment rate multiplier for allocating amortizing loans to time periods based on expected repricing dates. However, the methodology for such an allocation shall be in accordance with the entity's risk management procedures and objectives.

- AG165 As an example of the designation set out in paragraph AG161(c), if in a particular repricing time period an entity estimates that it has fixed rate assets of CU100 and fixed rate liabilities of CU80 and decides to hedge all of the net position of CU20, it designates as the hedged item assets in the amount of CU20 (a portion of the assets is designated as the Standard permits an entity to designate any amount of the available qualifying assets or liabilities, i.e. in this example any amount of the assets between CU0 and CU100). The designation is expressed as an 'amount of a currency' (e.g. an amount of dollars, euro, pounds or rand) rather than as individual assets. It follows that all of the assets (or liabilities) from which the hedged amount is drawn—i.e. all of the CU100 of assets in the above example—must be:
- IAS 39.AG118; added footnotes into the text of the standard.
- (a) Items whose fair value changes in response to changes in the interest rate being hedged; and
 - (b) Items that could have qualified for fair value hedge accounting if they had been designated as hedged individually. In particular, because paragraph 52 of the Standard specifies that the fair value of a financial liability with a demand feature (such as demand deposits and some types of time deposits) is not less than the amount payable on demand, discounted from the first date that the amount could be required to be paid, such an item cannot qualify for fair value hedge accounting for any time period beyond the shortest period in which the holder can demand payment. In the above example, the hedged position is an amount of assets. Hence, such liabilities are not a part of the designated hedged item, but are used by the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

entity to determine the amount of the asset that is designated as being hedged. If the position the entity wished to hedge was an amount of liabilities, the amount representing the designated hedged item must be drawn from fixed rate liabilities other than liabilities that the entity can be required to repay in an earlier time period, and the percentage measure used for assessing hedge effectiveness in accordance with paragraph AG173(b) would be calculated as a percentage of these other liabilities. For example, assume that an entity estimates that in a particular repricing time period it has fixed rate liabilities of CU100, comprising CU40 of demand deposits and CU60 of liabilities with no demand feature, and CU70 of fixed rate assets. If the entity decides to hedge all of the net position of CU30, it designates as the hedged item liabilities of CU30 or 50 per cent ($\text{CU30} / (\text{CU100} - \text{CU40}) = 50 \text{ per cent}$) of the liabilities with no demand feature.

- AG166 The entity also complies with the other designation and documentation requirements set out in paragraph 98. For a portfolio hedge of interest rate risk, this designation and documentation specifies the entity's policy for all of the variables that are used to identify the amount that is hedged and how effectiveness is measured, including the following:
- IAS39.AG119; no amendment.
- (a) Which assets and liabilities are to be included in the portfolio hedge and the basis to be used for removing them from the portfolio.
 - (b) How the entity estimates repricing dates, including what interest rate assumptions underlie estimates of prepayment rates and the basis for changing those estimates. The same method is used for both the initial estimates made at the time an asset or liability is included in the hedged portfolio and for any later revisions to those estimates.
 - (c) The number and duration of repricing time periods.
 - (d) How often the entity will test effectiveness and which of the two methods in paragraph AG173 it will use.
 - (e) The methodology used by the entity to determine the amount of assets or liabilities that are designated as the hedged item and, accordingly, the percentage measure used when the entity tests effectiveness using the method described in paragraph AG173(b).
 - (f) When the entity tests effectiveness using the method described in paragraph AG173(b),

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

whether the entity will test effectiveness for each repricing time period individually, for all time periods in aggregate, or by using some combination of the two.

The policies specified in designating and documenting the hedging relationship shall be in accordance with the entity's risk management procedures and objectives. Changes in policies shall not be made arbitrarily. They shall be justified on the basis of changes in market conditions and other factors and be founded on and consistent with the entity's risk management procedures and objectives.

- AG167 The hedging instrument referred to in paragraph AG161(e) may be a single derivative or a portfolio of derivatives all of which contain exposure to the hedged interest rate risk designated in paragraph AG161(d) (e.g. a portfolio of interest rate swaps all of which contain exposure to an interbank offered rate ~~LIBOR~~). Such a portfolio of derivatives may contain offsetting risk positions. However, it may not include written options or net written options, because paragraph 86 of the Standard and paragraph AG131 ~~does~~ not permit such options to be designated as hedging instruments (except when a written option is designated as an offset to a purchased option). If the hedging instrument hedges the amount designated in paragraph AG161(c) for more than one repricing time period, it is allocated to all of the time periods that it hedges. However, the whole of the hedging instrument must be allocated to those repricing time periods because paragraph 84 of the Standard does not permit a hedging relationship to be designated for only a portion of the time period during which a hedging instrument remains outstanding.
- IAS 39.AG120; added footnotes into the text of the Standard.
- Amended references from LIBOR to an interbank rate.
- AG168 When the entity measures the change in the fair value of a prepayable item in accordance with paragraph AG161(g), a change in interest rates affects the fair value of the prepayable item in two ways: it affects the fair value of the contractual cash flows and the fair value of the prepayment option that is contained in a prepayable item. Paragraph 90 of the Standard permits an entity to designate a portion of a financial asset or financial liability, sharing a common risk exposure, as the hedged item, provided effectiveness can be measured. For prepayable items, paragraph 91 permits this to be achieved by designating the hedged item in terms of the change in the fair value that is attributable to changes in the designated interest rate on the basis of *expected*, rather than *contractual*, repricing dates. However, the effect that changes in the hedged interest rate have on those expected repricing dates
- IAS 39.AG121; no amendment.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

shall be included when determining the change in the fair value of the hedged item. Consequently, if the expected repricing dates are revised (e.g. to reflect a change in expected prepayments), or if actual repricing dates differ from those expected, ineffectiveness will arise as described in paragraph AG173. Conversely, changes in expected repricing dates that (a) clearly arise from factors other than changes in the hedged interest rate, (b) are uncorrelated with changes in the hedged interest rate and (c) can be reliably separated from changes that are attributable to the hedged interest rate (e.g. changes in prepayment rates clearly arising from a change in demographic factors or tax regulations rather than changes in interest rate) are excluded when determining the change in the fair value of the hedged item, because they are not attributable to the hedged risk. If there is uncertainty about the factor that gave rise to the change in expected repricing dates or the entity is not able to separate reliably the changes that arise from the hedged interest rate from those that arise from other factors, the change is assumed to arise from changes in the hedged interest rate.

- | | | |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AG169 | The Standard does not specify the techniques used to determine the amount referred to in paragraph AG161(g), namely the change in the fair value of the hedged item that is attributable to the hedged risk. If statistical or other estimation techniques are used for such measurement, management must expect the result to approximate closely that which would have been obtained from measurement of all the individual assets or liabilities that constitute the hedged item. It is not appropriate to assume that changes in the fair value of the hedged item equal changes in the value of the hedging instrument. | IAS 39.AG122; no amendment. |
| AG170 | Paragraph 100 requires that if the hedged item for a particular repricing time period is an asset, the change in its value is presented in a separate line item within assets. Conversely, if the hedged item for a particular repricing time period is a liability, the change in its value is presented in a separate line item within liabilities. These are the separate line items referred to in paragraph AG161(g). Specific allocation to individual assets (or liabilities) is not required. | IAS 39.AG123; no amendment. |
| AG171 | Paragraph AG161(i) notes that ineffectiveness arises to the extent that the change in the fair value of the hedged item that is attributable to the hedged risk differs from the change in the fair value of the hedging derivative. Such a difference may arise for a number of reasons, including: | IAS 39.AG124; added footnote to text of the Standard and amended for public sector terminology. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- (a) Actual repricing dates being different from those expected, or expected repricing dates being revised;
- (b) Items in the hedged portfolio becoming impaired or being derecognized;
- (c) The payment dates of the hedging instrument and the hedged item being different; and
- (d) Other causes (e.g. when a few of the hedged items bear interest at a rate below the benchmark rate for which they are designated as being hedged, and the resulting ineffectiveness is not so great that the portfolio as a whole fails to qualify for hedge accounting).

Such ineffectiveness (applying the same materiality considerations in other IPSASs) shall be identified and recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

AG172 Generally, the effectiveness of the hedge will be improved: IAS 39.AG125; no amendment.

- (a) If the entity schedules items with different prepayment characteristics in a way that takes account of the differences in prepayment behavior.
- (b) When the number of items in the portfolio is larger. When only a few items are contained in the portfolio, relatively high ineffectiveness is likely if one of the items prepays earlier or later than expected. Conversely, when the portfolio contains many items, the prepayment behavior can be predicted more accurately.
- (c) When the repricing time periods used are narrower (e.g. 1-month as opposed to 3-month repricing time periods). Narrower repricing time periods reduce the effect of any mismatch between the repricing and payment dates (within the repricing time period) of the hedged item and those of the hedging instrument.
- (d) The greater the frequency with which the amount of the hedging instrument is adjusted to reflect changes in the hedged item (e.g. because of changes in prepayment expectations).

AG173 An entity tests effectiveness periodically. If estimates of repricing dates change between one date on which an entity assesses effectiveness and the next, it shall calculate the amount of effectiveness either: IAS 39.AG126; no amendment.

- (a) As the difference between the change in the fair value of the hedging instrument (see paragraph

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

AG161(h)) and the change in the value of the entire hedged item that is attributable to changes in the hedged interest rate (including the effect that changes in the hedged interest rate have on the fair value of any embedded prepayment option); or

- (b) Using the following approximation. The entity:
- (i) Calculates the percentage of the assets (or liabilities) in each repricing time period that was hedged, on the basis of the estimated repricing dates at the last date it tested effectiveness.
 - (ii) Applies this percentage to its revised estimate of the amount in that repricing time period to calculate the amount of the hedged item based on its revised estimate.
 - (iii) Calculates the change in the fair value of its revised estimate of the hedged item that is attributable to the hedged risk and presents it as set out in paragraph AG161(g).
 - (iv) Recognizes ineffectiveness equal to the difference between the amount determined in (iii) and the change in the fair value of the hedging instrument (see paragraph AG161(h)).

- | | | |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| AG174 | When measuring effectiveness, the entity distinguishes revisions to the estimated repricing dates of existing assets (or liabilities) from the origination of new assets (or liabilities), with only the former giving rise to ineffectiveness. All revisions to estimated repricing dates (other than those excluded in accordance with paragraph AG168), including any reallocation of existing items between time periods, are included when revising the estimated amount in a time period in accordance with paragraph AG173(b)(ii) and hence when measuring effectiveness. Once ineffectiveness has been recognized as set out above, the entity establishes a new estimate of the total assets (or liabilities) in each repricing time period, including new assets (or liabilities) that have been originated since it last tested effectiveness, and designates a new amount as the hedged item and a new percentage as the hedged percentage. The procedures set out in paragraph AG173(b) are then repeated at the next date it tests effectiveness. | IAS 39.AG127; no amendment. |
| AG175 | Items that were originally scheduled into a repricing time period may be derecognized because of earlier than expected prepayment or write-offs caused by | IAS 39.AG128; no amendment. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

impairment or sale. When this occurs, the amount of change in fair value included in the separate line item referred to in paragraph AG161(g) that relates to the derecognized item shall be removed from the statement of financial position, and included in the gain or loss that arises on derecognition of the item. For this purpose, it is necessary to know the repricing time period(s) into which the derecognized item was scheduled, because this determines the repricing time period(s) from which to remove it and hence the amount to remove from the separate line item referred to in paragraph AG161(g). When an item is derecognized, if it can be determined in which time period it was included, it is removed from that time period. If not, it is removed from the earliest time period if the derecognition resulted from higher than expected prepayments, or allocated to all time periods containing the derecognized item on a systematic and rational basis if the item was sold or became impaired.

- | | | |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| AG176 | <p>In addition, any amount relating to a particular time period that has not been derecognized when the time period expires is recognized in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss at that time (see paragraph 100). For example, assume an entity schedules items into three repricing time periods. At the previous redesignation, the change in fair value reported in the single line item in the statement of financial position was an asset of CU25. That amount represents amounts attributable to periods 1, 2 and 3 of CU7, CU8 and CU10, respectively. At the next redesignation, the assets attributable to period 1 have been either realized or rescheduled into other periods. Therefore, CU7 is derecognized from the statement of financial position and recognized in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss. CU8 and CU10 are now attributable to periods 1 and 2, respectively. These remaining periods are then adjusted, as necessary, for changes in fair value as described in paragraph AG161(g).</p> | IAS 39.AG129; amended for public sector terminology. |
| AG177 | <p>As an illustration of the requirements of the previous two paragraphs, assume that an entity scheduled assets by allocating a percentage of the portfolio into each repricing time period. Assume also that it scheduled CU100 into each of the first two time periods. When the first repricing time period expires, CU110 of assets are derecognized because of expected and unexpected repayments. In this case, all of the amount contained in the separate line item referred to in paragraph AG161(g) that relates to the first time period is removed from the statement of financial position, plus 10 per cent of the amount that relates to the second time period.</p> | IAS 39.AG130; no amendment. |

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- AG178 If the hedged amount for a repricing time period is reduced without the related assets (or liabilities) being derecognized, the amount included in the separate line item referred to in paragraph AG161(g) that relates to the reduction shall be amortized in accordance with paragraph 103. IAS 39.AG131
- AG179 An entity may wish to apply the approach set out in paragraphs AG161–AG178 to a portfolio hedge that had previously been accounted for as a cash flow hedge in accordance with ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~. Such an entity would revoke the previous designation of a cash flow hedge in accordance with paragraph 112(d), and apply the requirements set out in that paragraph. It would also redesignate the hedge as a fair value hedge and apply the approach set out in paragraphs AG161–AG178 prospectively to subsequent accounting periods. IAS 39.AG132; amended references to IFRSs.

Transition (paragraphs 112–122)

- AG166 ~~An entity may have designated a forecast intragroup transaction within an economic entity as a hedged item at the start of an annual period beginning on or after 1 January 2005 (or, for the purpose of restating comparative information, the start of an earlier comparative period) in a hedge that would qualify for hedge accounting in accordance with this Standard (as amended by the last sentence of paragraph 80). Such an entity may use that designation to apply hedge accounting in consolidated financial statements from the start of the annual period beginning on or after 1 January 2005 (or the start of the earlier comparative period). Such an entity shall also apply paragraphs AG99A and AG99B from the start of the annual period beginning on or after 1 January 2005. However, in accordance with paragraph 108B, it need not apply paragraph AG99B to comparative information for earlier periods.~~ IAS 39.AG133; dealt with in the transitional provisions of the Standard and dates irrelevant for the adoption of IPSASs.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Appendix B – Reassessment of Embedded Derivatives

This appendix is an integral part of ED 38.

Introduction

Background

- 1 ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ paragraph 11 describes an embedded derivative as ‘a component of a hybrid (combined) instrument that also includes a non-derivative host contract— with the effect that some of the cash flows of the combined instrument vary in a way similar to a stand-alone derivative.’
- 2 ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ paragraph 12 requires an embedded derivative to be separated from the host contract and accounted for as a derivative if, and only if:
 - (a) The economic characteristics and risks of the embedded derivative are not closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of the host contract;
 - (b) A separate instrument with the same terms as the embedded derivative would meet the definition of a derivative; and
 - (c) The hybrid (combined) instrument is not measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (i.e. a derivative that is embedded in a financial asset or financial liability at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is not separated).

Scope

- ~~3 Subject to paragraphs 4 and 5 below, this Interpretation applies to all embedded derivatives within the scope of IAS 39.~~
 - ~~4 This Interpretation does not address remeasurement issues arising from a reassessment of embedded derivatives.~~
 - ~~5 This Interpretation does not address the acquisition of contracts with embedded derivatives in a business combination nor their possible reassessment at the date of acquisition.~~
- ~~* IFRS 3 (as revised in 2008) addresses the acquisition of contracts with embedded derivatives in a business combination.~~

Issues

- 3 ~~6 IAS 39~~ ED 38 requires an entity, when it first becomes a party to a contract, to assess whether any embedded derivatives contained in the contract are required to be separated from the host contract and accounted for as derivatives under the Standard. This appendix Interpretation ~~addresses whether the following issues:~~
 - (a) ~~Does IAS 39~~ ED 38 requires such an assessment ~~should~~ to be made only when the entity first becomes a party to the contract, or ~~if should~~ the assessment should be reconsidered throughout the life of the contract.²
 - (b) ~~Should a~~ A first-time adopter makes its assessment on the basis of the conditions that existed when the entity first became a party to the contract, or those prevailing when the entity adopts this IPSAS-IFRSs for the first time.²
- 4 ~~3 Subject to paragraphs 4 and 5 below, this appendix Interpretation applies to all embedded derivatives within the scope of ED 38 IAS 39 except the acquisition of contracts with embedded derivatives in an entity-business combination nor their possible reassessment at the date of acquisition.~~

Consensus Application of ED 38 to the Reassessment of Embedded Derivatives

- 5 ~~7~~—An entity shall assess whether an embedded derivative is required to be separated from the host contract and accounted for as a derivative when the entity first becomes a party to the contract. Subsequent reassessment is prohibited unless there is either (a) a change in the terms of the contract that significantly modifies the cash flows that otherwise would be required under the contract or (b) reclassification of a financial asset out of fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category, in which cases an assessment is required. An entity determines whether a modification to cash flows is significant by considering the extent to which the expected future cash flows associated with the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

embedded derivative, the host contract or both have changed and whether the change is significant relative to the previously expected cash flows on the contract.

- 6 ~~7A~~–The assessment whether an embedded derivative is required to be separated from the host contract and accounted for as a derivative on reclassification of a financial asset out of the fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ category in accordance with paragraph 5 ~~7~~ shall be made on the basis of the circumstances that existed when the entity first became a party to the contract.
- 7 ~~8~~–On first time adoption of ED 38, an entity ~~A first-time adopter~~ shall assess whether an embedded derivative is required to be separated from the host contract and accounted for as a derivative on the basis of the conditions that existed at the later of the date it first became a party to the contract and the date a reassessment is required by paragraph 5.

Appendix C – Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation

This appendix is an integral part of ED 38.

Introduction

Background

- 1 Many reporting entities have investments in foreign operations (as defined in ~~IPSAS 4~~ IAS 21 paragraph 10.8). Such foreign operations may be ~~controlled entities subsidiaries~~, associates, joint ventures or branches. ~~IAS 21~~ IPSAS 4 requires an entity to determine the functional currency of each of its foreign operations as the currency of the primary economic environment of that operation. When translating the results and financial position of a foreign operation into a presentation currency, the entity is required to recognize foreign exchange differences directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ until it disposes of the foreign operation.
- 2 Hedge accounting of the foreign currency risk arising from a net investment in a foreign operation will apply only when the net assets of that foreign operation are included in the financial statements. [~~* This will be the case for consolidated financial statements, financial statements in which investments are accounted for using the equity method, and financial statements in which venturers' interests in joint ventures are proportionately consolidated. (subject to change as proposed in ED 9 Joint Arrangements published by the International Accounting Standards Board in September 2007) and financial statements that include a branch.~~] The item being hedged with respect to the foreign currency risk arising from the net investment in a foreign operation may be an amount of net assets equal to or less than the carrying amount of the net assets of the foreign operation.
- 3 ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 requires the designation of an eligible hedged item and eligible hedging instruments in a hedge accounting relationship. If there is a designated hedging relationship, in the case of a net investment hedge, the gain or loss on the hedging instrument that is determined to be an effective hedge of the net investment is recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ and is included with the foreign exchange differences arising on translation of the results and financial position of the foreign operation. [~~* This will be the case for consolidated financial statements, financial statements in which investments are accounted for using the equity method, financial statements in which venturers' interests in joint ventures are proportionately consolidated (subject to change as proposed in ED 9 Joint Arrangements published by the International Accounting Standards Board in September 2007) and financial statements that include a branch.~~]
- 4 ~~7 This appendix Interpretation~~ applies to an entity that hedges the foreign currency risk arising from its net investments in foreign operations and wishes to qualify for hedge accounting in accordance with ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~. It should not be applied by analogy to other types of hedge accounting. ~~For convenience this Interpretation~~ This appendix refers to such an entity as a controlling parent entity and to the financial statements in which the net assets of foreign operations are included as consolidated financial statements. All references to a controlling parent entity apply equally to an entity that has a net investment in a foreign operation that is a joint venture, an associate or a branch.
- 5 This appendix provides guidance on:
 - (a) ~~An entity with many foreign operations may be exposed to a number of foreign currency risks. This Interpretation provides guidance on identifying the foreign currency risks that qualify as a hedged risk in the hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation, given that an entity with many foreign operations may be exposed to a number of foreign currency risks. It specifically addresses:~~
 - (i) Whether the controlling parent entity may designate as a hedged risk only the foreign exchange differences arising from a difference between the functional currencies of the controlling parent entity and its foreign operation, or whether it may also designate as the hedged risk the foreign exchange differences arising from the difference between the presentation currency of the controlling parent entity's consolidated financial statements and the functional currency of the foreign operation; and
 - (ii) If the parent entity holds the foreign operation indirectly, whether the hedged risk may include only the foreign exchange differences arising from differences in functional currencies between the foreign operation and its immediate controlling parent entity, or whether the hedged risk may also include any foreign exchange differences between the functional currency of the foreign operation and any intermediate or ultimate controlling parent entity (i.e. whether the fact that the

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

net investment in the foreign operation is held through an intermediate parent affects the economic risk to the ultimate parent).

- (b) (i) ~~5 IAS 39 ED 38~~ allows an entity to designate either a derivative or a non-derivative financial instrument (or a combination of derivative and non-derivative financial instruments) as hedging instruments for foreign currency risk. This appendix addresses whether the nature of the hedging instrument (derivative or non-derivative) or the method of consolidation affects the assessment of hedge effectiveness.
- (ii) This appendix also addresses where, within a group, hedging instruments that are hedges of a net investment in a foreign operation can be held to qualify for hedge accounting i.e. whether a qualifying hedge accounting relationship can be established only if the entity hedging its net investment is a party to the hedging instrument or whether any entity within ~~in~~ the ~~group~~ economic entity, regardless of its functional currency, can hold the hedging instrument.
- (c) ~~6 IAS 21 and IAS 39 require cumulative amounts recognized in other comprehensive income relating to both the foreign exchange differences arising on translation of the results and financial position of the foreign operation and the gain or loss on the hedging instrument that is determined to be an effective hedge of the net investment to be reclassified from equity to profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment when the parent disposes of the foreign operation. This Interpretation provides guidance on h~~How an entity should determine what amount of the gain or loss recognized directly in net assets/equity should the amounts to be reclassified from equity to be recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss for both the hedging instrument and the hedged item, as IAS 21 IPSAS 4 and IAS 39 ED 38 require cumulative amounts recognized directly in other comprehensive income net assets/equity relating to both the foreign exchange differences arising on translation of the results and financial position of the foreign operation and the gain or loss on the hedging instrument that is determined to be an effective hedge of the net investment to be recognized directly in~~reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment when the parent disposes of the foreign operation. It specifically addresses:~~
 - (i) ~~When a foreign operation that was hedged is disposed of, what amounts from the controlling parent entity's foreign currency translation reserve in respect of the hedging instrument and in respect of that foreign operation should be reclassified from equity to~~ recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss in the controlling parent entity's consolidated financial statements;
 - (ii) ~~Whether the method of consolidation affects the determination of the amounts to be recognized in surplus or deficit reclassified from equity to profit or loss.~~

Scope

- 7 ~~This Interpretation applies to an entity that hedges the foreign currency risk arising from its net investments in foreign operations and wishes to qualify for hedge accounting in accordance with IAS 39. For convenience this Interpretation refers to such an entity as a parent entity and to the financial statements in which the net assets of foreign operations are included as consolidated financial statements. All references to a parent entity apply equally to an entity that has a net investment in a foreign operation that is a joint venture, an associate or a branch.~~
- 8 ~~This Interpretation applies only to hedges of net investments in foreign operations; it should not be applied by analogy to other types of hedge accounting.~~

Issues Application of IPSAS XX to Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation

- 9 ~~Investments in foreign operations may be held directly by a parent entity or indirectly by its subsidiary or subsidiaries. The issues addressed in this Interpretation are:~~
 - (a) ~~the nature of the hedged risk and the amount of the hedged item for which a hedging relationship may be designated;~~
 - (i) ~~whether the parent entity may designate as a hedged risk only the foreign exchange differences arising from a difference between the functional currencies of the parent entity and its foreign operation, or whether it may also designate as the hedged risk the foreign exchange differences arising from the difference between the presentation currency of the parent entity's consolidated financial statements and the functional currency of the foreign operation;~~
 - (ii) ~~if the parent entity holds the foreign operation indirectly, whether the hedged risk may include only the foreign exchange differences arising from differences in functional currencies~~

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

~~between the foreign operation and its immediate parent entity, or whether the hedged risk may also include any foreign exchange differences between the functional currency of the foreign operation and any intermediate or ultimate parent entity (ie whether the fact that the net investment in the foreign operation is held through an intermediate parent affects the economic risk to the ultimate parent).~~

~~(b) where in a group the hedging instrument can be held:~~

~~(i) whether a qualifying hedge accounting relationship can be established only if the entity hedging its net investment is a party to the hedging instrument or whether any entity in the group, regardless of its functional currency, can hold the hedging instrument;~~

~~(ii) whether the nature of the hedging instrument (derivative or non-derivative) or the method of consolidation affects the assessment of hedge effectiveness.~~

~~(c) what amounts should be reclassified from equity to profit or loss as reclassification adjustments on disposal of the foreign operation:~~

~~(i) when a foreign operation that was hedged is disposed of, what amounts from the parent entity's foreign currency translation reserve in respect of the hedging instrument and in respect of that foreign operation should be reclassified from equity to profit or loss in the parent entity's consolidated financial statements;~~

~~(ii) whether the method of consolidation affects the determination of the amounts to be reclassified from equity to profit or loss.~~

Consensus

Nature of the Hedged Risk and Amount of the Hedged Item for which a Hedging Relationship may be Designated

- 6 ~~10~~ Hedge accounting may be applied only to the foreign exchange differences arising between the functional currency of the foreign operation and the controlling parent entity's functional currency.
- 7 ~~11~~ In a hedge of the foreign currency risks arising from a net investment in a foreign operation, the hedged item can be an amount of net assets equal to or less than the carrying amount of the net assets of the foreign operation in the consolidated financial statements of the controlling parent entity. The carrying amount of the net assets of a foreign operation that may be designated as the hedged item in the consolidated financial statements of a controlling entity parent depends on whether any lower level controlling entity parent of the foreign operation has applied hedge accounting for all or part of the net assets of that foreign operation and that accounting has been maintained in the controlling entity's parent's consolidated financial statements.
- 8 ~~12~~ The hedged risk may be designated as the foreign currency exposure arising between the functional currency of the foreign operation and the functional currency of any controlling parent entity (the immediate, intermediate or ultimate controlling parent entity) of that foreign operation. The fact that the net investment is held through an intermediate controlling entity parent does not affect the nature of the economic risk arising from the foreign currency exposure to the ultimate controlling parent entity.
- 9 ~~13~~ An exposure to foreign currency risk arising from a net investment in a foreign operation may qualify for hedge accounting only once in the consolidated financial statements. Therefore, if the same net assets of a foreign operation are hedged by more than one controlling parent entity within the economic entity group (for example, both a direct and an indirect controlling parent entity) for the same risk, only one hedging relationship will qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements of the ultimate controlling entity parent. A hedging relationship designated by one controlling parent entity in its consolidated financial statements need not be maintained by another higher level controlling parent entity. However, if it is not maintained by the higher level controlling parent entity, the hedge accounting applied by the lower level controlling entity parent must be reversed before the higher level controlling entity's parent's hedge accounting is recognized.

Where the Hedging Instrument can be Held

- 10 ~~14~~ A derivative or a non-derivative instrument (or a combination of derivative and non-derivative instruments) may be designated as a hedging instrument in a hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation. The hedging instrument(s) may be held by any entity or entities within the economic entity group (except the foreign operation that itself is being hedged), as long as the designation, documentation and effectiveness requirements of ED 38 IAS 39 paragraph 98 that relate to a net investment hedge are

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

satisfied. In particular, the hedging strategy of the economic entity group should be clearly documented because of the possibility of different designations at different levels of the economic entity group.

- 11 ~~15~~ For the purpose of assessing effectiveness, the change in value of the hedging instrument in respect of foreign exchange risk is computed by reference to the functional currency of the controlling parent entity against whose functional currency the hedged risk is measured, in accordance with the hedge accounting documentation. Depending on where the hedging instrument is held, in the absence of hedge accounting the total change in value might be recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss, directly in net assets/equity other comprehensive income, or both. However, the assessment of effectiveness is not affected by whether the change in value of the hedging instrument is recognized in surplus or deficit or directly in net assets/equity profit or loss or in other comprehensive income. As part of the application of hedge accounting, the total effective portion of the change is included directly in net assets/equity other comprehensive income. The assessment of effectiveness is not affected by whether the hedging instrument is a derivative or a non-derivative instrument or by the method of consolidation.

Disposal of a Hedged Foreign Operation

- 12 ~~16~~ When a foreign operation that was hedged is disposed of, the amount reclassified to surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment from the foreign currency translation reserve in the consolidated financial statements of the controlling entity parent in respect of the hedging instrument is the amount that ED 38 IAS 39 paragraph 113 requires to be identified. That amount is the cumulative gain or loss on the hedging instrument that was determined to be an effective hedge.
- 13 ~~17~~ The amount recognized in surplus or deficit upon transfer reclassified to profit or loss from the foreign currency translation reserve in the consolidated financial statements of a controlling entity parent in respect of the net investment in that foreign operation in accordance with IPSAS 4 IAS 21 paragraph 57 is the amount included in that controlling entity's parent's foreign currency translation reserve in respect of that foreign operation. In the ultimate controlling entity's parent's consolidated financial statements, the aggregate net amount recognized in the foreign currency translation reserve in respect of all foreign operations is not affected by the consolidation method. However, whether the ultimate controlling entity parent uses the direct or the step-by-step method of consolidation, this may affect the amount included in its foreign currency translation reserve in respect of an individual foreign operation.
- 14 The direct method is the method of consolidation in which the financial statements of the foreign operation are translated directly into the functional currency of the ultimate controlling entity parent. The step-by-step method is the method of consolidation in which the financial statements of the foreign operation are first translated into the functional currency of any intermediate controlling entity(ies) parent(s) and then translated into the functional currency of the ultimate controlling entity parent (or the presentation currency if different).
- 15 The use of the step-by-step method of consolidation may result in a different amount being recognized in surplus or deficit the reclassification to profit or loss of an amount different from that used to determine hedge effectiveness. This difference may be eliminated by determining the amount relating to that foreign operation that would have arisen if the direct method of consolidation had been used. Making this adjustment is not required by IPSAS 4 IAS 21. However, it is an accounting policy choice that should be followed consistently for all net investments.

Example

Appendix

Application guidance

This appendix is an integral part of the Interpretation.

- 16 ~~AG1~~ The following example ~~This appendix~~ illustrates the application of the preceding paragraphs ~~Interpretation~~ using the entity corporate structure illustrated below. In all cases the hedging relationships described would be tested for effectiveness in accordance with ED 38 IAS 39, although this testing is not discussed in this appendix. Entity ABC Parent, being the ultimate controlling parent entity, presents its consolidated financial statements in its functional currency of euro (EUR). Each of the controlled entities i.e. Entity A, Entity B and Entity C, subsidiaries is wholly owned. Entity ABC Parent's £500 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary B (functional currency pounds sterling (GBP)) includes the £159 million equivalent of Entity Subsidiary B's US\$300 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary C (functional currency US dollars (USD)). In other words, Entity Subsidiary B's net assets other than its investment in Entity Subsidiary C are £341 million.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

Nature of Hedged Risk for which a Hedging Relationship may be Designated (paragraphs 6–9)

- 17 ~~AG2~~ ~~Parent~~ Entity ABC can hedge its net investment in each of ~~Entities~~ Subsidiaries A, B and C for the foreign exchange risk between their respective functional currencies (Japanese yen (JPY), pounds sterling and US dollars) and euro. In addition, Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ can hedge the USD/GBP foreign exchange risk between the functional currencies of Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ B and Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C. In its consolidated financial statements, Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ B can hedge its net investment in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C for the foreign exchange risk between their functional currencies of US dollars and pounds sterling. In the following examples the designated risk is the spot foreign exchange risk because the hedging instruments are not derivatives. If the hedging instruments were forward contracts, Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ could designate the forward foreign exchange risk.

Amount of Hedged item for which a Hedging Relationship may be Designated (paragraphs 6–9)

- 18 ~~AG3~~ Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ wishes to hedge the foreign exchange risk from its net investment in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C. Assume that Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A has an external borrowing of US\$300 million. The net assets of Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A at the start of the reporting period are ¥400,000 million including the proceeds of the external borrowing of US\$300 million.
- 19 ~~AG4~~ The hedged item can be an amount of net assets equal to or less than the carrying amount of ~~Parent's~~ Entity ABC's net investment in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C (US\$300 million) in its consolidated financial statements. In its consolidated financial statements Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ can designate the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A as a hedge of the EUR/USD spot foreign exchange risk associated with its net investment in the US\$300 million net assets of Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C. In this case, both the EUR/USD foreign exchange difference on the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A and the EUR/USD foreign exchange difference on the US\$300 million net investment in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C are included in the foreign currency translation reserve in Entity ABC ~~Parent's~~ consolidated financial statements after the application of hedge accounting.
- 20 ~~AG5~~ In the absence of hedge accounting, the total USD/EUR foreign exchange difference on the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A would be recognized in Entity ABC ~~Parent's~~ consolidated financial statements as follows:

- USD/JPY spot foreign exchange rate change, translated to euro, in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, and
- JPY/EUR spot foreign exchange rate change directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

Instead of the designation in paragraph 19, in its consolidated financial statements Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ can designate the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A as a hedge of the GBP/USD spot foreign exchange risk between Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C and Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ B. In this case, the total USD/EUR foreign exchange difference on the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A would instead be recognized in Entity ABC ~~Parent's~~ consolidated financial statements as follows:

- The GBP/USD spot foreign exchange rate change in the foreign currency translation reserve relating to Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C,
- GBP/JPY spot foreign exchange rate change, translated to euro, in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, and
- JPY/EUR spot foreign exchange rate change directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

- 21 ~~AG6~~ Entity ABC ~~Parent~~ cannot designate the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A as a hedge of both the EUR/USD spot foreign exchange risk and the GBP/USD spot foreign exchange risk in its consolidated financial statements. A single hedging instrument can hedge the same designated risk only once. Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ B cannot apply hedge accounting in its consolidated financial statements because the hedging instrument is held outside the economic entity group comprising Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ B and Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ C.

Where in an Economic Entity group can the Hedging Instrument be Held (paragraphs 10 and 11)?

- 22 ~~AG7~~ As noted in paragraph 20, the total change in value in respect of foreign exchange risk of the US\$300 million external borrowing in Entity ~~Subsidiary~~ A would be recorded in both surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (USD/JPY spot risk) and directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (EUR/JPY spot risk) in Entity ABC ~~Parent's~~ consolidated financial statements in the absence of hedge

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

accounting. Both amounts are included for the purpose of assessing the effectiveness of the hedge designated in paragraph 19 because the change in value of both the hedging instrument and the hedged item are computed by reference to the euro functional currency of Entity ABC Parent against the US dollar functional currency of Entity Subsidiary C, in accordance with the hedge documentation. The method of consolidation (i.e. direct method or step-by-step method) does not affect the assessment of the effectiveness of the hedge.

Amounts ~~reclassified to profit or loss~~ Recognized in Surplus or Deficit on Disposal of a Foreign Operation (paragraphs 12 and 13)

- 23 ~~AG8~~ When Entity Subsidiary C is disposed of, the amounts are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified to profit or loss in Entity ABC Parent's consolidated financial statements upon transfer from its foreign currency translation reserve (FCTR) are:~~
- (a) In respect of the US\$300 million external borrowing of Entity Subsidiary A, the amount that ~~IAS 39 ED 38~~ requires to be identified, i.e. the total change in value in respect of foreign exchange risk that was recognized directly in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ as the effective portion of the hedge; and
 - (b) In respect of the US\$300 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary C, the amount determined by the entity's consolidation method. If Entity ABC Parent uses the direct method, its FCTR in respect of Entity Subsidiary C will be determined directly by the EUR/USD foreign exchange rate. If Entity ABC Parent uses the step-by-step method, its FCTR in respect of Entity Subsidiary C will be determined by the FCTR recognized by Entity Subsidiary B reflecting the GBP/USD foreign exchange rate, translated to Entity ABC Parent's functional currency using the EUR/GBP foreign exchange rate. Entity ABC Parent's use of the step-by-step method of consolidation in prior periods does not require it to or preclude it from determining the amount of FCTR to be ~~reclassified~~ recognized in surplus or deficit when it disposes of Entity Subsidiary C to be the amount that it would have recognized if it had always used the direct method, depending on its accounting policy.

Hedging More Than One Foreign Operation (paragraphs 7, 9 and 11)

- 24 ~~AG9~~ The following examples illustrate that in the consolidated financial statements of Entity ABC Parent, the risk that can be hedged is always the risk between its functional currency (euro) and the functional currencies of Entities Subsidiaries B and C. No matter how the hedges are designated, the maximum amounts that can be effective hedges to be included in the foreign currency translation reserve in Entity ABC Parent's consolidated financial statements when both foreign operations are hedged are US\$300 million for EUR/USD risk and £341 million for EUR/GBP risk. Other changes in value due to changes in foreign exchange rates are included in Entity ABC Parent's consolidated surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. Of course, it would be possible for Entity ABC Parent to designate US\$300 million only for changes in the USD/GBP spot foreign exchange rate or £500 million only for changes in the GBP/EUR spot foreign exchange rate.

Parent Entity ABC holds both USD and GBP Hedging Instruments

- 25 ~~AG10~~ Entity ABC Parent may wish to hedge the foreign exchange risk in relation to its net investment in Entity Subsidiary B as well as that in relation to Entity Subsidiary C. Assume that Entity ABC Parent holds suitable hedging instruments denominated in US dollars and pounds sterling that it could designate as hedges of its net investments in Entity Subsidiary B and Entity Subsidiary C. The designations Entity ABC Parent can make in its consolidated financial statements include, but are not limited to, the following:
- (a) US\$300 million hedging instrument designated as a hedge of the US\$300 million of net investment in Entity Subsidiary C with the risk being the spot foreign exchange exposure (EUR/USD) between Entity ABC Parent and Entity Subsidiary C and up to £341 million hedging instrument designated as a hedge of £341 million of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary B with the risk being the spot foreign exchange exposure (EUR/GBP) between Entity ABC Parent and Entity Subsidiary B.
 - (b) US\$300 million hedging instrument designated as a hedge of the US\$300 million of net investment in Entity Subsidiary C with the risk being the spot foreign exchange exposure (GBP/USD) between Entity Subsidiary B and Entity Subsidiary C and up to £500 million hedging instrument designated as a hedge of £500 million of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary B with the risk being the spot foreign exchange exposure (EUR/GBP) between Entity ABC Parent and Entity Subsidiary B.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- 26 ~~AG11~~ The EUR/USD risk from Entity ABC-Parent's net investment in Entity Subsidiary C is a different risk from the EUR/GBP risk from Entity ABC-Parent's net investment in Entity Subsidiary B. However, in the case described in paragraph 25(a), by its designation of the USD hedging instrument it holds, Entity ABC-Parent has already fully hedged the EUR/USD risk from its net investment in Entity Subsidiary C. If Entity ABC-Parent also designated a GBP instrument it holds as a hedge of its £500 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary B, £159 million of that net investment, representing the GBP equivalent of its USD net investment in Entity Subsidiary C, would be hedged twice for GBP/EUR risk in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements.
- 27 ~~AG12~~ In the case described in paragraph 25(b), if Entity ABC-Parent designates the hedged risk as the spot foreign exchange exposure (GBP/USD) between Entity Subsidiary B and Entity Subsidiary C, only the GBP/USD part of the change in the value of its US\$300 million hedging instrument is included in Entity ABC-Parent's foreign currency translation reserve relating to Entity Subsidiary C. The remainder of the change (equivalent to the GBP/EUR change on £159 million) is included in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated ~~surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss, as in paragraph 20. Because the designation of the USD/GBP risk between Entities Subsidiaries B and C does not include the GBP/EUR risk, Entity ABC-Parent is also able to designate up to £500 million of its net investment in Entity Subsidiary B with the risk being the spot foreign exchange exposure (GBP/EUR) between Entity ABC-Parent and Entity Subsidiary B.

Subsidiary Entity B Holds the USD Hedging Instrument

- 28 ~~AG13~~ Assume that Entity Subsidiary B holds US\$300 million of external debt, the proceeds of which were transferred to Entity ABC-Parent by an inter-company-entity loan denominated in pounds sterling. Because both its assets and liabilities increased by £159 million, Entity Subsidiary B's net assets are unchanged. Entity Subsidiary B could designate the external debt as a hedge of the GBP/USD risk of its net investment in Entity Subsidiary C in its consolidated financial statements. Entity ABC-Parent could maintain Entity Subsidiary B's designation of that hedging instrument as a hedge of its US\$300 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary C for the GBP/USD risk (see paragraph 9) and Parent Entity ABC could designate the GBP hedging instrument it holds as a hedge of its entire £500 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary B. The first hedge, designated by Entity Subsidiary B, would be assessed by reference to Entity Subsidiary B's functional currency (pounds sterling) and the second hedge, designated by Entity ABC-Parent, would be assessed by reference to Entity ABC-Parent's functional currency (euro). In this case, only the GBP/USD risk from Entity ABC-Parent's net investment in Entity Subsidiary C has been hedged in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements by the USD hedging instrument, not the entire EUR/USD risk. Therefore, the entire EUR/GBP risk from Entity ABC-Parent's £500 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary B may be hedged in the consolidated financial statements of Entity ABC-Parent.
- 29 ~~AG14~~ However, the accounting for Entity ABC-Parent's £159 million loan payable to Entity Subsidiary B must also be considered. If Entity ABC-Parent's loan payable is not considered part of its net investment in Entity Subsidiary B because it does not satisfy the conditions in IPSAS 4 IAS 21 paragraph 19, the GBP/EUR foreign exchange difference arising on translating it would be included in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated ~~surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss. If the £159 million loan payable to Entity Subsidiary B is considered part of Entity ABC-Parent's net investment, that net investment would be only £341 million and the amount Entity ABC-Parent could designate as the hedged item for GBP/EUR risk would be reduced from £500 million to £341 million accordingly.
- 30 ~~AG15~~ If Entity ABC-Parent reversed the hedging relationship designated by Entity Subsidiary B, Entity ABC-Parent could designate the US\$300 million external borrowing held by Entity Subsidiary B as a hedge of its US\$300 million net investment in Entity Subsidiary C for the EUR/USD risk and designate the GBP hedging instrument it holds itself as a hedge of only up to £341 million of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary B. In this case the effectiveness of both hedges would be computed by reference to Entity ABC-Parent's functional currency (euro). Consequently, both the USD/GBP change in value of the external borrowing held by Entity Subsidiary B and the GBP/EUR change in value of Entity ABC-Parent's loan payable to Entity Subsidiary B (equivalent to USD/EUR in total) would be included in the foreign currency translation reserve in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements. Because Entity ABC-Parent has already fully hedged the EUR/USD risk from its net investment in Entity Subsidiary C, it can hedge only up to £341 million for the EUR/GBP risk of its net investment in Entity Subsidiary B.

Illustrative example

This example accompanies, but is not part of, IFRIC 16.

Amendments to other IPSASs

The amendments in this appendix shall be applied for annual financial statements covering periods beginning on or after Month, Day, Year. If an entity applies this Standard for an earlier period, these amendments shall be applied for that earlier period.

A1 The references to “international or national accounting standards dealing with the recognition and measurement of financial instruments” are amended to “IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” in the following IPSASs:

- (a) IPSAS 1, “Presentation of Financial Statements” paragraphs 79, 82 and 101
- (b) IPSAS 4, “The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates” paragraphs 3, 4, 31 and 61(a)
- (c) IPSAS 6, “Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements” paragraphs 22, 52, 61, and IG8
- (d) IPSAS 7, “Investments in Associates” paragraphs 1, 2, 20, 21, 24, 25, 37, 38 and 39
- (e) IPSAS 8, “Interests in Joint Ventures” paragraph 1, 2, 47 and 58
- (f) IPSAS 9, “Revenue from Exchange Transactions” paragraph 10(c)
- (g) IPSAS 26, “Impairment of Cash-Generating Assets” paragraphs 2(c) and 8

IPSAS 4, “The Effects of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates”

A2 IPSAS 4, paragraph 5 is amended as follows:

This Standard does not apply to hedge accounting for foreign currency items, including the hedging of a net investment in a foreign operation. Accordingly, entities may apply the relevant international or national accounting standards dealing with hedge accounting. IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” applies to hedge accounting.

IPSAS 6, “Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements”

A3 IPSAS 6, paragraph 58(c) is amended as follows:

- (c) As financial instruments: in accordance with IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement.”

IPSAS 12, “Inventories”

A4 IPSAS 12, paragraph 2(b) is amended as follows:

- (b) Financial instruments (see IPSAS ED 37, “Financial Instruments: Presentation” and IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement.”

IPSAS 21, “Impairment of Non-Cash-Generating Assets”

A5 IPSAS 21, paragraph 2(c) is amended as follows:

- (c) Financial assets that are included in the scope of IPSAS 15, “Financial Instruments: Disclosure and Presentation” IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement.”

A6 IPSAS 21, paragraph 8 is amended as follow:

This Standard does not apply to financial assets that are included in the scope of IPSAS 15 IPSAS ED 37. Impairment of these assets will be dealt with in any IPSAS that the IPSASB develops on the basis of IAS 39, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement to deal with the recognition and measurement of financial instruments is dealt with in IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement.”

IPSAS 23, “Revenue from Non-Exchange Transactions (Taxes and Transfers)”

A7 Paragraph 4 is to be amended as follows:

- 4. This Standard addresses revenue arising from non-exchange transactions. Revenue arising from exchange transactions is addressed in IPSAS 9, “Revenue from Exchange Transactions”.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

While revenues received by public sector entities arise from exchange and non-exchange transactions, the majority of revenue of governments and other public sector entities is typically derived from non-exchange transactions such as:

- (a) Taxes; and
- (b) Transfers (whether cash or non-cash), including grants, debt forgiveness, fines, bequests, gifts, donations, ~~and~~ goods and services in-kind, and concessionary loans received.

A8. Amend paragraph 10 as follows:

- 10 There is a further group of non-exchange transactions where the entity may provide some consideration directly in return for the resources received, but that consideration does not approximate the fair value of the resources received. In these cases the entity determines whether there is a combination of exchange and non-exchange transactions, each component of which is recognized separately. For example, an entity receives CU6 million funding from a multi-lateral development agency. The agreement stipulates that the entity must repay CU5 million of the funding received over a period of 10 years, at 5% interest when the market rate for a similar loan is 11%. The entity has effectively received a CU1 million grant (CU6 million received less, CU5 million to be repaid) and entered into CU5 million concessionary loan which attracts interest at 6% below the market interest rate for a similar loan. The CU1 million grant received, as well as the off-market portion of the interest payments in terms of the agreement, are non-exchange transactions. The contractual capital and interest payments over the period of the loan are exchange transactions.

A9 Amend paragraph 42 as follows:

- 42. An asset acquired through a non-exchange transaction shall initially be measured at its fair value as at the date of acquisition except for:**
- (a) **A biological asset or agricultural produce recognized in accordance with IPSAS xx "Agriculture"; and**
 - **(b) A financial asset which is measured in accordance with IPSAS XX, "Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement".**

A10 Amend paragraph 87 as follows:

- 87 Revenue arising from debt forgiveness is measured at the carrying amount of the debt forgiven. ~~fair value of the debt forgiven. This will normally be the carrying amount of the debt forgiven.~~

A11 Add the following paragraphs under a new section "Concessionary Loans":

Concessionary Loans

- 105A Concessionary loans are loans received by an entity in terms of specific public policy objectives and, as a result, are usually received with flexible repayment terms and bear either no or low interest. "Public policy" refers to the stated policies of governments, which entities execute in accordance with their stated mandate. Policies of government may include, for example, the promotion of economic growth, the reduction of unemployment and the provision of housing for no or low income individuals.
- 105B The portion of the loan that is repayable, along with any interest payments, is an exchange transaction and is accounted for in accordance with ED 38, "Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement". An entity considers whether any difference between the transaction price (loan proceeds) and the fair value of the loan on initial recognition (see ED 38) is non-exchange revenue that should be accounted for in accordance with this Standard.
- 105C Where an entity determines that the difference between the transaction price (loan proceeds) and the fair value of the loan on initial recognition is non-exchange revenue, an entity recognizes the difference as revenue, except if a present obligation exists, e.g. where specific conditions imposed on the transferred assets by the recipient result in a present obligation. Where a present obligation exists, it is recognized as a liability. As the entity satisfies the present obligation, the liability is reduced and an equal amount of revenue is recognized.

A12 Amend paragraph .106 as follows:

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

106.

- (d) *the amount of liabilities recognized in respect of transferred assets subject to conditions;*
- (e) *the amount of liabilities recognized in respect of concessionary loans that are subject to conditions on transferred assets;*
- (f) *the amount of assets recognized that are subject to restrictions and the nature of those restrictions;...*

A13 Add an additional example, Example 26, to Appendix B – Illustrative Examples:

Example 26: Concessionary Loans (paragraphs 105A to 105C)

IG54 An entity receives CU6 million funding from a multi-lateral development agency to build 10 schools over the next 5 years. The funding is provided on the following conditions:

- CU1 million of the funding need not be repaid, provided that the schools are built.
- CU5 million of the funding is to be repaid as follows:
 - Year 1: no capital to be repaid
 - Year 2: 10% of the capital to be repaid
 - Year 3: 20% of the capital to be repaid
 - Year 4: 30% of the capital to be repaid
 - Year 5: 40% of the capital to be repaid
- Interest is charged at 5% per annum over the period of the loan (assume interest is paid annually in arrears). The market rate of interest for a similar loan is 10%.
- To the extent that schools have not been built, the funding provided should be returned to the donor (assume that the donor has effective monitoring systems in place and has a past history of requiring any unspent funds to be returned).
- The entity built the following schools over the period of the loan:
 - Year 1: 1 school completed
 - Year 2: 3 schools completed
 - Year 3: 5 schools completed
 - Year 4: 10 schools completed

Analysis:

The entity has effectively received a grant of CU1 million and a loan of CU5 million (Note: An entity would consider whether the substance of the R1 million is a contribution from owners or revenue; assume for purposes of this example that the R1million is revenue). It has also received an additional grant of CU784,550* (which is the difference between the proceeds of the loan of CU5 million and the present value of the contractual cash flows of the loan, discounted using the market related rate of interest of 10%).

The grant of CU1 million + CU784,550 is accounted for in accordance with this Standard and, the loan with its related contractual interest and capital payments, in accordance with ED 38.

1. On initial recognition, the entity will recognize the following:

Dr Bank	CU6,000,000	
Cr Loan		CU4,215,450
Cr Liability		CU1,784,550

2. Year 1: the entity will recognize the following:

Dr Liability	CU178,455	
Cr Non-exchange revenue		CU178,455

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

(1/10 of the schools built X CU1,784,550)

(Note: The journal entries for the repayment of interest and capital and interest accruals, have not been reflected in this example as it is intended to illustrate the recognition of revenue arising from concessionary loans. Comprehensive examples are included in the Illustrative Examples to ED 38.)

3. Year 2: the entity will recognize the following (assuming that the entity subsequently measures the concessionary loan at amortized cost):

Dr Liability CU356,910

Cr Non-exchange revenue CU356,910

(3/10 schools built X CU1,784,500 – CU178,455 already recognized)

4. Year 3: the entity will recognize the following:

Dr Liability CU356,910

Cr Non-exchange revenue CU356,910

(5/10 schools built X CU1,784,550 – CU535,365 already recognized)

5. Year 4: the entity will recognize the following:

Dr Liability CU892,275

Cr Non-exchange revenue CU892,275

(All schools built, CU1,784,550 – CU892,275)

If the concessionary loan was granted with no conditions, the entity would recognize the following on initial recognition:

Dr Bank CU6,000,000

Cr Loan CU4,215,450

Cr Non-exchange revenue CU1,784,550

IPSAS 26, “Impairment of Cash-Generating Assets”

A14 IPSAS 26, paragraph 2(c) is amended as follows:

- (c) Financial assets that are within the scope of IPSAS 15, “Financial Instruments: Disclosure and Presentation” IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement”;

A15 IPSAS 26, paragraph 8 is amended as follows:

This Standard does not apply to financial assets that are included in the scope of IPSAS 15 IPSAS ED 37. Impairment of these assets will be dealt with in any IPSAS that the IPSASB develops to deal with the recognition and measurement of financial instruments is dealt with in IPSAS ED 38, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement.”

Illustrative Examples

These examples accompany, but are not part of, ED 38.

Example 1

Facts

- IE1 On ~~4~~ January, 1 20X1 Entity A identifies a portfolio comprising assets and liabilities whose interest rate risk it wishes to hedge. The liabilities include demandable deposit liabilities that the depositor may withdraw at any time without notice. For risk management purposes, the entity views all of the items in the portfolio as fixed rate items.
- IE2 For risk management purposes, Entity A analyzes the assets and liabilities in the portfolio into repricing time periods based on expected repricing dates. The entity uses monthly time periods and schedules items for the next five years (i.e. it has 60 separate monthly time periods).¹ The assets in the portfolio are prepayable assets that Entity A allocates into time periods based on the expected prepayment dates, by allocating a percentage of all of the assets, rather than individual items, into each time period. The portfolio also includes demandable liabilities that the entity expects, on a portfolio basis, to repay between one month and five years and, for risk management purposes, are scheduled into time periods on this basis. On the basis of this analysis, Entity A decides what amount it wishes to hedge in each time period.
- IE3 This example deals only with the repricing time period expiring in three months' time, i.e. the time period maturing on ~~31~~ March, 31 20X1 (a similar procedure would be applied for each of the other 59 time periods). Entity A has scheduled assets of CU100 million and liabilities of CU80 million into this time period. All of the liabilities are repayable on demand.
- IE4 Entity A decides, for risk management purposes, to hedge the net position of CU20 million and accordingly enters into an interest rate swap² on ~~4~~ January, 1 20X1, 1 to pay a fixed rate and receive LIBOR, with a notional principal amount of CU20 million and a fixed life of three months.
- IE5 This example makes the following simplifying assumptions:
- (a) The coupon on the fixed leg of the swap is equal to the fixed coupon on the asset;
 - (b) The coupon on the fixed leg of the swap becomes payable on the same dates as the interest payments on the asset; and
 - (c) The interest on the variable leg of the swap is the overnight LIBOR rate. As a result, the entire fair value change of the swap arises from the fixed leg only, because the variable leg is not exposed to changes in fair value due to changes in interest rates.
- In cases when these simplifying assumptions do not hold, greater ineffectiveness will arise. (The ineffectiveness arising from (a) could be eliminated by designating as the hedged item a portion of the cash flows on the asset that are equivalent to the fixed leg of the swap.)
- IE6 It is also assumed that Entity A tests effectiveness on a monthly basis.
- IE7 The fair value of an equivalent non-prepayable asset of CU20 million, ignoring changes in value that are not attributable to interest rate movements, at various times during the period of the hedge is as follows:

¹ In this example principal cash flows have been scheduled into time periods but the related interest cash flows have been included when calculating the change in fair value of the hedged item. Other methods of scheduling assets and liabilities are also possible. Also, in this example, monthly repricing time periods have been used. An entity may choose narrower or wider time periods.

² This example uses a swap as the hedging instrument. An entity may use forward rate agreements or other derivatives as hedging instruments.

	<u>1-Jan, 1</u> 20X1	<u>31-Jan, 31</u> 20X1	<u>1-Feb, 1</u> 20X1	<u>28-Feb, 28</u> 20X1	<u>31-Mar, 31</u> 20X1
Fair value (asset) (CU)	20,000,000	20,047,408	20,047,408	20,023,795	Nil

IE8 The fair value of the swap at various times during the period of the hedge is as follows:

	<u>1-Jan, 1</u> 20X1	<u>31-Jan, 31</u> 20X1	<u>1-Feb, 1</u> 20X1	<u>28-Feb, 28</u> 20X1	<u>31-Mar, 31</u> 20X1
Fair value (liability) (CU)	Nil	(47,408)	(47,408)	(23,795)	Nil

Accounting treatment

IE9 On ~~1~~31-January, 1 20X1, Entity A designates as the hedged item an amount of CU20 million of assets in the three-month time period. It designates as the hedged risk the change in the value of the hedged item (i.e. the CU20 million of assets) that is attributable to changes in LIBOR. It also complies with the other designation requirements set out in paragraphs 98(d) and AG166 of the Standard.

IE10 Entity A designates as the hedging instrument the interest rate swap described in paragraph IE4.

End of month 1 (~~31~~31-January, 31 20X1)

IE11 On ~~31~~31-January, 31 20X1 (at the end of month 1) when Entity A tests effectiveness, LIBOR has decreased. Based on historical prepayment experience, Entity A estimates that, as a consequence, prepayments will occur faster than previously estimated. As a result it re-estimates the amount of assets scheduled into this time period (excluding new assets originated during the month) as CU96 million.

IE12 The fair value of the designated interest rate swap with a notional principal of CU20 million is (CU47,408)³ (the swap is a liability).

IE13 Entity A computes the change in the fair value of the hedged item, taking into account the change in estimated prepayments, as follows.

- First, it calculates the percentage of the initial estimate of the assets in the time period that was hedged. This is 20 per cent (CU20 million ÷ CU100 million).
- Second, it applies this percentage (20 per cent) to its revised estimate of the amount in that time period (CU96 million) to calculate the amount that is the hedged item based on its revised estimate. This is CU19.2 million.
- Third, it calculates the change in the fair value of this revised estimate of the hedged item (CU19.2 million) that is attributable to changes in LIBOR. This is CU45,511 (CU47,408⁴ × (CU19.2 million ÷ CU20 million)).

IE14 Entity A makes the following accounting entries relating to this time period:

Dr	Cash	CU172,097	
	Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest-income-revenue) ⁵	CU172,097
		<i>To recognize the interest received on the hedged amount (CU19.2 million).</i>	

³ See paragraph IE8

⁴ i.e. CU20,047,408 – CU 20,000,000, see paragraph IE7

⁵ This example does not show how amounts of interest revenue and interest expense are calculated.

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest expense)	CU179,268
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest income <u>revenue</u>)	CU179,268
Cr	Cash	Nil

To recognize the interest received and paid on the swap designated as the hedging instrument.

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (loss)	CU47,408
Cr	Derivative liability	CU47,408

To recognize the change in the fair value of the swap.

Dr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position	CU45,511
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (gain)	CU45,511

To recognize the change in the fair value of the hedged amount.

- IE15 The net result on ~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit (excluding interest ~~income~~ revenue and interest expense) is to recognize a loss of (CU1,897). This represents ineffectiveness in the hedging relationship that arises from the change in estimated prepayment dates.

Beginning of month 2

- IE16 On 1 February, 20X1 Entity A sells a proportion of the assets in the various time periods. Entity A calculates that it has sold $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent of the entire portfolio of assets. Because the assets were allocated into time periods by allocating a percentage of the assets (rather than individual assets) into each time period, Entity A determines that it cannot ascertain into which specific time periods the sold assets were scheduled. Hence it uses a systematic and rational basis of allocation. Based on the fact that it sold a representative selection of the assets in the portfolio, Entity A allocates the sale proportionately over all time periods.

- IE17 On this basis, Entity A computes that it has sold $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent of the assets allocated to the three-month time period, i.e. CU8 million ($8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent of CU96 million). The proceeds received are CU8,018,400, equal to the fair value of the assets.⁶ On derecognition of the assets, Entity A also removes from the separate line item in the statement of financial position an amount that represents the change in the fair value of the hedged assets that it has now sold. This is $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent of the total line item balance of CU45,511, i.e. CU3,793.

- IE18 Entity A makes the following accounting entries to recognize the sale of the asset and the removal of part of the balance in the separate line item in the statement of financial position:

Dr	Cash	CU8,018,400
Cr	Asset	CU8,000,000
Cr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position	CU3,793
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (gain)	CU14,607

To recognize the sale of the asset at fair value and to recognize a gain on sale.

Because the change in the amount of the assets is not attributable to a change in the hedged interest rate no ineffectiveness arises.

⁶ The amount realized on sale of the asset is the fair value of a prepayable asset, which is less than the fair value of the equivalent non-prepayable asset shown in IE7.

- IE19 Entity A now has CU88 million of assets and CU80 million of liabilities in this time period. Hence the net amount Entity A wants to hedge is now CU8 million and, accordingly, it designates CU8 million as the hedged amount.
- IE20 Entity A decides to adjust the hedging instrument by designating only a proportion of the original swap as the hedging instrument. Accordingly, it designates as the hedging instrument CU8 million or 40 per cent of the notional amount of the original swap with a remaining life of two months and a fair value of CU18,963.⁷ It also complies with the other designation requirements in paragraphs 98(a) and AG166 of the Standard. The CU12 million of the notional amount of the swap that is no longer designated as the hedging instrument is either classified as held for trading with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, or is designated as the hedging instrument in a different hedge.⁸
- IE21 As at 1-February, 1 20X1 and after accounting for the sale of assets, the separate line item in the statement of financial position is CU41,718 (CU45,511 – CU3,793), which represents the cumulative change in fair value of CU17.6⁹ million of assets. However, as at 1-February, 1 20X1, Entity A is hedging only CU8 million of assets that have a cumulative change in fair value of CU18,963.¹⁰ The remaining separate line item in the statement of financial position of CU22,755¹¹ relates to an amount of assets that Entity A still holds but is no longer hedging. Accordingly Entity A amortizes this amount over the remaining life of the time period, i.e. it amortizes CU22,755 over two months.
- IE22 Entity A determines that it is not practicable to use a method of amortization based on a recalculated effective yield and hence uses a straight-line method.

End of month 2 (28-February, 28 20X1)

- IE23 On 28 February, 28 20X1 when Entity A next tests effectiveness, LIBOR is unchanged. Entity A does not revise its prepayment expectations. The fair value of the designated interest rate swap with a notional principal of CU8 million is (CU9,518)¹² (the swap is a liability). Also, Entity A calculates the fair value of the CU8 million of the hedged assets as at 28-February, 28 20X1 as CU8,009,518.¹³
- IE24 Entity A makes the following accounting entries relating to the hedge in this time period:

Dr	Cash	CU71,707	
	Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest income <u>revenue</u>)	CU71,707

To recognize the interest received on the hedged amount (CU8 million).

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest expense)	CU71,707	
	Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest income <u>revenue</u>)	CU62,115
	Cr	Cash	CU9,592

To recognize the interest received and paid on the portion of the swap designated as

⁷ CU47,408 x 40 per cent

⁸ The entity could instead enter into an offsetting swap with a notional principle of CU12 million to adjust its position and designate as the hedging instrument all CU20 million of the existing swap and all CU12 million of the new offsetting swap.

⁹ CU19.2 million – (8/3 x CU19.2 million)

¹⁰ CU41,718 x (CU8 million/CU17.6 million)

¹¹ CU41,718 – CU9,963

¹² CU23,795 [see paragraph IE8] x (CU8 million/CU20 million)

¹³ CU20,023,795 [see paragraph IE7] x (CU8 million/CU20 million)

the hedging instrument (CU8 million).

Dr	Derivative liability	CU9,445
Cr	Surplus or deficit Surplus or deficit(gain)	CU9,445

To recognize the change in the fair value of the portion of the swap designated as the hedging instrument (CU8 million) (CU9,518 – CU18,963).

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (loss)	CU9,445
Cr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position	CU9,445

To recognize the change in the fair value of the hedged amount (CU8,009,518 – CU8,018,963).

IE25 The net effect on ~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit (excluding interest ~~income~~ revenue and interest expense) is nil reflecting that the hedge is fully effective.

IE26 Entity A makes the following accounting entry to amortize the line item balance for this time period:

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (loss)	CU11,378
Cr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position	CU11,378 (a)

To recognize the amortization charge for the period.

(a) $CU22,755 \div 2$

End of month 3

IE27 During the third month there is no further change in the amount of assets or liabilities in the three-month time period. On ~~31~~ March, 31-20X1 the assets and the swap mature and all balances are recognized in ~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit.

IE28 Entity A makes the following accounting entries relating to this time period:

Dr	Cash	CU8,071,707
Cr	Asset (statement of financial position)	CU8,000,000
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest income <u>revenue</u>)	CU71,707

To recognize the interest and cash received on maturity of the hedged amount (CU8 million).

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest expense)	CU71,707	
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest income revenue)		CU62,115
Cr	Cash		CU9,592

To recognize the interest received and paid on the portion of the swap designated as the hedging instrument (CU8 million).

Dr	Derivative liability	CU9,518	
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (gain)		CU9,518

To recognize the expiry of the portion of the swap designated as the hedging instrument (CU8 million).

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (gain)	CU9,518	
Cr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position		CU9,518

To remove the remaining line item balance on expiry of the time period.

IE29 The net effect on ~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit (excluding interest ~~income~~ revenue and interest expense) is nil reflecting that the hedge is fully effective.

IE30 Entity A makes the following accounting entry to amortize the line item balance for this time period:

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (loss)	CU11,377	
Cr	Separate line item in the statement of financial position		CU11,377 ^(a)

To recognize the amortization charge for the period.

(a) $CU22,755 \div 2$

Summary

IE31 The tables below summarize:

- (a) Changes in the separate line item in the statement of financial position;
- (b) The fair value of the derivative;
- (c) The surplus or deficit effect of the hedge for the entire three-month period of the hedge; and
- (d) Interest ~~income~~ revenue and interest expense relating to the amount designated as hedged.

Description	<u>1-Jan, 1</u> <u>20X1</u>	<u>31-Jan, 31</u> <u>20X1</u>	<u>1-Feb, 1</u> <u>20X1</u>	<u>28-Feb, 28</u> <u>20X1</u>	<u>31-Mar, 31</u> <u>20X1</u>
	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU
Amount of asset hedged	20,000,000	19,200,000	8,000,000	8,000,000	8,000,000
(a) Changes in the separate line item in the statement of financial position					
Brought forward:					
Balance to be amortized	Nil	Nil	Nil	22,755	11,377
Remaining balance	Nil	Nil	45,511	18,963	9,518
Less: Adjustment on sale of asset	Nil	Nil	(3,793)	Nil	Nil
Adjustment for change in fair value of the hedged asset	Nil	45,511	Nil	(9,445)	(9,518)
Amortization	Nil	Nil	Nil	(11,378)	(11,377)
Carried forward:					
Balance to be amortized	Nil	Nil	22,755	11,377	Nil
Remaining balance	Nil	45,511	18,963	9,518	Nil
(b) The fair value of the derivative					
CU20,000,000	Nil	47,408	–	–	–
CU12,000,000	Nil	–	28,445	No longer designated as the hedging instrument.	
CU8,000,000	Nil	–	18,963	9,518	Nil
Total	Nil	47,408	47,408	9,518	Nil
(c) Profit or loss Effect of the hedge on <u>surplus or deficit</u>					
Change in line item: asset	Nil	45,511	N/A	(9,445)	(9,518)
Change in derivative fair value	Nil	(47,408)	N/A	9,445	9,518
Net effect	Nil	(1,897)	N/A	Nil	Nil
Amortization	Nil	Nil	N/A	(11,378)	(11,377)

In addition, there is a gain on sale of assets of CU14,607 at 1-February, 1 20X1.

(d) ~~Interest income~~ revenue and interest expense relating to the amount designated as hedged

	<u>1-Jan, 1</u> <u>20X1</u>	<u>31-Jan, 31</u> <u>20X1</u>	<u>1-Feb, 1</u> <u>20X1</u>	<u>28-Feb, 28</u> <u>20X1</u>	<u>31-Mar, 31</u> <u>20X1</u>
	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU
Interest income revenue					
– on the asset	Nil	172,097	N/A	71,707	71,707
– on the swap	Nil	179,268	N/A	62,115	62,115
Interest expense					
– on the swap	Nil	(179,268)	N/A	(71,707)	(71,707)

Example 2 - Disposal of a Foreign Operation

IE32 ~~IE1~~ This example illustrates the application of paragraphs 12 and 13 of Appendix C in connection with the amount recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassification adjustment~~ on the disposal of a foreign operation.

Background

IE33 ~~IE2~~ This example assumes the economic entity group structure set out in the application guidance and that Entity ABC-Parent used a USD borrowing in Entity Subsidiary A to hedge the EUR/USD risk of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary C in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements. Entity ABC-Parent uses the step-by-step method of consolidation. Assume the hedge was fully effective and the full USD/EUR accumulated change in the value of the hedging instrument before disposal of Entity Subsidiary C is €24 million (gain). This is matched exactly by the fall in value of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary C, when measured against the functional currency of Entity ABC-Parent (euro).

IE34 ~~IE3~~ If the direct method of consolidation is used, the fall in the value of Entity ABC-Parent's net investment in Entity Subsidiary C of €24 million would be reflected totally in the foreign currency translation reserve relating to Entity Subsidiary C in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements. However, because Entity ABC-Parent uses the step-by-step method, this fall in the net investment value in Entity Subsidiary C of €24 million would be reflected both in Entity Subsidiary B's foreign currency translation reserve relating to Entity Subsidiary C and in Entity ABC-Parent's foreign currency translation reserve relating to Entity Subsidiary B.

IE35 ~~IE4~~ The aggregate amount recognized in the foreign currency translation reserve in respect of Entities Subsidiaries B and C is not affected by the consolidation method. Assume that using the direct method of consolidation, the foreign currency translation reserves for Entities Subsidiaries B and C in Entity ABC-Parent's consolidated financial statements are €62 million gain and €24 million loss respectively; using the step-by-step method of consolidation those amounts are €49 million gain and €1 million loss respectively.

Reclassification

IE36 ~~IE5~~ When the investment in Entity Subsidiary C is disposed of, ED 38 IAS 39 requires the full €24 million gain on the hedging instrument to be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified to profit or loss~~. Using the step-by-step method, the amount to be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified to profit or loss~~ in respect of the net investment in Entity Subsidiary C would be only €1 million loss. Entity ABC-Parent could adjust the foreign currency translation reserves of both Entities Subsidiaries B and C by €13 million in order to match the amounts reclassified in respect of the hedging instrument and the net investment as would have been the case if the direct method of

consolidation had been used, if that was its accounting policy. An entity that had not hedged its net investment could make the same reclassification.

Example 3 - Receipt of A Concessionary Loan

IE37 A local authority receives loan funding to the value of CU5 million from an international development agency to build primary healthcare clinics over a period of 5 years. The agreement stipulates that loan should be repaid over the 5 year period as follows:

Year 1: no capital repayments

Year 2: 10% of the capital

Year 3: 20% of the capital

Year 4: 30% of the capital

Year 5: 40% of the capital

Interest is paid annually in arrears, at a rate of 5% per annum on the outstanding balance of the loan. A market related rate of interest for a similar transaction is 10%.

IE38 The entity has received a concessionary loan of CU5 million, which will be repaid at 5% below the current market interest rate. The difference between the proceeds of the loan and the present value of the contractual payments in terms of the loan agreement, discounted using the market related rate of interest, is recognized as non-exchange revenue.

IE39 The journal entries to account for the concessionary loan are as follows:

1. On initial recognition, the entity recognizes the following (assuming that the entity subsequently measures concessionary loan at amortized cost):

Dr Bank	5,000,000	
Cr Loan (refer to Table 2 below)		4,215,450
Cr Liability or non-exchange revenue		784,550

Recognition of the receipt of the loan at fair value

The IPSAS 23 is considered in recognizing either a liability or revenue for the off-market portion of the loan. Example 26 of that IPSAS provides journal entries for the recognition and measurement of the off-market portion of the loan deemed to be non-exchange revenue.

2. Year 1: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Interest (refer to Table 3 below)	421,545	
Cr Loan		421,545

Recognition of interest using the effective interest rate method (CU4,215,450 X 10%)

Dr Loan (refer to Table 1 below)	250,000	
Cr Bank		250,000

Recognition of interest paid on outstanding balance (CU5m X 5%)

3. Year 2: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Interest	438,700	
Cr Loan		438,700

Recognition of interest using the effective interest rate method (CU, 38, 995 X 10%)

Dr Loan	750,000	
Cr Bank		750,000

Recognition of interest paid on outstanding balance (CU5m X 5% + CU500,000 capital repaid)

4. Year 3: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Interest	407,569	
Cr Loan		407,569

Recognition of interest using the effective interest rate method (CU4,075,695 X 10%)

Dr Loan	1,225,000	
Cr Bank		1,225,000

Recognition of interest paid on outstanding balance (CU4.5m X 5% + CU1m capital repaid)

5. Year 4: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Interest	325,826	
Cr Loan		325,826

Recognition of interest using the effective interest rate method (CU 3,258,264 X 10%)

Dr Loan	1,675,000	
Cr Bank		1,675,000

Recognition of interest paid on outstanding balance (CU3.5m X 5% + CU1.5m capital repaid)

6. Year 5: The entity recognizes the following:

Dr Interest	190,909	
Cr Loan		190,909

Recognition of interest using the effective interest rate method (CU1,909,091 X 10%)

Dr Loan	2,100,000	
Cr Bank		2,100,000

Recognition of interest paid on outstanding balance (CU2m X 5% + CU2m capital repaid)

Calculations:

Table 1: Amortization schedule (using contractual repayments at 5% interest):

	Year 0	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU
Capital	5,000,000	5,000,000	5,000,000	4,500,000	3,500,000	2,000,000
Interest	-	250,000	250,000	225,000	175,000	100,000
Payments	-	250,000	750,000	1,225,000	1,675,000	2,100,000
Balance	5,000,000	5,000,000	4,500,000	3,500,000	2,000,000	-

Table 2: Discounting contractual cash flows (based on a market rate of 10%)

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU
Capital balance	5,000,000	4,500,000	3,500,000	2,000,000	-
Interest payable	250,000	250,000	225,000	175,000	100,000
Total payments (capital and interest)	250,000	750,000	1,225,000	1,675,000	2,100,000
Present value of payments	<u>227,272</u>	619,835	920,360	1,144,048	1,303,935
Total present value of payments	<u>4,215,450</u>				

Proceeds received	5,000,000
Less: Present value of outflows (fair value of loan on initial recognition)	<u>4,215,450</u>
Off-market portion of loan to be recognized as non-exchange revenue	<u>784,550</u>

Table 3: Calculation of loan balance and interest using the effective interest method:

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5
	CU	CU	CU	CU	CU
Capital	4,215,450	4,386,995	4,075,695	3,258,264	1,909,091
Interest accrual	421,545	438,700	407,569	325,827	190,909
Interest and capital payments	250,000	750,000	1,225,000	1,675,000	2,100,000
Balance	4,386,995	4,075,695	3,258,264	1,909,091	-

Example 4 - Payment of A Concessionary Loan

IE40 The department of education makes low interest loans available to qualifying students on flexible repayment terms as a means of promoting tertiary education.

IE41 The department advanced CU250 million to various students at the beginning of the financial year, with the following terms and conditions:

- Capital is repaid as follows:
 - Year 1 to 3: no capital repayments
 - Year 3: 30% capital to be repaid
 - Year 4: 30% capital to be repaid
 - Year 5: 40% capital to be repaid
- Interest is calculated at 6% interest on the outstanding loan balance, and is paid annually in arrears. Assume the market rate of interest for a similar loan is 11.5%.

IE42 The journal entries to account for the concessionary loan are as follows:

- On initial recognition, the entity recognizes the following:

Dr Loan	199,345,480
Dr Expense	50,654,520

- | | | |
|--|---------|-------------|
| | Cr Bank | 250,000,000 |
|--|---------|-------------|
2. Year 1: The entity recognizes the following:
- | | | |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| | Dr Loan | 22,924,730 |
| | Cr Interest revenue | 22,924,730 |
| | <i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU199,345,480 X 11.5%)</i> | |
| | Dr Bank | 15,000,000 |
| | Cr Loan | 15,000,000 |
| | <i>(Interest payment of CU250m X 6%)</i> | |
3. Year 2: The entity recognizes the following:
- | | | |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| | Dr Loan | 23,836,074 |
| | Cr Interest revenue | 23,836,074 |
| | <i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU216,106,284 X 11.5%)</i> | |
| | Dr Bank | 15,000,000 |
| | Cr Loan | 15,000,000 |
| | <i>(Interest payment of CU250m X 6%)</i> | |
4. Year 3: The entity recognizes the following:
- | | | |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| | Dr Loan | 24,852,223 |
| | Cr Interest revenue | 24,852,223 |
| | <i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU216,106,284 X 11.5%)</i> | |
| | Dr Bank | 15,000,000 |
| | Cr Loan | 15,000,000 |
5. Year 4: The entity recognizes the following:
- | | | |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| | Dr Loan | 25,985,228 |
| | Cr Interest revenue | 25,985,228 |
| | <i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU225,958,507 X 11.5%)</i> | |
| | Dr Bank | 90,000,000 |
| | Cr Loan | 90,000,000 |
| | <i>(Interest payment of CU250m X 6% + CU75m capital repaid)</i> | |
6. Year 5: The entity recognizes the following:
- | | | |
|--|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| | Dr Loan | 18,623,530 |
| | Cr Interest revenue | 18,623,530 |
| | <i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU161,943,735 X 11.5%)</i> | |
| | Dr Bank | 85,500,000 |
| | Cr Loan | 85,500,000 |
| | <i>(Interest payment of CU175m X 6% + CU75m capital repaid)</i> | |
7. Year 6: The entity recognizes the following:
- | | | |
|--|---------|------------|
| | Dr Loan | 10,932,735 |
|--|---------|------------|

Cr Interest revenue	10,932,735
<i>(Interest accrual using the effective interest rate method CU95,067,265 X 11.5%)</i>	
Dr Bank	106,000,000
Cr Loan	106,000 000
<i>(Interest payment of CU100m X 6% + CU100m capital repaid)</i>	

Example 5 – Acquisition of Shares through a Non-Exchange Revenue Transaction

Background

- IE43 An individual donates his shares in listed entity X to public sector entity A on January,1 20X8. At that date, the shares in entity X have a fair value of CU1,000,000; at December,31 20X8 the fair value of the shares is CU900,000. As part of the arrangement, entity A incurs the transfer duty to have the shares transferred into its name. These costs amount to CU10,000.
- IE44 Listed entity X provides telecommunications infrastructure and related services to the public. During 20X9, new technology was introduced into the telecommunications industry, making the infrastructure and equipment used by entity X almost obsolete. This resulted in a permanent decline in the value of listed entity X. The value of the impairment loss as at December, 31 20X9 is CU700,000.
- IE45 Entity A has a policy of accounting for investments in shares as an available for sale financial asset.
- IE46 Assume that the arrangement is a contractual arrangement, no present obligations arise from the donation and that the entity's reporting period ends on December,31 20X8.

Analysis

- IE47 As entity A received the shares as a donation, it uses IPSAS 23 to initially recognize the shares acquired and the related non-exchange revenue. However, because entity A has acquired a financial asset, it considers the initial measurement requirements of IPSAS 23 and ED 38.
- IE48 IPSAS 23 prescribes that assets acquired as part of a non-exchange revenue transaction are initially measured at fair value, while ED 38 prescribes that financial assets are initially be measured at fair value and, depending on the subsequent measurement, transaction costs may or may not be included. As the entity has a policy of accounting for investments in shares as available for sale financial assets, the transaction costs of CU10,000 are added to the value of the shares of CU1,000,000 on initial measurement.
- IE49 The subsequent measurement and derecognition of the shares is addressed in ED 38. The entity classifies investments in shares as available for sale financial assets which means that the shares are measured at fair value with any subsequent changes in fair value recognized in net assets/equity. Impairment losses are however recognized in surplus or deficit in the period in which they occur.
- IE50 The journal entries at initial acquisition and at the reporting dates are as follows:

1. Acquisition of shares through donation

Dr	Available for sale financial asset (investment in entity X)	1,010,000
Cr	Non-exchange revenue	1,000,000
Cr	Bank (Transfer costs paid)	10,000

2. *Subsequent measurement at December, 31 20X8*

Dr	Net assets/equity (fair value adjustment of investment)	100,000	
Cr	Available for sale financial asset (investment in entity X)		100,000

3. *Subsequent measurement at December, 31 20X9*

Dr	Impairment loss (surplus or deficit)	700,000	
Cr	Available for sale financial asset		700,000

Example 6 - Financial Guarantee Contract Provided at Nominal Consideration

IE50. Entity C is a major motor vehicle manufacturer in Jurisdiction A. On January, 1 201V Government A (the issuer) enters into a financial guarantee contract with Entity B (the holder) to reimburse Entity B against the financial effects of default by Entity C (the debtor) for a 30 year loan of 50 million Currency Units (CUs) repayable in two equal instalments of 25 million CUs in 201Z and 204X. Entity C provides nominal consideration of 30,000 CUs to Government A. Prior to entering into negotiation with Government A, Entity C had approached a number of other entities to issue a guarantee, but none of these entities was prepared to issue such a guarantee. There are no recent examples of financial guarantee contracts in the motor manufacturing sector of the economy in Jurisdiction A or in neighboring Jurisdictions D & E. Government A concludes that it is not feasible to obtain a fair value by an alternative valuation technique. Government A therefore determines to measure the financial guarantee contract in accordance with IPSAS 19.

IE51. On December 31 201V Government A, having reviewed the financial position and performance of Entity C, Government A determines that there is no present obligation to Entity C in respect of the financial guarantee contract. Government A does not recognize a liability in its statement of financial position. Government A makes the disclosures relating to fair value and credit risk in ED 39, "Financial Instruments: Disclosures" related to the financial guarantee contract. It also discloses a contingent liability of 50 million CUs in accordance with IPSAS 19. In its statement of financial performance Government A recognizes revenue of 1,000 CUs in respect of the nominal consideration payable by Entity C.

IE52. In 201Z there has been a further downturn in the motor manufacturing sector affecting Entity C. Entity C is seeking bankruptcy protection and has defaulted on the first repayment of principal, although it has met its obligations for interest payments. Government A determines that Entity C is unlikely to recover, but negotiations are advanced with a potential acquirer (Entity D), which will restructure Entity B. Entity D has indicated that it will assume responsibility for the final instalment of the loan with Entity B, but not the initial instalment. Government A recognizes an expense and liability for 25 million CUs and discloses a contingent liability of 25 million CUs.

Alternative example if approach adopted that omits the valuation phase

IExx. Entity C is a major motor vehicle manufacturer in Jurisdiction A. On January 1 201V Government A (the issuer) enters into a financial guarantee contract with Entity B (the holder) to reimburse Entity B against the financial effects of default by Entity C (the debtor) for a 30 year loan of 50 million Currency Units (CUs) repayable in two equal instalments of 25 million CUs in 201Z and 204X. Entity C provides nominal consideration of 30,000 CUs to Government A. Prior to entering into negotiation with Government A, Entity C had approached a number of other entities to issue a guarantee, but none of these entities was prepared to issue such a guarantee. There are no recent examples of financial guarantee contracts in the motor manufacturing sector of the economy in Jurisdiction A or in neighboring Jurisdictions D & E. Government A therefore determines to measure the financial guarantee contract in accordance with IPSAS 19.

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

- IExx. On December 31 201V Government A, having reviewed the financial position and performance of Entity C, Government A determines that there is no present obligation to Entity C in respect of the financial guarantee contract. Government A does not recognize a liability in its statement of financial position. Government A makes the disclosures relating to fair value and credit risk in ED 39, “Financial Instruments: Disclosures” related to the financial guarantee contract. It also discloses a contingent liability of 50 million CUs in accordance with IPSAS 19. In its statement of financial performance Government A recognizes revenue of 1,000 CUs in respect of the nominal consideration payable by Entity C.
- IExx. In 201Z there has been a further downturn in the motor manufacturing sector affecting Entity C. Entity C is seeking bankruptcy protection and has defaulted on the first repayment of principal, although it has met its obligations for interest payments. Government A determines that Entity C is unlikely to recover, but negotiations are advanced with a potential acquirer (Entity D), which will restructure Entity B. Entity D has indicated that it will assume responsibility for the final installment of the loan with Entity B, but not the initial installment. Government A recognizes an expense and liability for 25 million CUs and discloses a contingent liability of 25 million CUs.

Implementation Guidance

This guidance accompanies, but is not part of, ED 38.

Section A - Scope

A.1 Practice of Settling Net: Forward Contract to Purchase a Commodity

Entity XYZ enters into a fixed price forward contract to purchase one million liters of oil ~~kilograms of copper~~ in accordance with its expected usage requirements. The contract permits XYZ to take physical delivery of the oil ~~copper~~ at the end of twelve months or to pay or receive a net settlement in cash, based on the change in fair value of oil ~~copper~~. Is the contract accounted for as a derivative?

While such a contract meets the definition of a derivative, it is not necessarily accounted for as a derivative. The contract is a derivative instrument because there is no initial net investment, the contract is based on the price of oil ~~copper~~, and it is to be settled at a future date. However, if XYZ intends to settle the contract by taking delivery and has no history for similar contracts of settling net in cash or of taking delivery of the oil ~~copper~~ and selling it within a short period after delivery for the purpose of generating a profit from short-term fluctuations in price or dealer's margin, the contract is not accounted for as a derivative under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~. Instead, it is accounted for as an executory contract.

A.2 Option to Put a Non-Financial Asset

Entity XYZ owns an office building. XYZ enters into a put option with an investor that permits XYZ to put the building to the investor for CU150 million. The current value of the building is CU175 million. The option expires in five years. The option, if exercised, may be settled through physical delivery or net cash, at XYZ's option. How do both XYZ and the investor account for the option?

XYZ's accounting depends on XYZ's intention and past practice for settlement. Although the contract meets the definition of a derivative, XYZ does not account for it as a derivative if XYZ intends to settle the contract by delivering the building if XYZ exercises its option and there is no past practice of settling net (ED 38.4 and ED38. AG21 ~~IAS39.5 and IAS39.AG10~~).

The investor, however, cannot conclude that the option was entered into to meet the investor's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements because the investor does not have the ability to require delivery (ED 38.6 ~~IAS 39.6~~). In addition, the option may be settled net in cash. Therefore, the investor has to account for the contract as a derivative. Regardless of past practices, the investor's intention does not affect whether settlement is by delivery or in cash. The investor has written an option, and a written option in which the holder has a choice of physical settlement or net cash settlement can never satisfy the normal delivery requirement for the exemption from ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ because the option writer does not have the ability to require delivery.

However, if the contract were a forward contract rather than an option, and if the contract required physical delivery and the reporting entity had no past practice of settling net in cash or of taking delivery of the building and selling it within a short period after delivery for the purpose of generating a profit from short-term fluctuations in price or dealer's margin, the contract would not be accounted for as a derivative.

Section B - Definitions

~~B.1 Definition of a financial instrument: gold bullion~~

~~Is gold bullion a financial instrument (like cash) or is it a commodity?~~

~~It is a commodity. Although bullion is highly liquid, there is no contractual right to receive cash or another financial asset inherent in bullion.~~

B.1 Definition of a Derivative: Examples of Derivatives and Underlyings

What are examples of common derivative contracts and the identified underlying?

ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ defines a derivative as follows:

A *derivative* is a financial instrument or other contract within the scope of this Standard with all three of the following characteristics:

- (a) **Its value changes in response to the change in a specified interest rate, financial instrument price, commodity price, foreign exchange rate, index of prices or rates, credit rating or credit index, or other variable, provided in the case of a non-financial variable that the variable is not specific to a party to the contract (sometimes called the ‘underlying’);**
- (b) **It requires no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors; and**
- (c) **It is settled at a future date.**

Type of contract	Main pricing-settlement variable (underlying variable)
Interest rate swap	Interest rates
Currency swap (foreign exchange swap)	Currency rates
Commodity swap	Commodity prices
Equity swap	Equity prices (equity <u>instruments</u> of another entity)
Credit swap	Credit rating, credit index or credit price
Total return swap	Total fair value of the reference asset and interest rates
Purchased or written treasury bond option (call or put)	Interest rates
Purchased or written currency option (call or put)	Currency rates
Purchased or written commodity option (call or put)	Commodity prices
Purchased or written stock option (call or put)	Equity prices (equity <u>instruments</u> of another entity)
Interest rate futures linked to government debt (treasury futures)	Interest rates
Currency futures	Currency rates
Commodity futures	Commodity prices
Interest rate forward linked to government debt (treasury forward)	Interest rates
Currency forward	Currency rates
Commodity forward	Commodity prices
Equity forward	Equity prices (equity <u>instruments</u> of another entity)

The above list provides examples of contracts that normally qualify as derivatives under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~. The list is not exhaustive. Any contract that has an underlying may be a derivative. Moreover, even if an instrument meets the definition of a derivative contract, special provisions of ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ may apply, for example, if it is a weather derivative (see ~~IAS 39.AG1~~ ED 38.AG5), a contract to buy or sell a non-financial item such as commodity (see ~~IAS 39.5 and IAS 39.AG10~~ ED 38.3 and ED 38.AG21) or a contract settled in

an entity's own shares (see ~~IAS 32.21~~ ~~IAS 32.24~~ ED 37.25 – ED 37.29). Therefore, an entity must evaluate the contract to determine whether the other characteristics of a derivative are present and whether special provisions apply.

B.2 Definition of a Derivative: Settlement at a Future Date, Interest Rate Swap with Net or Gross Settlement

For the purpose of determining whether an interest rate swap is a derivative financial instrument under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~, does it make a difference whether the parties pay the interest payments to each other (gross settlement) or settle on a net basis?

No. The definition of a derivative does not depend on gross or net settlement.

To illustrate: Entity ABC enters into an interest rate swap with a counterparty (XYZ) that requires ABC to pay a fixed rate of 8 per cent and receive a variable amount based on three-month LIBOR, reset on a quarterly basis. The fixed and variable amounts are determined based on a CU100 million notional amount. ABC and XYZ do not exchange the notional amount. ABC pays or receives a net cash amount each quarter based on the difference between 8 per cent and three-month LIBOR. Alternatively, settlement may be on a gross basis.

The contract meets the definition of a derivative regardless of whether there is net or gross settlement because its value changes in response to changes in an underlying variable (LIBOR), there is no initial net investment, and settlements occur at future dates.

B.3 Definition of a Derivative: Prepaid Interest Rate Swap (Fixed Rate Payment Obligation Prepaid at Inception or Subsequently)

If a party prepays its obligation under a pay-fixed, receive-variable interest rate swap at inception, is the swap a derivative financial instrument?

Yes.

To illustrate: Entity S enters into a CU100 million notional amount five-year pay-fixed, receive-variable interest rate swap with Counterparty C. The interest rate of the variable part of the swap is reset on a quarterly basis to three-month LIBOR. The interest rate of the fixed part of the swap is 10 per cent per year. Entity S prepays its fixed obligation under the swap of CU50 million (CU100 million × 10 per cent × 5 years) at inception, discounted using market interest rates, while retaining the right to receive interest payments on the CU100 million reset quarterly based on three-month LIBOR over the life of the swap.

The initial net investment in the interest rate swap is significantly less than the notional amount on which the variable payments under the variable leg will be calculated. The contract requires an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors, such as a variable rate bond. Therefore, the contract fulfils the 'no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors' provision of ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~. Even though Entity S has no future performance obligation, the ultimate settlement of the contract is at a future date and the value of the contract changes in response to changes in the LIBOR index. Accordingly, the contract is regarded as a derivative contract.

Would the answer change if the fixed rate payment obligation is prepaid subsequent to initial recognition?

If the fixed leg is prepaid during the term, that would be regarded as a termination of the old swap and an origination of a new instrument that is evaluated under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~.

B.4 Definition of a Derivative: Prepaid Pay-Variable, Receive-Fixed Interest Rate Swap

If a party prepays its obligation under a pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap at inception of the contract or subsequently, is the swap a derivative financial instrument?

No. A prepaid pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap is not a derivative if it is prepaid at inception and it is no longer a derivative if it is prepaid after inception because it provides a return on the prepaid (invested) amount comparable to the return on a debt instrument with fixed cash flows. The prepaid amount fails the ‘no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors’ criterion of a derivative.

To illustrate: Entity S enters into a CU100 million notional amount five-year pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap with Counterparty C. The variable leg of the swap is reset on a quarterly basis to three-month LIBOR. The fixed interest payments under the swap are calculated as 10 per cent times the swap’s notional amount, i.e. CU10 million per year. Entity S prepays its obligation under the variable leg of the swap at inception at current market rates, while retaining the right to receive fixed interest payments of 10 per cent on CU100 million per year.

The cash inflows under the contract are equivalent to those of a financial instrument with a fixed annuity stream since Entity S knows it will receive CU10 million per year over the life of the swap. Therefore, all else being equal, the initial investment in the contract should equal that of other financial instruments that consist of fixed annuities. Thus, the initial net investment in the pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap is equal to the investment required in a non-derivative contract that has a similar response to changes in market conditions. For this reason, the instrument fails the ‘no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors’ criterion of ~~ED 38~~IAS 39. Therefore, the contract is not accounted for as a derivative under ~~ED 38~~IAS 39. By discharging the obligation to pay variable interest rate payments, Entity S in effect provides a loan to Counterparty C.

B.5 Definition of a Derivative: Offsetting Loans

Entity A makes a five-year fixed rate loan to Entity B, while B at the same time makes a five-year variable rate loan for the same amount to A. There are no transfers of principal at inception of the two loans, since A and B have a netting agreement. Is this a derivative under ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39?

Yes. This meets the definition of a derivative (that is to say, there is an underlying variable, no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors, and future settlement). The contractual effect of the loans is the equivalent of an interest rate swap arrangement with no initial net investment. Non-derivative transactions are aggregated and treated as a derivative when the transactions result, in substance, in a derivative. Indicators of this would include:

- They are entered into at the same time and in contemplation of one another
- They have the same counterparty
- They relate to the same risk
- There is no apparent economic need or substantive business purpose for structuring the transactions separately that could not also have been accomplished in a single transaction.

The same answer would apply if Entity A and Entity B did not have a netting agreement, because the definition of a derivative instrument in ~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.10 does not require net settlement.

B.6 Definition of a Derivative: Option Not Expected to be Exercised

The definition of a derivative in ED 38.8 requires that the instrument ‘is settled at a future date’. Is this criterion met even if an option is expected not to be exercised, for example, because it is out of the money?

Yes. An option is settled upon exercise or at its maturity. Expiry at maturity is a form of settlement even though there is no additional exchange of consideration.

B.7 Definition of a Derivative: Foreign Currency Contract Based on Sales Volume

A South African entity, Entity XYZ, whose functional currency is the South African ~~rand~~ US dollar, sells ~~electricity products to Mozambique in France~~ denominated in US dollars ~~euro~~. XYZ enters into a contract with an investment bank to convert ~~euro to~~ US dollars to rand at a fixed exchange rate. The contract requires XYZ to remit ~~rand~~ euro based on its sales volume in ~~Mozambique France~~ in exchange for US dollars at a fixed exchange rate of 6.00. Is that contract a derivative?

Yes. The contract has two underlying variables (the foreign exchange rate and the volume of sales), no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors, and a payment provision. ED 38 IAS 39 does not exclude from its scope derivatives that are based on sales volume.

B.8 Definition of a Derivative: Prepaid Forward

An entity enters into a forward contract to purchase shares of stock in one year at the forward price. It prepays at inception based on the current price of the shares. Is the forward contract a derivative?

No. The forward contract fails the ‘no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors’ test for a derivative.

To illustrate: Entity XYZ enters into a forward contract to purchase one million T ordinary shares in one year. The current market price of T is CU50 per share; the one-year forward price of T is CU55 per share. XYZ is required to prepay the forward contract at inception with a CU50 million payment. The initial investment in the forward contract of CU50 million is less than the notional amount applied to the underlying, one million shares at the forward price of CU55 per share, i.e. CU55 million. However, the initial net investment approximates the investment that would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors because T’s shares could be purchased at inception for the same price of CU50. Accordingly, the prepaid forward contract does not meet the initial net investment criterion of a derivative instrument.

B.9 Definition of a Derivative: Initial Net Investment

Many derivative instruments, such as futures contracts and exchange traded written options, require margin accounts. Is the margin account part of the initial net investment?

No. The margin account is not part of the initial net investment in a derivative instrument. Margin accounts are a form of collateral for the counterparty or clearing house and may take the form of cash, securities or other specified assets, typically liquid assets. Margin accounts are separate assets that are accounted for separately.

B.10 Definition of Held for Trading: Portfolio with a Recent Actual Pattern of Short-Term Profit-Taking

The definition of a financial asset or financial liability held for trading states that ‘a financial asset or financial liability is classified as held for trading if it is ... part of a portfolio of identified financial instruments that are managed together and for which there is evidence of a recent actual pattern of short-term profit-taking’. What is a ‘portfolio’ for the purposes of applying this definition?

Although the term ‘portfolio’ is not explicitly defined in ED 38 IAS 39, the context in which it is used suggests that a portfolio is a group of financial assets or financial liabilities that are managed as part of that group (IAS 39.9-ED 38.10). If there is evidence of a recent actual pattern of short-term profit-taking on financial instruments included in such a portfolio, those financial instruments qualify as held for trading even though an individual financial instrument may in fact be held for a longer period of time.

B.11 Definition of Held for Trading: Balancing a Portfolio

Entity A has an investment portfolio of debt and equity instruments. The documented portfolio management guidelines specify that the equity exposure of the portfolio should be limited to between 30 and 50 per cent of total portfolio value. The investment manager of the portfolio is authorized to

balance the portfolio within the designated guidelines by buying and selling equity and debt instruments. Is Entity A permitted to classify the instruments as available for sale?

It depends on Entity A's intentions and past practice. If the portfolio manager is authorized to buy and sell instruments to balance the risks in a portfolio, but there is no intention to trade and there is no past practice of trading for short-term profit, the instruments can be classified as available for sale. If the portfolio manager actively buys and sells instruments to generate short-term profits, the financial instruments in the portfolio are classified as held for trading.

B.12 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: Index-Linked Principal

Entity A purchases a five-year equity-index-linked note with an original issue price of CU10 at a market price of CU12 at the time of purchase. The note requires no interest payments before maturity. At maturity, the note requires payment of the original issue price of CU10 plus a supplemental redemption amount that depends on whether a specified share price index exceeds a predetermined level at the maturity date. If the share index does not exceed or is equal to the predetermined level, no supplemental redemption amount is paid. If the share index exceeds the predetermined level, the supplemental redemption amount equals the product of 1.15 and the difference between the level of the share index at maturity and the level of the share index when the note was issued divided by the level of the share index at the time of issue. Entity A has the positive intention and ability to hold the note to maturity. Can Entity A classify the note as a held-to-maturity investment?

Yes. The note can be classified as a held-to-maturity investment because it has a fixed payment of CU10 and fixed maturity and Entity A has the positive intention and ability to hold it to maturity (~~IAS 39.9~~ ~~ED 38.8~~). However, the equity index feature is a call option not closely related to the debt host, which must be separated as an embedded derivative under ~~IAS 39.11~~ ED 38.12. The purchase price of CU12 is allocated between the host debt instrument and the embedded derivative. For example, if the fair value of the embedded option at acquisition is CU4, the host debt instrument is measured at CU8 on initial recognition. In this case, the discount of CU2 that is implicit in the host bond (principal of CU10 minus the original carrying amount of CU8) is amortized to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ over the term to maturity of the note using the effective interest method.

B.13 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: Index-Linked Interest

Can a bond with a fixed payment at maturity and a fixed maturity date be classified as a held-to-maturity investment if the bond's interest payments are indexed to the price of a commodity ~~or equity~~, and the entity has the positive intention and ability to hold the bond to maturity?

Yes. However, the commodity-indexed ~~or equity-indexed~~ interest payments result in an embedded derivative that is separated and accounted for as a derivative at fair value (~~IAS 39.11~~ ED 38.12). ~~IAS 39.12~~ ED 38.14 is not applicable since it should be straightforward to separate the host debt investment (the fixed payment at maturity) from the embedded derivative (the index-linked interest payments).

B.14 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: Sale Following Rating Downgrade

Would a sale of a held-to-maturity investment following a downgrade of the issuer's credit rating by a rating agency raise a question about the entity's intention to hold other investments to maturity?

Not necessarily. A downgrade is likely to indicate a decline in the issuer's creditworthiness. ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39 specifies that a sale due to a significant deterioration in the issuer's creditworthiness could satisfy the condition in ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39 and therefore not raise a question about the entity's intention to hold other investments to maturity. However, the deterioration in creditworthiness must be significant judged by reference to the credit rating at initial recognition. Also, the rating downgrade must not have been reasonably anticipated when the entity classified the investment as held to maturity in order to meet the condition in ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39. A credit downgrade of a notch within a class or from one rating class to the immediately lower rating class could often be regarded as reasonably anticipated. If the rating downgrade in combination with other information provides evidence of impairment, the deterioration in creditworthiness often would be regarded as significant.

B.15 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: Permitted Sales

Would sales of held-to-maturity financial assets due to a change in management compromise the classification of other financial assets as held to maturity?

Yes. A change in management is not identified under ~~IAS 39.AG22~~ ED 38.AG36 as an instance where sales or transfers from held-to-maturity do not compromise the classification as held to maturity. Sales in response to such a change in management would, therefore, call into question the entity's intention to hold investments to maturity.

To illustrate: Entity X has a portfolio of financial assets that is classified as held to maturity. In the current period, at the direction of the governing body ~~board of directors~~, the senior management team has been replaced. The new management wishes to sell a portion of the held-to-maturity financial assets in order to carry out an expansion strategy designated and approved by the governing body ~~board~~. Although the previous management team had been in place since the entity's inception and Entity X had never before undergone a major restructuring, the sale nevertheless calls into question Entity X's intention to hold remaining held-to-maturity financial assets to maturity.

B.16 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Investments: Sales in Response to Entity-Specific Capital Requirements

In some countries, regulators of banks or other industries may set *entity-specific* capital requirements that are based on an assessment of the risk in that particular entity. ~~IAS 39.AG22(e)~~ ED 38.AG34(e) indicates that an entity that sells held-to-maturity investments in response to an unanticipated significant increase by the regulator in the industry's capital requirements may do so under ED 38 IAS 39 without necessarily raising a question about its intention to hold other investments to maturity. Would sales of held-to-maturity investments that are due to a significant increase in *entity-specific* capital requirements imposed by regulators (i.e. capital requirements applicable to a particular entity, but not to the industry) raise such doubt?

Yes, such sales 'taint' the entity's intention to hold other financial assets as held to maturity unless it can be demonstrated that the sales fulfill the condition in ~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.10 in that they result from an increase in capital requirements, which is an isolated event that is beyond the entity's control, is non-recurring and could not have been reasonably anticipated by the entity.

B.17 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: Pledged Collateral, Repurchase Agreements (repos) and Securities Lending Agreements

An entity cannot have a demonstrated ability to hold to maturity an investment if it is subject to a constraint that could frustrate its intention to hold the financial asset to maturity. Does this mean that a debt instrument that has been pledged as collateral, or transferred to another party under a repo or securities lending transaction, and continues to be recognized cannot be classified as a held-to-maturity investment?

No. An entity's intention and ability to hold debt instruments to maturity is not necessarily constrained if those instruments have been pledged as collateral or are subject to a repurchase agreement or securities lending agreement. However, an entity does not have the positive intention and ability to hold the debt instruments until maturity if it does not expect to be able to maintain or recover access to the instruments.

B18. Definition of Held-to-Maturity Financial Assets: 'Tainting'

In response to unsolicited tender offers, Entity A sells a significant amount of financial assets classified as held to maturity on economically favorable terms. Entity A does not classify any financial assets acquired after the date of the sale as held to maturity. However, it does not reclassify the remaining held-to-maturity investments since it maintains that it still intends to hold them to maturity. Is Entity A in compliance with ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~?

No. Whenever a sale or transfer of more than an insignificant amount of financial assets classified as held to maturity (HTM) results in the conditions in ~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.10 and ED 38.AG34 ~~IAS 39.AG22~~ not being satisfied, no instruments should be classified in that category. Accordingly, any remaining HTM

assets are reclassified as available-for-sale financial assets. The reclassification is recorded in the reporting period in which the sales or transfers occurred and is accounted for as a change in classification under ~~IAS 39.54~~ ED 38.60. ED 38.10 ~~IAS 39.9~~ makes it clear that at least two full financial years must pass before an entity can again classify financial assets as HTM.

B.21 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Investments: Sub-Categorization for the Purpose of Applying the ‘Tainting’ Rule

Can an entity apply the conditions for held-to-maturity classification in ED 38.10 ~~IAS 39.9~~ separately to different categories of held-to-maturity financial assets, such as debt instruments denominated in US dollars and debt instruments denominated in euro?

No. The ‘tainting rule’ in ED 38.10 ~~IAS 39.9~~ is clear. If an entity has sold or reclassified more than an insignificant amount of held-to-maturity investments, it cannot classify any financial assets as held-to-maturity financial assets.

B.20 Definition of Held-to-Maturity Investments: Application of the ‘Tainting’ Rule on Consolidation

Can an entity apply the conditions in ED 38.10 ~~IAS 39.9~~ separately to held-to-maturity financial assets held by different entities in a consolidated group, for example, if those group entities are in different countries with different legal or economic environments?

No. If an entity has sold or reclassified more than an insignificant amount of investments classified as held-to-maturity in the consolidated financial statements, it cannot classify any financial assets as held-to-maturity financial assets in the consolidated financial statements unless the conditions in ED 38.10 ~~IAS 39.9~~ are met.

B.21 Definition of Loans and Receivables: Equity Instrument

Can an equity instrument, such as a preference share, with fixed or determinable payments be classified within loans and receivables by the holder?

Yes. If a non-derivative equity instrument would be recorded as a liability by the issuer, and it has fixed or determinable payments and is not quoted in an active market, it can be classified within loans and receivables by the holder, provided the definition is otherwise met. ED 37.13 – ED 37.26 ~~IAS 32.15–IAS 32.22~~ provide guidance about the classification of a financial instrument as a liability or as an equity instrument from the perspective of the issuer of a financial instrument. If an instrument meets the definition of an equity instrument under ED 37 ~~IAS 32~~, it cannot be classified within loans and receivables by the holder.

B.22 Definition of Loans and Receivables: Banks’ Deposits in Other Banks

Banks make term deposits with a central bank or other banks. Sometimes, the proof of deposit is negotiable, sometimes not. Even if negotiable, the depositor bank may or may not intend to sell it. Would such a deposit fall within loans and receivables under ~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.10?

Such a deposit meets the definition of loans and receivables, whether or not the proof of deposit is negotiable, unless the depositor bank intends to sell the instrument immediately or in the near term, in which case the deposit is classified as a financial asset held for trading.

B.23 Definition of Amortized Cost: Perpetual Debt Instruments with Fixed or Market-Based Variable Rate

Sometimes entities purchase or issue debt instruments that are required to be measured at amortized cost and in respect of which the issuer has no obligation to repay the principal amount. Interest may be paid either at a fixed rate or at a variable rate. Would the difference between the initial amount paid or received and zero (‘the maturity amount’) be amortized immediately on initial recognition for the purpose of determining amortized cost if the rate of interest is fixed or specified as a market-based variable rate?

No. Since there are no repayments of principal, there is no amortization of the difference between the initial amount and the maturity amount if the rate of interest is fixed or specified as a market-based variable rate. Because interest payments are fixed or market-based and will be paid in perpetuity, the amortized cost (the present value of the stream of future cash payments discounted at the effective interest rate) equals the principal amount in each period (~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.10).

B.24 Definition of Amortized Cost: Perpetual Debt Instruments with Decreasing Interest Rate

If the stated rate of interest on a perpetual debt instrument decreases over time, would amortized cost equal the principal amount in each period?

No. From an economic perspective, some or all of the interest payments are repayments of the principal amount. For example, the interest rate may be stated as 16 per cent for the first ten years and as zero per cent in subsequent periods. In that case, the initial amount is amortized to zero over the first ten years using the effective interest method, since a portion of the interest payments represents repayments of the principal amount. The amortized cost is zero after year 10 because the present value of the stream of future cash payments in subsequent periods is zero (there are no further cash payments of either principal or interest in subsequent periods).

B.25 Example of Calculating Amortized Cost: Financial Asset

Financial assets that are excluded from fair valuation and have a fixed maturity should be measured at amortized cost. How is amortized cost calculated?

Under ED 38~~IAS 39~~, amortized cost is calculated using the effective interest method. The effective interest rate inherent in a financial instrument is the rate that exactly discounts the estimated cash flows associated with the financial instrument through the expected life of the instrument or, where appropriate, a shorter period to the net carrying amount at initial recognition. The computation includes all fees and points paid or received that are an integral part of the effective interest rate, directly attributable transaction costs and all other premiums or discounts.

The following example illustrates how amortized cost is calculated using the effective interest method. Entity A purchases a debt instrument with five years remaining to maturity for its fair value of CU1,000 (including transaction costs). The instrument has a principal amount of CU1,250 and carries fixed interest of 4.7 per cent that is paid annually ($\text{CU1,250} \times 4.7 \text{ per cent} = \text{CU59 per year}$). The contract also specifies that the borrower has an option to prepay the instrument and that no penalty will be charged for prepayment. At inception, the entity expects the borrower not to prepay.

It can be shown that in order to allocate interest receipts and the initial discount over the term of the debt instrument at a constant rate on the carrying amount, they must be accrued at the rate of 10 per cent annually. The table below provides information about the amortized cost, interest ~~revenue~~ income and cash flows of the debt instrument in each reporting period.

Year	(a)	(b = a × 10%)	(c)	(d = a + b – c)
	Amortized cost at the beginning of the year	Interest <u>revenue</u> income	Cash flows	Amortized cost at the end of the year
20X0	1,000	100	59	1,041
20X1	1,041	104	59	1,086
20X2	1,086	109	59	1,136
20X3	1,136	113	59	1,190
20X4	1,190	119	1,250 + 59	–

On the first day of 20X2 the entity revises its estimate of cash flows. It now expects that 50 per cent of the principal will be prepaid at the end of 20X2 and the remaining 50 per cent at the end of 20X4. In accordance with ~~IAS 39.AG8~~ ED 38.AG19, the opening balance of the debt instrument in 20X2 is adjusted. The adjusted amount is calculated by discounting the amount the entity expects to receive in 20X2 and subsequent years using the original effective interest rate (10 per cent). This results in the new opening balance in 20X2 of CU1,138. The adjustment of CU52 (CU1,138 – CU1,086) is recorded in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in 20X2. The table below provides information about the amortized cost, interest revenue ~~income~~ and cash flows as they would be adjusted taking into account the change in estimate.

Year	(a)	(b = a × 10%)	(c)	(d = a + b – c)
	Amortized cost at the beginning of the year	Interest <u>revenue</u> income	Cash flows	Amortized cost at the end of the year
20X0	1,000	100	59	1,041
20X1	1,041	104	59	1,086
20X2	1,086 + 52	114	625 + 59	568
20X3	568	57	30	595
20X4	595	60	625 + 30	–

If the debt instrument becomes impaired, say, at the end of 20X3, the impairment loss is calculated as the difference between the carrying amount (CU595) and the present value of estimated future cash flows discounted at the original effective interest rate (10 per cent).

B.26 Example of Calculating Amortized Cost: Debt Instruments with Stepped Interest Payments

Sometimes entities purchase or issue debt instruments with a predetermined rate of interest that increases or decreases progressively ('stepped interest') over the term of the debt instrument. If a debt instrument with stepped interest and no embedded derivative is issued at CU1,250 and has a maturity amount of CU1,250, would the amortized cost equal CU1,250 in each reporting period over the term of the debt instrument?

No. Although there is no difference between the initial amount and maturity amount, an entity uses the effective interest method to allocate interest payments over the term of the debt instrument to achieve a constant rate on the carrying amount (~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.10).

The following example illustrates how amortized cost is calculated using the effective interest method for an instrument with a predetermined rate of interest that increases or decreases over the term of the debt instrument ('stepped interest').

On ~~4~~ January, 1 2000, Entity A issues a debt instrument for a price of CU1,250. The principal amount is CU1,250 and the debt instrument is repayable on ~~31~~ December, 31 2004. The rate of interest is specified in the debt agreement as a percentage of the principal amount as follows: 6.0 per cent in 2000 (CU75), 8.0 per cent in 2001 (CU100), 10.0 per cent in 2002 (CU125), 12.0 per cent in 2003 (CU150), and 16.4 per cent in 2004 (CU205). In this case, the interest rate that exactly discounts the stream of future cash payments through maturity is 10 per cent. Therefore, cash interest payments are reallocated over the term of the debt instrument for the purposes of determining amortized cost in each period. In each period, the amortized cost at the beginning of the period is multiplied by the effective interest rate of 10 per cent and added to the amortized cost. Any cash payments in the period are deducted from the resulting number. Accordingly, the amortized cost in each period is as follows:

Year	(a)	(b = a × 10%)	(c)	(d = a + b – c)
	Amortized cost at the beginning of the year	Interest revenue income	Cash flows	Amortized cost at the end of the year
2000	1,250	125	75	1,300
2001	1,300	130	100	1,330
2002	1,330	133	125	1,338
2003	1,338	134	150	1,322
2004	1,322	133	1,250 + 205	–

B.27 Regular Way Contracts: No Established Market

Can a contract to purchase a financial asset be a regular way contract if there is no established market for trading such a contract?

Yes. ED 38.10 ~~IAS 39.9~~ refers to terms that require delivery of the asset within the time frame established generally by regulation or convention in the marketplace concerned. Marketplace, as that term is used in ~~IAS 39.9~~ ED 38.10, is not limited to a formal stock exchange or organized over-the-counter market. Rather, it means the environment in which the financial asset is customarily exchanged. An acceptable time frame would be the period reasonably and customarily required for the parties to complete the transaction and prepare and execute closing documents.

For example, a market for private issue financial instruments can be a marketplace.

B.28 Regular Way Contracts: Forward Contract

Entity ABC enters into a forward contract to purchase one million of M's ordinary shares in two months for CU10 per share. The contract is ~~with an individual and is not an exchange-traded contract~~. The contract requires ABC to take physical delivery of the shares and pay the counterparty CU10 million in cash. M's shares trade in an active public market at an average of 100,000 shares a day. Regular way delivery is three days. Is the forward contract regarded as a regular way contract?

No. The contract must be accounted for as a derivative because it is not settled in the way established by regulation or convention in the marketplace concerned.

B.29 Regular Way Contracts: Which Customary Settlement Provisions Apply?

If an entity's financial instruments trade in more than one active market, and the settlement provisions differ in the various active markets, which provisions apply in assessing whether a contract to purchase those financial instruments is a regular way contract?

The provisions that apply are those in the market in which the purchase actually takes place.

To illustrate: Entity XYZ purchases one million shares of Entity ABC on a US stock exchange, for example, through a broker. The settlement date of the contract is six business days later. Trades for equity shares on US exchanges customarily settle in three business days. Because the trade settles in six business days, it does not meet the exemption as a regular way trade.

However, if XYZ did the same transaction on a foreign exchange that has a customary settlement period of six business days, the contract would meet the exemption for a regular way trade.

B.30 Regular Way Contracts: Share Purchase by Call Option

Entity A purchases a call option in a public market permitting it to purchase 100 shares of Entity XYZ at any time over the next three months at a price of CU100 per share. If Entity A exercises its

option, it has 14 days to settle the transaction according to regulation or convention in the options market. XYZ shares are traded in an active public market that requires three-day settlement. Is the purchase of shares by exercising the option a regular way purchase of shares?

Yes. The settlement of an option is governed by regulation or convention in the marketplace for options and, therefore, upon exercise of the option it is no longer accounted for as a derivative because settlement by delivery of the shares within 14 days is a regular way transaction.

B.31 Recognition and Derecognition of Financial Liabilities Using Trade Date or Settlement Date Accounting

~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 has special rules about recognition and derecognition of financial assets using trade date or settlement date accounting. Do these rules apply to transactions in financial instruments that are classified as financial liabilities, such as transactions in deposit liabilities and trading liabilities?

No. ~~ED 38~~ ~~IAS 39~~ does not contain any specific requirements about trade date accounting and settlement date accounting in the case of transactions in financial instruments that are classified as financial liabilities. Therefore, the general recognition and derecognition requirements in ~~IAS 39.16 and IAS 39.41~~ ED 38.16 and ED 38.41 apply. ED 38.16 ~~IAS 39.16~~ states that financial liabilities are recognized on the date the entity 'becomes a party to the contractual provisions of the instrument'. Such contracts generally are not recognized unless one of the parties has performed or the contract is a derivative contract not exempted from the scope of ~~IAS 39~~. ED 38.41 ~~IAS 39.41~~ specifies that financial liabilities are derecognized only when they are extinguished, i.e. when the obligation specified in the contract is discharged or cancelled or expires.

Section C Embedded Derivatives

C.1 Embedded Derivatives: Separation of Host Debt Instrument

If an embedded non-option derivative is required to be separated from a host debt instrument, how are the terms of the host debt instrument and the embedded derivative identified? For example, would the host debt instrument be a fixed rate instrument, a variable rate instrument or a zero coupon instrument?

The terms of the host debt instrument reflect the stated or implied substantive terms of the hybrid instrument. In the absence of implied or stated terms, the entity makes its own judgment of the terms. However, an entity may not identify a component that is not specified or may not establish terms of the host debt instrument in a manner that would result in the separation of an embedded derivative that is not already clearly present in the hybrid instrument, that is to say, it cannot create a cash flow that does not exist. For example, if a five-year debt instrument has fixed interest payments of CU40,000 annually and a principal payment at maturity of CU1,000,000 multiplied by the change in an equity price index, it would be inappropriate to identify a floating rate host contract and an embedded equity swap that has an offsetting floating rate leg in lieu of identifying a fixed rate host. In that example, the host contract is a fixed rate debt instrument that pays CU40,000 annually because there are no floating interest rate cash flows in the hybrid instrument.

In addition, the terms of an embedded non-option derivative, such as a forward or swap, must be determined so as to result in the embedded derivative having a fair value of zero at the inception of the hybrid instrument. If it were permitted to separate embedded non-option derivatives on other terms, a single hybrid instrument could be decomposed into an infinite variety of combinations of host debt instruments and embedded derivatives, for example, by separating embedded derivatives with terms that create leverage, asymmetry or some other risk exposure not already present in the hybrid instrument. Therefore, it is inappropriate to separate an embedded non-option derivative on terms that result in a fair value other than zero at the inception of the hybrid instrument. The determination of the terms of the embedded derivative is based on the conditions existing when the financial instrument was issued.

C.2 Embedded Derivatives: Separation of Embedded Option

The response to Question C.1 states that the terms of an embedded non-option derivative should be determined so as to result in the embedded derivative having a fair value of zero at the initial

recognition of the hybrid instrument. When an embedded option-based derivative is separated, must the terms of the embedded option be determined so as to result in the embedded derivative having either a fair value of zero or an intrinsic value of zero (that is to say, be at the money) at the inception of the hybrid instrument?

No. The economic behavior of a hybrid instrument with an option-based embedded derivative depends critically on the strike price (or strike rate) specified for the option feature in the hybrid instrument, as discussed below. Therefore, the separation of an option-based embedded derivative (including any embedded put, call, cap, floor, capton, floortion or swaption feature in a hybrid instrument) should be based on the stated terms of the option feature documented in the hybrid instrument. As a result, the embedded derivative would not necessarily have a fair value or intrinsic value equal to zero at the initial recognition of the hybrid instrument.

If an entity were required to identify the terms of an embedded option-based derivative so as to achieve a fair value of the embedded derivative of zero, the strike price (or strike rate) generally would have to be determined so as to result in the option being infinitely out of the money. This would imply a zero probability of the option feature being exercised. However, since the probability of the option feature in a hybrid instrument being exercised generally is not zero, it would be inconsistent with the likely economic behavior of the hybrid instrument to assume an initial fair value of zero. Similarly, if an entity were required to identify the terms of an embedded option-based derivative so as to achieve an intrinsic value of zero for the embedded derivative, the strike price (or strike rate) would have to be assumed to equal the price (or rate) of the underlying variable at the initial recognition of the hybrid instrument. In this case, the fair value of the option would consist only of time value. However, such an assumption would not be consistent with the likely economic behavior of the hybrid instrument, including the probability of the option feature being exercised, unless the agreed strike price was indeed equal to the price (or rate) of the underlying variable at the initial recognition of the hybrid instrument.

The economic nature of an option-based embedded derivative is fundamentally different from a forward-based embedded derivative (including forwards and swaps), because the terms of a forward are such that a payment based on the difference between the price of the underlying and the forward price will occur at a specified date, while the terms of an option are such that a payment based on the difference between the price of the underlying and the strike price of the option may or may not occur depending on the relationship between the agreed strike price and the price of the underlying at a specified date or dates in the future. Adjusting the strike price of an option-based embedded derivative, therefore, alters the nature of the hybrid instrument. On the other hand, if the terms of a non-option embedded derivative in a host debt instrument were determined so as to result in a fair value of any amount other than zero at the inception of the hybrid instrument, that amount would essentially represent a borrowing or lending. Accordingly, as discussed in the answer to Question C.1, it is not appropriate to separate a non-option embedded derivative in a host debt instrument on terms that result in a fair value other than zero at the initial recognition of the hybrid instrument.

C.3 Embedded Derivatives: Accounting for a Convertible Bond

What is the accounting treatment of an investment in a bond (financial asset) that is convertible into shares equity instruments of the issuing entity or another entity before maturity?

An investment in a convertible bond that is convertible before maturity generally cannot be classified as a held-to-maturity investment because that would be inconsistent with paying for the conversion feature—the right to convert into equity ~~instruments~~ shares before maturity.

An investment in a convertible bond can be classified as an available-for-sale financial asset provided it is not purchased for trading purposes. The equity conversion option is an embedded derivative.

If the bond is classified as available for sale (i.e. fair value changes recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ until the bond is sold), the equity conversion option (the embedded derivative) is separated. The amount paid for the bond is split between the debt instrument without the conversion option and the equity conversion option. Changes in the fair value of the equity conversion option are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ unless the option is part of a cash flow hedging relationship.

If the convertible bond is measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, separating the embedded derivative from the host bond is not permitted.

C.4 Embedded Derivatives: Equity Kicker

In some instances, venture capital entities providing subordinated loans agree that if and when the borrower lists its shares on a stock exchange, the venture capital entity is entitled to receive shares of the borrowing entity free of charge or at a very low price (an ‘equity kicker’) in addition to interest and repayment of principal. As a result of the equity kicker feature, the interest on the subordinated loan is lower than it would otherwise be. Assuming that the subordinated loan is not measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (ED38.12(c)–IAS 39.11(e)), does the equity kicker feature meet the definition of an embedded derivative even though it is contingent upon the future listing of the borrower?

Yes. The economic characteristics and risks of an equity return are not closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of a host debt instrument (~~IAS 39.11(a)~~ ED 38.12(a)). The equity kicker meets the definition of a derivative because it has a value that changes in response to the change in the price of the shares of the borrower, it requires no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors, and it is settled at a future date (~~IAS 39.11(b)~~ and ~~IAS 39.9(a)~~ ED 38.12(b) and ED38.10(a)). The equity kicker feature meets the definition of a derivative even though the right to receive shares is contingent upon the future listing of the borrower. ~~ED38.12(c)~~ IAS 39.11(c) states that a derivative could require a payment as a result of some future event that is unrelated to a notional amount. An equity kicker feature is similar to such a derivative except that it does not give a right to a fixed payment, but an option right, if the future event occurs.

C.5 Embedded Derivatives: Identifying Debt or Equity Instruments as Host Contracts

Entity A purchases a five-year ‘debt’ instrument issued by Entity B with a principal amount of CU1 million that is indexed to the share price of Entity C. At maturity, Entity A will receive from Entity B the principal amount plus or minus the change in the fair value of 10,000 shares of Entity C. The current share price is CU110. No separate interest payments are made by Entity B. The purchase price is CU1 million. Entity A classifies the debt instrument as available for sale. Entity A concludes that the instrument is a hybrid instrument with an embedded derivative because of the equity-indexed principal. For the purposes of separating an embedded derivative, is the host contract an equity instrument or a debt instrument?

The host contract is a debt instrument because the hybrid instrument has a stated maturity, i.e. it does not meet the definition of an equity instrument (ED 37.9 and ED37.14). It is accounted for as a zero coupon debt instrument. Thus, in accounting for the host instrument, Entity A imputes interest on CU1 million over five years using the applicable market interest rate at initial recognition. The embedded non-option derivative is separated so as to have an initial fair value of zero (see Question C.1).

C.6 Embedded Derivatives: Synthetic Instruments

Entity A acquires a five-year floating rate debt instrument issued by Entity B. At the same time, it enters into a five-year pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap with Entity C. Entity A regards the combination of the debt instrument and swap as a synthetic fixed rate instrument and classifies the instrument as a held-to-maturity investment, since it has the positive intention and ability to hold it to maturity. Entity A contends that separate accounting for the swap is inappropriate since ED 38.45(a) ~~IAS 39.42(a)~~ requires an embedded derivative to be classified together with its host instrument if the derivative is linked to an interest rate that can change the amount of interest that would otherwise be paid or received on the host debt contract. Is the entity’s analysis correct?

No. Embedded derivative instruments are terms and conditions that are included in non-derivative host contracts. It is generally inappropriate to treat two or more separate financial instruments as a single combined instrument (‘synthetic instrument’ accounting) for the purpose of applying ED 38. Each of the financial instruments has its own terms and conditions and each may be transferred or settled separately.

Therefore, the debt instrument and the swap are classified separately. The transactions described here differ from the transactions discussed in Question B.5, which had no substance apart from the resulting interest rate swap.

C.7 Embedded Derivatives: Purchases and Sales Contracts in Foreign Currency Instruments

A supply contract provides for payment in a currency other than (a) the functional currency of either party to the contract, (b) the currency in which the product is routinely denominated in commercial transactions around the world and (c) the currency that is commonly used in contracts to purchase or sell non-financial items in the economic environment in which the transaction takes place. Is there an embedded derivative that should be separated under ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38?

Yes. To illustrate: a Norwegian entity agrees to sell oil to an entity in France. The oil contract is denominated in Swiss francs, although oil contracts are routinely denominated in US dollars in commercial transactions around the world, and Norwegian krone are commonly used in contracts to purchase or sell non-financial items in Norway. Neither entity carries out any significant activities in Swiss francs. In this case, the Norwegian entity regards the supply contract as a host contract with an embedded foreign currency forward to purchase Swiss francs. The French entity regards the supply contract as a host contract with an embedded foreign currency forward to sell Swiss francs. Each entity includes fair value changes on the currency forward in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ unless the reporting entity designates it as a cash flow hedging instrument, if appropriate.

C.8 Embedded Foreign Currency Derivatives: Unrelated Foreign Currency Provision

Entity A, which measures items in its financial statements on the basis of the euro (its functional currency), enters into a contract with Entity B, which has the Norwegian krone as its functional currency, to purchase oil in six months for 1,000 US dollars. The host oil contract is not within the scope of ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ because it was entered into and continues to be for the purpose of delivery of a non-financial item in accordance with the entity's expected purchase, sale or usage requirements (~~IAS 39.5 and IAS 39.AG10(a)~~ ED 38.47 and ED 38.AG35). The oil contract includes a leveraged foreign exchange provision that states that the parties, in addition to the provision of, and payment for, oil will exchange an amount equal to the fluctuation in the exchange rate of the US dollar and Norwegian krone applied to a notional amount of 100,000 US dollars. Under ~~IAS 39.14~~ ED 38.12, is that embedded derivative (the leveraged foreign exchange provision) regarded as closely related to the host oil contract?

No, that leveraged foreign exchange provision is separated from the host oil contract because it is not closely related to the host oil contract (~~IAS 39.AG33(d)~~ ED 38.AG45(d)).

The payment provision under the host oil contract of 1,000 US dollars can be viewed as a foreign currency derivative because the US dollar is neither Entity A's nor Entity B's functional currency. This foreign currency derivative would not be separated because it follows from ~~IAS 39.AG33(d)~~ ED 38.AG45(d) that a crude oil contract that requires payment in US dollars is not regarded as a host contract with a foreign currency derivative.

The leveraged foreign exchange provision that states that the parties will exchange an amount equal to the fluctuation in the exchange rate of the US dollar and Norwegian krone applied to a notional amount of 100,000 US dollars is in addition to the required payment for the oil transaction. It is unrelated to the host oil contract and therefore separated from the host oil contract and accounted for as an embedded derivative under ~~IAS 39.14~~ ED 38.12.

C.9 Embedded Foreign Currency Derivatives: Currency of International Commerce

ED 38.AG47(d) ~~IAS 39.AG33(d)~~ refers to the currency in which the price of the related goods or services is routinely denominated in commercial transactions around the world. Could it be a currency that is used for a certain product or service in commercial transactions within the local area of one of the substantial parties to the contract?

No. The currency in which the price of the related goods or services is routinely denominated in commercial transactions around the world is only a currency that is used for similar transactions all around the world, not just in one local area. For example, if cross-border transactions in natural gas in North America are routinely denominated in US dollars and such transactions are routinely denominated in euro in Europe, neither the US dollar nor the euro is a currency in which the goods or services are routinely denominated in commercial transactions around the world.

C.10 Embedded Derivatives: Holder Permitted, But Not Required, to Settle Without Recovering Substantially all of its Recognized Investment

If the terms of a combined instrument permit, but do not require, the holder to settle the combined instrument in a manner that causes it not to recover substantially all of its recognized investment and the issuer does not have such a right (for example, a puttable debt instrument), does the contract satisfy the condition in ~~IAS 39.AG33(a)~~ ED 38.AG45(a) that the holder would not recover substantially all of its recognized investment?

No. The condition that ‘the holder would not recover substantially all of its recognized investment’ is not satisfied if the terms of the combined instrument permit, but do not require, the investor to settle the combined instrument in a manner that causes it not to recover substantially all of its recognized investment and the issuer has no such right. Accordingly, an interest-bearing host contract with an embedded interest rate derivative with such terms is regarded as closely related to the host contract. The condition that ‘the holder would not recover substantially all of its recognized investment’ applies to situations in which the holder can be forced to accept settlement at an amount that causes the holder not to recover substantially all of its recognized investment.

C.11 Embedded Derivatives: Reliable Determination of Fair Value

If an embedded derivative that is required to be separated cannot be reliably measured because it will be settled by an unquoted equity instrument whose fair value cannot be reliably measured, is the embedded derivative measured at cost?

No. In this case, the entire combined contract is treated as a financial instrument held for trading (~~IAS 39.12-ED 38.14~~). If the fair value of the combined instrument can be reliably measured, the combined contract is measured at fair value. The entity might conclude, however, that the equity component of the combined instrument may be sufficiently significant to preclude it from obtaining a reliable estimate of the entire instrument. In that case, the combined instrument is measured at cost less impairment.

C12 Identifying Contracts Containing Embedded Derivatives

The examples below illustrate whether an embedded derivative exists in the following contracts. Assume for purposes of the examples, that the entity’s functional currency is US dollars:

<u>Description of contract and related features</u>	<u>Impact of the conditions?</u>	<u>Why is it an embedded derivative or not?</u>
<u>Leases</u>		
<u>An entity is the tenant in a 10 year lease of a property with the rental payments contractually determined for the first year, but thereafter increase in line with:</u>		
(a) <u>Consumer Price Index (CPI)</u>	<u>The rental payments due in terms of the rental agreement will fluctuate in accordance with CPI.</u>	<u>The rental payments escalate in accordance with an inflation index in the same economic environment as the lease. Therefore this feature is closely related to the host contract, and no embedded derivative exists (see AG45(d)). The entire lease contract should be accounted for in accordance with IPSAS 13.</u>

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

		<u>“Leases”.</u>
(b) <u>Three times CPI</u>	<u>The rental payments due in terms of the rental agreement will fluctuate in accordance with three times the CPI.</u>	<u>Although the rental payments escalate in accordance with an inflation index in the same economic environment as the lease, but the index is leveraged (i.e. it is a multiple of CPI, see AG45(d)). The embedded derivative should be separated from the host lease contract and accounted for as a financial instrument (the lease contract should be accounted for in accordance with IPSAS 13).</u>
(c) <u>US Property Price Index</u>	<u>The rental payments due in terms of the rental agreement will fluctuate in accordance with a property price index.</u>	<u>The rental payments escalate in accordance with an inflation index in the same economic environment as the lease. Therefore this feature is closely related to the host contract, and no embedded derivative exists (see AG45(d)(i)). The entire lease contract should be accounted for in accordance with IPSAS 13.</u>
(d) <u>UK Property Price Index</u>	<u>The rental payments due in terms of the rental agreement will fluctuate in accordance an index which is in a foreign currency.</u>	<u>The rental payments escalate in accordance with an inflation index which is not in the same economic environment as the lease. Therefore this feature is not closely related to the host contract, and an embedded derivative exists (see AG45(d)). The embedded derivative should be separated from the host lease contract and accounted for as a financial instrument (the lease contract should be accounted for in accordance with IPSAS 13).</u>
<u>Contracts for the purchase or supply of goods</u>		
<u>A local authority contracts with a firm to build low cost houses in various sites over the next five years. The contract stipulates that the building price escalates by: 60% of the cost increases in line with a wage index; 20% of the cost increases in line with the price of steel; 20% of the cost increases with the cost of cement.</u>	<u>The effect of this clause in the contract is that the payments for the houses will increase based on the increases in raw materials and other inputs into the construction of the houses, in specific ratios.</u>	<u>If it can be proven reliably that the cost of building houses is comprised 60% of labor, 20% steel and 20% cement, these features are closely linked to the host contract. If not, it can be argued that the price is leveraged (because the ratios may be incorrect and do not reflect the cost structure). The entity will then need to account for the embedded derivative separately from the host contract.</u>

<p><u>The department of defense in the United States enters into an agreement to sell surplus arms and ammunitions to a country in Africa. The contract price is agreed at USD100 000.</u></p>	<p><u>The contract will be settled in US dollars, which is the functional currency of the supplier, but not the buyer.</u></p>	<p><u>Even though the contract will be settled in US dollars (which is not the functional currency of the buyer), business transactions undertaken in Africa are usually denominated in US dollars, largely due to the instability of the currencies of the various countries in the region. Thus, the terms are closely related to the sale/purchase agreement, therefore no embedded derivative exists (see AG45).</u></p>
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

(Some of the examples in the table above are sourced and adapted from: Manual of Accounting – IFRS for the UK, issued by PricewaterhouseCoopers Inc in 2006)

Section D Recognition and Derecognition

D.1 Initial Recognition

D.1.1 Recognition: Cash Collateral

Entity B transfers cash to Entity A as collateral for another transaction with Entity A (for example, a securities borrowing transaction). The cash is not legally segregated from Entity A's assets. Should Entity A recognize the cash collateral it has received as an asset?

Yes. The ultimate realization of a financial asset is its conversion into cash and, therefore, no further transformation is required before the economic benefits of the cash transferred by Entity B can be realized by Entity A. Therefore, Entity A recognizes the cash as an asset and a payable to Entity B while Entity B derecognizes the cash and recognizes a receivable from Entity A.

D.2 Regular Way Purchase or Sale of a Financial Asset

D.2.1 Trade Date vs Settlement Date: Amounts to be Recorded for a Purchase

How are the trade date and settlement date accounting principles in the Standard applied to a purchase of a financial asset?

The following example illustrates the application of the trade date and settlement date accounting principles in the Standard for a purchase of a financial asset. On ~~29~~December, 29 20X1, an entity commits itself to purchase a financial asset for CU1,000, which is its fair value on commitment (trade) date. Transaction costs are immaterial. On ~~31~~December, 31 20X1 (financial year-end) and on ~~4~~January, 4 20X2 (settlement date) the fair value of the asset is CU1,002 and CU1,003, respectively. The amounts to be recorded for the asset will depend on how it is classified and whether trade date or settlement date accounting is used, as shown in the two tables below.

Settlement date accounting			
Balances	Held-to-maturity investments carried at amortized cost	Available-for-sale assets remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income	Assets at fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss
<u>29 December, 29 20X1</u>			
Financial asset	–	–	–
Financial liability	–	–	–
<u>31 December, 31 20X1</u>			
Receivable	–	2	2
Financial asset	–	–	–
Financial liability	–	–	–
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	(2)	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit</u> (through surplus or deficit)	–	–	(2)
Retained earnings (through profit or loss)			
<u>4 January, 4 20X2</u>			
Receivable	–	–	–
Financial asset	1,000	1,003	1,003
Financial liability	–	–	–
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	(3)	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit</u> (through surplus or deficit)	–	–	(3)
Retained earnings (through profit or loss)			

Trade date accounting			
Balances	Held-to-maturity investments carried at amortized cost	Available-for-sale assets remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income	Assets at fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss
<u>29 December, 29 20X1</u>			
Financial asset	1,000	1,000	1,000
Financial liability	(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)
<u>31 December, 31 20X1</u>			
Receivable	–	–	–
Financial asset	1,000	1,002	1,002
Financial liability	(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	(2)	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit</u> (through surplus or deficit)	–	–	(2)
<u>Retained earnings</u> (through profit or loss)			
<u>4 January, 4 20X2</u>			
Receivable	–	–	–
Financial asset	1,000	1,003	1,003
Financial liability	–	–	–
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	(3)	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit</u> (through surplus or deficit)	–	–	(3)
<u>Retained earnings</u> (through profit or loss)			

D.2.2 Trade date vs settlement date: amounts to be recorded for a sale

How are the trade date and settlement date accounting principles in the Standard applied to a sale of a financial asset?

The following example illustrates the application of the trade date and settlement date accounting principles in the Standard for a sale of a financial asset. On ~~29~~December, 29 20X2 (trade date) an entity enters into a contract to sell a financial asset for its current fair value of CU1,010. The asset was acquired one year earlier for CU1,000 and its amortized cost is CU1,000. On ~~31~~December, 31 20X2 (financial year-end), the fair value of the asset is CU1,012. On 4-January, 4 20X3 (settlement date), the fair value is CU1,013. The amounts to be recorded will depend on how the asset is classified and whether trade date or settlement date

accounting is used as shown in the two tables below (any interest that might have accrued on the asset is disregarded).

A change in the fair value of a financial asset that is sold on a regular way basis is not recorded in the financial statements between trade date and settlement date even if the entity applies settlement date accounting because the seller's right to changes in the fair value ceases on the trade date.

Settlement date accounting			
Balances	Held-to-maturity investments carried at amortized cost	Available-for-sale assets remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income	Assets at fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss
<u>29 December, 29 20X2</u>			
Receivable	–	–	–
Financial asset	1,000	1,010	1,010
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	10	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit)</u> Retained earnings (through profit or loss)	–	–	10
<u>31 December, 31 20X2</u>			
Receivable	–	–	–
Financial asset	1,000	1,010	1,010
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	10	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit)</u> Retained earnings (through profit or loss)	–	–	10
<u>4 January, 4 20X3</u>			
<u>Net assets/Equity</u> (fair value adjustment)	–	–	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit)</u> Retained earnings (through profit or loss)	10	10	10

Trade date accounting			
Balances	Held-to-maturity investments carried at amortized cost	Available-for-sale assets remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income	Assets at fair value through <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss remeasured to fair value with changes in <u>surplus or deficit</u> profit or loss
<u>29-December, 29 20X2</u>			
Receivable	1,010	1,010	1,010
Financial asset	–	–	–
Equity (fair value adjustment)	–	–	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit)</u> Retained earnings (through profit or loss)	10	10	10
<u>31-December, 31 20X2</u>			
Receivable	1,010	1,010	1,010
Financial asset	–	–	–
<u>Net assets/Equity (fair value adjustment)</u>	–	–	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit)</u> Retained earnings (through profit or loss)	10	10	10
<u>4-January, 4 20X3</u>			
<u>Net assets/Equity (fair value adjustment)</u>	–	–	–
<u>Accumulated surplus or deficit (through surplus or deficit)</u> Retained earnings (through profit or loss)	10	10	10

D.2.3 Settlement Date Accounting: Exchange of Non-Cash Financial Assets

If an entity recognizes sales of financial assets using settlement date accounting, would a change in the fair value of a financial asset to be received in exchange for the non-cash financial asset that is sold be recognized in accordance with ED38.66 ~~IAS 39.57~~?

It depends. Any change in the fair value of the financial asset to be received would be accounted for under ~~IAS 39.57~~ ED38.66 if the entity applies settlement date accounting for that category of financial assets. However, if the entity classifies the financial asset to be received in a category for which it applies trade date accounting, the asset to be received is recognized on the trade date as described in ~~IAS~~

~~39.AG55ED38.AG75~~. In that case, the entity recognizes a liability of an amount equal to the carrying amount of the financial asset to be delivered on settlement date.

To illustrate: on ~~29-December, 29~~ 20X2 (trade date) Entity A enters into a contract to sell Note Receivable A, which is carried at amortized cost, in exchange for Bond B, which will be classified as held for trading and measured at fair value. Both assets have a fair value of CU1,010 on ~~29~~ December, ~~29~~, while the amortized cost of Note Receivable A is CU1,000. Entity A uses settlement date accounting for loans and receivables and trade date accounting for assets held for trading. On ~~31-December, 31~~ 20X2 (financial year-end), the fair value of Note Receivable A is CU1,012 and the fair value of Bond B is CU1,009. On 4 January, ~~4~~ 20X3, the fair value of Note Receivable A is CU1,013 and the fair value of Bond B is CU1,007. The following entries are made:

29-December, 29 20X2

Dr	Bond B	CU1,010	
	Cr Payable		CU1,010

31-December, 31 20X2

Dr	Trading loss	CU1	
	Cr Bond B		CU1

4-January, 4 20X3

Dr	Payable	CU1,010	
Dr	Trading loss	CU2	
	Cr Note Receivable A		CU1,000
	Cr Bond B		CU2
	Cr Realization gain		CU10

Section E Measurement

E.1 Initial Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities

E.1.1 Initial Measurement: Transaction Costs

Transaction costs should be included in the initial measurement of financial assets and financial liabilities other than those at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. How should this requirement be applied in practice?

For financial assets, incremental costs that are directly attributable to the acquisition of the asset, for example fees and commissions, are added to the amount originally recognized. For financial liabilities, directly related costs of issuing debt are deducted from the amount of debt originally recognized. For financial instruments that are measured at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, transaction costs are not added to the fair value measurement at initial recognition.

For financial instruments that are carried at amortized cost, such as held-to-maturity investments, loans and receivables, and financial liabilities that are not at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, transaction costs are included in the calculation of amortized cost using the effective interest method and, in effect, amortized through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ over the life of the instrument.

For available-for-sale financial assets, transaction costs are recognized in other net assets/equity ~~comprehensive income~~ as part of a change in fair value at the next remeasurement. If an available-for-sale financial asset has fixed or determinable payments and does not have an indefinite life, the transaction costs

are amortized to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ using the effective interest method. If an available-for-sale financial asset does not have fixed or determinable payments and has an indefinite life, the transaction costs are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ when the asset is derecognized or becomes impaired.

Transaction costs expected to be incurred on transfer or disposal of a financial instrument are not included in the measurement of the financial instrument.

E.2 Fair Value Measurement Considerations

E.2.1 Fair Value Measurement Considerations for Investment Funds

ED38.AG108 ~~IAS 39.AG72~~ states that the current bid price is usually the appropriate price to be used in measuring the fair value of an asset held. The rules applicable to some investment funds require net asset values to be reported to investors on the basis of mid-market prices. In these circumstances, would it be appropriate for an investment fund to measure its assets on the basis of mid-market prices?

No. The existence of regulations that require a different measurement for specific purposes does not justify a departure from the general requirement in ED38.AG108 ~~IAS 39.AG72~~ to use the current bid price in the absence of a matching liability position. In its financial statements, an investment fund measures its assets at current bid prices. In reporting its net asset value to investors, an investment fund may wish to provide a reconciliation between the fair values recognized in its statement of financial position and the prices used for the net asset value calculation.

E.2.2 Fair Value Measurement: Large Holding

Entity A holds 15 per cent of the share capital in Entity B. The shares are publicly traded in an active market. The currently quoted price is CU100. Daily trading volume is 0.1 per cent of outstanding shares. Because Entity A believes that the fair value of the Entity B shares it owns, if sold as a block, is greater than the quoted market price, Entity A obtains several independent estimates of the price it would obtain if it sells its holding. These estimates indicate that Entity A would be able to obtain a price of CU105, i.e. a 5 per cent premium above the quoted price. Which figure should Entity A use for measuring its holding at fair value?

Under ~~IAS 39.AG72~~ ED38.AG107, a published price quotation in an active market is the best estimate of fair value. Therefore, Entity A uses the published price quotation (CU100). Entity A cannot depart from the quoted market price solely because independent estimates indicate that Entity A would obtain a higher (or lower) price by selling the holding as a block.

E.3 Gains and Losses

E.3.1 Available-For-Sale Financial Assets: Exchange of Shares

Entity A holds a small number of shares in Entity B. The shares are classified as available for sale. On ~~20 December, 20~~ 20X0, the fair value of the shares is CU120 and the cumulative gain recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ is CU20. On the same day, Entity B is acquired by Entity C, ~~a large public entity~~. As a result, Entity A receives shares in Entity C in exchange for those it had in Entity B of equal fair value. Under ED38.64(b) ~~IAS 39.55(b)~~, should Entity A reclassify the cumulative gain of CU20 recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ from equity to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ as a reclassification adjustment?

Yes. The transaction qualifies for derecognition under ED38 ~~IAS 39~~. ~~IAS 39.55(b)~~ ED38.64(b) requires the cumulative gain or loss on an available-for-sale financial asset that has been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ to be reclassified from equity to recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ when the asset is derecognized. In the exchange of shares, Entity A disposes of the shares it had in Entity B and receives shares in Entity C.

E.3.2 ~~IAS 39 and IAS 21~~ ED 38 and IPSAS 4 Available-For-Sale Financial Assets: Separation of Currency Component

For an available-for-sale monetary financial asset, the entity recognizes changes in the carrying amount relating to changes in foreign exchange rates in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in accordance

with IPSAS 4.27(a) ~~IAS 21.23(a)~~ and IPSAS 4.32 ~~IAS 21.28~~ and other changes in the carrying amount in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with ED 38 IAS 39. How is the cumulative gain or loss that is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ determined?

It is the difference between the amortized cost (adjusted for impairment, if any) and fair value of the available-for-sale monetary financial asset in the functional currency of the reporting entity. For the purpose of applying IPSAS 4.32 ~~IAS 21.28~~ the asset is treated as an asset measured at amortized cost in the foreign currency.

To illustrate: on ~~31~~ December, 31 20X1 Entity A acquires a bond denominated in a foreign currency (FC) for its fair value of FC1,000. The bond has five years remaining to maturity and a principal amount of FC1,250, carries fixed interest of 4.7 per cent that is paid annually ($FC1,250 \times 4.7$ per cent = FC59 per year), and has an effective interest rate of 10 per cent. Entity A classifies the bond as available for sale, and thus recognizes gains and losses in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. The entity's functional currency is its local currency (LC). The exchange rate is FC1 to LC1.5 and the carrying amount of the bond is LC1,500 ($= FC1,000 \times 1.5$).

Dr Bond	LC1,500	
Cr Cash		LC1,500

On ~~31~~ December, 31 20X2, the foreign currency has appreciated and the exchange rate is FC1 to LC2. The fair value of the bond is FC1,060 and thus the carrying amount is LC2,120 ($= FC1,060 \times 2$). The amortized cost is FC1,041 ($= LC2,082$). In this case, the cumulative gain or loss to be recognized and accumulated in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income and accumulated in equity~~ is the difference between the fair value and the amortized cost on ~~31~~ December, 31 20X2, i.e. LC38 ($= LC2,120 - LC2,082$).

Interest received on the bond on ~~31~~ December, 31 20X2 is FC59 ($= LC118$). Interest revenue income determined in accordance with the effective interest method is FC100 ($= 1,000 \times 10$ per cent). The average exchange rate during the year is FC1 to LC1.75. For the purpose of this question, it is assumed that the use of the average exchange rate provides a reliable approximation of the spot rates applicable to the accrual of interest revenue income during the year (IPSAS 4.25 ~~IAS 21.22~~). Thus, reported interest revenue income is LC175 ($= FC100 \times 1.75$) including accretion of the initial discount of LC72 ($= [FC100 - FC59] \times 1.75$). Accordingly, the exchange difference on the bond that is recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss is LC510 ($= LC2,082 - LC1,500 - LC72$). Also, there is an exchange gain on the interest receivable for the year of LC15 ($= FC59 \times [2.00 - 1.75]$).

Dr Bond	LC620	
Dr Cash	LC118	
Cr Interest <u>revenue income</u>		LC175
Cr Exchange gain		LC525
Cr Fair value change in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income		LC38

On ~~31~~ December, 31 20X3, the foreign currency has appreciated further and the exchange rate is FC1 to LC2.50. The fair value of the bond is FC1,070 and thus the carrying amount is LC2,675 ($= FC1,070 \times 2.50$). The amortized cost is FC1,086 ($= LC2,715$). The cumulative gain or loss to be accumulated in net assets/equity is the difference between the fair value and the amortized cost on ~~31~~ December, 31 20X3, i.e. negative LC40 ($= LC2,675 - LC2,715$). Thus, the amount recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ equals the change in the difference during 20X3 of LC78 ($= LC40 + LC38$).

Interest received on the bond on ~~31~~ December, 31 20X3 is FC59 ($= LC148$). Interest revenue income determined in accordance with the effective interest method is FC104 ($= FC1,041 \times 10$ per cent). The average exchange rate during the year is FC1 to LC2.25. For the purpose of this question, it is assumed that the use of the average exchange rate provides a reliable approximation of the spot rates applicable to the

accrual of interest ~~revenue income~~ during the year (~~IPSAS 4.25 IAS 21.22~~). Thus, recognized interest ~~revenue income~~ is LC234 ($= \text{FC104} \times 2.25$) including accretion of the initial discount of LC101 ($= [\text{FC104} - \text{FC59}] \times 2.25$). Accordingly, the exchange difference on the bond that is recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss is LC532 ($= \text{LC2,715} - \text{LC2,082} - \text{LC101}$). Also, there is an exchange gain on the interest receivable for the year of LC15 ($= \text{FC59} \times [2.50 - 2.25]$).

Dr Bond	LC555
Dr Cash	LC148
Dr Fair value change in <u>net assets/equity</u> other comprehensive income	LC78
Cr Interest revenue income	LC234
Cr Exchange gain	LC547

E.3.3 ~~IAS 39 and IAS 21~~ ED 38 and IPSAS 4 Exchange Differences Arising on Translation of Foreign Entities: Net Assets/Equity or, Surplus or Deficit ~~other comprehensive income or profit or loss~~

IPSAS 4.37 ~~IAS 21.32~~ and IPSAS 4.57 ~~IAS 21.48~~ states that all exchange differences resulting from translating the financial statements of a foreign operation should be recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ until disposal of the net investment. This would include exchange differences arising from financial instruments carried at fair value, which would include both financial assets classified as at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and financial assets that are available for sale.

ED38.64 ~~IAS 39.55~~ requires that changes in fair value of financial assets classified as at fair value through ~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and changes in fair value of available-for-sale investments should be recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

If the foreign operation is a controlled entity subsidiary whose financial statements are consolidated with those of its controlling entity parent, in the consolidated financial statements how are ED38.64 ~~IAS 39.55~~ and IPSAS 4.44 ~~IAS 21.39~~ applied?

~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 applies in the accounting for financial instruments in the financial statements of a foreign operation and IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ applies in translating the financial statements of a foreign operation for incorporation in the financial statements of the reporting entity.

To illustrate: Entity A is domiciled in Country X and its functional currency and presentation currency are the local currency of Country X (LCX). A has a foreign controlled entity subsidiary (Entity B) in Country Y whose functional currency is the local currency of Country Y (LCY). B is the owner of a debt instrument, which is held for trading and therefore carried at fair value under ED 38~~IAS 39~~.

In B's financial statements for year 20X0, the fair value and carrying amount of the debt instrument is LCY100 in the local currency of Country Y. In A's consolidated financial statements, the asset is translated into the local currency of Country X at the spot exchange rate applicable at the end of the reporting period (2.00). Thus, the carrying amount is LCX200 ($= \text{LCY100} \times 2.00$) in the consolidated financial statements.

At the end of year 20X1, the fair value of the debt instrument has increased to LCY110 in the local currency of Country Y. B recognizes the trading asset at LCY110 in its statement of financial position and recognizes a fair value gain of LCY10 in its surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. During the year, the spot exchange rate has increased from 2.00 to 3.00 resulting in an increase in the fair value of the instrument from LCX200 to LCX330 ($= \text{LCY110} \times 3.00$) in the currency of Country X. Therefore, Entity A recognizes the trading asset at LCX330 in its consolidated financial statements.

Entity A translates the statement of changes in net assets/equity ~~comprehensive income~~ of B 'at the exchange rates at the dates of the transactions' (IPSAS 4.44(b) ~~IAS 21.39(b)~~). Since the fair value gain has accrued through the year, A uses the average rate as a practical approximation ($[(3.00 + 2.00) / 2 = 2.50]$, in accordance with IPSAS 4.25 ~~IAS 21.22~~). Therefore, while the fair value of the trading asset has increased by LCX130 ($= \text{LCX330} - \text{LCX200}$), Entity A recognizes only LCX25 ($= \text{LCY10} \times 2.5$) of this increase in

consolidated ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ to comply with IPSAS 4.44(b)~~IAS 21.39(b)~~. The resulting exchange difference, i.e. the remaining increase in the fair value of the debt instrument (LCX130 – LCX25 = LCX105), is accumulated in net assets/equity until the disposal of the net investment in the foreign operation in accordance with IPSAS 4.57~~IAS 21.48~~.

E.3.4 IAS 39 and IAS 21 ED 38 and IPSAS 4: Interaction between IAS 39 and IAS 21 ED38 and IPSAS 4

IAS 39 ED 38 includes requirements about the measurement of financial assets and financial liabilities and the recognition of gains and losses on remeasurement in surplus or deficit profit or loss. **IPSAS 4 IAS 21** includes rules about the reporting of foreign currency items and the recognition of exchange differences in surplus or deficit profit or loss. In what order are **IPSAS 4 and ED 38 IAS 21 and IAS 39** applied?

Statement of Financial Position

Generally, the measurement of a financial asset or financial liability at fair value, cost or amortized cost is first determined in the foreign currency in which the item is denominated in accordance with ED 38 IAS 39. Then, the foreign currency amount is translated into the functional currency using the closing rate or a historical rate in accordance with IPSAS 4 IAS 21 (ED38.AG120)~~IAS 39.AG83~~. For example, if a monetary financial asset (such as a debt instrument) is carried at amortized cost under ED 38 IAS 39, amortized cost is calculated in the currency of denomination of that financial asset. Then, the foreign currency amount is recognized using the closing rate in the entity's financial statements (IPSAS 4.27 IAS 21.23). That applies regardless of whether a monetary item is measured at cost, amortized cost or fair value in the foreign currency (IPSAS 4.28~~IAS 21.24~~). A non-monetary financial asset (such as an investment in an equity instrument) is translated using the closing rate if it is carried at fair value in the foreign currency (IPSAS 4.27(c)~~IAS 21.23(e)~~) and at a historical rate if it is not carried at fair value under ED 38 IAS 39 because its fair value cannot be reliably measured (IAS 21.23(b) and IAS 39.46(c) IPSAS 4.27(b) and ED 38.48).

As an exception, if the financial asset or financial liability is designated as a hedged item in a fair value hedge of the exposure to changes in foreign currency rates under ED 38 IAS 39, the hedged item is remeasured for changes in foreign currency rates even if it would otherwise have been recognized using a historical rate under IPSAS 4 IAS 21 (ED38.99)~~IAS 39.89~~, i.e. the foreign currency amount is recognized using the closing rate. This exception applies to non-monetary items that are carried in terms of historical cost in the foreign currency and are hedged against exposure to foreign currency rates (IPSAS 4.27(b) IAS 21.23(b)).

Profit or Loss-Surplus or Deficit

The recognition of a change in the carrying amount of a financial asset or financial liability in surplus or deficit profit or loss depends on a number of factors, including whether it is an exchange difference or other change in carrying amount, whether it arises on a monetary item (for example, most debt instruments) or non-monetary item (such as most equity investments), whether the associated asset or liability is designated as a cash flow hedge of an exposure to changes in foreign currency rates, and whether it results from translating the financial statements of a foreign operation. The issue of recognizing changes in the carrying amount of a financial asset or financial liability held by a foreign operation is addressed in a separate question (see Question E.3.3).

Any exchange difference arising on recognizing a *monetary item* at a rate different from that at which it was initially recognized during the period, or recognized in previous financial statements, is recognized in profit or loss surplus or deficit or in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with IPSAS 4 IAS 21 (ED38.120) ~~IAS 39.AG83~~, IPSAS 4.32~~IAS 21.28~~ and IPSAS 4.37 ~~IAS 21.32~~, unless the monetary item is designated as a cash flow hedge of a highly probable forecast transaction in foreign currency, in which case the requirements for recognition of gains and losses on cash flow hedges in ED 38 IAS 39 apply (ED38.106 ~~IAS 39.95~~). Differences arising from recognizing a monetary item at a foreign currency amount different from that at which it was previously recognized are accounted for in a similar manner, since all changes in the carrying amount relating to foreign currency movements should be treated consistently. All other changes in the statement of financial position measurement of a monetary item are recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss or in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in

accordance with ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~. For example, although an entity recognizes gains and losses on available-for-sale monetary financial assets in ~~other comprehensive income~~ net assets/equity (ED38.64(b) ~~IAS 39.55(b)~~), the entity nevertheless recognizes the changes in the carrying amount relating to changes in foreign exchange rates in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (IPSAS 4.27(a) ~~IAS 21.23(a)~~).

Any changes in the carrying amount of a *non-monetary item* are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ or in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in accordance with ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ (ED38.AG120 ~~IAS 39.AG83~~). For example, for available-for-sale financial assets the entire change in the carrying amount, including the effect of changes in foreign currency rates, is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. If the non-monetary item is designated as a cash flow hedge of an unrecognized firm commitment or a highly probable forecast transaction in foreign currency, the requirements for recognition of gains and losses on cash flow hedges in ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ apply (ED38.106 ~~IAS 39.95~~).

When some portion of the change in carrying amount is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ and some portion is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, for example, if the amortized cost of a foreign currency bond classified as available for sale has increased in foreign currency (resulting in a gain in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~) but its fair value has decreased in the functional currency (resulting in a loss recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~), an entity cannot offset those two components for the purposes of determining gains or losses that should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ or in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

E.4 Impairment and Uncollectibility of Financial Assets

E.4.1 Objective Evidence of Impairment

Does ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ require that an entity be able to identify a single, distinct past causative event to conclude that it is probable that an impairment loss on a financial asset has been incurred?

No. ~~ED38.68 IAS 39.59~~ states ‘It may not be possible to identify a single, discrete event that caused the impairment. Rather the combined effect of several events may have caused the impairment.’ Also, ~~IAS 39.60 ED38.69~~ states that ‘a downgrade of an entity’s credit rating is not, of itself, evidence of impairment, although it may be evidence of impairment when considered with other available information’. Other factors that an entity considers in determining whether it has objective evidence that an impairment loss has been incurred include information about the debtors’ or issuers’ liquidity, solvency and business and financial risk exposures, levels of and trends in delinquencies for similar financial assets, national and local economic trends and conditions, and the fair value of collateral and guarantees. These and other factors may, either individually or taken together, provide sufficient objective evidence that an impairment loss has been incurred in a financial asset or group of financial assets.

E.4.2 Impairment: Future Losses

Does ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ permit the recognition of an impairment loss through the establishment of an allowance for future losses when a loan is given? For example, if Entity A lends CU1,000 to Customer B, can it recognize an immediate impairment loss of CU10 if Entity A, based on historical experience, expects that 1 per cent of the principal amount of loans given will not be collected?

No. ~~IAS 39.43 ED38.45~~ requires a financial asset to be initially measured at fair value. For a loan asset, the fair value is the amount of cash lent adjusted for any fees and costs (unless a portion of the amount lent is compensation for other stated or implied rights or privileges). In addition, ~~IAS 39.58 ED38.67~~ requires that an impairment loss is recognized only if there is objective evidence of impairment as a result of a past event that occurred after initial recognition. Accordingly, it is inconsistent with ~~ED 38.45 IAS 39.43~~ and ~~ED38.67 IAS 39.58~~ to reduce the carrying amount of a loan asset on initial recognition through the recognition of an immediate impairment loss.

E.4.3 Assessment of Impairment: Principal and Interest

Because of Customer B’s financial difficulties, Entity A is concerned that Customer B will not be able to make all principal and interest payments due on a loan in a timely manner. It negotiates a restructuring of the loan. Entity A expects that Customer B will be able to meet its obligations under the restructured terms. Would Entity A recognize an impairment loss if the restructured terms are as reflected in any of the following cases?

- (a) Customer B will pay the full principal amount of the original loan five years after the original due date, but none of the interest due under the original terms.
- (b) Customer B will pay the full principal amount of the original loan on the original due date, but none of the interest due under the original terms.
- (c) Customer B will pay the full principal amount of the original loan on the original due date with interest only at a lower interest rate than the interest rate inherent in the original loan.
- (d) Customer B will pay the full principal amount of the original loan five years after the original due date and all interest accrued during the original loan term, but no interest for the extended term.
- (e) Customer B will pay the full principal amount of the original loan five years after the original due date and all interest, including interest for both the original term of the loan and the extended term.

~~IAS 39.58~~ ED38.67 indicates that an impairment loss has been incurred if there is objective evidence of impairment. The amount of the impairment loss for a loan measured at amortized cost is the difference between the carrying amount of the loan and the present value of future principal and interest payments discounted at the loan's original effective interest rate. In cases (a)–(d) above, the present value of the future principal and interest payments discounted at the loan's original effective interest rate will be lower than the carrying amount of the loan. Therefore, an impairment loss is recognized in those cases.

In case (e), even though the timing of payments has changed, the lender will receive interest on interest, and the present value of the future principal and interest payments discounted at the loan's original effective interest rate will equal the carrying amount of the loan. Therefore, there is no impairment loss. However, this fact pattern is unlikely given Customer B's financial difficulties.

E.4.4 Assessment of Impairment: Fair Value Hedge

A loan with fixed interest rate payments is hedged against the exposure to interest rate risk by a receive-variable, pay-fixed interest rate swap. The hedge relationship qualifies for fair value hedge accounting and is reported as a fair value hedge. Thus, the carrying amount of the loan includes an adjustment for fair value changes attributable to movements in interest rates. Should an assessment of impairment in the loan take into account the fair value adjustment for interest rate risk?

Yes. The loan's original effective interest rate before the hedge becomes irrelevant once the carrying amount of the loan is adjusted for any changes in its fair value attributable to interest rate movements. Therefore, the original effective interest rate and amortized cost of the loan are adjusted to take into account recognized fair value changes. The adjusted effective interest rate is calculated using the adjusted carrying amount of the loan.

An impairment loss on the hedged loan is calculated as the difference between its carrying amount after adjustment for fair value changes attributable to the risk being hedged and the estimated future cash flows of the loan discounted at the adjusted effective interest rate. When a loan is included in a portfolio hedge of interest rate risk, the entity should allocate the change in the fair value of the hedged portfolio to the loans (or groups of similar loans) being assessed for impairment on a systematic and rational basis.

E.4.5 Impairment: Provision Matrix

~~An entity financial institution~~ calculates impairment in the unsecured portion of loans and receivables on the basis of a provision matrix that specifies fixed provision rates for the number of days a loan has been classified as non-performing (zero per cent if less than 90 days, 20 per cent if 90–180 days, 50 per cent if 181–365 days and 100 per cent if more than 365 days). Can the results be considered to be appropriate for the purpose of calculating the impairment loss on loans and receivables under ~~IAS 39.63~~ ED38.72?

Not necessarily. ~~IAS 39.63~~ ED38.72 requires impairment or bad debt losses to be calculated as the difference between the asset's carrying amount and the present value of estimated future cash flows discounted at the financial instrument's original effective interest rate.

E.4.6 Impairment: Excess Losses

Does ED 38 IAS 39 permit an entity to recognize impairment or bad debt losses in excess of impairment losses that are determined on the basis of objective evidence about impairment in identified individual financial assets or identified groups of similar financial assets?

No. ED 38 IAS 39 does not permit an entity to recognize impairment or bad debt losses in addition to those that can be attributed to individually identified financial assets or identified groups of financial assets with similar credit risk characteristics (IAS 39.64 ED38.73) on the basis of objective evidence about the existence of impairment in those assets (IAS 39.58 ED38.67). Amounts that an entity might want to set aside for additional possible impairment in financial assets, such as reserves that cannot be supported by objective evidence about impairment, are not recognized as impairment or bad debt losses under ED 38 IAS 39. However, if an entity determines that no objective evidence of impairment exists for an individually assessed financial asset, whether significant or not, it includes the asset in a group of financial assets with similar credit risk characteristics (IAS 39.64 ED38.73).

E.4.7 Recognition of Impairment on a Portfolio

IAS 39.63 ED38.72 requires that impairment be recognized for financial assets carried at amortized cost. IAS 39.64 ED38.73 states that impairment may be measured and recognized individually or on a portfolio basis for a group of similar financial assets. If one asset in the group is impaired but the fair value of another asset in the group is above its amortized cost, does ED 38 IAS 39 allow non-recognition of the impairment of the first asset?

No. If an entity knows that an individual financial asset carried at amortized cost is impaired, ED38.72 IAS 39.63 requires that the impairment of that asset should be recognized. It states: ‘the amount of the loss is measured as the difference between *the asset’s* carrying amount and the present value of estimated future cash flows (excluding future credit losses that have not been incurred) discounted at the financial asset’s original effective interest rate’ (emphasis added). Measurement of impairment on a portfolio basis under IAS 39.64 ED38.73 may be applied to groups of small balance items and to financial assets that are individually assessed and found not to be impaired when there is indication of impairment in a group of similar assets and impairment cannot be identified with an individual asset in that group.

E.4.8 Impairment: Recognition of Collateral

If an impaired financial asset is secured by collateral that does not meet the recognition criteria for assets in other Standards, is the collateral recognized as an asset separate from the impaired financial asset?

No. The measurement of the impaired financial asset reflects the fair value of the collateral. The collateral is not recognized as an asset separate from the impaired financial asset unless it meets the recognition criteria for an asset in another Standard.

E.4.9 Impairment of Non-Monetary Available-For-Sale Financial Asset

If a non-monetary financial asset, such as an equity instrument, measured at fair value with gains and losses recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income becomes impaired, should the cumulative net loss recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income, including any portion attributable to foreign currency changes, be recognized in ~~reclassified from equity to~~ surplus or deficit profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment?

Yes. ED38.76 IAS 39.67 states that when a decline in the fair value of an available-for-sale financial asset has been recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income and there is objective evidence that the asset is impaired, the cumulative net loss that had been recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income should be ~~reclassified from equity to~~ recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss even though the asset has not been derecognized. Any portion of the cumulative net loss that is attributable to foreign currency changes on that asset that had been recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income is also ~~recognized in~~ reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss. Any subsequent losses, including any portion attributable to foreign currency changes, are also ~~recognized in~~ reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit profit or loss until the asset is derecognized.

E.4.10 Impairment: Whether the Available-For-Sale Reserve in Net Assets/Equity can be Negative

ED 38 IAS 39 requires that gains and losses arising from changes in fair value on available-for-sale financial assets are recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. If the aggregate fair value of such assets is less than their carrying amount, should the aggregate net loss that has been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ be recognized in reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment~~?

Not necessarily. The relevant criterion is not whether the aggregate fair value is less than the carrying amount, but whether there is objective evidence that a financial asset or group of assets is impaired. An entity assesses at the end of each reporting period whether there is any objective evidence that a financial asset or group of assets may be impaired, in accordance with ED38.68-70 ~~IAS 39.59-61~~. ~~IAS 39.60~~ ED38.69 states that a downgrade of an entity's credit rating is not, of itself, evidence of impairment, although it may be evidence of impairment when considered with other available information. Additionally, a decline in the fair value of a financial asset below its cost or amortized cost is not necessarily evidence of impairment (for example, a decline in the fair value of an investment in a debt instrument that results from an increase in the basic, risk-free interest rate).

Section F Hedging

F.1 Hedging Instruments

F1.1 Hedging the Fair Value Exposure of a Bond Denominated in a Foreign Currency

Entity J, whose functional currency is the Japanese yen, has issued 5 million five-year US dollar fixed rate debt. Also, it owns a 5 million five-year fixed rate US dollar bond which it has classified as available for sale. Can Entity J designate its US dollar liability as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge of the entire fair value exposure of its US dollar bond?

No. ~~IAS 39.72~~ ED38.81 permits a non-derivative to be used as a hedging instrument only for a hedge of a foreign currency risk. Entity J's bond has a fair value exposure to foreign currency and interest rate changes and credit risk.

Alternatively, can the US dollar liability be designated as a fair value hedge or cash flow hedge of the foreign currency component of the bond?

Yes. However, hedge accounting is unnecessary because the amortized cost of the hedging instrument and the hedged item are both remeasured using closing rates. Regardless of whether Entity J designates the relationship as a cash flow hedge or a fair value hedge, the effect on surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ is the same. Any gain or loss on the non-derivative hedging instrument designated as a cash flow hedge is immediately recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ to correspond with the recognition of the change in spot rate on the hedged item in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ as required by IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~.

F.1.2 Hedging with a Non-Derivative Financial Asset or Liability

Entity J's functional currency is the Japanese yen. It has issued a fixed rate debt instrument with semi-annual interest payments that matures in two years with principal due at maturity of 5 million US dollars. It has also entered into a fixed price sales commitment for 5 million US dollars that matures in two years and is not accounted for as a derivative because it meets the exemption for normal sales in paragraph 4. Can Entity J designate its US dollar liability as a fair value hedge of the entire fair value exposure of its fixed price sales commitment and qualify for hedge accounting?

No. ~~IAS 39.72~~ ED38.81 permits a non-derivative asset or liability to be used as a hedging instrument only for a hedge of a foreign currency risk.

Alternatively, can Entity J designate its US dollar liability as a cash flow hedge of the foreign currency exposure associated with the future receipt of US dollars on the fixed price sales commitment?

Yes. ED 38 IAS 39 permits the designation of a non-derivative asset or liability as a hedging instrument in either a cash flow hedge or a fair value hedge of the exposure to changes in foreign exchange rates of a firm commitment (~~IAS 39.87~~ ED38.97). Any gain or loss on the non-derivative hedging instrument that is

recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ during the period preceding the future sale is recognized in ~~reclassified from equity to surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment when the sale takes place (~~IAS 39.95~~ ED38.106).

Alternatively, can Entity J designate the sales commitment as the hedging instrument instead of the hedged item?

No. Only a derivative instrument or a non-derivative financial asset or liability can be designated as a hedging instrument in a hedge of a foreign currency risk. A firm commitment cannot be designated as a hedging instrument. However, if the foreign currency component of the sales commitment is required to be separated as an embedded derivative under ~~IAS 39.14~~ ED38.12 and ~~ED38.AG45~~ IAS 39.AG33(d), it could be designated as a hedging instrument in a hedge of the exposure to changes in the fair value of the maturity amount of the debt attributable to foreign currency risk.

F1.3 Hedge Accounting: Use of Written Options in Combined Hedging Instruments

Issue (a) – Does ~~ED38.AG131~~ IAS 39.AG94 preclude the use of an interest rate collar or other derivative instrument that combines a written option component and a purchased option component as a hedging instrument?

It depends. An interest rate collar or other derivative instrument that includes a written option cannot be designated as a hedging instrument if it is a net written option, because ED38.AG131 ~~IAS 39.AG94~~ precludes the use of a written option as a hedging instrument unless it is designated as an offset to a purchased option. An interest rate collar or other derivative instrument that includes a written option may be designated as a hedging instrument, however, if the combination is a net purchased option or zero cost collar.

Issue (b) – What factors indicate that an interest rate collar or other derivative instrument that combines a written option component and a purchased option component is not a net written option?

The following factors taken together suggest that an interest rate collar or other derivative instrument that includes a written option is not a net written option.

- (a) No net premium is received either at inception or over the life of the combination of options. The distinguishing feature of a written option is the receipt of a premium to compensate the writer for the risk incurred.
- (b) Except for the strike prices, the critical terms and conditions of the written option component and the purchased option component are the same (including underlying variable or variables, currency denomination and maturity date). Also, the notional amount of the written option component is not greater than the notional amount of the purchased option component.

F.1.4 Internal Hedges

Some entities use internal derivative contracts (internal hedges) to transfer risk exposures between different entities/companies within an economic entity a group or divisions within a single legal entity. Does ED38.82 ~~IAS 39.73~~ prohibit hedge accounting in such cases?

Yes, if the derivative contracts are internal to the entity being reported on. ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 does not specify how an entity should manage its risk. However, it states that internal hedging transactions do not qualify for hedge accounting. This applies both (a) in consolidated financial statements for ~~intragroup~~ hedging transactions within an economic entity, and (b) in the individual or separate financial statements of a legal entity for hedging transactions between divisions in the entity. The principles of preparing consolidated financial statements in IPSAS 6.45 ~~IAS 27.24~~ requires that '~~intragroup~~ Balances, transactions, revenue income and expenses within the economic entity shall be eliminated in full'.

On the other hand, ~~an intragroup~~ hedging transaction within an economic entity may be designated as a hedge in the individual or separate financial statements of an individual entity-group entity, if the ~~intragroup~~ transaction is an external transaction from the perspective of the economic group entity. In addition, if the internal contract is offset with an external party the external contract may be regarded as the hedging instrument and the hedging relationship may qualify for hedge accounting.

The following summarizes the application of ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 to internal hedging transactions.

- ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 does not preclude an entity from using internal derivative contracts for risk management purposes and it does not preclude internal derivatives from being accumulated at the treasury level or some other central location so that risk can be managed on an entity-wide basis or at some higher level than the separate legal entity or division.
- Internal derivative contracts between two separate entities within an ~~consolidated group~~ economic entity can qualify for hedge accounting by those entities in their individual or separate financial statements, even though the internal contracts are not offset by derivative contracts with a party external to the economic entity ~~consolidated group~~.
- Internal derivative contracts between two separate divisions within the same legal entity can qualify for hedge accounting in the individual or separate financial statements of that legal entity only if those contracts are offset by derivative contracts with a party external to the legal entity.
- Internal derivative contracts between separate divisions within the same legal entity and between separate entities within the economic entity ~~consolidated group~~ can qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements only if the internal contracts are offset by derivative contracts with a party external to the economic entity ~~consolidated group~~.
- If the internal derivative contracts are not offset by derivative contracts with external parties, the use of hedge accounting by ~~individual group~~ entities and divisions using internal contracts must be reversed on consolidation.

To illustrate: the ~~banking~~ treasury division of Entity A enters into an internal interest rate swap with ~~another the trading~~ division of the same entity. The purpose is to hedge the interest rate risk exposure of a loan (or group of similar loans) in the loan portfolio. Under the swap, the ~~treasury banking~~ division pays fixed interest payments to the trading division and receives variable interest rate payments in return.

If a hedging instrument is not acquired from an external party, ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 does not allow hedge accounting treatment for the hedging transaction undertaken by the ~~banking and trading~~ treasury and other divisions. ED38.82 IAS 39.73 indicates that only derivatives that involve a party external to the entity can be designated as hedging instruments and, further, that any gains or losses on ~~intragroup or intra-entity~~ transactions within an economic entity or within individual entities should be eliminated on consolidation. Therefore, transactions between different divisions within Entity A do not qualify for hedge accounting treatment in the financial statements of Entity A. Similarly, transactions between different entities within an economic entity ~~a group~~ do not qualify for hedge accounting treatment in consolidated financial statements.

However, if in addition to the internal swap in the above example the trading division enters into an interest rate swap or other contract with an external party that offsets the exposure hedged in the internal swap, hedge accounting is permitted under ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39. For the purposes of ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39, the hedged item is the loan (or group of similar loans) in the ~~treasury banking~~ division and the hedging instrument is the external interest rate swap or other contract.

The trading division may aggregate several internal swaps or portions of them that are not offsetting each other and enter into a single third party derivative contract that offsets the aggregate exposure. Under ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39, such external hedging transactions may qualify for hedge accounting treatment provided that the hedged items in the ~~treasury banking~~ division are identified and the other conditions for hedge accounting are met. It should be noted, however, that ED38.88 IAS 39.79 does not permit hedge accounting treatment for held-to-maturity investments if the hedged risk is the exposure to interest rate changes.

F.1.5 Offsetting Internal Derivative Contracts Used to Manage Interest Rate Risk

If a central treasury function enters into internal derivative contracts with controlled entities ~~subsidiaries~~ and various divisions within the economic entity ~~consolidated group~~ to manage interest rate risk on a centralized basis, can those contracts qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements if, before laying off the risk, the internal contracts are first netted against each other and only the net exposure is offset in the marketplace with external derivative contracts?

No. An internal contract designated at the ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~ level or by a division as a hedge results in the recognition of changes in the fair value of the item being hedged in ~~surplus or deficit~~ profit or loss (a fair value hedge) or in the recognition of the changes in the fair value of the internal derivative in net

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

~~assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ (a cash flow hedge). There is no basis for changing the measurement attribute of the item being hedged in a fair value hedge unless the exposure is offset with an external derivative. There is also no basis for recognizing the gain or loss on the internal derivative in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ for one entity and recognizing it in ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ by the other entity unless it is offset with an external derivative. In cases where two or more internal derivatives are used to manage interest rate risk on assets or liabilities at the ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~ or division level and those internal derivatives are offset at the treasury level, the effect of designating the internal derivatives as hedging instruments is that the hedged non-derivative exposures at the ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~ or division levels would be used to offset each other on consolidation. Accordingly, since ~~IAS 39.72 ED38.81~~ does not permit designating non-derivatives as hedging instruments, except for foreign currency exposures, the results of hedge accounting from the use of internal derivatives at the ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~ or division level that are not laid off with external parties must be reversed on consolidation.

It should be noted, however, that there will be no effect on ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ and ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ of reversing the effect of hedge accounting in consolidation for internal derivatives that offset each other at the consolidation level if they are used in the same type of hedging relationship at the ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~ or division level and, in the case of cash flow hedges, where the hedged items affect ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ in the same period. Just as the internal derivatives offset at the treasury level, their use as fair value hedges by two separate entities or divisions within the consolidated group will also result in the offset of the fair value amounts recognized in ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~, and their use as cash flow hedges by two separate entities or divisions within the ~~economic entity consolidated group~~ will also result in the fair value amounts being offset against each other in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~. However, there may be an effect on individual line items in both the consolidated statement of changes in ~~net assets/equity comprehensive income~~ and the consolidated statement of financial position, for example when internal derivatives that hedge assets (or liabilities) in a fair value hedge are offset by internal derivatives that are used as a fair value hedge of other assets (or liabilities) that are recognized in a different line item in the statement of financial position or statement of ~~changes in net assets/equity comprehensive income~~. In addition, to the extent that one of the internal contracts is used as a cash flow hedge and the other is used in a fair value hedge, gains and losses recognized would not offset since the gain (or loss) on the internal derivative used as a fair value hedge would be recognized in ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ and the corresponding loss (or gain) on the internal derivative used as a cash flow hedge would be recognized in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~.

Question F.1.4 describes the application of ~~IAS 39 ED 38~~ to internal hedging transactions.

F.1.6 Offsetting Internal Derivative Contracts Used to Manage Foreign Currency Risk

If a central treasury function enters into internal derivative contracts with ~~controlled entities subsidiaries~~ and various divisions within the ~~economic entity consolidated group~~ to manage foreign currency risk on a centralized basis, can those contracts be used as a basis for identifying external transactions that qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements if, before laying off the risk, the internal contracts are first netted against each other and only the net exposure is offset by entering into a derivative contract with an external party?

It depends. ~~IAS 27 IPSAS 6~~, “Consolidated and Separate Financial Statements” requires all internal transactions to be eliminated in consolidated financial statements. As stated in ~~ED38.82 IAS 39.73~~, internal hedging transactions do not qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements of the ~~economic entity group~~. Therefore, if an entity wishes to achieve hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements, it must designate a hedging relationship between a qualifying external hedging instrument and a qualifying hedged item.

As discussed in Question F.1.5, the accounting effect of two or more internal derivatives that are used to manage interest rate risk at the ~~controlled entity subsidiary~~ or division level and are offset at the treasury level is that the hedged non-derivative exposures at those levels would be used to offset each other on consolidation. There is no effect on ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~ or ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ if (a) the internal derivatives are used in the same type of hedge relationship (i.e. fair value or cash flow hedges) and (b), in the case of cash flow hedges, any derivative gains and losses that are initially recognized in ~~net assets/equity other comprehensive income~~ are recognized in reclassified from equity to

~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit in the same period(s). When these two conditions are met, the gains and losses on the internal derivatives that are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ or in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ will offset on consolidation resulting in the same surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ as if the derivatives had been eliminated. However, there may be an effect on individual line items, in both the consolidated statement of changes in net assets/equity ~~comprehensive income~~ and the consolidated statement of financial position, that would need to be eliminated. In addition, there is an effect on surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ if some of the offsetting internal derivatives are used in cash flow hedges, while others are used in fair value hedges. There is also an effect on surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ for offsetting internal derivatives that are used in cash flow hedges if the derivative gains and losses that are initially recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ are reclassified from equity to are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in different periods (because the hedged items affect surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in different periods).

As regards foreign currency risk, provided that the internal derivatives represent the transfer of foreign currency risk on underlying non-derivative financial assets or liabilities, hedge accounting can be applied because ~~IAS 39.72~~ ED38.81 permits a non-derivative financial asset or liability to be designated as a hedging instrument for hedge accounting purposes for a hedge of a foreign currency risk. Accordingly, in this case the internal derivative contracts can be used as a basis for identifying external transactions that qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements even if they are offset against each other. However, for consolidated financial statements, it is necessary to designate the hedging relationship so that it involves only external transactions.

Furthermore, the entity cannot apply hedge accounting to the extent that two or more offsetting internal derivatives represent the transfer of foreign currency risk on underlying forecast transactions or unrecognized firm commitments. This is because an unrecognized firm commitment or forecast transaction does not qualify as a hedging instrument under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~. Accordingly, in this case the internal derivatives cannot be used as a basis for identifying external transactions that qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements. As a result, any cumulative net gain or loss on an internal derivative that has been included in the initial carrying amount of an asset or liability (basis adjustment) or recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ would have to be reversed on consolidation if it cannot be demonstrated that the offsetting internal derivative represented the transfer of a foreign currency risk on a financial asset or liability to an external hedging instrument.

F.1.7 Internal Derivatives: Examples of Applying Question F.1.6

In each case, FC = foreign currency, LC = local currency (which is the entity's functional currency), and TC = treasury centre.

Case 1 Offset of Fair Value Hedges

~~Subsidiary~~ Controlled entity A has trade receivables of FC100, due in 60 days, which it hedges using a forward contract with TC. ~~Controlled entity~~ Subsidiary B has payables of FC50, also due in 60 days, which it hedges using a forward contract with TC.

TC nets the two internal derivatives and enters into a net external forward contract to pay FC50 and receive LC in 60 days.

At the end of month 1, FC weakens against LC. A incurs a foreign exchange loss of LC10 on its receivables, offset by a gain of LC10 on its forward contract with TC. B makes a foreign exchange gain of LC5 on its payables offset by a loss of LC5 on its forward contract with TC. TC makes a loss of LC10 on its internal forward contract with A, a gain of LC5 on its internal forward contract with B, and a gain of LC5 on its external forward contract.

At the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the individual or separate financial statements of A, B and TC. Entries reflecting ~~intragroup~~ transactions or events within the economic entity are shown in italics.

A's entries

Dr Foreign exchange loss	LC10	
Cr Receivables		LC10
Dr Internal contract TC	LC10	
Cr Internal gain TC		LC10

B's entries

Dr Payables	LC5	
Cr Foreign exchange gain		LC5
Dr Internal loss TC	LC5	
Cr Internal contract TC		LC5

TC's entries

Dr Internal loss A	LC10	
Cr Internal contract A		LC10
Dr Internal contract B	LC5	
Cr Internal gain B		LC5
Dr External forward contract	LC5	
Cr Foreign exchange gain		LC5

Both A and B could apply hedge accounting in their individual financial statements provided all conditions in ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 are met. However, in this case, no hedge accounting is required because gains and losses on the internal derivatives and the offsetting losses and gains on the hedged receivables and payables are recognized immediately in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ of A and B without hedge accounting.

In the consolidated financial statements, the internal derivative transactions are eliminated. In economic terms, the payable in B hedges FC50 of the receivables in A. The external forward contract in TC hedges the remaining FC50 of the receivable in A. Hedge accounting is not necessary in the consolidated financial statements because monetary items are measured at spot foreign exchange rates under IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 21~~ irrespective of whether hedge accounting is applied.

The net balances before and after elimination of the accounting entries relating to the internal derivatives are the same, as set out below. Accordingly, there is no need to make any further accounting entries to meet the requirements of ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~.

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Receivables	–	LC10
Payables	LC5	–
External forward contract	LC5	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

Case 2 Offset of Cash Flow Hedges

To extend the example, A also has highly probable future revenues of FC200 on which it expects to receive cash in 90 days. B has highly probable future expenses of FC500 (rental for offices ~~advertising cost~~), also to be paid for in 90 days. A and B enter into separate forward contracts with TC to hedge these exposures and TC enters into an external forward contract to receive FC300 in 90 days.

As before, FC weakens at the end of month 1. A incurs a ‘loss’ of LC20 on its anticipated revenues because the LC value of these revenues decreases. This is offset by a ‘gain’ of LC20 on its forward contract with TC.

B incurs a ‘gain’ of LC50 on its anticipated advertising cost because the LC value of the expense decreases. This is offset by a ‘loss’ of LC50 on its transaction with TC.

TC incurs a ‘gain’ of LC50 on its internal transaction with B, a ‘loss’ of LC20 on its internal transaction with A and a loss of LC30 on its external forward contract.

A and B complete the necessary documentation, the hedges are effective, and both A and B qualify for hedge accounting in their individual financial statements. A recognizes the gain of LC20 on its internal derivative transaction in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ and B recognizes the loss of LC50 in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. TC does not claim hedge accounting, but measures both its internal and external derivative positions at fair value, which net to zero.

At the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the individual or separate financial statements of A, B and TC. Entries reflecting ~~intragroup~~ transactions or events within the economic entity are shown in italics.

A’s entries

<i>Dr</i>	<i>Internal contract TC</i>	<i>LC20</i>	
	<i>Cr</i>	<i>Other comprehensive income</i>	<i><u>Net assets/equity</u></i> LC20

B’s entries

<i>Dr</i>	<i>Other comprehensive income</i>	<i><u>Net assets/equity</u></i> LC50	
	<i>Cr</i>	<i>Internal contract TC</i>	<i>LC50</i>

TC’s entries

<i>Dr</i>	<i>Internal loss A</i>	<i>LC20</i>	
	<i>Cr</i>	<i>Internal contract Cr A</i>	<i>LC20</i>
<i>Dr</i>	<i>Internal contract B</i>	<i>LC50</i>	
	<i>Cr</i>	<i>Internal gain B</i>	<i>LC50</i>
<i>Dr</i>	<i>Foreign exchange loss</i>	<i>LC30</i>	
	<i>Cr</i>	<i>External forward contract</i>	<i>LC30</i>

For the consolidated financial statements, TC’s external forward contract on FC300 is designated, at the beginning of month 1, as a hedging instrument of the first FC300 of B’s highly probable future expenses. ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 requires that in the consolidated financial statements at the end of month 1, the accounting effects of the internal derivative transactions must be eliminated.

However, the net balances before and after elimination of the accounting entries relating to the internal derivatives are the same, as set out below. Accordingly, there is no need to make any further accounting entries in order for the requirements of ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 to be met.

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
External forward contract	–	LC30
Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>	LC30	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

Case 3 Offset of Fair Value and Cash Flow Hedges

Assume that the exposures and the internal derivative transactions are the same as in cases 1 and 2. However, instead of entering into two external derivatives to hedge separately the fair value and cash flow exposures, TC enters into a single net external derivative to receive FC250 in exchange for LC in 90 days.

TC has four internal derivatives, two maturing in 60 days and two maturing in 90 days. These are offset by a net external derivative maturing in 90 days. The interest rate differential between FC and LC is minimal, and therefore the ineffectiveness resulting from the mismatch in maturities is expected to have a minimal effect on surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in TC.

As in cases 1 and 2, A and B apply hedge accounting for their cash flow hedges and TC measures its derivatives at fair value. A recognizes a gain of LC20 on its internal derivative transaction in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ and B recognizes a loss of LC50 on its internal derivative transaction in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

At the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the individual or separate financial statements of A, B and TC. Entries reflecting ~~intragroup~~ transactions or events within the economic entity are shown in italics.

A's entries

Dr Foreign exchange loss	LC10	
Cr Receivables		LC10
Dr Internal contract TC	LC10	
Cr Internal gain TC		LC10
Dr Internal contract TC	LC20	
Cr Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>		LC20

B's entries

Dr Payables	LC5	
Cr Foreign exchange gain		LC5
Dr Internal loss TC	LC5	
Cr Internal contract TC		LC5
Dr Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>	LC50	
Cr Internal contract TC		LC50

TC's entries

<i>Dr Internal loss A</i>	<i>LC10</i>	
<i>Cr Internal contract A</i>		<i>LC10</i>
<i>Dr Internal loss A</i>	<i>LC20</i>	
<i>Cr Internal contract A</i>		<i>LC20</i>
<i>Dr Internal contract B</i>	<i>LC5</i>	
<i>Cr Internal gain B</i>		<i>LC5</i>
<i>Dr Internal contract B</i>	<i>LC50</i>	
<i>Cr Internal gain B</i>		<i>LC50</i>
Dr Foreign exchange loss	LC25	
Cr External forward contract		LC25

<i>TOTAL (for the internal derivatives)</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>Total</i>
	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>	<i>TC</i>
<u>Surplus or deficit</u> Profit or loss (fair value hedges)	10	(5)	5
<u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income (cash flow hedges)	20	(50)	(30)
Total	30	(55)	(25)

Combining these amounts with the external transactions (i.e. those not marked in italics above) produces the total net balances before elimination of the internal derivatives as follows:

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Receivables	–	LC10
Payables	LC5	–
Forward contract	–	LC25
<u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income	LC30	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

For the consolidated financial statements, the following designations are made at the beginning of month 1:

- the payable of FC50 in B is designated as a hedge of the first FC50 of the highly probable future revenues in A. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the consolidated financial statements: Dr Payable LC5; Cr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC5;
- the receivable of FC100 in A is designated as a hedge of the first FC100 of the highly probable future expenses in B. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the consolidated financial statements: Dr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC10; Cr Receivable LC10; and
- the external forward contract on FC250 in TC is designated as a hedge of the next FC250 of highly probable future expenses in B. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the

consolidated financial statements: Dr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC25; Cr External forward contract LC25.

In the consolidated financial statements at the end of month 1, ED 38 IAS 39 requires the accounting effects of the internal derivative transactions to be eliminated.

However, the total net balances before and after elimination of the accounting entries relating to the internal derivatives are the same, as set out below. Accordingly, there is no need to make any further accounting entries to meet the requirements of ED 38 IAS 39.

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Receivables	–	LC10
Payables	LC5	–
Forward contract	–	LC25
Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>	LC30	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

Case 4 Offset of Fair Value and Cash Flow Hedges with Adjustment to Carrying Amount of Inventory

Assume similar transactions as in case 3, except that the anticipated cash outflow of FC500 in B relates to the purchase of inventory that is delivered after 60 days. Assume also that the entity has a policy of basis-adjusting hedged forecast non-financial items. At the end of month 2, there are no further changes in exchange rates or fair values. At that date, the inventory is delivered and the loss of LC50 on B's internal derivative, recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ in month 1, is adjusted against the carrying amount of inventory in B. The gain of LC20 on A's internal derivative is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ as before.

In the consolidated financial statements, there is now a mismatch compared with the result that would have been achieved by unwinding and redesignating the hedges. The external derivative (FC250) and a proportion of the receivable (FC50) offset FC300 of the anticipated inventory purchase. There is a natural hedge between the remaining FC200 of anticipated cash outflow in B and the anticipated cash inflow of FC200 in A. This relationship does not qualify for hedge accounting under ED38 IAS 39 and this time there is only a partial offset between gains and losses on the internal derivatives that hedge these amounts.

At the end of months 1 and 2, the following entries are made in the individual or separate financial statements of A, B and TC. Entries reflecting ~~intragroup~~ transactions or events within the economic entity are shown in italics.

A's entries (all at the end of month 1)

Dr Foreign exchange loss	LC10	
Cr Receivables		LC10
<i>Dr Internal contract TC</i>	<i>LC10</i>	
<i>Cr Internal gain TC</i>		<i>LC10</i>
<i>Dr Internal contract TC</i>	<i>LC20</i>	
<i>Cr</i> Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>		<i>LC20</i>

B's entries

At the end of month 1:

Dr Payables	LC5	
Cr Foreign exchange gain		LC5
Dr <i>Internal loss TC</i>	<i>LC5</i>	
Cr <i>Internal contract TC</i>		<i>LC5</i>
Dr Other comprehensive income <i>Net assets/equity</i>	<i>LC50</i>	
Cr <i>Internal contract TC</i>		<i>LC50</i>

At the end of month 2:

Dr Inventory	LC50	
Cr Other comprehensive income <i>Net assets/equity</i>		LC50

TC's entries (all at the end of month 1)

Dr <i>Internal loss A</i>	<i>LC10</i>	
Cr <i>Internal contract A</i>		<i>LC10</i>
Dr <i>Internal loss A</i>	<i>LC20</i>	
Cr <i>Internal contract A</i>		<i>LC20</i>
Dr <i>Internal contract B</i>	<i>LC5</i>	
Cr <i>Internal gain B</i>		<i>LC5</i>
Dr <i>Internal contract B</i>	<i>LC50</i>	
Cr <i>Internal gain B</i>		<i>LC50</i>
Dr Foreign exchange loss	LC25	
Cr Forward		LC25

<i>TOTAL (for the internal derivatives)</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>Total</i>
	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>	<i>TC</i>
Surplus or deficit Profit or loss (fair value hedges)	10	(5)	5
Net assets/equity Other comprehensive income (cash flow hedges)	20	–	20
Basis adjustment (inventory)	–	(50)	(50)
Total	30	(55)	(25)

Combining these amounts with the external transactions (i.e. those not marked in italics above) produces the total net balances before elimination of the internal derivatives as follows:

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Receivables	–	LC10
Payables	LC5	–
Forward contract	–	LC25
<u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income	–	LC20
Basis adjustment (inventory)	LC50	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

For the consolidated financial statements, the following designations are made at the beginning of month 1:

- the payable of FC50 in B is designated as a hedge of the first FC50 of the highly probable future revenues in A. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entry is made in the consolidated financial statements: Dr Payables LC5; Cr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC5.
- the receivable of FC100 in A is designated as a hedge of the first FC100 of the highly probable future expenses in B. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entries are made in the consolidated financial statements: Dr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC10; Cr Receivable LC10; and at the end of month 2, Dr Inventory LC10; Cr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC10.
- the external forward contract on FC250 in TC is designated as a hedge of the next FC250 of highly probable future expenses in B. Therefore, at the end of month 1, the following entry is made in the consolidated financial statements: Dr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC25; Cr External forward contract LC25; and at the end of month 2, Dr Inventory LC25; Cr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ LC25.

The total net balances after elimination of the accounting entries relating to the internal derivatives are as follows:

	<i>Debit</i>	<i>Credit</i>
Receivables	–	LC10
Payables	LC5	–
Forward contract	–	LC25
<u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income	–	LC5
Basis adjustment (inventory)	LC35	–
Gains and losses	–	–
Internal contracts	–	–

These total net balances are different from those that would be recognized if the internal derivatives were not eliminated, and it is these net balances that ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ requires to be included in the consolidated financial statements. The accounting entries required to adjust the total net balances before elimination of the internal derivatives are as follows:

- to reclassify LC15 of the loss on B's internal derivative that is included in inventory to reflect that FC150 of the forecast purchase of inventory is not hedged by an external instrument (neither the external forward contract of FC250 in TC nor the external payable of FC100 in A); and
- to reclassify the gain of LC15 on A's internal derivative to reflect that the forecast revenues of FC150 to which it relates is not hedged by an external instrument.

The net effect of these two adjustments is as follows:

Dr	Net assets/equity Other comprehensive income	LC15
	Cr Inventory	LC15

F.1.8 Combination of Written and Purchased Options

In most cases, ~~IAS 39.AG94~~ ED38.AG131 prohibits the use of written options as hedging instruments. If a combination of a written option and purchased option (such as an interest rate collar) is transacted as a single instrument with one counterparty, can an entity split the derivative instrument into its written option component and purchased option component and designate the purchased option component as a hedging instrument?

No. ~~IAS 39.74~~ ED38.83 specifies that a hedging relationship is designated by an entity for a hedging instrument in its entirety. The only exceptions permitted are splitting the time value and intrinsic value of an option and splitting the interest element and spot price on a forward. Question F.1.3 addresses the issue of whether and when a combination of options is considered as a written option.

F.1.9 Delta-Neutral Hedging Strategy

Does ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 permit an entity to apply hedge accounting for a ‘delta-neutral’ hedging strategy and other dynamic hedging strategies under which the quantity of the hedging instrument is constantly adjusted in order to maintain a desired hedge ratio, for example, to achieve a delta-neutral position insensitive to changes in the fair value of the hedged item?

Yes. ~~IAS 39.74~~ ED38.83 states that ‘a dynamic hedging strategy that assesses both the intrinsic value and time value of an option contract can qualify for hedge accounting’. For example, a portfolio insurance strategy that seeks to ensure that the fair value of the hedged item does not drop below a certain level, while allowing the fair value to increase, may qualify for hedge accounting.

To qualify for hedge accounting, the entity must document how it will monitor and update the hedge and measure hedge effectiveness, be able to track properly all terminations and redesignations of the hedging instrument, and demonstrate that all other criteria for hedge accounting in ~~IAS 39.88~~ ED38.98 are met. Also, it must be able to demonstrate an expectation that the hedge will be highly effective for a specified short period of time during which the hedge is not expected to be adjusted.

F.1.10 Hedging Instrument: Out of the Money Put Option

Entity A has an investment in one share of Entity B, which it has classified as available for sale. To give itself partial protection against decreases in the share price of Entity B, Entity A acquires a put option on one share of Entity B and designates the change in the intrinsic value of the put as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge of changes in the fair value of its share in Entity B. The put gives Entity A the right to sell one share of Entity B at a strike price of CU90. At the inception of the hedging relationship, the share has a quoted price of CU100. Since the put option gives Entity A the right to dispose of the share at a price of CU90, the put should normally be fully effective in offsetting price declines below CU90 on an intrinsic value basis. Price changes above CU90 are not hedged. In this case, are changes in the fair value of the share of Entity B for prices above CU90 regarded as hedge ineffectiveness under ~~IAS 39.88~~ ED38.98 and recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss under ED38.99 ~~IAS 39.89~~?

No. ~~IAS 39.74~~ ED38.83 permits Entity A to designate changes in the intrinsic value of the option as the hedging instrument. The changes in the intrinsic value of the option provide protection against the risk of variability in the fair value of one share of Entity B below or equal to the strike price of the put of CU90. For prices above CU90, the option is out of the money and has no intrinsic value. Accordingly, gains and losses on one share of Entity B for prices above CU90 are not attributable to the hedged risk for the purposes of assessing hedge effectiveness and recognizing gains and losses on the hedged item.

Therefore, Entity A recognizes changes in the fair value of the share in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ if it is associated with variation in its price above CU90 (~~IAS 39.55~~ and ~~IAS 39.90~~ ED38.64 and ED38.101). Changes in the fair value of the share associated with price declines below CU90

form part of the designated fair value hedge and are recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss under ED38.99(b) IAS 39.89(b). Assuming the hedge is effective, those changes are offset by changes in the intrinsic value of the put, which are also recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss (IAS 39.89(a) ED38.99(a)). Changes in the time value of the put are excluded from the designated hedging relationship and recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss under ED38.65(a) IAS 39.55(a).

F.1.11 Hedging Instrument: Proportion of the Cash Flows of a Cash Instrument

In the case of foreign exchange risk, a non-derivative financial asset or non-derivative financial liability can potentially qualify as a hedging instrument. Can an entity treat the cash flows for specified periods during which a financial asset or financial liability that is designated as a hedging instrument remains outstanding as a proportion of the hedging instrument under ED38.84 IAS 39.75, and exclude the other cash flows from the designated hedging relationship?

No. IAS 39.75 ED38.84 indicates that a hedging relationship may not be designated for only a portion of the time period in which the hedging instrument is outstanding. For example, the cash flows during the first three years of a ten-year borrowing denominated in a foreign currency cannot qualify as a hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge of the first three years of revenue in the same foreign currency. On the other hand, a non-derivative financial asset or financial liability denominated in a foreign currency may potentially qualify as a hedging instrument in a hedge of the foreign currency risk associated with a hedged item that has a remaining time period until maturity that is equal to or longer than the remaining maturity of the hedging instrument (see Question F.2.16).

F.1.12 Hedges of More Than One Type of Risk

Issue (a) – Normally a hedging relationship is designated between an entire hedging instrument and a hedged item so that there is a single measure of fair value for the hedging instrument. Does this preclude designating a single financial instrument simultaneously as a hedging instrument in both a cash flow hedge and a fair value hedge?

No. For example, entities commonly use a combined interest rate and currency swap to convert a variable rate position in a foreign currency to a fixed rate position in the functional currency. IAS 39.76 ED38.85 allows the swap to be designated separately as a fair value hedge of the currency risk and a cash flow hedge of the interest rate risk provided the conditions in IAS 39.76 ED38.85 are met.

Issue (b) – If a single financial instrument is a hedging instrument in two different hedges, is special disclosure required?

IFRS 7.22 requires disclosures separately for designated fair value hedges, cash flow hedges and hedges of a net investment in a foreign operation. The instrument in question would be reported in the IFRS 7.22 disclosures separately for each type of hedge.

F.1.13 Hedging Instrument: Dual Foreign Currency Forward Exchange Contract

Entity A's functional currency is the Japanese yen. Entity A has a five-year floating rate US dollar liability and a ten-year fixed rate pound sterling-denominated note receivable. The principal amounts of the asset and liability when converted into the Japanese yen are the same. Entity A enters into a single foreign currency forward contract to hedge its foreign currency exposure on both instruments under which it receives US dollars and pays pounds sterling at the end of five years. If Entity A designates the forward exchange contract as a hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge against the foreign currency exposure on the principal repayments of both instruments, can it qualify for hedge accounting?

Yes. ED38.85 IAS 39.76 permits designating a single hedging instrument as a hedge of multiple types of risk if three conditions are met. In this example, the derivative hedging instrument satisfies all of these conditions, as follows.

- (a) The risks hedged can be identified clearly. The risks are the exposures to changes in the exchange rates between US dollars and yen, and yen and pounds, respectively.
- (b) The effectiveness of the hedge can be demonstrated. For the pound sterling loan, the effectiveness is measured as the degree of offset between the fair value of the principal repayment in pounds sterling

and the fair value of the pound sterling payment on the forward exchange contract. For the US dollar liability, the effectiveness is measured as the degree of offset between the fair value of the principal repayment in US dollars and the US dollar receipt on the forward exchange contract. Even though the receivable has a ten-year life and the forward protects it for only the first five years, hedge accounting is permitted for only a portion of the exposure as described in Question F.2.16.

- (c) It is possible to ensure that there is specific designation of the hedging instrument and different risk positions. The hedged exposures are identified as the principal amounts of the liability and the note receivable in their respective currency of denomination.

F.1.14 Concurrent Offsetting Swaps and Use of One as a Hedging Instrument

Entity A enters into an interest rate swap and designates it as a hedge of the fair value exposure associated with fixed rate debt. The fair value hedge meets the hedge accounting criteria of ED 38 IAS 39. Entity A simultaneously enters into a second interest rate swap with the same swap counterparty that has terms that fully offset the first interest rate swap. Is Entity A required to view the two swaps as one unit and therefore precluded from applying fair value hedge accounting to the first swap?

It depends. ED 38 IAS 39 is transaction-based. If the second swap was not entered into in contemplation of the first swap or there is a substantive business purpose for structuring the transactions separately, then the swaps are not viewed as one unit.

For example, some entities have a policy that requires a centralized ~~dealer or treasury~~ (which is a controlled entity in an economic entity) ~~subsidiary~~ to enter into third-party derivative contracts on behalf of other ~~subsidiaries~~ controlled entities within the organization to hedge the ~~controlled entities' subsidiaries'~~ interest rate risk exposures. The ~~dealer or treasury subsidiary~~ also enters into internal derivative transactions with those ~~subsidiaries~~ controlled entities in order to track those hedges operationally within the organization. Because the ~~dealer or treasury subsidiary~~ also enters into derivative contracts as part of its trading operations, or because it may wish to rebalance the risk of its overall portfolio, it may enter into a derivative contract with the same third party during the same business day that has substantially the same terms as a contract entered into as a hedging instrument on behalf of another controlled entity subsidiary. In this case, there is a valid business purpose for entering into each contract.

Judgment is applied to determine whether there is a substantive business purpose for structuring the transactions separately. For example, if the sole purpose is to obtain fair value accounting treatment for the debt, there is no substantive business purpose.

Hedged items F.2

F.2.1 Whether a Derivative can be Designated as a Hedged Item

Does ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 permit designating a derivative instrument (whether a stand-alone or separately recognized embedded derivative) as a hedged item either individually or as part of a hedged group in a fair value or cash flow hedge, for example, by designating a pay-variable, receive-fixed Forward Rate Agreement (FRA) as a cash flow hedge of a pay-fixed, receive-variable FRA?

No. Derivative instruments are always deemed held for trading and measured at fair value with gains and losses recognized in ~~profit or loss~~ surplus or deficit unless they are designated and effective hedging instruments (~~IAS 39.9~~ ED38.10). As an exception, ED38.13 ~~IAS 39.98~~ AG94 permits the designation of a purchased option as the hedged item in a fair value hedge.

F.2.2 Cash Flow Hedge: Anticipated Issue of Fixed Rate Debt

Is hedge accounting allowed for a hedge of an anticipated issue of fixed rate debt?

Yes. This would be a cash flow hedge of a highly probable forecast transaction that will affect surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (~~IAS 39.86~~ ED38.96) provided that the conditions in ~~IAS 39.88~~ ED38.98 are met.

To illustrate: Entity R periodically issues new bonds to refinance maturing bonds, provide working capital and for various other purposes. When Entity R decides it will be issuing bonds, it may hedge the risk of changes in the long-term interest rate from the date it decides to issue the bonds to the date the bonds are

issued. If long-term interest rates go up, the bond will be issued either at a higher rate or with a higher discount or smaller premium than was originally expected. The higher rate being paid or decrease in proceeds is normally offset by the gain on the hedge. If long-term interest rates go down, the bond will be issued either at a lower rate or with a higher premium or a smaller discount than was originally expected. The lower rate being paid or increase in proceeds is normally offset by the loss on the hedge.

For example, in August 2000 Entity R decided it would issue CU200 million seven-year bonds in January 2001. Entity R performed historical correlation studies and determined that a seven-year treasury bond adequately correlates to the bonds Entity R expected to issue, assuming a hedge ratio of 0.93 futures contracts to one debt unit. Therefore, Entity R hedged the anticipated issue of the bonds by selling (shorting) CU186 million worth of futures on seven-year treasury bonds. From August 2000 to January 2001 interest rates increased. The short futures positions were closed in January 2001, the date the bonds were issued, and resulted in a CU1.2 million gain that will offset the increased interest payments on the bonds and, therefore, will affect surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ over the life of the bonds. The hedge qualifies as a cash flow hedge of the interest rate risk on the forecast issue of debt.

F.2.3 Hedge Accounting: Core Deposit Intangibles

Is hedge accounting treatment permitted for a hedge of the fair value exposure of core deposit intangibles?

It depends on whether the core deposit intangible is generated internally or acquired (e.g. as part of an entity ~~a business~~ combination).

Internally generated core deposit intangibles are not recognized as intangible assets under IPSAS XX, “Intangible Assets” ~~IAS 38~~. Because they are not recognized, they cannot be designated as a hedged item.

If a core deposit intangible is acquired together with a related portfolio of deposits, the core deposit intangible is required to be recognized separately as an intangible asset (or as part of the related acquired portfolio of deposits) if it meets the recognition criteria in [paragraph 21] of IPSAS XX ~~IAS 38 Intangible Assets~~. A recognized core deposit intangible asset could be designated as a hedged item, but only if it meets the conditions in paragraph ~~9888~~, including the requirement in paragraph ~~9888(d)~~ that the effectiveness of the hedge can be measured reliably. Because it is often difficult to measure reliably the fair value of a core deposit intangible asset other than on initial recognition, it is unlikely that the requirement in paragraph ~~9888(d)~~ will be met.

F.2.4 Hedge Accounting: Hedging of Future Foreign Currency Revenue Streams

Is hedge accounting permitted for a currency borrowing that hedges an expected but not contractual revenue stream in foreign currency?

Yes, if the revenues are highly probable. Under ED38.96(b) ~~IAS 39.86(b)~~ a hedge of an anticipated sale may qualify as a cash flow hedge. For example, ~~an airline entity~~ an entity which owns and operates a cross-border toll road may use sophisticated models based on experience and economic data to project its revenues in various currencies. If it can demonstrate that forecast revenues for a period of time into the future in a particular currency are ‘highly probable’, as required by ED38.98 ~~IAS 39.88~~, it may designate a currency borrowing as a cash flow hedge of the future revenue stream. The portion of the gain or loss on the borrowing that is determined to be an effective hedge is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ until the revenues occur.

It is unlikely that an entity can reliably predict 100 per cent of revenues for a future year. On the other hand, it is possible that a portion of predicted revenues, normally those expected in the short term, will meet the ‘highly probable’ criterion.

F.2.5 Cash Flow Hedges: ‘All in One’ Hedge

If a derivative instrument is expected to be settled gross by delivery of the underlying asset in exchange for the payment of a fixed price, can the derivative instrument be designated as the hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge of that gross settlement assuming the other cash flow hedge accounting criteria are met?

Yes. A derivative instrument that will be settled gross can be designated as the hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge of the variability of the consideration to be paid or received in the future transaction that will occur on gross settlement of the derivative contract itself because there would be an exposure to variability in the purchase or sale price without the derivative. This applies to all fixed price contracts that are accounted for as derivatives under ED 38 IAS 39.

For example, if an entity enters into a fixed price contract to sell a commodity and that contract is accounted for as a derivative under ED 38 IAS 39 (for example, because the entity has a practice of settling such contracts net in cash or of taking delivery of the underlying and selling it within a short period after delivery for the purpose of generating a profit from short-term fluctuations in price or dealer's margin), the entity may designate the fixed price contract as a cash flow hedge of the variability of the consideration to be received on the sale of the asset (a future transaction) even though the fixed price contract is the contract under which the asset will be sold. Also, if an entity enters into a forward contract to purchase a debt instrument that will be settled by delivery, but the forward contract is a derivative because its term exceeds the regular way delivery period in the marketplace, the entity may designate the forward as a cash flow hedge of the variability of the consideration to be paid to acquire the debt instrument (a future transaction), even though the derivative is the contract under which the debt instrument will be acquired.

F.2.6 Hedge Relationships: Entity-Wide Risk

An entity has a fixed rate asset and a fixed rate liability, each having the same principal amount. Under the terms of the instruments, interest payments on the asset and liability occur in the same period and the net cash flow is always positive because the interest rate on the asset exceeds the interest rate on the liability. The entity enters into an interest rate swap to receive a floating interest rate and pay a fixed interest rate on a notional amount equal to the principal of the asset and designates the interest rate swap as a fair value hedge of the fixed rate asset. Does the hedging relationship qualify for hedge accounting even though the effect of the interest rate swap on an entity-wide basis is to create an exposure to interest rate changes that did not previously exist?

Yes. ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 does not require risk reduction on an entity-wide basis as a condition for hedge accounting. Exposure is assessed on a transaction basis and, in this instance, the asset being hedged has a fair value exposure to interest rate increases that is offset by the interest rate swap.

F.2.7 Cash Flow Hedge: Forecast Transaction Related to an Entity's Net Assets/Equity

Can a forecast transaction in the entity's own equity instruments or forecast dividend or similar payments to owners ~~shareholders~~ be designated as a hedged item in a cash flow hedge?

No. To qualify as a hedged item, the forecast transaction must expose the entity to a particular risk that can affect surplus or deficit profit or loss (IAS 39.86). The classification of financial instruments as liabilities or net assets/equity generally provides the basis for determining whether transactions or other payments relating to such instruments are recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss ~~ED37 (IAS 32)~~. For example, distributions to holders of an equity instrument are debited by the issuer directly to net assets/equity (ED37.40~~IAS 32.35~~). Therefore, such distributions cannot be designated as a hedged item. However, a declared dividend or similar distribution that has not yet been paid and is recognized as a financial liability may qualify as a hedged item, for example, for foreign currency risk if it is denominated in a foreign currency.

F.2.8 Hedge Accounting: Risk of a Transaction Not Occurring

Does ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ permit an entity to apply hedge accounting to a hedge of the risk that a transaction will not occur, for example, if that would result in less revenue to the entity than expected?

No. The risk that a transaction will not occur is an overall operational business risk that is not eligible as a hedged item. Hedge accounting is permitted only for risks associated with recognized assets and liabilities, firm commitments, highly probable forecast transactions and net investments in foreign operations (ED38.96~~IAS 39.86~~).

F.2.9 Held-to-Maturity Investments: Hedging Variable Interest Rate Payments

Can an entity designate a pay-variable, receive-fixed interest rate swap as a cash flow hedge of a variable rate, held-to-maturity investment?

No. It is inconsistent with the designation of a debt investment as being held to maturity to designate a swap as a cash flow hedge of the debt investment's variable interest rate payments. ~~IAS 39.79~~ ED38.88 states that a held-to-maturity investment cannot be a hedged item with respect to interest rate risk or prepayment risk 'because designation of an investment as held to maturity requires an intention to hold the investment until maturity without regard to changes in the fair value or cash flows of such an investment attributable to changes in interest rates'.

F.2.10 Hedged Items: Purchase of Held-to-Maturity Investment

An entity forecasts the purchase of a financial asset that it intends to classify as held to maturity when the forecast transaction occurs. It enters into a derivative contract with the intent to lock in the current interest rate and designates the derivative as a hedge of the forecast purchase of the financial asset. Can the hedging relationship qualify for cash flow hedge accounting even though the asset will be classified as a held-to-maturity investment?

Yes. With respect to interest rate risk, ~~ED 38 IAS 39~~ prohibits hedge accounting for financial assets that are classified as held-to-maturity (~~IAS 39.79~~ ED38.88). However, even though the entity intends to classify the asset as held to maturity, the instrument is not classified as such until the transaction occurs.

F.2.11 Cash Flow Hedges: Reinvestment of Funds Obtained from Held-to-Maturity Investments

An entity owns a variable rate asset that it has classified as held to maturity. It enters into a derivative contract with the intention to lock in the current interest rate on the reinvestment of variable rate cash flows, and designates the derivative as a cash flow hedge of the forecast future interest receipts on debt instruments resulting from the reinvestment of interest receipts on the held-to-maturity asset. Assuming that the other hedge accounting criteria are met, can the hedging relationship qualify for cash flow hedge accounting even though the interest payments that are being reinvested come from an asset that is classified as held to maturity?

Yes. ~~IAS 39.79~~ ED38.88 states that a held-to-maturity investment cannot be a hedged item with respect to interest rate risk. Question F.2.8 specifies that this applies not only to fair value hedges, i.e. hedges of the exposure to fair value interest rate risk associated with held-to-maturity investments that pay fixed interest, but also to cash flow hedges, i.e. hedges of the exposure to cash flow interest rate risk associated with held-to-maturity investments that pay variable interest at current market rates. However, in this instance, the derivative is designated as an offset of the exposure to cash flow risk associated with forecast future interest receipts on debt instruments resulting from the forecast reinvestment of variable rate cash flows on the held-to-maturity investment. The source of the funds forecast to be reinvested is not relevant in determining whether the reinvestment risk can be hedged. Accordingly, designation of the derivative as a cash flow hedge is permitted. This answer applies also to a hedge of the exposure to cash flow risk associated with the forecast future interest receipts on debt instruments resulting from the reinvestment of interest receipts on a fixed rate asset classified as held to maturity.

F.2.12 Hedge Accounting: Prepayable Financial Asset

If the issuer has the right to prepay a financial asset, can the investor designate the cash flows after the prepayment date as part of the hedged item?

Cash flows after the prepayment date may be designated as the hedged item to the extent it can be demonstrated that they are 'highly probable' (~~ED38.98 IAS 39.88~~). For example, cash flows after the prepayment date may qualify as highly probable if they result from a group or pool of similar assets (for example, mortgage loans) for which prepayments can be estimated with a high degree of accuracy or if the prepayment option is significantly out of the money. In addition, the cash flows after the prepayment date may be designated as the hedged item if a comparable option exists in the hedging instrument.

F.2.13 Fair Value Hedge: Risk That Could Affect ~~Profit or Loss~~ Surplus or Deficit

Is fair value hedge accounting permitted for exposure to interest rate risk in fixed rate loans that are classified as loans and receivables?

Yes. Under ~~ED 38~~ IAS 39, loans and receivables are carried at amortized cost. ~~Banking institutions in many entities countries~~ hold the bulk of their loans and receivables until maturity. Thus, changes in the fair value of such loans and receivables that are due to changes in market interest rates will not affect ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~. ~~IAS 39.86 ED38.96~~ specifies that a fair value hedge is a hedge of the exposure to changes in fair value that is attributable to a particular risk and that can affect ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~. Therefore, ~~IAS 39.86 ED38.96~~ may appear to preclude fair value hedge accounting for loans and receivables. However, it follows from ~~IAS 39.79 ED38.88~~ that loans and receivables can be hedged items with respect to interest rate risk since they are not designated as held-to-maturity investments. The entity could sell them and the change in fair values would affect ~~surplus or deficit profit or loss~~. Thus, fair value hedge accounting is ~~permitted for loans and receivables~~.

~~F.2.13 Intragroup and intra-entity Hedging transactions~~

~~An Australian entity, whose functional currency is the Australian dollar, has forecast purchases in Japanese yen that are highly probable. The Australian entity is wholly owned by a Swiss entity, which prepares consolidated financial statements (which include the Australian subsidiary) in Swiss francs. The Swiss parent entity enters into a forward contract to hedge the change in yen relative to the Australian dollar. Can that hedge qualify for hedge accounting in the consolidated financial statements, or must the Australian subsidiary that has the foreign currency exposure be a party to the hedging transaction?~~

The hedge can qualify for hedge accounting provided the other hedge accounting criteria in IAS 39 are met. Since the Australian entity did not hedge the foreign currency exchange risk associated with the forecast purchases in yen, the effects of exchange rate changes between the Australian dollar and the yen will affect the Australian entity's profit or loss and, therefore, would also affect consolidated profit or loss. IAS 39 does not require that the operating unit that is exposed to the risk being hedged be a party to the hedging instrument.

F.2.14 Internal Contracts: Single Offsetting External Derivative

An entity uses what it describes as internal derivative contracts to document the transfer of responsibility for interest rate risk exposures from individual divisions to a central treasury function. The central treasury function aggregates the internal derivative contracts and enters into a single external derivative contract that offsets the internal derivative contracts on a net basis. For example, if the central treasury function has entered into three internal receive-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swaps that lay off the exposure to variable interest cash flows on variable rate liabilities in other divisions and one internal receive-variable, pay-fixed interest rate swap that lays off the exposure to variable interest cash flows on variable rate assets in another division, it would enter into an interest rate swap with an external counterparty that exactly offsets the four internal swaps. Assuming that the hedge accounting criteria are met, in the entity's financial statements would the single offsetting external derivative qualify as a hedging instrument in a hedge of a part of the underlying items on a gross basis?

Yes, but only to the extent the external derivative is designated as an offset of cash inflows or cash outflows on a gross basis. ~~IAS 39.84 ED38.94~~ indicates that a hedge of an overall net position does not qualify for hedge accounting. However, it does permit designating a part of the underlying items as the hedged position on a gross basis. Therefore, even though the purpose of entering into the external derivative was to offset internal derivative contracts on a net basis, hedge accounting is permitted if the hedging relationship is defined and documented as a hedge of a part of the underlying cash inflows or cash outflows on a gross basis. An entity follows the approach outlined in ~~IAS 39.84 ED38.94~~ and ~~IAS 39.AG101 ED38.145~~ to designate part of the underlying cash flows as the hedged position.

F.2.15 Internal Contracts: External Derivative Contracts that are Settled Net

Issue (a) – An entity uses internal derivative contracts to transfer interest rate risk exposures from individual divisions to a central treasury function. For each internal derivative contract, the central treasury function enters into a derivative contract with a single external counterparty that offsets the internal derivative contract. For example, if the central treasury function has entered into a receive-5 per cent-fixed, pay-LIBOR interest rate swap with another division that has entered into the internal contract with central treasury to hedge the exposure to variability in interest cash flows on a pay-

LIBOR borrowing, central treasury would enter into a pay-5 per cent-fixed, receive-LIBOR interest rate swap on the same principal terms with the external counterparty. Although each of the external derivative contracts is formally documented as a separate contract, only the net of the payments on all of the external derivative contracts is settled since there is a netting agreement with the external counterparty. Assuming that the other hedge accounting criteria are met, can the individual external derivative contracts, such as the pay-5 per cent-fixed, receive-LIBOR interest rate swap above, be designated as hedging instruments of underlying gross exposures, such as the exposure to changes in variable interest payments on the pay-LIBOR borrowing above, even though the external derivatives are settled on a net basis?

Generally, yes. External derivative contracts that are legally separate contracts and serve a valid business purpose, such as laying off risk exposures on a gross basis, qualify as hedging instruments even if those external contracts are settled on a net basis with the same external counterparty, provided the hedge accounting criteria in ~~IAS 39~~ ED38 are met. See also Question F.1.13.

Issue (b) – Treasury observes that by entering into the external offsetting contracts and including them in the centralized portfolio, it is no longer able to evaluate the exposures on a net basis. Treasury wishes to manage the portfolio of offsetting external derivatives separately from other exposures of the entity. Therefore, it enters into an additional, single derivative to offset the risk of the portfolio. Can the individual external derivative contracts in the portfolio still be designated as hedging instruments of underlying gross exposures even though a single external derivative is used to offset fully the market exposure created by entering into the external contracts?

Generally, yes. The purpose of structuring the external derivative contracts in this manner is consistent with the entity's risk management objectives and strategies. As indicated above, external derivative contracts that are legally separate contracts and serve a valid business purpose qualify as hedging instruments. Moreover, the answer to Question F.1.13 specifies that hedge accounting is not precluded simply because the entity has entered into a swap that mirrors exactly the terms of another swap with the same counterparty if there is a substantive business purpose for structuring the transactions separately.

F.2.16 Partial Term Hedging

~~IAS 39.75~~ ED38.84 indicates that a hedging relationship may not be designated for only a portion of the time period during which a hedging instrument remains outstanding. Is it permitted to designate a derivative as hedging only a portion of the time period to maturity of a hedged item?

Yes. A financial instrument may be a hedged item for only a portion of its cash flows or fair value, if effectiveness can be measured and the other hedge accounting criteria are met.

To illustrate: Entity A acquires a 10 per cent fixed rate government bond with a remaining term to maturity of ten years. Entity A classifies the bond as available for sale. To hedge itself against fair value exposure on the bond associated with the present value of the interest rate payments until year 5, Entity A acquires a five-year pay-fixed, receive-floating swap. The swap may be designated as hedging the fair value exposure of the interest rate payments on the government bond until year 5 and the change in value of the principal payment due at maturity to the extent affected by changes in the yield curve relating to the five years of the swap.

F.2.17 Hedging Instrument: Cross-Currency Interest Rate Swap

Entity A's functional currency is the Japanese yen. Entity A has a five-year floating rate US dollar liability and a 10-year fixed rate pound sterling-denominated note receivable. Entity A wishes to hedge the foreign currency exposure on its asset and liability and the fair value interest rate exposure on the receivable and enters into a matching cross-currency interest rate swap to receive floating rate US dollars and pay fixed rate pounds sterling and to exchange the dollars for the pounds at the end of five years. Can Entity A designate the swap as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge against both foreign currency risk and interest rate risk, although both the pound sterling and US dollar are foreign currencies to Entity A?

Yes. ~~IAS 39.81~~ ED38.90 permits hedge accounting for components of risk, if effectiveness can be measured. Also, ~~IAS 39.76~~ ED38.84 permits designating a single hedging instrument as a hedge of more than one type of risk if the risks can be identified clearly, effectiveness can be demonstrated, and specific

designation of the hedging instrument and different risk positions can be ensured. Therefore, the swap may be designated as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge of the pound sterling receivable against exposure to changes in its fair value associated with changes in UK interest rates for the initial partial term of five years and the exchange rate between pounds and US dollars. The swap is measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. The carrying amount of the receivable is adjusted for changes in its fair value caused by changes in UK interest rates for the first five-year portion of the yield curve. The receivable and payable are remeasured using spot exchange rates under IPSAS 4 IAS 21 and the changes to their carrying amounts recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

F.2.18 Hedged Items: Hedge of Foreign Currency Risk of Publicly Traded Shares

Entity A acquires shares in Entity B on a foreign stock exchange for their fair value of 1,000 in foreign currency (FC). It classifies the shares as available for sale. To protect itself from the exposure to changes in the foreign exchange rate associated with the shares, it enters into a forward contract to sell FC750. Entity A intends to roll over the forward exchange contract for as long as it retains the shares. Assuming that the other hedge accounting criteria are met, could the forward exchange contract qualify as a hedge of the foreign exchange risk associated with the shares?

Yes, but only if there is a clear and identifiable exposure to changes in foreign exchange rates. Therefore, hedge accounting is permitted if (a) the equity instrument is not traded on an exchange (or in another established marketplace) where trades are denominated in the same currency as the functional currency of Entity A and (b) dividends to Entity A are not denominated in that currency. Thus, if a share is traded in multiple currencies and one of those currencies is the functional currency of the reporting entity, hedge accounting for the foreign currency component of the share price is not permitted.

If so, could the forward exchange contract be designated as a hedging instrument in a hedge of the foreign exchange risk associated with the portion of the fair value of the shares up to FC750 in foreign currency?

Yes. ~~IAS 39~~ ED38 permits designating a portion of the cash flow or fair value of a financial asset as the hedged item if effectiveness can be measured (~~IAS 39.84~~ ED38.90). Therefore, Entity A may designate the forward exchange contract as a hedge of the foreign exchange risk associated with only a portion of the fair value of the shares in foreign currency. It could either be designated as a fair value hedge of the foreign exchange exposure of FC750 associated with the shares or as a cash flow hedge of a forecast sale of the shares, provided the timing of the sale is identified. Any variability in the fair value of the shares in foreign currency would not affect the assessment of hedge effectiveness unless the fair value of the shares in foreign currency was to fall below FC750.

F.2.19 Hedge accounting: stock index

An entity may acquire a portfolio of shares to replicate a stock index and a put option on the index to protect itself from fair value losses. Does ED 38 IAS 39 permit designating the put on the stock index as a hedging instrument in a hedge of the portfolio of shares?

No. If similar financial instruments are aggregated and hedged as a group, ~~IAS 39.83~~ ED38.93 states that the change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk for each individual item in the group is expected to be approximately proportional to the overall change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk of the group. In the scenario above, the change in the fair value attributable to the hedged risk for each individual item in the group (individual share prices) is not expected to be approximately proportional to the overall change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk of the group.

F.2.20 Hedge Accounting: Netting of Assets and Liabilities

May an entity group financial assets together with financial liabilities for the purpose of determining the net cash flow exposure to be hedged for hedge accounting purposes?

An entity's hedging strategy and risk management practices may assess cash flow risk on a net basis but ~~IAS 39.84~~ ED38.94 does not permit designating a net cash flow exposure as a hedged item for hedge accounting purposes. ~~IAS 39.AG101~~ ED38.145 provides an example of how an entity a bank might assess its risk on a net basis (with similar assets and liabilities grouped together) and then qualify for hedge accounting by hedging on a gross basis.

F.3 Hedge Accounting

F.3.1 Cash Flow Hedge: Fixed Interest Rate Cash Flows

An entity issues a fixed rate debt instrument and enters into a receive-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swap to offset the exposure to interest rate risk associated with the debt instrument. Can the entity designate the swap as a cash flow hedge of the future interest cash outflows associated with the debt instrument?

No. ~~IAS 39.86(b)~~ ED38.96(b) states that a cash flow hedge is ‘a hedge of the exposure to variability in cash flows’. In this case, the issued debt instrument does not give rise to any exposure to variability in cash flows since the interest payments are fixed. The entity may designate the swap as a fair value hedge of the debt instrument, but it cannot designate the swap as a cash flow hedge of the future cash outflows of the debt instrument.

F.3.2 Cash Flow Hedge: Reinvestment of Fixed Interest Rate Cash Flows

An entity manages interest rate risk on a net basis. On 1-January, 1 2001, it forecasts aggregate cash inflows of CU100 on fixed rate assets and aggregate cash outflows of CU90 on fixed rate liabilities in the first quarter of 2002. For risk management purposes it uses a receive-variable, pay-fixed Forward Rate Agreement (FRA) to hedge the forecast net cash inflow of CU10. The entity designates as the hedged item the first CU10 of cash inflows on fixed rate assets in the first quarter of 2002. Can it designate the receive-variable, pay-fixed FRA as a cash flow hedge of the exposure to variability to cash flows in the first quarter of 2002 associated with the fixed rate assets?

No. The FRA does not qualify as a cash flow hedge of the cash flow relating to the fixed rate assets because they do not have a cash flow exposure. The entity could, however, designate the FRA as a hedge of the fair value exposure that exists before the cash flows are remitted.

In some cases, the entity could also hedge the interest rate exposure associated with the forecast reinvestment of the interest and principal it receives on fixed rate assets (see Question F.6.2). However, in this example, the FRA does not qualify for cash flow hedge accounting because it increases rather than reduces the variability of interest cash flows resulting from the reinvestment of interest cash flows (for example, if market rates increase, there will be a cash inflow on the FRA and an increase in the expected interest cash inflows resulting from the reinvestment of interest cash inflows on fixed rate assets). However, potentially it could qualify as a cash flow hedge of a portion of the refinancing of cash outflows on a gross basis.

F.3.3 Foreign Currency Hedge

Entity A has a foreign currency liability payable in six months’ time and it wishes to hedge the amount payable on settlement against foreign currency fluctuations. To that end, it takes out a forward contract to buy the foreign currency in six months’ time. Should the hedge be treated as:

- (a) **a fair value hedge of the foreign currency liability with gains and losses on revaluing the liability and the forward contract at the year-end both recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ or**
- (b) **a cash flow hedge of the amount to be settled in the future with gains and losses on revaluing the forward contract recognized net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~?**

~~IAS 39~~ ED38 does not preclude either of these two methods. If the hedge is treated as a fair value hedge, the gain or loss on the fair value remeasurement of the hedging instrument and the gain or loss on the fair value remeasurement of the hedged item for the hedged risk are recognized immediately in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. If the hedge is treated as a cash flow hedge with the gain or loss on remeasuring the forward contract recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~, that amount is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in the same period or periods during which the hedged item (the liability) affects surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, i.e. when the liability is remeasured for changes in foreign exchange rates. Therefore, if the hedge is effective, the gain or loss on the derivative is released to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in the same periods during which the liability is remeasured, not when the payment occurs. See Question F.3.4.

F.3.4 Foreign Currency Cash Flow Hedge

An entity exports a product at a price denominated in a foreign currency. At the date of the sale, the entity obtains a receivable for the sale price payable in 90 days and takes out a 90-day forward exchange contract in the same currency as the receivable to hedge its foreign currency exposure.

Under IAS 21, the sale is recorded at the spot rate at the date of sale, and the receivable is restated during the 90-day period for changes in exchange rates with the difference being taken to surplus or deficit profit or loss (IAS 21.23 and IAS 21.28- IPSAS 4.27 and IPSAS 4.32).

If the foreign exchange contract is designated as a hedging instrument, does the entity have a choice whether to designate the foreign exchange contract as a fair value hedge of the foreign currency exposure of the receivable or as a cash flow hedge of the collection of the receivable?

Yes. If the entity designates the foreign exchange contract as a fair value hedge, the gain or loss from remeasuring the forward exchange contract at fair value is recognized immediately in surplus or deficit profit or loss and the gain or loss on remeasuring the receivable is also recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss.

If the entity designates the foreign exchange contract as a cash flow hedge of the foreign currency risk associated with the collection of the receivable, the portion of the gain or loss that is determined to be an effective hedge is recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income, and the ineffective portion in surplus or deficit profit or loss (IAS 39.95 ED38.106). The amount recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income is reclassified from equity to profit or loss as a reclassification adjustment is recognized in surplus or deficit in the same period or periods during which changes in the measurement of the receivable affect surplus or deficit profit or loss (IAS 39.100-ED38.111).

F.3.5 Fair Value Hedge: Variable Rate Debt Instrument

Does **ED 38 IAS 39** permit an entity to designate a portion of the risk exposure of a variable rate debt instrument as a hedged item in a fair value hedge?

Yes. A variable rate debt instrument may have an exposure to changes in its fair value due to credit risk. It may also have an exposure to changes in its fair value relating to movements in the market interest rate in the periods between which the variable interest rate on the debt instrument is reset. For example, if the debt instrument provides for annual interest payments reset to the market rate each year, a portion of the debt instrument has an exposure to changes in fair value during the year.

F.3.6 Fair Value Hedge: Inventory

ED38.96(a) IAS 39.86(a) states that a fair value hedge is ‘a hedge of the exposure to changes in fair value of a recognized asset or liability ... that is attributable to a particular risk and could affect surplus or deficit profit or loss’. Can an entity designate inventories, such as oil copper inventory, as the hedged item in a fair value hedge of the exposure to changes in the price of the inventories, such as the oil copper price, although inventories are measured at the lower of cost and net realizable value or cost and current replacement cost under **IPSAS 12, “Inventories” IAS 2 Inventories**?

Yes. The inventories may be hedged for changes in fair value due to changes in the copper price because the change in fair value of inventories will affect surplus or deficit profit or loss when the inventories are sold or their carrying amount is written down. The adjusted carrying amount becomes the cost basis for the purpose of applying the lower of cost and net realizable value test under **IPSAS 12 IAS 2**. The hedging instrument used in a fair value hedge of inventories may alternatively qualify as a cash flow hedge of the future sale of the inventory.

F.3.7 Hedge Accounting: Forecast Transaction

For cash flow hedges, a forecast transaction that is subject to a hedge must be ‘highly probable’. How should the term ‘highly probable’ be interpreted?

The term ‘highly probable’ indicates a much greater likelihood of happening than the term ‘more likely than not’. An assessment of the likelihood that a forecast transaction will take place is not based solely on management’s intentions because intentions are not verifiable. A transaction’s probability should be supported by observable facts and the attendant circumstances.

In assessing the likelihood that a transaction will occur, an entity should consider the following circumstances:

- (a) the frequency of similar past transactions;
- (b) the financial and operational ability of the entity to carry out the transaction;
- (c) substantial commitments of resources to a particular activity (for example, the undertaking of specific infrastructure projects ~~a manufacturing facility that can be used in the short run only to process a particular type of commodity~~);
- (d) the extent of loss or disruption of operations that could result if the transaction does not occur;
- (e) the likelihood that transactions with substantially different characteristics might be used to achieve the same ~~business~~ purpose (for example, an entity that intends to raise cash may have several ways of doing so, ranging from a short-term bank loan to an offering of debt instruments ~~ordinary shares~~); and
- (f) the entity's ~~business~~ strategic plan.

The length of time until a forecast transaction is projected to occur is also a factor in determining probability. Other factors being equal, the more distant a forecast transaction is, the less likely it is that the transaction would be regarded as highly probable and the stronger the evidence that would be needed to support an assertion that it is highly probable.

For example, a transaction forecast to occur in five years may be less likely to occur than a transaction forecast to occur in one year. However, forecast interest payments for the next 20 years on variable rate debt would typically be highly probable if supported by an existing contractual obligation.

In addition, other factors being equal, the greater the physical quantity or future value of a forecast transaction in proportion to the entity's transactions of the same nature, the less likely it is that the transaction would be regarded as highly probable and the stronger the evidence that would be required to support an assertion that it is highly probable. For example, less evidence generally would be needed to support forecast sales of 100,000 units in the next month than 950,000 units in that month when recent sales have averaged 950,000 units per month for the past three months.

A history of having designated hedges of forecast transactions and then determining that the forecast transactions are no longer expected to occur would call into question both an entity's ability to predict forecast transactions accurately and the propriety of using hedge accounting in the future for similar forecast transactions.

F.3.8 Retrospective Designation of Hedges

Does ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ permit an entity to designate hedge relationships retrospectively?

No. Designation of hedge relationships takes effect prospectively from the date all hedge accounting criteria in ~~IAS 39.88~~ ED38.98 are met. In particular, hedge accounting can be applied only from the date the entity has completed the necessary documentation of the hedge relationship, including identification of the hedging instrument, the related hedged item or transaction, the nature of the risk being hedged, and how the entity will assess hedge effectiveness.

F.3.9 Hedge Accounting: Designation at the Inception of the Hedge

Does ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 permit an entity to designate and formally document a derivative contract as a hedging instrument after entering into the derivative contract?

Yes, prospectively. For hedge accounting purposes, ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~ requires a hedging instrument to be designated and formally documented as such from the inception of the hedge relationship (IAS 39.88); in other words, a hedge relationship cannot be designated retrospectively. Also, it precludes designating a hedging relationship for only a portion of the time period during which the hedging instrument remains outstanding (~~IAS 39.75~~ ED38.84). However, it does not require the hedging instrument to be acquired at the inception of the hedge relationship.

F.3.10 Hedge Accounting: Identification of Hedged Forecast Transaction

Can a forecast transaction be identified as the purchase or sale of the last 15,000 units of a product in a specified period or as a percentage of purchases or sales during a specified period?

No. The hedged forecast transaction must be identified and documented with sufficient specificity so that when the transaction occurs, it is clear whether the transaction is or is not the hedged transaction. Therefore, a forecast transaction may be identified as the sale of the first 15,000 units of a specific product during a specified three-month period, but it could not be identified as the last 15,000 units of that product sold during a three-month period because the last 15,000 units cannot be identified when they are sold. For the same reason, a forecast transaction cannot be specified solely as a percentage of sales or purchases during a period.

F.3.11 Cash Flow Hedge: Documentation of Timing of Forecast Transaction

For a hedge of a forecast transaction, should the documentation of the hedge relationship that is established at inception of the hedge identify the date on, or time period in which, the forecast transaction is expected to occur?

Yes. To qualify for hedge accounting, the hedge must relate to a specific identified and designated risk (~~IAS 39.AG110~~ ED38.AG155) and it must be possible to measure its effectiveness reliably (ED38.98(d) ~~IAS 39.88(d)~~). Also, the hedged forecast transaction must be highly probable (ED38.98(c) ~~IAS 39.88(e)~~). To meet these criteria, an entity is not required to predict and document the exact date a forecast transaction is expected to occur. However, it is required to identify and document the time period during which the forecast transaction is expected to occur within a reasonably specific and generally narrow range of time from a most probable date, as a basis for assessing hedge effectiveness. To determine that the hedge will be highly effective in accordance with ED38.98(d) ~~IAS 39.88(d)~~, it is necessary to ensure that changes in the fair value of the expected cash flows are offset by changes in the fair value of the hedging instrument and this test may be met only if the timing of the cash flows occur within close proximity to each other. If the forecast transaction is no longer expected to occur, hedge accounting is discontinued in accordance with ED38.112(c) ~~IAS 39.101(e)~~.

F.4 Hedge Effectiveness

F.4.1 Hedging on an After-Tax Basis

Hedging is often done on an after-tax basis. Is hedge effectiveness assessed after taxes?

~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 permits, but does not require, assessment of hedge effectiveness on an after-tax basis. If the hedge is undertaken on an after-tax basis, it is so designated at inception as part of the formal documentation of the hedging relationship and strategy.

F.4.2 Hedge Effectiveness: Assessment on Cumulative Basis

~~IAS 39.88(b)~~ ED38.98(b) requires that the hedge is expected to be highly effective. Should expected hedge effectiveness be assessed separately for each period or cumulatively over the life of the hedging relationship?

Expected hedge effectiveness may be assessed on a cumulative basis if the hedge is so designated, and that condition is incorporated into the appropriate hedging documentation. Therefore, even if a hedge is not expected to be highly effective in a particular period, hedge accounting is not precluded if effectiveness is expected to remain sufficiently high over the life of the hedging relationship. However, any ineffectiveness is required to be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ as it occurs.

To illustrate: an entity designates a LIBOR-based interest rate swap as a hedge of a borrowing whose interest rate is a UK base rate plus a margin. The UK base rate changes, perhaps, once each quarter or less, in increments of 25–50 basis points, while LIBOR changes daily. Over a period of 1–2 years, the hedge is expected to be almost perfect. However, there will be quarters when the UK base rate does not change at all, while LIBOR has changed significantly. This would not necessarily preclude hedge accounting.

F.4.3 Hedge Effectiveness: Counterparty Credit Risk

Must an entity consider the likelihood of default by the counterparty to the hedging instrument in assessing hedge effectiveness?

Yes. An entity cannot ignore whether it will be able to collect all amounts due under the contractual provisions of the hedging instrument. When assessing hedge effectiveness, both at the inception of the hedge and on an ongoing basis, the entity considers the risk that the counterparty to the hedging instrument will default by failing to make any contractual payments to the entity. For a cash flow hedge, if it becomes probable that a counterparty will default, an entity would be unable to conclude that the hedging relationship is expected to be highly effective in achieving offsetting cash flows. As a result, hedge accounting would be discontinued. For a fair value hedge, if there is a change in the counterparty's creditworthiness, the fair value of the hedging instrument will change, which affects the assessment of whether the hedge relationship is effective and whether it qualifies for continued hedge accounting.

F.4.4 Hedge Effectiveness: Effectiveness Tests

How should hedge effectiveness be measured for the purposes of initially qualifying for hedge accounting and for continued qualification?

~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 does not provide specific guidance about how effectiveness tests are performed. ED38.AG149 ~~IAS 39.AG105~~ specifies that a hedge is normally regarded as highly effective only if (a) at inception and in subsequent periods, the hedge is expected to be highly effective in achieving offsetting changes in fair value or cash flows attributable to the hedged risk during the period for which the hedge is designated, and (b) the actual results are within a range of 80–125 per cent. ED38.AG149 ~~IAS 39.AG105~~ also states that the expectation in (a) can be demonstrated in various ways.

The appropriateness of a given method of assessing hedge effectiveness will depend on the nature of the risk being hedged and the type of hedging instrument used. The method of assessing effectiveness must be reasonable and consistent with other similar hedges unless different methods are explicitly justified. An entity is required to document at the inception of the hedge how effectiveness will be assessed and then to apply that effectiveness test on a consistent basis for the duration of the hedge.

Several mathematical techniques can be used to measure hedge effectiveness, including ratio analysis, i.e. a comparison of hedging gains and losses with the corresponding gains and losses on the hedged item at a point in time, and statistical measurement techniques such as regression analysis. If regression analysis is used, the entity's documented policies for assessing effectiveness must specify how the results of the regression will be assessed.

F.4.5 Hedge Effectiveness: Less than 100 Per Cent Offset

If a cash flow hedge is regarded as highly effective because the actual risk offset is within the allowed 80–125 per cent range of deviation from full offset, is the gain or loss on the ineffective portion of the hedge recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~?

No. ~~ED38.106(a)~~ IAS 39.95(a) indicates that only the effective portion is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. ~~ED38.106(b)~~ IAS 39.95(b) requires the ineffective portion to be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

F.4.6 Assuming Perfect Hedge Effectiveness

If the principal terms of the hedging instrument and of the entire hedged asset or liability or hedged forecast transaction are the same, can an entity assume perfect hedge effectiveness without further effectiveness testing?

No. ~~IAS 39.88(e)~~ ED38.98(e) requires an entity to assess hedges on an ongoing basis for hedge effectiveness. It cannot assume hedge effectiveness even if the principal terms of the hedging instrument and the hedged item are the same, since hedge ineffectiveness may arise because of other attributes such as the liquidity of the instruments or their credit risk (ED38.AG154 ~~IAS 39.AG109~~). It may, however, designate only certain risks in an overall exposure as being hedged and thereby improve the effectiveness of the hedging relationship. For example, for a fair value hedge of a debt instrument, if the derivative hedging instrument has a credit risk that is equivalent to the AA-rate, it may designate only the risk related to AA-rated interest rate movements as being hedged, in which case changes in credit spreads generally will not affect the effectiveness of the hedge.

F.5 Cash Flow Hedges

F.5.1 Hedge Accounting: Non-Derivative Monetary Asset or Non-Derivative Monetary Liability Used as a Hedging Instrument

If an entity designates a non-derivative monetary asset as a foreign currency cash flow hedge of the repayment of the principal of a non-derivative monetary liability, would the exchange differences on the hedged item be recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss (IAS 21.28 IPSAS 4.32) and the exchange differences on the hedging instrument be recognized in net assets/equity other comprehensive income until the repayment of the liability (ED38.106 IAS 39.95)?

No. Exchange differences on the monetary asset and the monetary liability are both recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss in the period in which they arise (IAS 21.28 IPSAS 4.32). IAS 39.AG83 ED38.120 specifies that if there is a hedge relationship between a non-derivative monetary asset and a non-derivative monetary liability, changes in fair values of those financial instruments are recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss.

F.5.2 Cash Flow Hedges: Performance of Hedging Instrument (1)

Entity A has a floating rate liability of CU1,000 with five years remaining to maturity. It enters into a five-year pay-fixed, receive-floating interest rate swap in the same currency and with the same principal terms as the liability to hedge the exposure to variable cash flow payments on the floating rate liability attributable to interest rate risk. At inception, the fair value of the swap is zero. Subsequently, there is an increase of CU49 in the fair value of the swap. This increase consists of a change of CU50 resulting from an increase in market interest rates and a change of minus CU1 resulting from an increase in the credit risk of the swap counterparty. There is no change in the fair value of the floating rate liability, but the fair value (present value) of the future cash flows needed to offset the exposure to variable interest cash flows on the liability increases by CU50. Assuming that Entity A determines that the hedge is still highly effective, is there ineffectiveness that should be recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss?

No. A hedge of interest rate risk is not fully effective if part of the change in the fair value of the derivative is attributable to the counterparty's credit risk (ED38.AG154 IAS 39.AG109). However, because Entity A determines that the hedge relationship is still highly effective, it recognizes the effective portion of the change in fair value of the swap, i.e. the net change in fair value of CU49, in net assets/equity other comprehensive income. There is no debit to surplus or deficit profit or loss for the change in fair value of the swap attributable to the deterioration in the credit quality of the swap counterparty, because the cumulative change in the present value of the future cash flows needed to offset the exposure to variable interest cash flows on the hedged item, i.e. CU50, exceeds the cumulative change in value of the hedging instrument, i.e. CU49.

Dr Swap

CU49

Cr ~~Other comprehensive income~~ Net assets/equity

CU49

If Entity A concludes that the hedge is no longer highly effective, it discontinues hedge accounting prospectively as from the date the hedge ceased to be highly effective in accordance with ED38.112 IAS 39.101.

Would the answer change if the fair value of the swap instead increases to CU51 of which CU50 results from the increase in market interest rates and CU1 from a decrease in the credit risk of the swap counterparty?

Yes. In this case, there is a credit to surplus or deficit profit or loss of CU1 for the change in fair value of the swap attributable to the improvement in the credit quality of the swap counterparty. This is because the cumulative change in the value of the hedging instrument, i.e. CU51, exceeds the cumulative change in the present value of the future cash flows needed to offset the exposure to variable interest cash flows on the hedged item, i.e. CU50. The difference of CU1 represents the excess ineffectiveness attributable to the derivative hedging instrument, the swap, and is recognized in surplus or deficit profit or loss.

Dr	Swap	CU51	
	Cr Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>		CU50
	Cr Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u>		CU1

F.5.3 Cash Flow Hedges: Performance of Hedging Instrument (2)

On ~~30-September, 30~~ 20X1, Entity A hedges the anticipated sale of ~~24 barrels of oil tonnes of pulp~~ on ~~1-March, 1~~ 20X2 by entering into a short forward contract on ~~24 barrels of oil tonnes of pulp~~. The contract requires net settlement in cash determined as the difference between the future spot price of ~~pulp oil~~ on a specified commodity exchange and CU1,000. Entity A expects to sell the ~~pulp~~ in a different, local market. Entity A determines that the forward contract is an effective hedge of the anticipated sale and that the other conditions for hedge accounting are met. It assesses hedge effectiveness by comparing the entire change in the fair value of the forward contract with the change in the fair value of the expected cash inflows. On ~~31-December, 31~~, the spot price of ~~pulp oil~~ has increased both in the local market and on the exchange. The increase in the local market exceeds the increase on the exchange. As a result, the present value of the expected cash inflow from the sale on the local market is CU1,100. The fair value of Entity A's forward contract is negative CU80. Assuming that Entity A determines that the hedge is still highly effective, is there ineffectiveness that should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~?

No. In a cash flow hedge, ineffectiveness is not recognized in the financial statements when the cumulative change in the fair value of the hedged cash flows exceeds the cumulative change in the value of the hedging instrument. In this case, the cumulative change in the fair value of the forward contract is CU80, while the fair value of the cumulative change in expected future cash flows on the hedged item is CU100. Since the fair value of the cumulative change in expected future cash flows on the hedged item from the inception of the hedge exceeds the cumulative change in fair value of the hedging instrument (in absolute amounts), no portion of the gain or loss on the hedging instrument is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (ED38.106(b)IAS 39.95(b)). Because Entity A determines that the hedge relationship is still highly effective, it recognizes the entire change in fair value of the forward contract (CU80) in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~.

Dr	<u>Net assets/equity</u> Other comprehensive income	CU80	
	Cr Forward		CU80

If Entity A concludes that the hedge is no longer highly effective, it discontinues hedge accounting prospectively as from the date the hedge ceases to be highly effective in accordance with ED38.112IAS 39.101.

F.5.4 Cash Flow Hedges: Forecast Transaction Occurs Before the Specified Period

An entity designates a derivative as a hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge of a forecast transaction, such as a forecast sale of a commodity. The hedging relationship meets all the hedge accounting conditions, including the requirement to identify and document the period in which the transaction is expected to occur within a reasonably specific and narrow range of time (see Question F.2.16). If, in a subsequent period, the forecast transaction is expected to occur in an earlier period than originally anticipated, can the entity conclude that this transaction is the same as the one that was designated as being hedged?

Yes. The change in timing of the forecast transaction does not affect the validity of the designation. However, it may affect the assessment of the effectiveness of the hedging relationship. Also, the hedging instrument would need to be designated as a hedging instrument for the whole remaining period of its existence in order for it to continue to qualify as a hedging instrument (see ED38.84 IAS 39.75 and Question F.2.16).

F.5.5 Cash Flow Hedges: Measuring Effectiveness for a Hedge of a Forecast Transaction in a Debt Instrument

A forecast investment in an interest-earning asset or forecast issue of an interest-bearing liability creates a cash flow exposure to interest rate changes because the related interest payments will be based on the market rate that exists when the forecast transaction occurs. The objective of a cash flow hedge of the exposure to interest rate changes is to offset the effects of future changes in interest rates so as to obtain a single fixed rate, usually the rate that existed at the inception of the hedge that corresponds with the term and timing of the forecast transaction. During the period of the hedge, it is not possible to determine what the market interest rate for the forecast transaction will be at the time the hedge is terminated or when the forecast transaction occurs. In this case, how is the effectiveness of the hedge assessed and measured?

During this period, effectiveness can be measured on the basis of changes in interest rates between the designation date and the interim effectiveness measurement date. The interest rates used to make this measurement are the interest rates that correspond with the term and occurrence of the forecast transaction that existed at the inception of the hedge and that exist at the measurement date as evidenced by the term structure of interest rates.

Generally it will not be sufficient simply to compare cash flows of the hedged item with cash flows generated by the derivative hedging instrument as they are paid or received, since such an approach ignores the entity's expectations of whether the cash flows will offset in subsequent periods and whether there will be any resulting ineffectiveness.

The discussion that follows illustrates the mechanics of establishing a cash flow hedge and measuring its effectiveness. For the purpose of the illustrations, assume that an entity expects to issue a CU100,000 one-year debt instrument in three months. The instrument will pay interest quarterly with principal due at maturity. The entity is exposed to interest rate increases and establishes a hedge of the interest cash flows of the debt by entering into a forward starting interest rate swap. The swap has a term of one year and will start in three months to correspond with the terms of the forecast debt issue. The entity will pay a fixed rate and receive a variable rate, and the entity designates the risk being hedged as the LIBOR-based interest component in the forecast issue of the debt.

Yield curve

The yield curve provides the foundation for computing future cash flows and the fair value of such cash flows both at the inception of, and during, the hedging relationship. It is based on current market yields on applicable reference bonds that are traded in the marketplace. Market yields are converted to spot interest rates ('spot rates' or 'zero coupon rates') by eliminating the effect of coupon payments on the market yield. Spot rates are used to discount future cash flows, such as principal and interest rate payments, to arrive at their fair value. Spot rates also are used to compute forward interest rates that are used to compute variable and estimated future cash flows. The relationship between spot rates and one-period forward rates is shown by the following formula:

Spot-forward relationship

$$F = \frac{(1 + SR_t)^t}{(1 + SR_{t-1})^{t-1}} - 1$$

where F = forward rate (%)

SR = spot rate (%)

t = period in time (e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5)

Also, for the purpose of this illustration, assume that the following quarterly-period term structure of interest rates using quarterly compounding exists at the inception of the hedge.

Yield curve at inception – (beginning of period 1)					
<i>Forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
Spot rates	3.75%	4.50%	5.50%	6.00%	6.25%
Forward rates	3.75%	5.25%	7.51%	7.50%	7.25%

The one-period forward rates are computed on the basis of spot rates for the applicable maturities. For example, the current forward rate for Period 2 calculated using the formula above is equal to $[1.0450^2/1.0375] - 1 = 5.25$ per cent. The current one-period forward rate for Period 2 is different from the current spot rate for Period 2, since the spot rate is an interest rate from the beginning of Period 1 (spot) to the end of Period 2, while the forward rate is an interest rate from the beginning of Period 2 to the end of Period 2.

Hedged item

In this example, the entity expects to issue a CU100,000 one-year debt instrument in three months with quarterly interest payments. The entity is exposed to interest rate increases and would like to eliminate the effect on cash flows of interest rate changes that may happen before the forecast transaction takes place. If that risk is eliminated, the entity would obtain an interest rate on its debt issue that is equal to the one-year forward coupon rate currently available in the marketplace in three months. That forward coupon rate, which is different from the forward (spot) rate, is 6.86 per cent, computed from the term structure of interest rates shown above. It is the market rate of interest that exists at the inception of the hedge, given the terms of the forecast debt instrument. It results in the fair value of the debt being equal to par at its issue.

At the inception of the hedging relationship, the expected cash flows of the debt instrument can be calculated on the basis of the existing term structure of interest rates. For this purpose, it is assumed that interest rates do not change and that the debt would be issued at 6.86 per cent at the beginning of Period 2. In this case, the cash flows and fair value of the debt instrument would be as follows at the beginning of Period 2.

Issue of fixed rate debt					
Beginning of period 2 - No rate changes (spot based on forward rates)					
<i>Total</i>					
<i>Original forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Remaining periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>4</i>
Spot rates		5.25%	6.38%	6.75%	6.88%
Forward rates		5.25%	7.51%	7.50%	7.25%
	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
<i>Cash flows:</i>					
Fixed interest @6.86%		1,716	1,716	1,716	1,716
Principal					100,000
<i>Fair value:</i>					
Interest	6,592	1,694	1,663	1,632	1,603
Principal	93,408				93,408 ^(a)
Total	100,000				

$$(a) \text{ CU}100,000/(1 + [0.0688/4])^4$$

Since it is assumed that interest rates do not change, the fair value of the interest and principal amounts equals the par amount of the forecast transaction. The fair value amounts are computed on the basis of the spot rates that exist at the inception of the hedge for the applicable periods in which the cash flows would occur had the debt been issued at the date of the forecast transaction. They reflect the effect of discounting those cash flows on the basis of the periods that will remain after the debt instrument is issued. For example, the spot rate of 6.38 per cent is used to discount the interest cash flow that is expected to be paid in Period 3, but it is discounted for only two periods because it will occur two periods after the forecast transaction.

The forward interest rates are the same as shown previously, since it is assumed that interest rates do not change. The spot rates are different but they have not actually changed. They represent the spot rates one period forward and are based on the applicable forward rates.

Hedging instrument

The objective of the hedge is to obtain an overall interest rate on the forecast transaction and the hedging instrument that is equal to 6.86 per cent, which is the market rate at the inception of the hedge for the period from Period 2 to Period 5. This objective is accomplished by entering into a forward starting interest rate swap that has a fixed rate of 6.86 per cent. Based on the term structure of interest rates that exist at the inception of the hedge, the interest rate swap will have such a rate. At the inception of the hedge, the fair value of the fixed rate payments on the interest rate swap will equal the fair value of the variable rate payments, resulting in the interest rate swap having a fair value of zero. The expected cash flows of the interest rate swap and the related fair value amounts are shown as follows.

Interest rate swap					
<i>Total</i>					
<i>Original forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Remaining periods</i>		<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>
	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
<i>Cash flows:</i>					
Fixed interest @6.86%		1,716	1,716	1,716	1,716
Forecast variable interest		1,313	1,877	1,876	1,813
<i>Forecast based on forward rate</i>		<i>5.25%</i>	<i>7.51%</i>	<i>7.50%</i>	<i>7.25%</i>
Net interest		(403)	161	160	97
<i>Fair value:</i>					
<i>Discount rate (spot)</i>		<i>5.25%</i>	<i>6.38%</i>	<i>6.75%</i>	<i>6.88%</i>
Fixed interest	6,592	1,694	1,663	1,632	1,603
Forecast variable interest	6,592	1,296	1,819	1,784	1,693
Fair value of interest rate swap	0	(398)	156	152	90

At the inception of the hedge, the fixed rate on the forward swap is equal to the fixed rate the entity would receive if it could issue the debt in three months under terms that exist today.

Measuring hedge effectiveness

If interest rates change during the period the hedge is outstanding, the effectiveness of the hedge can be measured in various ways.

Assume that interest rates change as follows immediately before the debt is issued at the beginning of Period 2.

Yield curve - Rates increase 200 basis points					
Forward periods	1	2	3	4	5
Remaining periods		1	2	3	4
Spot rates		5.75%	6.50%	7.50%	8.00%
Forward rates		5.75%	7.25%	9.51%	9.50%

Under the new interest rate environment, the fair value of the pay-fixed at 6.86 per cent, receive-variable interest rate swap that was designated as the hedging instrument would be as follows.

Fair value of interest rate swap						
<i>Total</i>						
Original forward periods		1	2	3	4	5
Remaining periods			1	2	3	4
	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
<i>Cash flows:</i>						
Fixed interest @6.86%			1,716	1,716	1,716	1,716
Forecast variable interest			1,438	1,813	2,377	2,376
Forecast based on new forward rate			5.25%	7.25%	9.51%	9.50%
Net interest			(279)	97	661	660
<i>Fair value:</i>						
New discount rate (spot)			5.75%	6.50%	7.50%	8.00%
Fixed interest	6,562		1,692	1,662	1,623	1,585
Forecast variable interest	7,615		1,417	1,755	2,248	2,195
Fair value of net interest	1,053		(275)	93	625	610

In order to compute the effectiveness of the hedge, it is necessary to measure the change in the present value of the cash flows or the value of the hedged forecast transaction. There are at least two methods of accomplishing this measurement.

Method A Compute change in fair value of debt					
<i>Total</i>					
Original forward periods	1	2	3	4	5
Remaining periods		1	2	3	4
	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>

<i>Cash flows:</i>				
Fixed interest @6.86%		1,716	1,716	1,716
Principal				100,000
<i>Fair value:</i>				
<i>New discount rate (spot)</i>		5.75%	6.50%	7.50%
Interest	6,562	1,692	1,662	1,585
Principal	92,385			92,385 ^(a)
Total	98,947			
Fair value at inception	100,000			
Fair value difference	(1,053)			
(a) $CU100,000/(1 + [0.08/4])^4$				

Under Method A, a computation is made of the fair value in the new interest rate environment of debt that carries interest that is equal to the coupon interest rate that existed at the inception of the hedging relationship (6.86 per cent). This fair value is compared with the expected fair value as of the beginning of Period 2 that was calculated on the basis of the term structure of interest rates that existed at the inception of the hedging relationship, as illustrated above, to determine the change in the fair value. Note that the difference between the change in the fair value of the swap and the change in the expected fair value of the debt exactly offset in this example, since the terms of the swap and the forecast transaction match each other.

Method B Compute change in fair value of cash flows					
<i>Total</i>					
<i>Original forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Remaining periods</i>		<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>
Market rate at inception		6.86%	6.86%	6.86%	6.86%
Current forward rate		5.75%	7.25%	9.51%	9.50%
Rate difference		1.11%	(0.39%)	(2.64%)	(2.64%)
Cash flow difference (principal × rate)		CU279	(CU97)	(CU661)	(CU660)
<i>Discount rate (spot)</i>		5.75%	6.50%	7.50%	8.00%
Fair value of difference	(CU1,053)	CU275	(CU93)	(CU625)	(CU610)

Under Method B, the present value of the change in cash flows is computed on the basis of the difference between the forward interest rates for the applicable periods at the effectiveness measurement date and the interest rate that would have been obtained if the debt had been issued at the market rate that existed at the inception of the hedge. The market rate that existed at the inception of the hedge is the one-year forward coupon rate in three months. The present value of the change in cash flows is computed on the basis of the current spot rates that exist at the effectiveness measurement date for the applicable periods in which the cash flows are expected to occur. This method also could be referred to as the ‘theoretical swap’ method (or ‘hypothetical derivative’ method) because the comparison is between the hedged fixed rate on the debt and

the current variable rate, which is the same as comparing cash flows on the fixed and variable rate legs of an interest rate swap.

As before, the difference between the change in the fair value of the swap and the change in the present value of the cash flows exactly offset in this example, since the terms match.

Other considerations

There is an additional computation that should be performed to compute ineffectiveness before the expected date of the forecast transaction that has not been considered for the purpose of this illustration. The fair value difference has been determined in each of the illustrations as of the expected date of the forecast transaction immediately before the forecast transaction, i.e. at the beginning of Period 2. If the assessment of hedge effectiveness is done before the forecast transaction occurs, the difference should be discounted to the current date to arrive at the actual amount of ineffectiveness. For example, if the measurement date were one month after the hedging relationship was established and the forecast transaction is now expected to occur in two months, the amount would have to be discounted for the remaining two months before the forecast transaction is expected to occur to arrive at the actual fair value. This step would not be necessary in the examples provided above because there was no ineffectiveness. Therefore, additional discounting of the amounts, which net to zero, would not have changed the result.

Under Method B, ineffectiveness is computed on the basis of the difference between the forward coupon interest rates for the applicable periods at the effectiveness measurement date and the interest rate that would have been obtained if the debt had been issued at the market rate that existed at the inception of the hedge. Computing the change in cash flows based on the difference between the forward interest rates that existed at the inception of the hedge and the forward rates that exist at the effectiveness measurement date is inappropriate if the objective of the hedge is to establish a single fixed rate for a series of forecast interest payments. This objective is met by hedging the exposures with an interest rate swap as illustrated in the above example. The fixed interest rate on the swap is a blended interest rate composed of the forward rates over the life of the swap. Unless the yield curve is flat, the comparison between the forward interest rate exposures over the life of the swap and the fixed rate on the swap will produce different cash flows whose fair values are equal only at the inception of the hedging relationship. This difference is shown in the table below.

<i>Total</i>					
<i>Original forward periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Remaining periods</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>4</i>	
Forward rate at inception		5.25%	7.51%	7.50%	7.25%
Current forward rate		5.75%	7.25%	9.51%	9.50%
Rate difference		(0.50%)	0.26%	(2.00%)	(2.25%)
Cash flow difference (principal × rate)		(CU125)	CU64	(CU501)	(CU563)
Discount rate (spot)		5.75%	6.50%	7.50%	8.00%
Fair value of difference	(CU1,055)	(CU123)	CU62	(CU474)	(CU520)
Fair value of interest rate swap	CU1,053				
Ineffectiveness	(CU2)				

If the objective of the hedge is to obtain the forward rates that existed at the inception of the hedge, the interest rate swap is ineffective because the swap has a single blended fixed coupon rate that does not offset a series of different forward interest rates. However, if the objective of the hedge is to obtain the forward coupon rate that existed at the inception of the hedge, the swap is effective, and the comparison based on differences in forward interest rates suggests ineffectiveness when none may exist. Computing

ineffectiveness based on the difference between the forward interest rates that existed at the inception of the hedge and the forward rates that exist at the effectiveness measurement date would be an appropriate measurement of ineffectiveness if the hedging objective is to lock in those forward interest rates. In that case, the appropriate hedging instrument would be a series of forward contracts each of which matures on a repricing date that corresponds with the date of the forecast transactions.

It also should be noted that it would be inappropriate to compare only the variable cash flows on the interest rate swap with the interest cash flows in the debt that would be generated by the forward interest rates. That methodology has the effect of measuring ineffectiveness only on a portion of the derivative, and ~~IAS 39 ED 38~~ does not permit the bifurcation of a derivative for the purposes of assessing effectiveness in this situation (~~ED38.83 IAS 39.74~~). It is recognized, however, that if the fixed interest rate on the interest rate swap is equal to the fixed rate that would have been obtained on the debt at inception, there will be no ineffectiveness assuming that there are no differences in terms and no change in credit risk or it is not designated in the hedging relationship.

F.5.6 Cash Flow Hedges: Firm Commitment to Purchase Inventory in a Foreign Currency

Entity A has the Local Currency (LC) as its functional currency and presentation currency. On ~~30~~ June, ~~30~~ 20X1, it enters into a forward exchange contract to receive Foreign Currency (FC) 100,000 and deliver LC109,600 on ~~30~~ June, ~~30~~ 20X2 at an initial cost and fair value of zero. It designates the forward exchange contract as a hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge of a firm commitment to purchase spare parts for its electricity distribution network ~~a certain quantity of paper~~ on ~~31~~ March, ~~31~~ 20X2 and the resulting payable of FC100,000, which is to be paid on ~~30~~ June, ~~30~~ 20X2. All hedge accounting conditions in ~~IAS 39 ED 38~~ are met.

As indicated in the table below, on ~~30~~ June, ~~30~~ 20X1, the spot exchange rate is LC1.072 to FC1, while the twelve-month forward exchange rate is LC1.096 to FC1. On ~~31~~ December, ~~31~~ 20X1, the spot exchange rate is LC1.080 to FC1, while the six-month forward exchange rate is LC1.092 to FC1. On ~~31~~ March, ~~31~~ 20X2, the spot exchange rate is LC1.074 to FC1, while the three-month forward rate is LC1.076 to FC1. On ~~30~~ June, ~~30~~ 20X2, the spot exchange rate is LC1.072 to FC1. The applicable yield curve in the local currency is flat at 6 per cent per year throughout the period. The fair value of the forward exchange contract is negative LC388 on ~~31~~ December, ~~31~~ 20X1 $\{([1.092 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(6/12)}\}$, negative LC1,971 on ~~31~~ March, ~~31~~ 20X2 $\{([1.076 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(3/12)}\}$, and negative LC2,400 on ~~30~~ June, ~~30~~ 20X2 $\{1.072 \times 100,000 - 109,600\}$.

Date	Spot rate	Forward rate to 30 June, 30 20X2	Fair value of forward contract
30 June, 30 20X1	1.072	1.096	–
31 December, 31 20X1	1.080	1.092	(388)
31 March, 31 20X2	1.074	1.076	(1,971)
30 June, 30 20X2	1.072	–	(2,400)

Issue (a) – What is the accounting for these transactions if the hedging relationship is designated as being for changes in the fair value of the forward exchange contract and the entity’s accounting policy is to apply basis adjustment to non-financial assets that result from hedged forecast transactions?

The accounting entries are as follows.

30 June, 30 20X1

Dr	Forward	LC0
	Cr Cash	LC0

To record the forward exchange contract at its initial amount of zero (~~ED38.45 IAS 39.43~~). The hedge is expected to be fully effective because the critical terms of the forward exchange contract and the purchase contract and the assessment of hedge effectiveness are based on the forward price (~~ED38.AG153 IAS 39.AG108~~).

31 December, 31 20X1

Dr	Net assets/equity Other comprehensive income	LC388	
	Cr Forward liability		LC388

To record the change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract between ~~30 June, 30 20X1~~ and ~~31 December, 31 20X1~~, i.e. LC388 – 0 = LC388, in ~~net assets/equity~~ ~~other comprehensive income~~ (~~ED38.106 IAS 39.95~~). The hedge is fully effective because the loss on the forward exchange contract (LC388) exactly offsets the change in cash flows associated with the purchase contract based on the forward price $[(LC388) = \{([1.092 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(6/12)}\} - \{([1.096 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06\}]$.

31 March, 31 20X2

Dr	Net assets/equity Other comprehensive income	LC1,583	
	Cr Forward liability		LC1,583

To record the change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract between ~~1 January, 1 20X2~~ and ~~31 March, 31 20X2~~ (i.e. LC1,971 – LC388 = LC1,583) in ~~net assets/equity~~ ~~other comprehensive income~~ (~~ED38.106 IAS 39.95~~). The hedge is fully effective because the loss on the forward exchange contract (LC1,583) exactly offsets the change in cash flows associated with the purchase contract based on the forward price $[(LC1,583) = \{([1.076 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(3/12)}\} - \{([1.092 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(6/12)}\}]$.

Dr	Paper Property, plant and equipment (purchase price)	LC107,400	
Dr	Paper Property, plant and equipment (hedging loss)	LC1,971	
	Cr Net assets/equity Other comprehensive income		LC1,971
	Cr Payable		LC107,400

To recognize the purchase of the ~~spare parts~~ ~~paper~~ at the spot rate ($1.074 \times FC100,000$) and remove the cumulative loss on the forward exchange contract that has been recognized in ~~net assets/equity~~ ~~other comprehensive income~~ (LC1,971) and include it in the initial measurement of the ~~spare parts purchased~~ ~~purchased paper~~. Accordingly, the initial measurement of the ~~purchased paper~~ is LC109,371 consisting of a purchase consideration of LC107,400 and a hedging loss of LC1,971.

30 June, 30 20X2

Dr	Payable	LC107,400	
	Cr Cash		LC107,200
	Cr Profit or loss Surplus or deficit		LC200

To record the settlement of the payable at the spot rate ($FC100,000 \times 1.072 = 107,200$) and the associated exchange gain of LC200 (LC107,400 – LC107,200).

Dr	Profit or loss Surplus or deficit	LC429
----	----------------------------------------------	-------

Cr Forward liability

LC429

To record the loss on the forward exchange contract between 4 April, 1 20X2 and 30 June, 30 20X2 (i.e. LC2,400 – LC1,971 = LC429) in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. The hedge is regarded as fully effective because the loss on the forward exchange contract (LC429) exactly offsets the change in the fair value of the payable based on the forward price ($LC429 = ([1.072 \times 100,000] - 109,600 - \{([1.076 \times 100,000] - 109,600)/1.06^{(3/12)}\})$).

Dr Forward liability

LC2,400

Cr Cash

LC2,400

To record the net settlement of the forward exchange contract.

Issue (b) – What is the accounting for these transactions if the hedging relationship instead is designated as being for changes in the spot element of the forward exchange contract and the interest element is excluded from the designated hedging relationship (ED38.83 IAS 39.74)?

The accounting entries are as follows.

~~30 June, 30~~ 20X1

Dr Forward

LC0

Cr Cash

LC0

To record the forward exchange contract at its initial amount of zero (ED38.45 ~~IAS 39.43~~). The hedge is expected to be fully effective because the critical terms of the forward exchange contract and the purchase contract are the same and the change in the premium or discount on the forward contract is excluded from the assessment of effectiveness (ED38.AG153 ~~IAS 39.AG108~~).

~~31 December, 31~~ 20X1

Dr ~~Profit or loss~~ Surplus or deficit (interest element)

LC1,165

Cr Net assets/equity ~~Other comprehensive income~~ (spot element)

LC777

Cr Forward liability

LC388

To record the change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract between ~~30 June, 30~~ 20X1 and ~~31 December, 31~~ 20X1, i.e. LC388 – 0 = LC388. The change in the present value of spot settlement of the forward exchange contract is a gain of LC777 ($\{([1.080 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(6/12)}\} - \{([1.072 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06\}$), which is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (ED38.106 ~~IAS 39.95(a)~~). The change in the interest element of the forward exchange contract (the residual change in fair value) is a loss of LC1,165 (388 + 777), which is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (ED38.83 and ED38.64(a) ~~IAS 39.74 and IAS 39.55(a)~~). The hedge is fully effective because the gain in the spot element of the forward contract (LC777) exactly offsets the change in the purchase price at spot rates ($LC777 = \{([1.080 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(6/12)}\} - \{([1.072 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06\}$).

~~31 March, 31~~ 20X2

Dr ~~Other comprehensive income~~ Net assets/equity (spot element)

LC580

Dr ~~Profit or loss~~ Surplus or deficit (interest element)

LC1,003

Cr Forward liability

LC1,583

To record the change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract between 4 January, 1 20X2 and ~~31 March, 31~~ 20X2, i.e. LC1,971 – LC388 = LC1,583. The change in the present value of the spot settlement

of the forward exchange contract is a loss of LC580 ($\{([1.074 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(3/12)}\} - \{([1.080 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(6/12)}\}$), which is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (ED38.106(a) ~~IAS 39.95(a)~~). The change in the interest element of the forward exchange contract (the residual change in fair value) is a loss of LC1,003 (LC1,583 – LC580), which is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (ED38.83 and ED38.64(a) ~~IAS 39.74 and IAS 39.55(a)~~). The hedge is fully effective because the loss in the spot element of the forward contract (LC580) exactly offsets the change in the purchase price at spot rates $[(580) = \{([1.074 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(3/12)}\} - \{([1.080 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(6/12)}\}]$.

Dr	Paper <u>Property, plant and equipment</u> (purchase price)	LC107,400
Dr	Other comprehensive income <u>Net assets/equity</u>	LC197
Cr	Paper <u>Property, plant and equipment</u> (hedging gain)	LC197
Cr	Payable	LC107,400

To recognize the purchase of the paper at the spot rate ($= 1.074 \times \text{FC}100,000$) and remove the cumulative gain on the spot element of the forward exchange contract that has been recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (LC777 – LC580 = LC197) and include it in the initial measurement of the purchased paper. Accordingly, the initial measurement of the purchased paper is LC107,203, consisting of a purchase consideration of LC107,400 and a hedging gain of LC197.

30 June, 30 20X2

Dr	Payable	LC107,400
Cr	Cash	LC107,200
Cr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u>	LC200

To record the settlement of the payable at the spot rate ($\text{FC}100,000 \times 1.072 = \text{LC}107,200$) and the associated exchange gain of LC200 ($- [1.072 - 1.074] \times \text{FC}100,000$).

Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (spot element)	LC197
Dr	Profit or loss <u>Surplus or deficit</u> (interest element)	LC232
Cr	Forward liability	LC429

To record the change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract between ~~1 April, 1~~ 20X2 and 30 June, 30 20X2 (i.e. LC2,400 – LC1,971 = LC429). The change in the present value of the spot settlement of the forward exchange contract is a loss of LC197 ($[(1.072 \times 100,000) - 107,200 - \{([1.074 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(3/12)}\}]$), which is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. The change in the interest element of the forward exchange contract (the residual change in fair value) is a loss of LC232 (LC429 – LC197), which is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. The hedge is fully effective because the loss in the spot element of the forward contract (LC197) exactly offsets the change in the present value of the spot settlement of the payable $[(\text{LC}197) = \{[1.072 \times 100,000] - 107,200 - \{([1.074 \times 100,000] - 107,200)/1.06^{(3/12)}\}]]$.

Dr	Forward liability	LC2,400
Cr	Cash	LC2,400

To record the net settlement of the forward exchange contract.

The following table provides an overview of the components of the change in fair value of the hedging instrument over the term of the hedging relationship. It illustrates that the way in which a hedging

relationship is designated affects the subsequent accounting for that hedging relationship, including the assessment of hedge effectiveness and the recognition of gains and losses.

<i>Period ending</i>	<i>Change in spot settlement</i>	<i>Fair value of change in spot settlement</i>	<i>Change in forward settlement</i>	<i>Fair value of change in forward settlement</i>	<i>Fair value of change in interest element</i>
	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>	<i>LC</i>
June 20X1	–	–	–	–	–
December 20X1	800	777	(400)	(388)	(1,165)
March 20X2	(600)	(580)	(1,600)	(1,583)	(1,003)
June 20X2	(200)	(197)	(400)	(429)	(232)
Total	–	–	(2,400)	(2,400)	(2,400)

F.6 Hedges: Other Issues

F.6.1 Hedge Accounting: Management of Interest Rate Risk in Entities Such as Departments of Finance~~Financial Institutions~~

~~Banks and other financial institutions~~ Entities, such as departments of finance, often manage their exposure to interest rate risk on a net basis for all or parts of their activities. They have systems to accumulate critical information throughout the entity about their financial assets, financial liabilities and forward commitments, including loan commitments. This information is used to estimate and aggregate cash flows and to schedule such estimated cash flows into the applicable future periods in which they are expected to be paid or received. The systems generate estimates of cash flows based on the contractual terms of the instruments and other factors, including estimates of prepayments and defaults. For risk management purposes, many entities ~~financial institutions~~ use derivative contracts to offset some or all exposure to interest rate risk on a net basis.

If an entity ~~financial institution~~ manages interest rate risk on a net basis, can its activities potentially qualify for hedge accounting under ED 38 IAS 39?

Yes. However, to qualify for hedge accounting the derivative hedging instrument that hedges the net position for risk management purposes must be designated for accounting purposes as a hedge of a gross position related to assets, liabilities, forecast cash inflows or forecast cash outflows giving rise to the net exposure (ED38.94, ED38.AG145 and ED38.AG158~~IAS 39.84, IAS 39.AG101 and IAS 39.AG111~~). It is not possible to designate a net position as a hedged item under ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 because of the inability to associate hedging gains and losses with a specific item being hedged and, correspondingly, to determine objectively the period in which such gains and losses should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Hedging a net exposure to interest rate risk can often be defined and documented to meet the qualifying criteria for hedge accounting in ED38.98 ~~IAS 39.88~~ if the objective of the activity is to offset a specific, identified and designated risk exposure that ultimately affects the entity's surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (ED38.AG155~~IAS 39.AG110~~) and the entity designates and documents its interest rate risk exposure on a gross basis. Also, to qualify for hedge accounting the information systems must capture sufficient information about the amount and timing of cash flows and the effectiveness of the risk management activities in accomplishing their objective.

The factors an entity must consider for hedge accounting purposes if it manages interest rate risk on a net basis are discussed in Question F.6.2.

F.6.2 Hedge Accounting Considerations when Interest Rate Risk is Managed on a Net Basis

If an entity manages its exposure to interest rate risk on a net basis, what are the issues the entity should consider in defining and documenting its interest rate risk management activities to qualify for hedge accounting and in establishing and accounting for the hedge relationship?

Issues (a)–(l) below deal with the main issues. First, Issues (a) and (b) discuss the designation of derivatives used in interest rate risk management activities as fair value hedges or cash flow hedges. As noted there, hedge accounting criteria and accounting consequences differ between fair value hedges and cash flow hedges. Since it may be easier to achieve hedge accounting treatment if derivatives used in interest rate risk management activities are designated as cash flow hedging instruments, Issues (c)–(l) expand on various aspects of the accounting for cash flow hedges. Issues (c)–(f) consider the application of the hedge accounting criteria for cash flow hedges in ~~ED38~~ IAS 39, and Issues (g) and (h) discuss the required accounting treatment. Finally, Issues (i)–(l) elaborate on other specific issues relating to the accounting for cash flow hedges.

Issue (a) – Can a derivative that is used to manage interest rate risk on a net basis be designated under ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge or a cash flow hedge of a gross exposure?

Both types of designation are possible under ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38. An entity may designate the derivative used in interest rate risk management activities either as a fair value hedge of assets, liabilities and firm commitments or as a cash flow hedge of forecast transactions, such as the anticipated reinvestment of cash inflows, the anticipated refinancing or rollover of a financial liability, and the cash flow consequences of the resetting of interest rates for an asset or a liability.

In economic terms, it does not matter whether the derivative instrument is regarded as a fair value hedge or as a cash flow hedge. Under either perspective of the exposure, the derivative has the same economic effect of reducing the net exposure. For example, a receive-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swap can be considered to be a cash flow hedge of a variable rate asset or a fair value hedge of a fixed rate liability. Under either perspective, the fair value or cash flows of the interest rate swap offset the exposure to interest rate changes. However, accounting consequences differ depending on whether the derivative is designated as a fair value hedge or a cash flow hedge, as discussed in Issue (b).

To illustrate: a ~~bank~~ department of finance has the following assets and liabilities with a maturity of two years.

	Variable interest	Fixed interest
	CU	CU
Assets	60	100
Liabilities	(100)	(60)
Net	(40)	40

The ~~bank~~ entity takes out a two-year swap with a notional principal of CU40 to receive a variable interest rate and pay a fixed interest rate to hedge the net exposure. As discussed above, this may be regarded and designated either as a fair value hedge of CU40 of the fixed rate assets or as a cash flow hedge of CU40 of the variable rate liabilities.

Issue (b) – What are the critical considerations in deciding whether a derivative that is used to manage interest rate risk on a net basis should be designated as a hedging instrument in a fair value hedge or a cash flow hedge of a gross exposure?

Critical considerations include the assessment of hedge effectiveness in the presence of prepayment risk and the ability of the information systems to attribute fair value or cash flow changes of hedging instruments to fair value or cash flow changes, respectively, of hedged items, as discussed below.

For accounting purposes, the designation of a derivative as hedging a fair value exposure or a cash flow exposure is important because both the qualification requirements for hedge accounting and the recognition of hedging gains and losses for these categories are different. It is often easier to demonstrate high effectiveness for a cash flow hedge than for a fair value hedge.

Effects of prepayments

Prepayment risk inherent in many financial instruments affects the fair value of an instrument and the timing of its cash flows and impacts on the effectiveness test for fair value hedges and the highly probable test for cash flow hedges, respectively.

Effectiveness is often more difficult to achieve for fair value hedges than for cash flow hedges when the instrument being hedged is subject to prepayment risk. For a fair value hedge to qualify for hedge accounting, the changes in the fair value of the derivative hedging instrument must be expected to be highly effective in offsetting the changes in the fair value of the hedged item (~~ED38.98(b) IAS 39.88(b)~~). This test may be difficult to meet if, for example, the derivative hedging instrument is a forward contract having a fixed term and the financial assets being hedged are subject to prepayment by the borrower. Also, it may be difficult to conclude that, for a portfolio of fixed rate assets that are subject to prepayment, the changes in the fair value for each individual item in the group will be expected to be approximately proportional to the overall changes in fair value attributable to the hedged risk of the group. Even if the risk being hedged is a benchmark interest rate, to be able to conclude that fair value changes will be proportional for each item in the portfolio, it may be necessary to disaggregate the asset portfolio into categories based on term, coupon, credit, type of loan and other characteristics.

In economic terms, a forward derivative instrument could be used to hedge assets that are subject to prepayment but it would be effective only for small movements in interest rates. A reasonable estimate of prepayments can be made for a given interest rate environment and the derivative position can be adjusted as the interest rate environment changes. If an entity's risk management strategy is to adjust the amount of the hedging instrument periodically to reflect changes in the hedged position, the entity needs to demonstrate that the hedge is expected to be highly effective only for the period until the amount of the hedging instrument is next adjusted. However, for that period, the expectation of effectiveness has to be based on existing fair value exposures and the potential for interest rate movements without consideration of future adjustments to those positions. Furthermore, the fair value exposure attributable to prepayment risk can generally be hedged with options.

For a cash flow hedge to qualify for hedge accounting, the forecast cash flows, including the reinvestment of cash inflows or the refinancing of cash outflows, must be highly probable (~~ED38.98(c) IAS 39.88(c)~~) and the hedge expected to be highly effective in achieving offsetting changes in the cash flows of the hedged item and hedging instrument (~~ED38.98(b) IAS 39.88(b)~~). Prepayments affect the timing of cash flows and, therefore, the probability of occurrence of the forecast transaction. If the hedge is established for risk management purposes on a net basis, an entity may have sufficient levels of highly probable cash flows on a gross basis to support the designation for accounting purposes of forecast transactions associated with a portion of the gross cash flows as the hedged item. In this case, the portion of the gross cash flows designated as being hedged may be chosen to be equal to the amount of net cash flows being hedged for risk management purposes.

Systems considerations

The accounting for fair value hedges differs from that for cash flow hedges. It is usually easier to use existing information systems to manage and track cash flow hedges than it is for fair value hedges.

Under fair value hedge accounting, the assets or liabilities that are designated as being hedged are remeasured for those changes in fair values during the hedge period that are attributable to the risk being hedged. Such changes adjust the carrying amount of the hedged items and, for interest sensitive assets and liabilities, may result in an adjustment of the effective interest rate of the hedged item (~~ED38.99 IAS 39.89~~). As a consequence of fair value hedging activities, the changes in fair value have to be allocated to the assets or liabilities being hedged in order for the entity to be able to recompute their effective interest rate, determine the subsequent amortization of the fair value adjustment to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, and determine the amount that should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ when assets are sold or liabilities extinguished (~~ED38.99 and ED38.103 IAS 39.89 and IAS 39.92~~). To

comply with the requirements for fair value hedge accounting, it will generally be necessary to establish a system to track the changes in the fair value attributable to the hedged risk, associate those changes with individual hedged items, recompute the effective interest rate of the hedged items, and amortize the changes to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ over the life of the respective hedged item.

Under cash flow hedge accounting, the cash flows relating to the forecast transactions that are designated as being hedged reflect changes in interest rates. The adjustment for changes in the fair value of a hedging derivative instrument is initially recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ (ED38.105 ~~IAS 39.95~~). To comply with the requirements for cash flow hedge accounting, it is necessary to determine when the cumulative gains and losses recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ from changes in the fair value of a hedging instrument should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified to profit or loss~~ (ED38.111 and ED38.112 ~~IAS 39.100 and IAS 39.104~~). For cash flow hedges, it is not necessary to create a separate system to make this determination. The system used to determine the extent of the net exposure provides the basis for scheduling the changes in the cash flows of the derivative and the recognition of such changes in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

The timing of the recognition in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ can be predetermined when the hedge is associated with the exposure to changes in cash flows. The forecast transactions that are being hedged can be associated with a specific principal amount in specific future periods composed of variable rate assets and cash inflows being reinvested or variable rate liabilities and cash outflows being refinanced, each of which creates a cash flow exposure to changes in interest rates. The specific principal amounts in specific future periods are equal to the notional amount of the derivative hedging instruments and are hedged only for the period that corresponds to the repricing or maturity of the derivative hedging instruments so that the cash flow changes resulting from changes in interest rates are matched with the derivative hedging instrument. ~~IAS 39.100~~ ED38.111 specifies that the amounts recognized in net assets/equity ~~should be recognized in surplus or deficit~~ ~~other comprehensive income should be reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ in the same period or periods during which the hedged item affects surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

Issue (c) – If a hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge relating to changes in cash flows resulting from interest rate changes, what would be included in the documentation required by ED38.98(a) ~~IAS 39.88(a)~~?

The following would be included in the documentation.

The hedging relationship - The maturity schedule of cash flows used for risk management purposes to determine exposures to cash flow mismatches on a net basis would provide part of the documentation of the hedging relationship.

The entity's risk management objective and strategy for undertaking the hedge - The entity's overall risk management objective and strategy for hedging exposures to interest rate risk would provide part of the documentation of the hedging objective and strategy.

The type of hedge - The hedge is documented as a cash flow hedge.

The hedged item - The hedged item is documented as a group of forecast transactions (interest cash flows) that are expected to occur with a high degree of probability in specified future periods, for example, scheduled on a monthly basis. The hedged item may include interest cash flows resulting from the reinvestment of cash inflows, including the resetting of interest rates on assets, or from the refinancing of cash outflows, including the resetting of interest rates on liabilities and rollovers of financial liabilities. As discussed in Issue (e), the forecast transactions meet the probability test if there are sufficient levels of highly probable cash flows in the specified future periods to encompass the amounts designated as being hedged on a gross basis.

The hedged risk - The risk designated as being hedged is documented as a portion of the overall exposure to changes in a specified market interest rate, often the risk-free interest rate or an interbank offered rate, common to all items in the group. To help ensure that the hedge effectiveness test is met at inception of the hedge and subsequently, the designated hedged portion of the interest rate risk could be documented as being based on the same yield curve as the derivative hedging instrument.

The hedging instrument - Each derivative hedging instrument is documented as a hedge of specified amounts in specified future time periods corresponding with the forecast transactions occurring in the specified future time periods designated as being hedged.

The method of assessing effectiveness - The effectiveness test is documented as being measured by comparing the changes in the cash flows of the derivatives allocated to the applicable periods in which they are designated as a hedge to the changes in the cash flows of the forecast transactions being hedged. Measurement of the cash flow changes is based on the applicable yield curves of the derivatives and hedged items.

Issue (d) – If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, how does an entity satisfy the requirement for an expectation of high effectiveness in achieving offsetting changes in ED38.98(b) IAS 39.88(b)?

An entity may demonstrate an expectation of high effectiveness by preparing an analysis demonstrating high historical and expected future correlation between the interest rate risk designated as being hedged and the interest rate risk of the hedging instrument. Existing documentation of the hedge ratio used in establishing the derivative contracts may also serve to demonstrate an expectation of effectiveness.

Issue (e) – If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, how does an entity demonstrate a high probability of the forecast transactions occurring as required by ED38.98(c) IAS 39.88(e)?

An entity may do this by preparing a cash flow maturity schedule showing that there exist sufficient aggregate gross levels of expected cash flows, including the effects of the resetting of interest rates for assets or liabilities, to establish that the forecast transactions that are designated as being hedged are highly probable to occur. Such a schedule should be supported by management's stated intentions and past practice of reinvesting cash inflows and refinancing cash outflows.

For example, an entity may forecast aggregate gross cash inflows of CU100 and aggregate gross cash outflows of CU90 in a particular time period in the near future. In this case, it may wish to designate the forecast reinvestment of gross cash inflows of CU10 as the hedged item in the future time period. If more than CU10 of the forecast cash inflows are contractually specified and have low credit risk, the entity has strong evidence to support an assertion that gross cash inflows of CU10 are highly probable to occur and to support the designation of the forecast reinvestment of those cash flows as being hedged for a particular portion of the reinvestment period. A high probability of the forecast transactions occurring may also be demonstrated under other circumstances.

Issue (f) – If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, how does an entity assess and measure effectiveness under ED38.98(d) and ED38.98(e) IAS 39.88(d) and IAS 39.88(e)?

Effectiveness is required to be measured at a minimum at the time an entity prepares its annual or interim financial reports. However, an entity may wish to measure it more frequently on a specified periodic basis, at the end of each month or other applicable reporting period. It is also measured whenever derivative positions designated as hedging instruments are changed or hedges are terminated to ensure that the recognition in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ of the changes in the fair value amounts on assets and liabilities and the recognition of changes in the fair value of derivative instruments designated as cash flow hedges are appropriate.

Changes in the cash flows of the derivative are computed and allocated to the applicable periods in which the derivative is designated as a hedge and are compared with computations of changes in the cash flows of the forecast transactions. Computations are based on yield curves applicable to the hedged items and the derivative hedging instruments and applicable interest rates for the specified periods being hedged.

The schedule used to determine effectiveness could be maintained and used as the basis for determining the period in which the hedging gains and losses recognized initially in net assets/equity are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~other comprehensive income are reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~.

Issue (g) – If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, how does an entity account for the hedge?

The hedge is accounted for as a cash flow hedge in accordance with the provisions in ED38.106-ED38.111~~IAS 39.95-IAS 39.100~~, as follows:

- (i) the portion of gains and losses on hedging derivatives determined to result from effective hedges is recognized in ~~other comprehensive income~~ net assets/equity whenever effectiveness is measured; and
- (ii) the ineffective portion of gains and losses resulting from hedging derivatives is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

ED38.111 ~~IAS 39.100~~ specifies that the amounts recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ should be reclassified from equity to profit or loss recognized in surplus or deficit in the same period or periods during which the hedged item affects surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~. Accordingly, when the forecast transactions occur, the amounts previously recognized in net assets/equity are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~other comprehensive income~~ are reclassified from equity to profit or loss. For example, if an interest rate swap is designated as a hedging instrument of a series of forecast cash flows, the changes in the cash flows of the swap are removed from net assets/equity and recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ in the periods when the forecast cash flows and the cash flows of the swap offset each other.

Issue (h) – If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, what is the treatment of any net cumulative gains and losses recognized in ~~other comprehensive income~~ net assets/equity if the hedging instrument is terminated prematurely, the hedge accounting criteria are no longer met, or the hedged forecast transactions are no longer expected to take place?

If the hedging instrument is terminated prematurely or the hedge no longer meets the criteria for qualification for hedge accounting, for example, the forecast transactions are no longer highly probable, the net cumulative gain or loss recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ remains in net assets/equity until the forecast transaction occurs (ED38.112(a) and ED38.112(b)~~IAS 39.101(a) and IAS 39.101(b)~~). If the hedged forecast transactions are no longer expected to occur, the net cumulative gain or loss is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ (ED38.112(c) ~~IAS 39.101(e)~~).

Issue (i) – ~~IAS 39.75~~ ED38.74 states that a hedging relationship may not be designated for only a portion of the time period in which a hedging instrument is outstanding. If the hedging relationship is designated as a cash flow hedge, and the hedge subsequently fails the test for being highly effective, does ~~IAS 39.75~~ ED38.74 preclude redesignating the hedging instrument?

No. ~~IAS 39.75~~ ED38.74 indicates that a derivative instrument may not be designated as a hedging instrument for only a portion of its remaining period to maturity. ~~IAS 39.75~~ ED38.74 does not refer to the derivative instrument's original period to maturity. If there is a hedge effectiveness failure, the ineffective portion of the gain or loss on the derivative instrument is recognized immediately in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ (ED38.106~~IAS 39.95(b)~~) and hedge accounting based on the previous designation of the hedge relationship cannot be continued (ED38.112~~IAS 39.101~~). In this case, the derivative instrument may be redesignated prospectively as a hedging instrument in a new hedging relationship provided this hedging relationship satisfies the necessary conditions. The derivative instrument must be redesignated as a hedge for the entire time period it remains outstanding.

Issue (j) – For cash flow hedges, if a derivative is used to manage a net exposure to interest rate risk and the derivative is designated as a cash flow hedge of forecast interest cash flows or portions of them on a gross basis, does the occurrence of the hedged forecast transaction give rise to an asset or liability that will result in a portion of the hedging gains and losses that were recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ remaining in net assets/equity?

No. In the hedging relationship described in Issue (c) above, the hedged item is a group of forecast transactions consisting of interest cash flows in specified future periods. The hedged forecast transactions do not result in the recognition of assets or liabilities and the effect of interest rate changes that are designated as being hedged is recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ in the period in which the

forecast transactions occur. Although this is not relevant for the types of hedges described here, if instead the derivative is designated as a hedge of a forecast purchase of a financial asset or issue of a financial liability, the associated gains or losses that were recognized in net assets/equity are recognized in ~~other comprehensive income~~ are reclassified from equity to profit or loss surplus or deficit in the same period or periods during which the ~~asset acquired or liability incurred~~ hedged forecast transaction affects surplus or deficit profit or loss (such as in the periods that interest expenses are recognized). However, if an entity expects at any time that all or a portion of a net loss recognized net assets/equity in ~~other comprehensive income~~ will not be recovered in one or more future periods, it shall ~~reclassify immediately from equity to profit or loss~~ in surplus or deficit the amount that is not expected to be recovered.

Issue (k) – In the answer to Issue (c) above it was indicated that the designated hedged item is a portion of a cash flow exposure. Does IAS 39 ED38 permit a portion of a cash flow exposure to be designated as a hedged item?

Yes. ~~IAS 39 ED 38~~ does not specifically address a hedge of a portion of a cash flow exposure for a forecast transaction. However, ~~IAS 39.84~~ ED38.90 specifies that a financial asset or liability may be a hedged item with respect to the risks associated with only a portion of its cash flows or fair value, if effectiveness can be measured. The ability to hedge a portion of a cash flow exposure resulting from the resetting of interest rates for assets and liabilities suggests that a portion of a cash flow exposure resulting from the forecast reinvestment of cash inflows or the refinancing or rollover of financial liabilities can also be hedged. The basis for qualification as a hedged item of a portion of an exposure is the ability to measure effectiveness. This is further supported by ED38.92 ~~IAS 39.82~~, which specifies that a non-financial asset or liability can be hedged only in its entirety or for foreign currency risk but not for a portion of other risks because of the difficulty of isolating and measuring the appropriate portion of the cash flows or fair value changes attributable to a specific risk. Accordingly, assuming effectiveness can be measured, a portion of a cash flow exposure of forecast transactions associated with, for example, the resetting of interest rates for a variable rate asset or liability can be designated as a hedged item.

Issue (l) – In the answer to Issue (c) above it was indicated that the hedged item is documented as a group of forecast transactions. Since these transactions will have different terms when they occur, including credit exposures, maturities and option features, how can an entity satisfy the tests in IAS 39.78 and ~~IAS 39.83~~ ED38.87 and ED38.93 requiring the hedged group to have similar risk characteristics?

~~IAS 39.78~~ ED38.87 provides for hedging a group of assets, liabilities, firm commitments or forecast transactions with similar risk characteristics. ~~IAS 39.83~~ ED38.93 provides additional guidance and specifies that portfolio hedging is permitted if two conditions are met, namely: the individual items in the portfolio share the same risk for which they are designated, and the change in the fair value attributable to the hedged risk for each individual item in the group will be expected to be approximately proportional to the overall change in fair value.

When an entity associates a derivative hedging instrument with a gross exposure, the hedged item typically is a group of forecast transactions. For hedges of cash flow exposures relating to a group of forecast transactions, the overall exposure of the forecast transactions and the assets or liabilities that are repriced may have very different risks. The exposure from forecast transactions may differ depending on the terms that are expected as they relate to credit exposures, maturities, options and other features. Although the overall risk exposures may be different for the individual items in the group, a specific risk inherent in each of the items in the group can be designated as being hedged.

The items in the portfolio do not necessarily have to have the same overall exposure to risk, provided they share the same risk for which they are designated as being hedged. A common risk typically shared by a portfolio of financial instruments is exposure to changes in the risk-free or benchmark interest rate or to changes in a specified rate that has a credit exposure equal to the highest credit-rated instrument in the portfolio (i.e. the instrument with the lowest credit risk). If the instruments that are grouped into a portfolio have different credit exposures, they may be hedged as a group for a portion of the exposure. The risk they have in common that is designated as being hedged is the exposure to interest rate changes from the highest credit rated instrument in the portfolio. This ensures that the change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk for each individual item in the group is expected to be approximately proportional to the overall change in fair value attributable to the hedged risk of the group. It is likely there will be some ineffectiveness if the

hedging instrument has a credit quality that is inferior to the credit quality of the highest credit-rated instrument being hedged, since a hedging relationship is designated for a hedging instrument in its entirety (ED38.83 IAS 39.74). For example, if a portfolio of assets consists of assets rated A, BB and B, and the current market interest rates for these assets are LIBOR+20 basis points, LIBOR+40 basis points and LIBOR+60 basis points, respectively, an entity may use a swap that pays fixed interest rate and for which variable interest payments based on LIBOR are made to hedge the exposure to variable interest rates. If LIBOR is designated as the risk being hedged, credit spreads above LIBOR on the hedged items are excluded from the designated hedge relationship and the assessment of hedge effectiveness.

F.6.3 Illustrative Example of Applying the Approach in Question F.6.2

The purpose of this example is to illustrate the process of establishing, monitoring and adjusting hedge positions and of qualifying for cash flow hedge accounting in applying the approach to hedge accounting described in Question F.6.2 when an entity ~~financial institution~~ manages its interest rate risk on an entity-wide basis. To this end, this example identifies a methodology that allows for the use of hedge accounting and takes advantage of existing risk management systems so as to avoid unnecessary changes to it and to avoid unnecessary bookkeeping and tracking.

The approach illustrated here reflects only one of a number of risk management processes that could be employed and could qualify for hedge accounting. Its use is not intended to suggest that other alternatives could not or should not be used. The approach being illustrated could also be applied in other circumstances (such as for cash flow hedges of ~~commercial entities~~), for example, hedging the rollover of commercial paper financing.

Identifying, assessing and reducing cash flow exposures

The discussion and illustrations that follow focus on the risk management activities of an entity, such as a department of finance, ~~financial institution~~ that manages its interest rate risk by analysing expected cash flows in a particular currency on an entity-wide basis. The cash flow analysis forms the basis for identifying the interest rate risk of the entity, entering into hedging transactions to manage the risk, assessing the effectiveness of risk management activities, and qualifying for and applying cash flow hedge accounting.

The illustrations that follow assume that an entity, ~~a financial institution~~, had the following expected future net cash flows and hedging positions outstanding in a specific currency, consisting of interest rate swaps, at the beginning of Period X0. The cash flows shown are expected to occur at the end of the period and, therefore, create a cash flow interest exposure in the following period as a result of the reinvestment or repricing of the cash inflows or the refinancing or repricing of the cash outflows.

The illustrations assume that the entity has an ongoing interest rate risk management programme. Schedule I shows the expected cash flows and hedging positions that existed at the beginning of Period X0. It is included here to provide a starting point in the analysis. It provides a basis for considering existing hedges in connection with the evaluation that occurs at the beginning of Period X1.

Schedule 1 End of period: expected cash flows and hedging positions

<i>Quarterly period</i>	<i>X0</i>	<i>X1</i>	<i>X2</i>	<i>X3</i>	<i>X4</i>	<i>X5</i>	<i>...n</i>
<i>(units)</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
Expected net cash flows		1,100	1,500	1,200	1,400	1,500	x,xxx
<i>Outstanding interest rate swaps:</i>							
Receive-fixed, pay-variable (notional amounts)	2,000	2,000	2,000	1,200	1,200	1,200	x,xxx
Pay-fixed, receive-variable (notional amounts)	(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)	(500)	(500)	(500)	x,xxx

Net exposure after outstanding swaps	100	500	500	700	800	x,xxx
-----------------------------------------	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-------

The schedule depicts five quarterly periods. The actual analysis would extend over a period of many years, represented by the notation '...n'. ~~A financial institution~~ An entity that manages its interest rate risk on an entity-wide basis re-evaluates its cash flow exposures periodically. The frequency of the evaluation depends on the entity's risk management policy.

For the purposes of this illustration, the entity is re-evaluating its cash flow exposures at the end of Period X0. The first step in the process is the generation of forecast net cash flow exposures from existing interest-earning assets and interest-bearing liabilities, including the rollover of short-term assets and short-term liabilities. Schedule II below illustrates the forecast of net cash flow exposures. A common technique for assessing exposure to interest rates for risk management purposes is an interest rate sensitivity gap analysis showing the gap between interest rate-sensitive assets and interest rate-sensitive liabilities over different time intervals. Such an analysis could be used as a starting point for identifying cash flow exposures to interest rate risk for hedge accounting purposes.

Schedule II Forecast net cash flow and repricing exposures							
<i>Quarterly period</i>	<i>Notes</i>	<i>X1</i>	<i>X2</i>	<i>X3</i>	<i>X4</i>	<i>X5</i>	<i>...n</i>
<i>(units)</i>		<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
CASH INFLOW AND REPRICING EXPOSURES - from assets							
<i>Principal and interest payments:</i>							
Long-term fixed rate	(1)	2,400	3,000	3,000	1,000	1,200	x,xxx
Short-term (roll over)	(1)(2)	1,575	1,579	1,582	1,586	1,591	x,xxx
Variable rate – principal payments	(1)	2,000	1,000	–	500	500	x,xxx
Variable rate – estimated interest	(2)	125	110	105	114	118	x,xxx
<i>Total expected cash inflows</i>		<i>6,100</i>	<i>5,689</i>	<i>4,687</i>	<i>3,200</i>	<i>3,409</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>
Variable rate asset balances	(3)	8,000	7,000	7,000	6,500	6,000	x,xxx
<i>Cash inflows and repricings</i>	(4)	<i>14,100</i>	<i>12,689</i>	<i>11,687</i>	<i>9,700</i>	<i>9,409</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>
CASH OUTFLOW AND REPRICING EXPOSURES - from liabilities							
<i>Principal and interest payments:</i>							
Long-term fixed rate	(1)	2,100	400	500	500	301	x,xxx
Short-term (roll over)	(1)(2)	735	737	738	740	742	x,xxx
Variable rate – principal payments	(1)	–	–	2,000	–	1,000	x,xxx
Variable rate – estimated interest	(2)	100	110	120	98	109	x,xxx
<i>Total expected cash outflows</i>		<i>2,935</i>	<i>1,247</i>	<i>3,358</i>	<i>1,338</i>	<i>2,152</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>
Variable rate liability	(3)	8,000	8,000	6,000	6,000	5,000	x,xxx

balances							
Cash outflows and repricings	(4)	10,935	9,247	9,358	7,338	7,152	x,xxx
NET EXPOSURES	(5)	3,165	3,442	2,329	2,362	2,257	x,xxx

- (1) The cash flows are estimated using contractual terms and assumptions based on management's intentions and market factors. It is assumed that short-term assets and liabilities will continue to be rolled over in succeeding periods. Assumptions about prepayments and defaults and the withdrawal of deposits are based on market and historical data. It is assumed that principal and interest inflows and outflows will be reinvested and refinanced, respectively, at the end of each period at the then current market interest rates and share the benchmark interest rate risk to which they are exposed.
- (2) Forward interest rates obtained from Schedule VI are used to forecast interest payments on variable rate financial instruments and expected rollovers of short-term assets and liabilities. All forecast cash flows are associated with the specific time periods (3 months, 6 months, 9 months and 12 months) in which they are expected to occur. For completeness, the interest cash flows resulting from reinvestments, refinancings and repricings are included in the schedule and shown gross even though only the net margin may actually be reinvested. Some entities may choose to disregard the forecast interest cash flows for risk management purposes because they may be used to absorb operating costs and any remaining amounts would not be significant enough to affect risk management decisions.
- (3) The cash flow forecast is adjusted to include the variable rate asset and liability balances in each period in which such variable rate asset and liability balances are repriced. The principal amounts of these assets and liabilities are not actually being paid and, therefore, do not generate a cash flow. However, since interest is computed on the principal amounts for each period based on the then current market interest rate, such principal amounts expose the entity to the same interest rate risk as if they were cash flows being reinvested or refinanced.
- (4) The forecast cash flow and repricing exposures that are identified in each period represent the principal amounts of cash inflows that will be reinvested or repriced and cash outflows that will be refinanced or repriced at the market interest rates that are in effect when those forecast transactions occur.
- (5) The net cash flow and repricing exposure is the difference between the cash inflow and repricing exposures from assets and the cash outflow and repricing exposures from liabilities. In the illustration, the entity is exposed to interest rate declines because the exposure from assets exceeds the exposure from liabilities and the excess (i.e. the net amount) will be reinvested or repriced at the current market rate and there is no offsetting refinancing or repricing of outflows.

Note that some entities may banks regard some portion of their non-interest bearing demand deposits as economically equivalent to long-term debt. However, these deposits do not create a cash flow exposure to interest rates and would therefore be excluded from this analysis for accounting purposes.

Schedule II *Forecast net cash flow and repricing exposures* provides no more than a starting point for assessing cash flow exposure to interest rates and for adjusting hedging positions. The complete analysis includes outstanding hedging positions and is shown in Schedule III *Analysis of expected net exposures and hedging positions*. It compares the forecast net cash flow exposures for each period (developed in Schedule II) with existing hedging positions (obtained from Schedule I), and provides a basis for considering whether adjustment of the hedging relationship should be made.

Schedule III Analysis of expected net exposures and hedging positions						
<i>Quarterly period</i>	<i>X1</i>	<i>X2</i>	<i>X3</i>	<i>X4</i>	<i>X5</i>	<i>...n</i>
<i>(units)</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
Net cash flow and repricing	3,165	3,442	2,329	2,362	2,257	x,xxx

exposures (Schedule II)						
<i>Pre-existing swaps outstanding:</i>						
Receive-fixed, pay-variable (notional amounts)	2,000	2,000	1,200	1,200	1,200	x,xxx
Pay-fixed, receive-variable (notional amounts)	(1,000)	(1,000)	(500)	(500)	(500)	x,xxx
<i>Net exposure after pre-existing swaps</i>	<i>2,165</i>	<i>2,442</i>	<i>1,629</i>	<i>1,662</i>	<i>1,557</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>
<i>Transactions to adjust outstanding hedging positions:</i>						
Receive-fixed, pay variable swap 1 (notional amount, 10- years)	2,000	2,000	2,000	2,000	2,000	x,xxx
Pay-fixed, receive-variable swap 2 (notional amount, 3-years)			(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)	x,xxx
Swaps ...X						x,xxx
<i>Unhedged cash flow and repricing exposure</i>	<i>165</i>	<i>442</i>	<i>629</i>	<i>662</i>	<i>557</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>

The notional amounts of the interest rate swaps that are outstanding at the analysis date are included in each of the periods in which the interest rate swaps are outstanding to illustrate the impact of the outstanding interest rate swaps on the identified cash flow exposures. The notional amounts of the outstanding interest rate swaps are included in each period because interest is computed on the notional amounts each period, and the variable rate components of the outstanding swaps are repriced to the current market rate quarterly. The notional amounts create an exposure to interest rates that in part is similar to the principal balances of variable rate assets and variable rate liabilities.

The exposure that remains after considering the existing positions is then evaluated to determine the extent to which adjustments of existing hedging positions are necessary. The bottom portion of Schedule III shows the beginning of Period X1 using interest rate swap transactions to reduce the net exposures further to within the tolerance levels established under the entity's risk management policy.

Note that in the illustration, the cash flow exposure is not entirely eliminated. Many entities ~~financial institutions~~ do not fully eliminate risk but rather reduce it to within some tolerable limit.

Various types of derivative instruments could be used to manage the cash flow exposure to interest rate risk identified in the schedule of forecast net cash flows (Schedule II). However, for the purpose of the illustration, it is assumed that interest rate swaps are used for all hedging activities. It is also assumed that in periods in which interest rate swaps should be reduced, rather than terminating some of the outstanding interest rate swap positions, a new swap with the opposite return characteristics is added to the portfolio.

In the illustration in Schedule III above, swap 1, a receive-fixed, pay-variable swap, is used to reduce the net exposure in Periods X1 and X2. Since it is a 10-year swap, it also reduces exposures identified in other future periods not shown. However, it has the effect of creating an over-hedged position in Periods X3–X5. Swap 2, a forward starting pay-fixed, receive-variable interest rate swap, is used to reduce the notional amount of the outstanding receive-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swaps in Periods X3–X5 and thereby reduce the over-hedged positions.

It also is noted that in many situations, no adjustment or only a single adjustment of the outstanding hedging position is necessary to bring the exposure to within an acceptable limit. However, when the entity's risk management policy specifies a very low tolerance of risk a greater number of adjustments to the hedging positions over the forecast period would be needed to further reduce any remaining risk.

To the extent that some of the interest rate swaps fully offset other interest rate swaps that have been entered into for hedging purposes, it is not necessary to include them in a designated hedging relationship

for hedge accounting purposes. These offsetting positions can be combined, de-designated as hedging instruments, if necessary, and reclassified for accounting purposes from the hedging portfolio to the trading portfolio. This procedure limits the extent to which the gross swaps must continue to be designated and tracked in a hedging relationship for accounting purposes. For the purposes of this illustration it is assumed that CU500 of the pay-fixed, receive-variable interest rate swaps fully offset CU500 of the receive-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swaps at the beginning of Period X1 and for Periods X1–X5, and are de-designated as hedging instruments and reclassified to the trading account.

After reflecting these offsetting positions, the remaining gross interest rate swap positions from Schedule III are shown in Schedule IV as follows.

Schedule IV Interest rate swaps designated as hedges						
<i>Quarterly period</i>	<i>X1</i>	<i>X2</i>	<i>X3</i>	<i>X4</i>	<i>X5</i>	<i>...n</i>
<i>(units)</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
Receive-fixed, pay-variable (notional amounts)	3,500	3,500	2,700	2,700	2,700	x,xxx
Pay-fixed, receive-variable (notional amounts)	(500)	(500)	(1,000)	(1,000)	(1,000)	x,xxx
<i>Net outstanding swaps positions</i>	<i>3,000</i>	<i>3,000</i>	<i>1,700</i>	<i>1,700</i>	<i>1,700</i>	<i>x,xxx</i>

For the purposes of the illustrations, it is assumed that swap 2, entered into at the beginning of Period X1, only partially offsets another swap being accounted for as a hedge and therefore continues to be designated as a hedging instrument.

Hedge accounting considerations

Illustrating the designation of the hedging relationship

The discussion and illustrations thus far have focused primarily on economic and risk management considerations relating to the identification of risk in future periods and the adjustment of that risk using interest rate swaps. These activities form the basis for designating a hedging relationship for accounting purposes.

The examples in ~~IAS 39~~ **ED 38** focus primarily on hedging relationships involving a single hedged item and a single hedging instrument, but there is little discussion and guidance on portfolio hedging relationships for cash flow hedges when risk is being managed centrally. In this illustration, the general principles are applied to hedging relationships involving a component of risk in a portfolio having multiple risks from multiple transactions or positions.

Although designation is necessary to achieve hedge accounting, the way in which the designation is described also affects the extent to which the hedging relationship is judged to be effective for accounting purposes and the extent to which the entity's existing system for managing risk will be required to be modified to track hedging activities for accounting purposes. Accordingly, an entity may wish to designate the hedging relationship in a manner that avoids unnecessary systems changes by taking advantage of the information already generated by the risk management system and avoids unnecessary bookkeeping and tracking. In designating hedging relationships, the entity may also consider the extent to which ineffectiveness is expected to be recognized for accounting purposes under alternative designations.

The designation of the hedging relationship needs to specify various matters. These are illustrated and discussed here from the perspective of the hedge of the interest rate risk associated with the cash inflows, but the guidance can also be applied to the hedge of the risk associated with the cash outflows. It is fairly obvious that only a portion of the gross exposures relating to the cash inflows is being hedged by the interest rate swaps. Schedule V *The general hedging relationship* illustrates the designation of the portion of the gross reinvestment risk exposures identified in Schedule II as being hedged by the interest rate swaps.

Schedule V The general hedging relationship						
<i>Quarterly period</i>	<i>X1</i>	<i>X2</i>	<i>X3</i>	<i>X4</i>	<i>X5</i>	<i>...n</i>
<i>(units)</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>	<i>CU</i>
Cash inflow repricing exposure (Schedule II)	14,100	12,689	11,687	9,700	9,409	x,xxx
Receive-fixed, pay-variable swaps (Schedule IV)	3,500	3,500	2,700	2,700	2,700	x,xxx
<i>Hedged exposure percentage</i>	<i>24.8%</i>	<i>27.6%</i>	<i>23.1%</i>	<i>27.8%</i>	<i>28.7%</i>	<i>xx.x%</i>

The hedged exposure percentage is computed as the ratio of the notional amount of the receive-fixed, pay-variable swaps that are outstanding divided by the gross exposure. Note that in Schedule V there are sufficient levels of forecast reinvestments in each period to offset more than the notional amount of the receive-fixed, pay-variable swaps and satisfy the accounting requirement that the forecast transaction is highly probable.

It is not as obvious, however, how the interest rate swaps are specifically related to the cash flow interest risks designated as being hedged and how the interest rate swaps are effective in reducing that risk. The more specific designation is illustrated in Schedule VI *The specific hedging relationship* below. It provides a meaningful way of depicting the more complicated narrative designation of the hedge by focusing on the hedging objective to eliminate the cash flow variability associated with future changes in interest rates and to obtain an interest rate equal to the fixed rate inherent in the term structure of interest rates that exists at the commencement of the hedge.

The expected interest from the reinvestment of the cash inflows and repricings of the assets is computed by multiplying the gross amounts exposed by the forward rate for the period. For example, the gross exposure for Period X2 of CU14,100 is multiplied by the forward rate for Periods X2–X5 of 5.50 per cent, 6.00 per cent, 6.50 per cent and 7.25 per cent, respectively, to compute the expected interest for those quarterly periods based on the current term structure of interest rates. The hedged expected interest is computed by multiplying the expected interest for the applicable three-month period by the hedged exposure percentage.

Schedule VI The specific hedging relationship						
Term structure of interest rates						
Quarterly period	X1	X2	X3	X4	X5	...n
Spot rates	5.00%	5.25%	5.50%	5.75%	6.05%	x.xx%
Forward rates ^(a)	5.00%	5.50%	6.00%	6.50%	7.25%	x.xx%
Cash flow exposures and expected interest amounts						
Repricing period	Time to forecast transaction	Gross amounts exposed	Expected interest			
			CU	CU	CU	CU
2	3 months	14,100	°	194	212	229
3	6 months	12,689		190	206	230
4	9 months	11,687			190	212
5	12 months	9,700				176
6	15 months	9,409				

Hedged percentage (Schedule V) in the previous period	24.8%	27.6%	23.1%	27.8%	xx.x%
Hedged expected interest	48	52	44	49	xx
(a) The forward interest rates are computed from the spot interest rates and rounded for the purposes of the presentation. Computations that are based on the forward interest rates are made based on the actual computed forward rate and then rounded for the purposes of the presentation.					

It does not matter whether the gross amount exposed is reinvested in long-term fixed rate debt or variable rate debt, or in short-term debt that is rolled over in each subsequent period. The exposure to changes in the forward interest rate is the same. For example, if the CU14,100 is reinvested at a fixed rate at the beginning of Period X2 for six months, it will be reinvested at 5.75 per cent. The expected interest is based on the forward interest rates for Period X2 of 5.50 per cent and for Period X3 of 6.00 per cent, equal to a blended rate of 5.75 per cent $(1.055 \times 1.060)^{0.5}$, which is the Period X2 spot rate for the next six months.

However, only the expected interest from the reinvestment of the cash inflows or repricing of the gross amount for the first three-month period after the forecast transaction occurs is designated as being hedged. The expected interest being hedged is represented by the shaded cells. The exposure for the subsequent periods is not hedged. In the example, the portion of the interest rate exposure being hedged is the forward rate of 5.50 per cent for Period X2. In order to assess hedge effectiveness and compute actual hedge ineffectiveness on an ongoing basis, the entity may use the information on hedged interest cash inflows in Schedule VI and compare it with updated estimates of expected interest cash inflows (for example, in a table that looks like Schedule II). As long as expected interest cash inflows exceed hedged interest cash inflows, the entity may compare the cumulative change in the fair value of the hedged cash inflows with the cumulative change in the fair value of the hedging instrument to compute actual hedge effectiveness. If there are insufficient expected interest cash inflows, there will be ineffectiveness. It is measured by comparing the cumulative change in the fair value of the expected interest cash flows to the extent they are less than the hedged cash flows with the cumulative change in the fair value of the hedging instrument.

Describing the designation of the hedging relationship

As mentioned previously, there are various matters that should be specified in the designation of the hedging relationship that complicate the description of the designation but are necessary to limit ineffectiveness to be recognized for accounting purposes and to avoid unnecessary systems changes and bookkeeping. The example that follows describes the designation more fully and identifies additional aspects of the designation not apparent from the previous illustrations.

Example designation
<p><i>Hedging objective</i></p> <p>The hedging objective is to eliminate the risk of interest rate fluctuations over the hedging period, which is the life of the interest rate swap, and in effect obtain a fixed interest rate during this period that is equal to the fixed interest rate on the interest rate swap.</p> <p><i>Type of hedge</i></p> <p>Cash flow hedge.</p> <p><i>Hedging instrument</i></p> <p>The receive-fixed, pay-variable swaps are designated as the hedging instrument. They hedge the cash flow exposure to interest rate risk.</p> <p>Each repricing of the swap hedges a three-month portion of the interest cash inflows that results from:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the forecast reinvestment or repricing of the principal amounts shown in Schedule V. unrelated investments or repricings that occur after the repricing dates on the swap over its life and involve different borrowers or lenders.

The hedged item—General

The hedged item is a portion of the gross interest cash inflows that will result from the reinvestment or repricing of the cash flows identified in Schedule V and are expected to occur within the periods shown on such schedule. The portion of the interest cash inflow that is being hedged has three components:

- the principal component giving rise to the interest cash inflow and the period in which it occurs,
- the interest rate component, and
- the time component or period covered by the hedge.

The hedged item—The principal component

The portion of the interest cash inflows being hedged is the amount that results from the first portion of the principal amounts being invested or repriced in each period:

- that is equal to the sum of the notional amounts of the received-fixed, pay-variable interest rate swaps that are designated as hedging instruments and outstanding in the period of the reinvestment or repricing, and
- that corresponds to the first principal amounts of cash flow exposures that are invested or repriced at or after the repricing dates of the interest rate swaps.

The hedged item—The interest rate component

The portion of the interest rate change that is being hedged is the change in both of the following:

- the credit component of the interest rate being paid on the principal amount invested or repriced that is equal to the credit risk inherent in the interest rate swap. It is that portion of the interest rate on the investment that is equal to the interest index of the interest rate swap, such as LIBOR, and
- the yield curve component of the interest rate that is equal to the repricing period on the interest rate swap designated as the hedging instrument.

The hedged item—The hedged period

The period of the exposure to interest rate changes on the portion of the cash flow exposures being hedged is:

- the period from the designation date to the repricing date of the interest rate swap that occurs within the quarterly period in which, but not before, the forecast transactions occur, and
- its effects for the period after the forecast transactions occur equal to the repricing interval of the interest rate swap.

It is important to recognize that the swaps are not hedging the cash flow risk for a single investment over its entire life. The swaps are designated as hedging the cash flow risk from different principal investments and repricings that are made in each repricing period of the swaps over their entire term. The swaps hedge only the interest accruals that occur in the first period following the reinvestment. They are hedging the cash flow impact resulting from a change in interest rates that occurs up to the repricing of the swap. The exposure to changes in rates for the period from the repricing of the swap to the date of the hedged reinvestment of cash inflows or repricing of variable rate assets is not hedged. When the swap is repriced, the interest rate on the swap is fixed until the next repricing date and the accrual of the net swap settlements is determined. Any changes in interest rates after that date that affect the amount of the interest cash inflow are no longer hedged for accounting purposes.

Designation objectives

Systems considerations

Many of the tracking and bookkeeping requirements are eliminated by designating each repricing of an interest rate swap as hedging the cash flow risk from forecast reinvestments of cash inflows and repricings of variable rate assets for only a portion of the lives of the related assets. Much tracking and bookkeeping

would be necessary if the swaps were instead designated as hedging the cash flow risk from forecast principal investments and repricings of variable rate assets over the entire lives of these assets.

This type of designation avoids keeping track of gains and losses recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ after the forecast transactions occur (ED38.108 and ED38.109 ~~IAS 39.97 and IAS 39.98~~) because the portion of the cash flow risk being hedged is that portion that will be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ in the period immediately following the forecast transactions that corresponds with the periodic net cash settlements on the swap. If the hedge were to cover the entire life of the assets being acquired, it would be necessary to associate a specific interest rate swap with the asset being acquired. If a forecast transaction is the acquisition of a fixed rate instrument, the fair value of the swap that hedged that transaction would be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ to adjust the interest ~~revenue income~~ on the asset when the interest ~~revenue income~~ is recognized. The swap would then have to be terminated or redesignated in another hedging relationship. If a forecast transaction is the acquisition of a variable rate asset, the swap would continue in the hedging relationship but it would have to be tracked back to the asset acquired so that any fair value amounts on the swap recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ could be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ upon the subsequent sale of the asset.

It also avoids the necessity of associating with variable rate assets any portion of the fair value of the swaps that is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. Accordingly, there is no portion of the fair value of the swap that is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ that should be recognized in surplus or deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ when a forecast transaction occurs or upon the sale of a variable rate asset.

This type of designation also permits flexibility in deciding how to reinvest cash flows when they occur. Since the hedged risk relates only to a single period that corresponds with the repricing period of the interest rate swap designated as the hedging instrument, it is not necessary to determine at the designation date whether the cash flows will be reinvested in fixed rate or variable rate assets or to specify at the date of designation the life of the asset to be acquired.

Effectiveness considerations

Ineffectiveness is greatly reduced by designating a specific portion of the cash flow exposure as being hedged.

- Ineffectiveness due to credit differences between the interest rate swap and hedged forecast cash flow is eliminated by designating the cash flow risk being hedged as the risk attributable to changes in the interest rates that correspond with the rates inherent in the swap, such as the AA rate curve. This type of designation prevents changes resulting from changes in credit spreads from being considered as ineffectiveness.
- Ineffectiveness due to duration differences between the interest rate swap and hedged forecast cash flow is eliminated by designating the interest rate risk being hedged as the risk relating to changes in the portion of the yield curve that corresponds with the period in which the variable rate leg of the interest rate swap is repriced.
- Ineffectiveness due to interest rate changes that occur between the repricing date of the interest rate swap and the date of the forecast transactions is eliminated by simply not hedging that period of time. The period from the repricing of the swap and the occurrence of the forecast transactions in the period immediately following the repricing of the swap is left unhedged. Therefore, the difference in dates does not result in ineffectiveness.

Accounting considerations

The ability to qualify for hedge accounting using the methodology described here is founded on provisions in ~~IAS 39~~ ED 38 and on interpretations of its requirements. Some of those are described in the answer to Question F.6.2 *Hedge Accounting Considerations when Interest Rate Risk is Managed on a Net Basis*. Some additional and supporting provisions and interpretations are identified below.

Hedging a portion of the risk exposure

The ability to identify and hedge only a portion of the cash flow risk exposure resulting from the reinvestment of cash flows or repricing of variable rate instruments is found in ED38.90 ~~IAS 39.84~~ as interpreted in the answers to Questions F.6.2 Issue (k) and F.2.17 *Partial Term Hedging*.

Hedging multiple risks with a single instrument

The ability to designate a single interest rate swap as a hedge of the cash flow exposure to interest rates resulting from various reinvestments of cash inflows or repricings of variable rate assets that occur over the life of the swap is founded on ED38.85 ~~IAS 39.76~~ as interpreted in the answer to Question F.1.12 *Hedges of More Than One Type of Risk*.

Hedging similar risks in a portfolio

The ability to specify the forecast transaction being hedged as a portion of the cash flow exposure to interest rates for a portion of the duration of the investment that gives rise to the interest payment without specifying at the designation date the expected life of the instrument and whether it pays a fixed or variable rate is founded on the answer to Question F.6.2 Issue (l), which specifies that the items in the portfolio do not necessarily have to have the same overall exposure to risk, providing they share the same risk for which they are designated as being hedged.

Hedge terminations

The ability to de-designate the forecast transaction (the cash flow exposure on an investment or repricing that will occur after the repricing date of the swap) as being hedged is provided for in ED38.112 ~~IAS 39.104~~ dealing with hedge terminations. While a portion of the forecast transaction is no longer being hedged, the interest rate swap is not de-designated, and it continues to be a hedging instrument for the remaining transactions in the series that have not occurred. For example, assume that an interest rate swap having a remaining life of one year has been designated as hedging a series of three quarterly reinvestments of cash flows. The next forecast cash flow reinvestment occurs in three months. When the interest rate swap is repriced in three months at the then current variable rate, the fixed rate and the variable rate on the interest rate swap become known and no longer provide hedge protection for the next three months. If the next forecast transaction does not occur until three months and ten days, the ten-day period that remains after the repricing of the interest rate swap is not hedged.

F.6.4 Hedge Accounting: Premium or Discount on Forward Exchange Contract

A forward exchange contract is designated as a hedging instrument, for example, in a hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation. Is it permitted to amortize the discount or premium on the forward exchange contract to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ over the term of the contract?

No. The premium or discount on a forward exchange contract may not be amortized to surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~. Derivatives are always measured at fair value in the statement of financial position. The gain or loss resulting from a change in the fair value of the forward exchange contract is always recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ unless the forward exchange contract is designated and effective as a hedging instrument in a cash flow hedge or in a hedge of a net investment in a foreign operation, in which case the effective portion of the gain or loss is recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. In that case, the amounts recognized in net assets/equity ~~are recognized in surplus or deficit~~ ~~other comprehensive income~~ are reclassified from equity to profit or loss when the hedged future cash flows occur or on the disposal of the net investment, as appropriate. Under ED38.112 ~~IAS 39.74(b)~~, the interest element (time value) of the fair value of a forward may be excluded from the designated hedge relationship. In that case, changes in the interest element portion of the fair value of the forward exchange contract are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~.

F.6.5 ED 38 and IPSAS 4 ~~IAS 39 and IAS 24~~ Fair Value Hedge of Asset Measured at Cost

If the future sale of a ship carried at historical cost is hedged against the exposure to currency risk by foreign currency borrowing, does ~~IAS 39~~ ED38 require the ship to be remeasured for changes in the exchange rate even though the basis of measurement for the asset is historical cost?

No. In a fair value hedge, the hedged item is remeasured. However, a foreign currency borrowing cannot be classified as a fair value hedge of a ship since a ship does not contain any separately measurable foreign currency risk. If the hedge accounting conditions in ED38.98 IAS 39.88 are met, the foreign currency borrowing may be classified as a cash flow hedge of an anticipated sale in that foreign currency. In a cash flow hedge, the hedged item is not remeasured.

~~To illustrate: a shipping entity in Denmark has a US subsidiary that has the same functional currency (the Danish krone). The shipping entity measures its ships at historical cost less depreciation in the consolidated financial statements. In accordance with IAS 21.23(b), the ships are recognized in Danish krone using the historical exchange rate. To hedge, fully or partly, the potential currency risk on the ships at disposal in US dollars, the shipping entity normally finances its purchases of ships with loans denominated in US dollars.~~

~~In this case, a US dollar borrowing (or a portion of it) may be designated as a cash flow hedge of the anticipated sale of the ship financed by the borrowing provided the sale is highly probable, for example, because it is expected to occur in the immediate future, and the amount of the sales proceeds designated as being hedged is equal to the amount of the foreign currency borrowing designated as the hedging instrument. The gains and losses on the currency borrowing that are determined to constitute an effective hedge of the anticipated sale are recognized in other comprehensive income in accordance with IAS 39.95(a).~~

Section G Other

G.1 Disclosure of Changes in Fair Value

IAS 39 ED 38 requires financial assets classified as available for sale (AFS) and financial assets and financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ to be remeasured to fair value. Unless a financial asset or a financial liability is designated as a cash flow hedging instrument, fair value changes for financial assets and financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, and fair value changes for AFS assets are recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. What disclosures are required regarding the amounts of the fair value changes during a reporting period?

IFRS 7.20 requires items of revenue ~~income~~, expense and gains and losses to be disclosed. This disclosure requirement encompasses items of revenue ~~income~~, expense and gains and losses that arise on remeasurement to fair value. Therefore, an entity provides disclosures of fair value changes, distinguishing between changes that are recognized in surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~ and changes that are recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~. Further breakdown is provided of changes that relate to:

- (a) AFS assets, showing separately the amount of gain or loss recognized in net assets/equity ~~other comprehensive income~~ during the period and the amount that was recognized in surplus for deficit ~~reclassified from equity to profit or loss~~ for the period as a reclassification adjustment;
- (b) financial assets or financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, showing separately those fair value changes on financial assets or financial liabilities (i) designated as such upon initial recognition and (ii) classified as held for trading in accordance with ED 38 IAS 39; and
- (c) hedging instruments.

~~IFRS 7 ED 39~~ neither requires nor prohibits disclosure of components of the change in fair value by the way items are classified for internal purposes. For example, an entity may choose to disclose separately the change in fair value of those derivatives that in accordance with ~~IAS 39 ED 38~~ it categorizes as held for trading, but the entity classifies as part of risk management activities outside the trading portfolio.

In addition, IFRS 7.8 requires disclosure of the carrying amounts of financial assets or financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit ~~profit or loss~~, showing separately: (i) those designated as such upon initial recognition and (ii) those held for trading in accordance with ED 38 IAS 39.

G.2 ~~IAS 39 and IAS 7~~ ED 38 and IPSAS 2 Hedge Accounting: Statements of Cash Flows

How should cash flows arising from hedging instruments be classified in statements of cash flows?

Cash flows arising from hedging instruments are classified as operating, investing or financing activities, on the basis of the classification of the cash flows arising from the hedged item. While the terminology in IPSAS 2 ~~IAS 7~~ has not been updated to reflect ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~, the classification of cash flows arising from hedging instruments in the statement of cash flows should be consistent with the classification of these instruments as hedging instruments under ED 38 ~~IAS 39~~.

Basis for Conclusions

This Basis for Conclusions accompanies, but is not part of, ED 38.

Introduction

- BC1. This Basis for Conclusions summarizes the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board's (IPSASB) considerations in reaching the conclusions in ED 38, "Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement". As this IPSAS is based on IAS 39, "Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement" issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB), the Basis for Conclusions outlines only those areas where ED 38 deviates from the main requirements of IAS 32.
- BC2. This project on financial instruments is a part of the IPSASB's convergence program which aims to converge IPSASs with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs). The IPSASB acknowledges that there are other aspects of financial instruments, insofar as they relate to the public sector, which are not addressed in IAS 39. These may be addressed by future projects of the IPSASB. In particular, the IPSASB acknowledges that future projects may be required to address:
- Certain transactions undertaken by central banks; and
 - Receivables and payables that arise from arrangements that are, in substance, similar to, and have the same economic effect as, financial instruments, but are not contractual in nature.
- BC3. In developing this IPSAS, the IPSASB agreed to retain the existing text of IAS 39 wherever consistent with existing IPSASs, and deal with any public sector specific issues through additional application guidance.
- BC4. In September 2007 the IASB issued amendments to IAS 1, "Presentation of Financial Statements" which introduced a new concept into the presentation of financial statements called "comprehensive income". As the IPSASB has not yet considered this, along with some of the other amendments proposed in IAS 1, those amendments have not been included in ED 38.
- BC5. Certain amendments to IAS 39 published by the IASB during 2008 have been included in the text of ED38 even though they have not been approved as final amendments by the IASB. These include:
- Amendments to the scope of IAS 39 along with the requirements for identifying embedded derivatives included in the 2009 annual improvements project.
 - Amendments to IAS 39 and IFRIC 9 relating to the classification of embedded derivatives published in December 2008.

Scope

- BC6. Assets and liabilities may arise out of contractual non-exchange revenue transactions. The initial recognition and measurement of assets and liabilities arising out of non-exchange revenue transactions is addressed in IPSAS 23, "Revenue from Non-Exchange Transactions (Taxes and Transfers)". IPSAS 23 requires assets and liabilities to be measured initially at fair value. It does not provide guidance for the subsequent measurement or derecognition of these assets and liabilities.
- BC7. Where the assets and liabilities arise out of contractual arrangements and otherwise meet the definition of a financial instrument, ED 38 should be used to subsequently measure and derecognize those assets and liabilities.
- BC8. The IPSASB considered whether the initial measurement requirements in IPSAS 23 are appropriate for assets and liabilities that arise from non-exchange transactions, but are in effect financial instruments. While ED 38 requires that financial assets and financial liabilities are measured initially at fair value, it does however require specific treatment for any transaction costs incurred. ED 38 requires that transaction costs be included in the initial measurement of financial

assets and financial liabilities, except those that an entity subsequently measures at fair value with the changes in fair value measured in surplus or deficit.

- BC9. As a result, the IPSASB concluded that an entity should initially measure any financial assets acquired as part of a contractual non-exchange revenue transaction using ED 38 rather than IPSAS 23. The subsequent measurement and derecognition of these financial assets is also done using ED 38.

Initial Measurement

Concessionary Loans

- BC10. Concessionary loans can either be granted or received by an entity. Concessionary loans are granted to achieve specific public policy objectives and usually result in the loan being granted on favorable terms e.g. flexible repayment terms and the payment of either no interest or interest at a below-market interest rate. The issue or receipt of concessionary loans poses particular accounting issues because their terms are not market related.
- BC11. As concessionary loans are issued to achieve particular public policy objectives, the IPSASB determined that the off-market portion of a concessionary loan should be accounted for as follows:
- The issuer of a concessionary loan accounts for the off-market portion of the loan as an expense in the year the loan is issued.
 - The recipient of a concessionary loan considers whether the off-market portion of the loan is non-exchange revenue and should be accounted for in accordance with IPSAS 23.

Financial Guarantees Issued at No or Nominal Consideration

- BC12. The IPSASB acknowledged that in the public sector financial guarantee contracts are frequently entered into by issuers with nil consideration or nominal consideration often in order to further the issuer's social policy objectives. The IPSASB considered the approach to measurement at initial recognition for such financial guarantee contracts.
- BC13. Where the financial guarantee contract is entered into for consideration, the IPSAB considered whether the amount of such consideration should be deemed to be a fair value. The IPSAB concluded that such an assumption would be false and that recognition at such an amount would not be an accurate reflection of the financial risk of the guarantee for the issuing entity unless the entity determined that it was as the result of an exchange transaction. The IPSAB concluded that where consideration is for a nominal amount an entity should be required to determine the carrying value at initial recognition in the same way as if no consideration had been paid.
- BC14. The IPSAB therefore considered the approach to the determination of measurement at initial recognition for such financial guarantee contracts. Where an active market exists for financial guarantee contracts equivalent to or similar to that issued a fair value should be estimated through observation. Where no active market exists, an entity should consider the feasibility of using a valuation technique, although the IPSAB acknowledged that such models are often highly complex and their viability questionable on cost-benefit grounds. Where an entity cannot determine fair value through either observation of an active market or through a valuation technique it should determine initial measurement through IPSAS 19, "Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets"

BCXX (Alternative wording) The IPSAB therefore considered the approach to the determination of measurement at initial recognition for such financial guarantee contracts. Where an active market exists for financial guarantee contracts equivalent to or similar to that issued a fair value should be estimated through observation. Where no active market exists the IPSAB considered whether an

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS: RECOGNITION AND MEASUREMENT

entity should consider the feasibility of using a valuation technique. The e IPSAB acknowledged that such models are often highly complex and their viability questionable on cost-benefit grounds. From the perspective of the qualitative characteristics of financial information the information generated by such models may therefore be unreliable and difficult to understand. Where an entity cannot determine fair value through observation of an active market the IPSAB concluded that it is more appropriate determine initial measurement through IPSAS 19, “Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets”, because such a measure is a better indication of an entity’s exposure to financial risk as result to entering into a financial guarantee contract at nil or nominal consideration.

Comparison with IAS 39

Proposed International Public Sector Accounting Standard, ED 38 “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” is drawn primarily from International Accounting Standard 39, “Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement” (including final and proposed amendments to December, 31 2008). At the time of issuing this Standard, the IPSASB has not yet considered the revision made by the IASB to IAS 1, “Presentation of Financial Statements” which introduces the concept of comprehensive income. As the IPSASB has not considered the concept of comprehensive income in the public sector, ED 38 does not reflect amendments made to IAS 39 as a consequence of the revisions made to IAS 1. The main differences between ED 38 and IAS 39 are as follows:

- The scope of ED 38 is different from IAS 39. This Standard prescribes that financial guarantee contracts are treated as financial instruments and not as insurance contracts, while under IAS 39 entities are permitted to treat some financial guarantee contracts as insurance contracts.
- In certain instances, ED 38 uses different terminology from IAS 39. The most significant examples are the use of the terms “statement of financial performance” and “net assets/equity”. The equivalent terms in IAS 39 are “statement of comprehensive income or separate income statement (if presented)” and “equity”.
- ED 38 does not distinguish between “revenue” and “income”. IAS 39 distinguishes between “revenue and “income”, with “income having a broader meaning than the term “revenue”.
- Additional application guidance has been developed to explain the application of the principles in the Standard to financial instruments encountered in the public sector.
- Examples included in the text, application guidance and illustrative examples have either been amended or deleted based on their applicability to the public sector.
- Principles from IFRIC 9, “Reassessment of Embedded Derivatives” and IFRIC 16 “Hedges of a Net Investment in a Foreign Operation” have been included as an appendix to ED 38,
- Examples in the application guidance and illustrative examples have been amended to describe transactions and scenarios that are likely to occur in the public sector, as well as to accommodate concepts and terminology used in other IPSASs.